



































F. Hazman inv. et del.

C. Grignion sculp.



An HISTORICAL  
A C C O U N T  
O F T H E  
BRITISH TRADE  
O V E R T H E  
C A S P I A N S E A;  
W I T H T H E  
Revolutions of P E R S I A.  
V O L. III.

1822

A. C. G. U. O. D. O. A.

BRITISH LIBRARY

WATTS & GOSNOLD

PHARMACEUTICAL





---

C O N T E N T S  
O F T H E  
T H I R D V O L U M E.

P A R T I.

A summary view of the PERSIAN monarchy from the first foundation by CYRUS to the reign of HUSSEIN, the eleventh and last king of the SEFFIE DYNASTY.

Chap. I. **A** *Chronological account of the PERSIAN empire, from its first foundation by CYRUS the GREAT, in the year of the world 3426, to the invasion of ALEXANDER the GREAT.* page 1

II. *The GRECIAN empire over the PERSIANS. The ROMAN conquest. The re-establishment of PERSIA by ARTAXERXES. The TURKISH government in PERSIA, to the re-establishment of that kingdom in the line of the SEFFIES.* 12

P A R T II.

The revolutions of PERSIA, from the beginning of the present century to the death of MIR VAIS in the year 1715.

III. *Origin of the different tribes of the AFGHANS, with a general view of the revolutions of their country from the year 1100 to 1701.* 22

IV. *Character of GURGHIN-KHAN prince of GEORGIA. He is made governor of KANDAHAR, and oppresses that province. Complaints of the inhabitants. GURGHIN KHAN sends MIR VAIS to court as a suspected person. Character of MIR VAIS. Description of the court of ISFAHAN. Origin of the divisions and parties in PERSIA.* 27

- Chap. V. *The intrigues of MIR-VAIS at the court of ISFAHAN. He goes a pilgrimage to MECCA. Different sects of MAHOMMEDANS. He proposes political doubts to the MOLLAH'S at MECCA, which are resolved in his favour.* page 33
- VI. *The emperor of RUSSIA sends an ambassador to the court of ISFAHAN. MIR-VAIS's arts to alarm the court on this account. Character of the ambassador. MIR-VAIS raises suspicion against GURGHIN KHAN, governor of KANDAHAR, and is sent back to his own country, under a notion of his fidelity.* 37
- VII. *GURGHIN KHAN demands the daughter of MIR-VAIS. The AFGHANS assemble and determine to revolt. MIR-VAIS, by an artifice, imposes upon GURGHIN KHAN, and gains his confidence. A conspiracy concerted with the tribe of TIRINS. MIR-VAIS massacres the KHAN with all his retinue, and takes possession of KANDAHAR.* 42.
- VIII. *MIR-VAIS engages the inhabitants of KANDAHAR to join with him in the rebellion. Famous retreat of the GEORGIANS. MIR-VAIS makes himself master of the streight of ZEBIL. The PERSIAN court orders troops to be levied, and sends deputies to KANDAHAR.* 48.
- IX. *The PERSIAN court raises troops, and sends deputies to KANDAHAR. Defeat of the KHANS of HERAT and TAVRIS. KHOSROFF KHAN is sent against the AFGHANS; obtains a victory over them, and lays seige to KANDAHAR. His defeat and death. Another PERSIAN army defeated. The province of KANDAHAR entirely subjected by MIR-VAIS, who dies in 1715.* 53.

## P A R T III.

The revolutions of PERSIA from the death of MIR-VAIS in 1715, to the retreat of prince VACHTANGA from the frontiers of DAGISTAN in 1720.

- X. *MIR-ABDALLAH, brother of MIR-VAIS, succeeds to the government of the AFGHANS. MIR-MAGHMUD, son of MIR-VAIS, discovers a design of subjecting KANDAHAR, murders his uncle, and is chosen king of that country. The ABDOLLEES dissatisfied. The adventure of EZADALLAH, who defeats the PERSIAN army, and makes himself master of HERAT. Hostilities committed by the KOURDS. Incur-sions of the OUSBEGS. Character of the LESGEES, and their motives to invade PERSIA.* 58



Chap. XI. *The court prepares to attack the ABDOLLEES and OUSBEGS. SEFFIE KOULI KHAN is made general. Battle between the PERSIANS and ABDOLLEES. The MASCATS take possession of BAHARAIN. LUFT ALI KHAN is chosen general, and marches towards the PERSIAN gulf, and beats the rebels. MIR MAGHMUD marches at the same time towards KHERMAN. The domestic enemies of the PERSIAN general cabal against him. The ATHEMAT DOULET is confined, and his eyes plucked out. LUFT ALI KHAN is carried prisoner to ISFAHAN, and the PERSIAN army disbanded.* page 64

XII. *A divan is held in which the king presides, to examine into the conduct of the ATHEMAT DOULET. Articles of accusation brought against him; his answer and defence.* 75

XIII. *Death and character of the ATHEMAT DOULET. Excursions of the LESGEEES. Magnanimity of VACHTANGA; he puts on the turbant, and is named VALI of GEORGIA. Preparations made by this prince against the LESGEEES, whom he reduces to extremities. They are saved from destruction by a court intrigue. VACHTANGA takes an oath never to appear in arms in defence of PERSIA.* 82

## P A R T IV.

The revolutions of PERSIA from the commencement of the year 1721, to the battle of GULNABAD in 1722.

XIV. *Pacific dispositions of the AFGHANS. Uneasiness given to the court of ISFAHAN by the arrival of the TURKISH ambassador. HUSSEIN sends an ambassador to the GRAND SIGNIOR; and frightened by various presages, returns to ISFAHAN. The LESGEEES lay siege to SHAMAKIE, take it, and commit great cruelties; they make themselves masters of the rest of SHIRVAN, beat the KHAN of ERIVAN, and lay siege to GANJA. The court in great consternation.* 88

XV. *MIR MAGHMUD raises an army of 15,000 men. He marches towards KHERMAN, and makes himself master of that city; from thence he proceeds to YEZD, and lays siege to it, but is obliged to retire. He leads his army through deserts towards ISFAHAN, and arrives at GULNABAD. The PERSIANS prepare to oppose him. Different opinions in the divan upon that subject.* 96

XVI. *The PERSIAN army marches to fight the AFGHANS. The day of battle is fixed by the astrologers. Order of battle and disposition of both armies. The singular conduct*



*conduct of the two princesses of LORISTAN. Particular account of the battle of GULNABAD. Cause of the success of the AFGHANS. Reflexion on the conduct of the VALI of ARABIA.* page 102

## P A R T V.

The revolutions of PERSIA, from the battle of GULNABAD to the abdication of SULTAN HUSSEIN and the taking of ISFAHAN.

Chap. XVII. *The king calls a council and determines to remain in ISFAHAN. Preparations to defend the city. Orders sent to the KHANS of the provinces. The VALI of LORISTAN is declared generalissimo. MAGHMUD encamps at CHEERESTAN. Description of FARABAD; the AFGHANS take possession of it, and appear before JULFA. Description of JULFA, and the situation of the ARMENIANS.* 110

XVIII. *The conduct of the PERSIANS towards the ARMENIANS of JULFA. The AFGHANS make themselves masters of JULFA; their barbarities towards the ARMENIANS. Description of ISFAHAN. MAGHMUD repulsed at the bridge of SHIRASS.* 116

XIX. *MAGHMUD sends a deputation to ISFAHAN with proposals of peace, which are refused. He makes himself master of the bridge of ABASABAD, and invests the city. The troops marching to the relief of the besieged are defeated. Gallant behaviour of the inhabitants of BEN-ISFAHAN. Treacherous conduct of the VALI of ARABIA. Defeat of the KHAN of COHKILAN.* 124

XX. *SHAH HUSSEIN applies in vain to the VALI of GEORGIA for assistance. He declares his son TÆHMAS MYRZA his successor. TÆHMAS escapes from ISFAHAN, and endeavours to raise an army to march to the assistance of his father. Famine in ISFAHAN. ACHMED AGA makes a vigorous sally to open a passage for a convoy of provisions, but is defeated by the treachery of the VALI of ARABIA. Death of ACHMED AGA.* 132

XXI. *Consternation in ISFAHAN. Treachery of MELUCK MAGHMUD governor of SEGESTAN, who makes himself master of KHORASAN. Description of the famine in ISFAHAN. Capitulation for the surrender of that city. Ceremony of SHAH HUSSEIN'S abdication. MIR MAGHMUD receives the diadem, and takes possession of ISFAHAN.* 139

## P A R T VI.

The revolutions of PERSIA, from the accession of MAGHMUD to the crown of PERSIA in 1722, to the treaty concluded between SHAH TÆHMAS and PETER the GREAT in 1723.

Chap. XXII. *ASHREFF quits MAGHMUD's army. MAGHMUD ascends the throne and receives the homage of SHAH HUSSEIN, and the grandees of PERSIA. He regulates the civil administration. TÆHMAS MYRZA takes the title of king. MAGHMUD orders new levies to be raised in KANDAHAR. He sends NAZR ULLA with a detachment of troops to lay siege to CASBIN. TÆHMAS retires upon the approach of the AFGHAN army. CASBIN surrenders.* page 147

XXIII. *PETER the GREAT invades the northern provinces of PERSIA. Operations of the RUSSIAN army. PERSIA threatened by the TURKS. The inhabitants of CASBIN take up arms, and drive away the AFGHANS. Artful behaviour of MAGHMUD upon that occasion.* 154

XXIV. *MAGHMUD orders the PERSIAN ministers and lords to be massacred. Arrival of a TURKISH envoy. ISFAHAN is almost depopulated. Excursions of NAZR ULLAH. Heavy contributions laid upon the EUROPEAN traders.* 159

XXV. *ZEBERDEST KHAN lays siege to GHIEZ, and takes it. The inhabitants of BEN ISFAHAN surrender by capitulation. NAZR ULLAH returns with a considerable booty and provisions. A new colony of AFGHANS arrives from KANDAHAR. The VALI of GEORGIA deposed. NAZR ULLA is sent into FARISTAN. MAGHMUD besieges GHULPAIGAN. TÆHMAS marches an army to raise the siege; his army defeated, and GHULPAIGAN taken. Resolution and unhappy fate of LUFT ALI KHAN.* 165

XXVI. *The TURKS send an army into GEORGIA. The CZAR subdues GHILAN. Uneasiness of the OTTOMAN PORT at the progress of the RUSSIANS. TÆHMAS sends an ambassador to the PORT, who miscarries in his negotiation. ISMAEL BEG is sent ambassador to the court of RUSSIA, and concludes a treaty with the CZAR. Particulars of this treaty.* 173



## P A R T VII.

The revolutions of PERSIA, from the treaty concluded between the emperor of RUSSIA and TÆHMAS SHAH in 1723, to the death of MIR MAGHMUD in 1725.

Chap. XXVII. *Pretensions of AMAN OLA to the crown, compromised. Surrender of CASHAN. Death and character of NAZR ULLAH. He is succeeded by ZEBERDEST KHAN, who takes and plunders SHIRASS.* page 182

XXVIII. *ZEBERDEST KHAN's expedition against BENDER ABASSI. MAGHMUD marches into COHKILAN, and loses great part of his army. Imprudent conduct of SHAH TÆHMAS towards the ARMENIANS. The TURKS take ERIVAN. The ARMENIANS of NACHIVAN invite the TURKS into their country. TAVRIS besieged by the TURKS, and taken. Siege of HAMADAN.* 189

XXIX. *Rejoicings at CONSTANTINOPLE. The PORT is dissatisfied with the conduct of PETER the GREAT. The conferences renewed by the mediation of the FRENCH minister to the OTTOMAN PORT. Conclusion of the treaty between the CZAR and the PORT. Articles of that treaty.* 197

XXX. *MIR MAGHMUD raises new troops. A caravan arrives from KANDAHAR. He marches an army and lays siege to YEZD; but is obliged to raise it. ASHREFF returns. Disposition of the AFGHANS in his favour. Uneasiness of MAGHMUD upon that account. He undertakes a religious penance. Reports concerning SEFFIE MYRZA.* 202

XXXI. *Cruelty of MAGHMUD in murdering SHAH HUSSEIN's children. Numerous offspring and great voluptuousness of SHAH HUSSEIN. MAGHMUD falls into a delirium. Ceremony of the ARMENIAN priests in reading the red gospel over him. Conspiracy of the AFGHANS against him, in favour of ASHREFF. ASHREFF is elected SULTAN. Miserable death of MAGHMUD. Character of this prince.* 207

## P A R T VIII.

The revolutions of PERSIA, from the accession of ASHREFF to the throne of PERSIA in 1725, till the peace concluded between this prince and the TURKS in 1727.

XXXII. *Character of ASHREFF: his hypocrisy and artful behaviour to SHAH HUSSEIN. The princes of the blood, who had been murdered, buried at KOOM. ASHREFF*

- REFE punishes the conspirators who placed him on the throne: his behaviour towards the mother of MAGHMUD. His cruelty to his own brother. He endeavours to render himself popular by the mildness of his administration in general. page 215
- Chap. XXXIII. ASHREFF endeavours to obtain the acknowledgment of his sovereignty in KANDAHAR. He forms a design of seizing the person of SHAH TÆHMAS; who makes his escape into MAZANDERAN. ASHREFF takes KOOM. He massacres the PERSIAN lords, who had disclosed his designs upon TÆHMAS. 222
- XXXIV. Death of PETER the GREAT. Deplorable state of the PERSIAN monarchy. The TURKS take TAVRIS and GANJA. ACHMED BASHA marches an army and takes possession of LORISTAN. Division among the BACTIARIS. The VALI of LORISTAN makes an incursion into the territory of BAGDAT. 226
- XXXV. The RUSSIANS uneasy at the conquest made by the TURKS. Success of the RUSSIAN arms in PERSIA. The TURKS evade settling the limits of their conquests with the RUSSIAN resident. ASHREFF sends an ambassador to the PORT. Character of this minister. He is admitted to an audience of the GRAND VIZIR. His conferences with the TURKISH ministers. 233
- XXXVI. The TURKISH ministers propose queries to the MUFTI, relating to the consistency of a rupture with ASHREFF. Answer of the MUFTI. The PORT declares war against ASHREFF. The AFGHAN ambassador sets out from CONSTANTINOPLE, and is arrested on the road by orders from the GRAND SIGNIOR. CASBIN surrenders to ABDALLAH BASHA. Dispute between the TURKISH generals. Misunderstanding between the RUSSIANS and the TURKS. ABDALLAH BASHA defeats TÆHMAS's troops before ARDEVILLE. 238
- XXXVII. TÆHMAS SHAH endeavours to negotiate a treaty with the RUSSIANS and TURKS. ASHREFF fortifies ISFAHAN. He marches an army to meet ACHMED BASHA. Stratagem used by ASHREFF to evade a battle with the TURKS. ACHMED resolves to give the AFGHANS battle. The TURKS are defeated. 242
- XXXVIII. Artful behaviour of ASHREFF towards the TURKS. Situation of the PORT in regard to other powers. Great preparations in TURKEY against the AFGHANS. The TURKS unsuccessful against the ARMENIANS. Prudent administration of ASHREFF. The TURKS send commissaries into PERSIA to treat with ASHREFF. A treaty of peace concluded in the camp of HAMADAN, between the TURKS and AFGHANS in 1727. 249







To the RIGHT HONOURABLE  
**GEORGE LORD ANSON,**  
BARON of SOBERTON,  
Vice-admiral of ENGLAND, first LORD COMMIS-  
SIONER of the admiralty, and one of his  
MAJESTY'S most honourable privy-council.

MY LORD,  
**W**HEN the various events were known of the fa-  
mous expedition to the SOUTH SEAS, under your  
LORDSHIP'S direction, your calmness and constancy, in cir-  
cumstances



cumstances so discouraging, and oftentimes terrible, naturally excited a respectful idea of your character: but we have since been indebted in great measure to your LORDSHIP for more eminent services. You had the command in the first truly ENGLISH day, which gave a turn to the late war, and diverted the blow aimed at an important branch of our commerce. That day gave the first mortal wound to the maritime power of FRANCE, and compensated for the little success of our arms in FLANDERS. And here, my LORD, affection for my brother, who did his duty under your auspices, as well as the love of my country, demand the tribute of my particular thanks.

The desire of distinction, so deeply implanted in our nature, can have no principle more noble than that of advancing the happiness of the society. The highest offices of life, necessarily create a pre-eminence in toil; the possessors of them are therefore intitled to the greater veneration. Men of active spirits are ever looking forward. The same genius which has hitherto conducted your LORDSHIP will still lead you on to the increase of your fame, and the acquisition of new honour. On that board at which your LORDSHIP presides, depends in a very great degree the welfare and safety of  
of



of this nation. The splendor of this monarchy is supported by commerce, and commerce by naval strength. Whilst the several states of EUROPE accumulate maritime power, your LORDSHIP'S charge receives an additional weight; and in proportion as your services prove instrumental to your country's welfare, your glory will increase.

In the following sheets, which I have the honour to present to your LORDSHIP, we have a remarkable instance of the pomp and splendor of one of the greatest eastern monarchies, humbled even to the dust by the iniquitous conduct of ministers. How great the contrast between these and the nearer examples with which we are furnished by our own country! Pursuits actuated by honest motives, directed by wise laws, under a just and legal sovereign, should they erect no other trophy than an honourable tomb, must be incomparably preferable to the proudest monuments of successful villainy.

But providence has been indulgent to your LORDSHIP: your endeavours for the service of your country, have been brought to a successful issue, and your wishes accomplished in the reward of those services. May that providence still  
pro-

protect you in all the important concerns of your station,  
and in all the circumstances of your private life. I am, with  
great respect,

M Y L O R D,

Y O U R L O R D S H I P ' S

most obedient

London,  
January, 1753.

humble servant,

Jonas Hanway.





**A MAP of PERSIA,**  
*with the Eastern Frontier,*  
 and the Greatest Part of  
**TURKEY in ASIA,**  
*As taken from the Map of Mons. de l'Isle*  
 Also, *the Moghols Empire, as*  
 Taken from Mr. Frazier's with the  
*Addition of part of TARTARY.*  
 From the MAPS in Vol. 1<sup>st</sup> page 14



J. Gibson sculp. Red Lion Street Clerkenwell.

Hours and Minutes of Time East from London.

English Miles.  
 0 50 100 150 200



V O L. III. P A R T I.

S U M M A R Y V I E W

O F T H E

P E R S I A N M O N A R C H Y,

F R O M T H E

F I R S T F O U N D A T I O N B Y C Y R U S

T O T H E

R E I G N O F H U S S E I N, T H E E L E V E N T H A N D L A S T

K I N G O F T H E S E F F I E D Y N A S T Y.

C H A P. I.

*A chronological account of the PERSIAN empire, from its foundation by CYRUS the GREAT, in the year of the world 3426, to the invasion of ALEXANDER the GREAT.*

CYRUS the GREAT, A.M. 3426.\*

**T**HE PERSIAN empire, founded by CYRUS the GREAT, was the second of the four antient monarchies which have been established in the world. It is remarkable that this wise and formidable prince was mentioned by name in the sacred scriptures two hundred

VOL. III.

A

years

\* It must be observed there are very few dates in which historians agree exactly.  
 † The first was the ASSYRIAN.



years before his birth ; for GOD was pleased to declare that he would be his guide, and lead him by the hand to subdue all nations before him.

This prince was the son of CAMBYSES king of PERSIA, by MANDANA daughter of ASTYAGES king of MEDIA. CYAXARES, who succeeded his father ASTYAGES, being threatened with an invasion by the king of BABYLON, entered into an alliance with the king of PERSIA, and several other princes bordering on his dominions, for their mutual defence ; on this occasion CAMBYSES sent CYRUS with 30,000 foot to join the MEDES. CYRUS entered the enemy's country, gained a complete victory over the BABYLONIANS in the first engagement, in which their king fell in battle : he then marched up to the walls of BABYLON ; but finding that the garrison consisted of 100,000 men, he retired with CYAXARES into MEDIA, to strengthen their alliance and augment their forces. CYAXARES, sensible of the merit of his nephew CYRUS, gave him his daughter in marriage, and made him heir to his MEDIAN dominions ; upon which CYRUS marched towards BABYLON, leaving CYAXARES in MEDIA. CYRUS surprised the BABYLONIANS before they joined their forces, and, marching with the utmost expedition, gave them battle, and was a second time victorious. He took SARDIS, and making CRÆSUS king of LYDIA † prisoner, possessed himself of all his treasure and the wealth of that opulent city ; but restored CRÆSUS to his throne.

After subduing the LESSER ASIA, SYRIA, and part of ARABIA, CYRUS marched a second time to the walls of BABYLON. He caused a number of canals to be made, and on the evening of the feast, cutting the banks of the TIGRIS, the water of that river being let into the canals, fell so low that he marched several bodies of forces on both sides of the city, along the bed of the river. The BABYLONIANS were then solemnizing a grand festival, so that he found an opportunity of entering the brazen gates which the drunken BABYLONIANS had left open ; and taking BALSHAZAR the king and his whole court prisoners, put them to the sword, fulfilling the prophecy of DANIEL, that the cruelties which the BABYLONIANS had exercised upon others, should be returned upon themselves.

CYRUS,

† Situated in the present NATOLIA



CYRUS, after being 26 years general of the forces both of his father and uncle, at length recovered all the countries in AFRICA and LESSER ASIA, which had been in subjection to the ASSYRIAN empire. He then returned to BABYLON, and both his father CAMBYSES and his uncle CYAXARES dying, he became the sole monarch of this vast empire of PERSIA.

In the first year of the reign of CYRUS<sup>c</sup>, expired the seventieth year of the JEWISH captivity in BABYLON, and by the advice of the prophet DANIEL he published an edict for re-building the temple of JERUSALEM and re-peopling that city with its antient inhabitants: he restored all the vessels of the temple, which NEBUCHADONOSOR had taken from thence and placed in the temple of BAAL at BABYLON. Upon this the JEWS returned to their own country under the conduct of ZOROBABEL. In CYRUS'S time the PERSIAN empire extended from the gulph of ORMUS and the RED SEA and from ETHIOPIA on the south, to the EUXINE and CASPIAN SEAS on the north; and from the river INDUS<sup>d</sup> on the east, to the deserts of LYBIA<sup>e</sup>, the MEDITERRANEAN and EGEAN<sup>f</sup> SEAS on the west.

CYRUS made it the business of his reign to exercise justice, and to relieve the oppressed; governing the nations he had conquered with such humanity and tenderness, that they became his faithful subjects. He reigned sole monarch of PERSIA only seven years, and died in BABYLON leaving his son CAMBYSES his successor.

### CAMBYSES, A. M. 3433.

Soon after CAMBYSES ascended the throne of PERSIA; AMASIS the tributary king of EGYPT, endeavoured to render himself independent of the PERSIAN crown. CAMBYSES invaded EGYPT, but AMASIS dying, he gave battle to his son PSAMENITUS, and entirely defeated him: this prince flying to MEMPHIS † his capital, was taken prisoner, and the city surrendered; on which not only the EGYPTIANS submitted to CAMBYSES, but

<sup>c</sup> A. M. 3426.

<sup>d</sup> Now called the SCIND.

<sup>e</sup> The part of AFRICA bordering

ON EGYPT.

<sup>f</sup> ARCHIPELAGO.

† A city of EGYPT in the island of DELTA.



but LIBYA, CYRENIACA \*, and other distant countries sought his protection. But the ETHIOPIANS, and the inhabitants of that part of AFRICA where stood the temple of JUPITER AMMON, refusing to submit, he invaded both at the same time. The army he sent against the AMMONIANS † was destroyed by a tempest, which raised the sands in such a manner that his troops were suffocated. In ETHIOPIA he succeeded but little better, the greatest part of his troops were destroyed by famine and reduced to the necessity of eating human flesh. With the small remains of his army he returned to THEBES, where he plundered the temples of that opulent city of all their valuable moveables, and demolished those beautiful structures.

CAMBYSES became so jealous of his brother SMERDIS, who had accompanied him in this war, that he sent him into PERSIA, and there caused him to be murdered. His sister MEROE, whom he had married, suffered the same fate, for making some reflexions on this act of cruelty. This prince had little sensibility of the laws of humanity, but substituted pride and cruelty in their place; he caused many of his great officers to be buried alive. He one day asked PREXASPES what the people said of him? That minister replied, they admired his many good qualities, but wished that he had not such an inclination for wine. "That is, returned CAMBYSES, they imagine that wine deprives me of my senses, but you shall judge of that immediately." Having drunk more than usual, he ordered his cupbearer, who was son to PREXASPES, to stand at the further end of the room, and taking a bow and arrow, declared he aimed at his heart; after he had shot him, he ordered the young lord to be opened, and his heart to be brought to him; the arrow having pierced it, he shewed it to his father, and asked him if he had not a steady hand? The unhappy parent replied, with the flattery of the modern times to PERSIAN kings; "APOLLO himself could not have shot better."

In the eighth year of the reign of CAMBYSES, an impostor resembling his brother SMERDIS who had been put to death, imposing on the people, usurped the crown. CAMBYSES who was then absent resolved to march

\* Now called BARCA in AFRICA;

† Inhabiting a part of LIBYA;



march against the usurper, but, as he was mounting his horse, his sword slipping out of its scabbard gave him a wound in the thigh, of which he died. This CAMBYSES is supposed to be the AHASUERUS mentioned in the scriptures.

SMERDIS, *A. M.* 3441.

The usurper SMERDIS, the ARTAXERXES of the scripture, was the son of one of the MAGI, who was governor of BABYLON, and is therefore usually stiled the MAGIAN. He endeavoured by all means to gain the affections of the people; and, to prevent his being discovered, concealed himself in the royal palace: but this precaution served only to raise the suspicion of the great men; among whom was OTANES, whose daughter PHEDYMA, SMERDIS had taken to his bed. This lady finding that her husband had lost his ears, which for some offence had been cut off by CYRUS, discovered the deceit; on which several of the nobility entered into a conspiracy, and assassinated the usurper in his palace.

DARIUS son of HYSTASPES, *A. M.* 3443.

The nobility then proceeded to the choice of a successor, and DARIUS son of HYSTASPES was elected. This prince married two of the daughters of CYRUS the GREAT. In the third year of his reign, he gave orders that the building of the temple of JERUSALEM should be carried on at the expence of the state, requiring the JEWISH priests to pray for him, and to denounce curses against all who should obstruct the work.]

The PERSIAN court being removed from BABYLON to SUSA, the former city revolted. DARIUS in the fifth year of his reign marched his army and besieged it. He met with but little success for 18 months: at length ZOPYRUS, one of his generals, cut off his own nose and ears, and then fled to the city, pretending that he had been thus mangled by order of DARIUS: this astonishing stratagem gained him the confidence of the BABYLONIANS, who readily entrusted him with the command of their troops in several sallies, and in a short time engaging them to confide entirely in him, he betrayed the city to DARIUS. When this prince



took possession of it, he caused 3000 citizens to be impaled, and the walls to be demolished.

DARIUS next invaded SCYTHIA with an army of 600,000 men; but the enemy retiring before the PERSIANS, drew them into a country covered with snow, where DARIUS lost great part of his army, without fighting, and with great difficulty made his retreat. The SCYTHIANS soon returned this visit, invaded THRACE, and plundered the country as far as the HELLESPONT. While DARIUS was engaged in his expedition against the SCYTHIANS, MEGABYSUS the PERSIAN governor of THRACE subdued the MACEDONIANS, and made them tributary to PERSIA.

He then invaded INDIA, and, as some historians say, made an entire conquest of all that country. He was soon after engaged in suppressing a rebellion of the IONIANS, who had drawn the ATHENIANS and other GRECIAN states into the plot; but the IONIANS, being deserted by all their allies, were entirely subdued. DARIUS resenting the injury done him by the ATHENIANS in joining the IONIANS, who had burnt the city of SARDIS, determined to invade GREECE by sea and land: he therefore sent an army under the command of MARDONIUS a young lord who had married his daughter; this fleet meeting with a storm in the EGEAN SEA, he lost 300 of his ships and 20,000 men, and the army being surprized by the THRACIANS, it was with great difficulty MARDONIUS made his retreat over the HELLESPONT into ASIA.

After this, DARIUS again invaded GREECE, utterly destroyed the city of ERETRIA in EUBÆA †, and made himself master of all the islands of the EGEAN SEA. He then marched towards ATHENS; the ATHENIANS sent to the LACEDEMONIANS to join them, but before they arrived they fought the famous battle of MARATHON ‡, in which MILTIADES the ATHENIAN general, tho' his forces did not amount to 10,000 men, not only repulsed the PERSIANS, but entirely defeated them; many thousands fell by the sword, and more perished in the sea, endeavouring to get on board their ships.

DARIUS

† An island belonging to GREECE;

‡ A town of ATTICA in GREECE.



DARIUS now made great preparations for invading GREECE in person, and reducing EGYPT which had also revolted, but died before his armies took the field, and was succeeded by his son XERXES.

XERXES, *A. M.* 3479.

This prince no sooner ascended the throne than he marched with a powerful army into EGYPT, and compelled that people to submit again to the dominion of PERSIA. To revenge the overthrow the PERSIANS had suffered at MARATHON, he made great preparations for conquering GREECE, and began his march with an army which some historians say amounted to three millions of men<sup>s</sup>. LEONIDAS, one of the kings of SPARTA, defended the streight of THERMOPILÆ with 4,000 men. This streight, which is only 25 feet broad, lies between THESSALY and PHOCIS; and was thought the only passage by which the PERSIANS could enter ACHAIA by land. Here, after losing 20,000 men, XERXES was ready to despair of forcing his way, when a native of the country discovered to him a secret passage up the mountain which commanded the streight. A detachment went thither; and the SPARTANS seeing the PERSIANS above them, and finding it impossible to defend the post, LEONIDAS commanding the rest of his troops to retire, stay'd in the pass with only 300 men, which after making an obstinate defence were all cut to pieces except one man, who escaped to SPARTA, and was there condemned for cowardice.

The day the battle was fought at THERMOPILÆ, the GRECIANS with 400 sail obtained a victory at sea over the PERSIAN fleet of 1000 sail: the weather being stormy, above 200 of the PERSIAN fleet were cast away, and the GRECIANS falling upon them before their scattered ships were joined, obtained an easy victory at ARTEMISIUM a promontory of EUBÆA.

XERXES now dividing his army, sent one part to DELPHOS, where they plundered the temple of an immense treasure, and with the other he

<sup>s</sup> Some think it more consistent to read three hundred thousand; and this number is probable, considering they carried their wives and children.

he marched to ATHENS, which finding abandoned by the inhabitants, he plundered and burnt it.

A PERSIAN fleet was soon after sent to SALAMIS in search of the GRECIANS, but the joint fleet of the ATHENIANS commanded by THEMISTOCLES, and of the LACEDEMONIANS by EURYBIADES, totally defeated the PERSIANS. XERXES was dispirited at the loss of this naval battle, and returned into ASIA, leaving MARDONIUS behind him with 300,000 men. The following year this army was entirely defeated near PLATEÆ †, and the PERSIAN general killed in the field of battle. The same day the GREEKS obtained another victory over the PERSIAN fleet.

XERXES now disgusted at foreign wars and averse to business, abandoned himself to his pleasures, and was murdered while sleeping in his bed.

#### ARTAXERXES, *A.M.* 3500.

ARTAXERXES the son of XERXES ascended the throne. In the beginning of this reign CIMON the son of MILTIADES, and general of the ATHENIANS, took several cities in THRACE, recovered and restored to their liberties most of the GRECIAN cities in the LESSER ASIA, obtained a signal victory over the PERSIAN fleet, defeated an army of 30,000 PERSIANS, and carried the plunder of it, which was extremely valuable, in triumph to ATHENS.

ARTAXERXES in order to make head against CIMON, made THEMISTOCLES, who had been banished by the ATHENIANS, general of his armies on that side; but THEMISTOCLES chose rather to die by a dose of poison than fight against his country.

About this time the EGYPTIANS revolted, and chose INARUS the prince of LIBYA their king; the ATHENIANS entered into an alliance with him against the PERSIANS, and sent to his assistance a fleet of 200 sail, which in conjunction with the EGYPTIAN navy ruined that of PERSIA. At land they defeated an army of 300,000 PERSIANS; but the  
next

† A city of BOEOTIA, famous for the defeat of XERXES's army.



next year ARTAXERXES gained a decisive victory over the confederates, reduced the whole kingdom of EGYPT, made INARUS prisoner, and put him to death. This being contrary to the articles of capitulation made with the PERSIAN general MEGABYSUS, he retired to his government in SYRIA, raised a rebellion there, and defeated the forces that were sent against him, so that ARTAXERXES found it necessary to come to an agreement with him.

This was that ARTAXERXES, who by an express decree permitted the JEWS to rebuild the walls of JERUSALEM; and the seventy weeks mentioned by the prophet DANIEL, after which the Messiah was to appear upon the earth, are said to commence from the date of this decree.

CIMON afterwards defeated the PERSIANS both by sea and land, compelled them to accept of peace on these terms, that the GRECIAN cities in ASIA should enjoy their liberties, be governed by their own laws, and that the PERSIAN fleet should not enter the GRECIAN seas. ARTAXERXES died in the forty-fourth year of his reign, and was succeeded by his only lawful son XERXES II.

#### XERXES II. *A. M.* 3544.

ARTAXERXES having had several sons by his concubines, particularly SOGDIANUS, OCHUS, and ARSITES, the first entered into a conspiracy with one of the chief eunuchs, and murdered XERXES II. in his chamber, where he had fallen asleep, after a drunken debauch, forty-five days after his accession.

#### SOGDIANUS.

SOGDIANUS then usurped the throne, on which his brother OCHUS raised an army under pretence of revenging his brother XERXES's death; great numbers of the nobility followed his banners; OCHUS was proclaimed king, and SOGDIANUS being abandoned, surrendered himself to his brother, who put him to a cruel death, after having enjoyed the title of king little more than six months.

OCHUS, called DARIUS NOTHUS, *A. M.* 3544.

OCHUS ascended the throne, and changed his name to DARIUS. ARSITES, another of his brothers, disputing the crown with him, obtained two victories over him; but the GREEKS in his pay being corrupted, ARSITES was forced to submit, and surrendering himself was put to death, as was PISUTHNES governor of LYDIA, who afterwards endeavoured to make himself king of that province. Several others suffered the same punishment; particularly one of his eunuchs, who had the ambition to aspire to the throne.

In this reign the EGYPTIANS revolted and chose a king of their own, but DARIUS at length reduced EGYPT as well as MEDIA, which had also endeavoured to shake off the yoke of PERSIA. DARIUS died after a troublesome reign of 19 years, and left the crown to ARSACES his eldest son. To his younger son CYRUS he gave the LESSER ASIA, of which he had before been viceroy.

ARTAXERXES II, *A. M.* 3563.

ARSACES, on ascending the throne, took the name of ARTAXERXES, and from his extraordinary memory was by the GREEKS called MNEMON\*. Under this prince happened the famous retreat of XENOPHON thro' most of the provinces of the empire, with only ten thousand GREEKS. He reigned thirty-six years, and was ninety-four years old when he died, being worn out with the distractions of his family, and the frequent revolts of his subjects in the latter part of his reign.

OCHUS, *A. M.* 3599.

OCHUS, son of ARTAXERXES, concealed his father's death, and administered the government in his name near ten months; during which time he made a decree in the name of his father, for declaring himself king. When he found he was sufficiently established, he took upon him  
the

\* Rememberer.



the government in his own name. He was very cruel, but a valiant prince: he recovered EGYPT, subdued SYRIA and CYPRUS, and was at last slain by BAGOAS, one of the eunuchs of his chamber, who had the principal share in the administration the latter end of his reign.

ARSES, *A. M.* 3625.

The power of the eunuch BAGOAS was so great, that he placed his late master's son ARSES on the throne; and four years after, finding that prince disposed to call him to an account, he caused him and his whole family to be assassinated, and advanced DARIUS, surnamed CODOMANUS, to the throne.

DARIUS III, surnamed CODOMANUS, *A. M.* 3629.

DARIUS, governor of ARMENIA, and cousin-german to OCHUS, was made sole monarch of PERSIA. BAGOAS still expecting to have the entire administration of the government in DARIUS's reign, as he had in the reigns of several of his predecessors, finding this prince resolved to take the power into his hands, prepared a dose of poison for him, who being acquainted of the design, compelled him to drink it himself.

DARIUS had a beautiful person, was an accomplished prince, and the delight of his subjects. He had the prospect of enjoying a happy reign, when the GRECIANS being all united, determined to revenge themselves on the PERSIANS for the ravages they had suffered from them. They chose PHILIP king of MACEDON their generalissimo in the intended war; but he being murdered before every thing was ready, he was succeeded by his son ALEXANDER then 20 years of age.

ALEXANDER the GREAT, *A. M.* 3631.

This prince having settled his affairs in GREECE, marched into ASIA with 30,000 foot, and 5000 horse; with this force he passed the GRANICUS<sup>h</sup>, though it was defended by 100,000 PERSIANS, and auxiliary

B 2

GREEKS;

<sup>h</sup> A river in NATOLIA.

GREEKS; and having gained the opposite shore, he soon obtained a complete victory. After which SARDIS, EPHEBUS, and many other cities opened their gates to the conqueror, and MITHRIDATES king of PONTUS, with several other princes of ASIA, submitted to him, and joined him with their forces; his army daily increased as he advanced, so that the PERSIAN empire was not conquered by the 35000 GREEKS only.

ALEXANDER the next campaign possessed himself of an advantageous pass in CILICIA; posting his troops, so as to prevent his being surrounded by the numerous host of the PERSIANS. DARIUS put himself at the head of a formidable army and marched to meet the MACEDONIANS: he had 20,000 GRECIAN forces in his service; but his PERSIAN horse having no room to act, he was defeated; and an incredible slaughter ensued. The PERSIAN camp was taken, and among the rest of the prisoners were the mother, the wife, and some of the children of DARIUS.

From the death of CYRUS the GREAT, to the invasion of PERSIA by ALEXANDER the GREAT, are about 209 years. During this period, the PERSIANS confiding in their numbers, and neglecting the arts of war, became the more easy conquest of the GRECIANS, by whom this formidable monarchy was subverted.

## C H A P. II.

*The GRECIAN empire over the PERSIANS. The ROMAN conquest. The re-establishment of PERSIA by ARTAXERXES. The TURKISH government in PERSIA, to the re-establishment of that kingdom in the line of the SEFFIES.*

### GRECIAN EMPIRE, A. M. 3635.

PERSIA now became a part of the GRECIAN empire, which was too formidable and extensive to last long under one head.

ALEXANDER died, A. M. 3643, eight years after his conquest, and this and others of his vast acquisitions were divided among the partners of his victories.



SYRIA formerly part of the PERSIAN monarchy, continued in the family of SELEUCUS the son of ANTIQCHUS, one of ALEXANDER's captains, about 250 years.

### ROMAN CONQUEST, *A.M.* 3913.

From the conquest of ALEXANDER to that of the ROMANS, are computed 270 years.

Out of PERSIA arose the kingdom of PARTHIA, which included the fouthern provinces of PERSIA, and the city now called ISFAHAN was the metropolis of that kingdom, situated in the heart of the present PERSIA. This kingdom subsisted 470 years, which leaves the æra of the world, and comes 228 years into that more glorious of the birth of the Saviour of the world, when ARTAXERXES the first king of his race revived the kingdom of PERSIA, which included PARTHIA.

### ARTAXERXES, *A.D.* 228.

The kingdom of PERSIA thus restored by ARTAXERXES subsisted upwards of 400 years, when it was conquered by the SARACENS, and became a part of the SARACEN empire.

### SARACEN EMPIRE, *A.D.* 628<sup>i</sup>.

The ARABIANS under the SARACEN empire, the TURKS, TARTARS, and ARMENIANS, alternately possessed or divided PERSIA for 769 years, but this period seems to be left in great obscurity.

### TAMERLANE, *A.D.* 1397.

TAMERLANE chief of the OUSBEG TARTARS conquered BAJAZET, and subduing PERSIA prepared the way for another race. TAMERLANE died in 1402, leaving a succession of kings till 1499, when the first of the SEFFIES or prophets began to reign.

The

<sup>i</sup> Six years after MAHOMMED, 622 of CHRIST, the first of MAHOMMED. The MAHOMMEDAN æra is reckoned by lunar years.

The SEFFIES, *A. D.* 1499<sup>1</sup>.

This family cannot be said to have existed longer than 227 years, when MAHOMMED chief of KANDAHAR invaded PERSIA, *A. D.* 1722. As the line of the SEFFIES includes the unfortunate reign of SHAH SULTAN HUSSEIN, we shall give the out-lines of their respective characters according to the best accounts.

ISMAEL, *A. D.* 1499.

SCHEICH EIDAR a descendant of ALI, who had distinguished himself for his piety and contempt of worldly glory; separating from the TURKISH doctors, set up a new religion. He was murdered by RUSTAN, and left behind him three sons; the two eldest fled to avoid their father's fate, and ISMAEL the youngest, who was then a child, was snatched from the danger by his father's friends, and secretly educated in the province of GHILAN, in the principles of the sect of SCHEICH EIDAR; and as he grew up, he discovered a great zeal to support them. He was handsome, eloquent and courageous.

Those who by persecution, had been obliged to abandon the religious tenets of his father, flocked to him. By their assistance he took several places, and led his forces to TAVRIS, where the gates being opened to him, he entered in triumph. ALVANTE the king, who had rendered himself odious to the people, flying at his approach, he became master of the city without drawing his sword.

ALVANTE and his brother, who had been at variance, and engaged in a civil war, were now reconciled; while they were marching to join their forces, ISMAEL pursued the fugitive ALVANTE, and defeated him in a battle, in which he was killed. He afterwards obtained two victories over the brother of ALVANTE.

ISMAEL having possession of the throne, marched against the IBERIANS<sup>m</sup>, the ALBANIANS<sup>n</sup>, and the TARTARS, and obliged them to pay tribute

<sup>1</sup> Some accounts make this 1508.  
now called SHIRVAN.

<sup>m</sup> Now called the GEORCIANS.

<sup>n</sup> ALBANIA is



tribute to PERSIA, which for some years they had refused. He then gained a signal victory over the king of SAMARCAND, and afterwards engaged in a war with the sultan of EGYPT and the grand signior.

ISMAEL was reputed one of the greatest kings that ever ruled in the east. The PERSIANS were prepossessed with such an high esteem for him, that they considered him as a man altogether divine; therefore when they fought under his command, they braved dangers, and even death with the greatest intrepidity. He died at 45 years of age, and left four sons, of whom TÆHMAS the eldest, of 18 years old, succeeded to his throne.

TÆHMAS; A. D. 1525.

TÆHMAS had three brothers, each of whom had an appanage settled on them by ISMAEL their father, but of these only one died a natural death, one being killed for a revolt, and the other for fear he should revolt.

TÆHMAS, tho' he had neither the capacity nor the intrepidity of his father, was a very able soldier; but so avaricious, that he committed very atrocious acts of injustice, for the sake of the most trifling profit; and so averse to business, that he abandoned the government entirely to his ministers, and devoting himself to ease and pleasure, shut himself up in his harram for many years; without going abroad. After having reigned nine years, without being engaged in any considerable war, he had the mortification to see his kingdom invaded by the TURKS, in which expedition, SULIMAN the TURKISH emperor made himself master of TAVRIS, took BABYLON, and caused himself to be crowned king of PERSIA. After this conquest, all the cities of ASSYRIA opened their gates to SULIMAN, who had also reduced COURDISTAN and DIARBECKIR. But TÆHMAS at length having laid waste the country, the enemy's army was almost starved, and obliged to leave PERSIA. He gave the command of his troops to an experienced general, and pursued the TURKS, who being surprized in the disorder of a retreat, the PERSIANS gained a complete victory. PERSIA now enjoyed peace for fourteen years, when

SULIMAN, *A. D.* 1548, took the field with 200,000 men. TÆHMAS with 100,000 men and 10,000 PORTUGUESE, who at that time were very powerful in ASIA, engaged them the following year, and gained a complete victory, 130,000 TURKS being killed in the field of battle.

After this loss SULIMAN concluded a peace with TÆHMAS, and affairs remained in that state during 28 years, when the PERSIAN monarch died aged about 68. At his death he nominated his third son for his successor, but the grandees, not approving his choice, offered the crown to KHODA-BENDE the eldest son; and he refusing it, they gave it to ISMAEL the second son of TÆHMAS.

### ISMAEL II. *A. D.* 1575.

This prince was then 43 years of age, and was prisoner at the same time when his eldest brother KHODA-BENDE refused to accept the diadem. He delighted in war, and had been several years confined for the fault of raising troops and opposing the enterprizes of the TURKS, who contrary to the truces concluded with them, made frequent incursions into PERSIA. TÆHMAS though he shut up his son ISMAEL in prison, endeavoured to make his life as easy as possible, by sending the most beautiful women to him; but ISMAEL refused their embraces, declaring that for himself he was easy under his imprisonment; but could not tell whether he should have the fortitude to bear with the confinement, should he have children, and that he had rather have none, than see them miserable.

ISMAEL began his reign by putting to death that brother, to whom his father had left the crown. And being desirous to discover which of the grandees had advised his father to keep him so long a prisoner, caused a report to be made that he was dead, when learning by his spies what had been said of him, he appeared again; some of his domestic enemies he ordered to be seized, others who fled with the forces under them to the extremities of the kingdom, he pursued. The TURKS alarmed at his motions, took the field, and made incursions into his dominions. ISMAEL being enraged at his disappointments, put those to death whom

he



he most suspected, and prepared for a war with his foreign enemies ; but while these preparations were going forwards he was poisoned, and died after a reign of two years.

MAHOMMED KHODA-BENDE, *A. D.* 1577.

This prince, who resided in the province of KHORASAN, and had refused to accept the crown, after many sollicitations, yielded, and was proclaimed king. Very different characters are given of him : some writers asserting that his desire was to imitate those kings who had the interest and honour of their country most at heart ; and others, that his whole delight was to shut himself up in his harram, and spend his time with his women. But the latter account in all probability is false : it is true he had weak eyes, occasioned either by a defect in nature, or by a fit of sickness ; and this alone probably made him shut himself up in his palace ; but the transactions of this reign give no indications of the kingdom being governed by a very weak and effeminate prince.

Three of his brothers, who on his ascending the throne fled to the TURKISH frontiers, he allured to court, with fair promises, and then put them to death. He obtained several very signal victories over the TURKS, who also took some towns from him, but not without the loss of many of their forces.

He reigned eight years, and left three sons ; the two first reigned only a few months, but the third, ABAS the GREAT, governed PERSIA for many years.

EMIR HEMSE, first son of MAHOMMED  
KHODA-BENDE, in 1585.

This being KHODA-BENDE's eldest son, he succeeded his father, but ISMAEL his younger brother, caused him to be murdered in his chamber by assassins, who deceived the guards under the disguise of women.

ISMAEL III, second son of MAHOMMED  
KHODA-BENDE, in 1585.

ISMAEL the III<sup>d</sup> no sooner got possession of the throne by the murder of his elder brother, than he thought to secure the possession of it by dispatching ABAS the youngest; but being prevented by his governor, measures were taken to remove ISMAEL. This business was entrusted to his barber, who while he was shaving him cut his throat. The lords then present, who were accomplices in the crime, instantly killed the barber, to prevent a discovery. The fratricide ISMAEL died the same year as his brother, and ABAS took possession of the crown.

ABAS the GREAT, *A. D.* 1585.

This prince is generally esteemed one of the greatest kings that ever reigned in PERSIA; his memory is to this day held in the highest veneration; and several noble works of antiquity yet remain, some of which I have mentioned, as the cause-way on the coast of the CASPIAN. He was but eighteen years old when he began his reign, and had all the qualifications of a great prince, except one: for his inhumanity tarnished the glory of his good qualities. MURCHED-KOULI-KHAN, who in his youth had been his governor, and to whom he owed the crown, pretending to controul him, he caused him to be killed in his presence, and the next day, all the friends and relations of this man, to whom he was under such high obligations, suffered the same fate.

The TURKS, since the time of ISMAEL II, had conquered above 150 leagues in length from north to south, and in breadth from the western coast of the CASPIAN to the BLACK SEA; also BABYLON, with MESOPOTAMIA and ASSYRIA. ABAS soon recovered the PERSIAN dominions; made great conquests in TURKEY, and recovered ORMUS from the PORTUGUESE. He gave a martial spirit to the people; polish'd their manners; and applying himself to civil government, brought the governors of the provinces, who were before in a great measure independent, into subjection.

But



But in the midst of his glory, his reign was rendered unhappy by an unjust suspicion of his children. He had but three, of whom he caused the eyes of the two youngest to be put out. His eldest SEFFIE-MYRZA, whom he had reserved for the crown, was a young man of great virtue, and filial affection: he even discovered to his father a conspiracy which had been formed against him: but notwithstanding this, giving way to his suspicions, the SHAH ordered him to be put to death. SEFFIE-MYRZA was no sooner murdered by his command, than he repented, shut himself up in the dark for ten days together, shed incessant tears, fasted and mourned for a year, and never after wore any ornament.

To revenge himself on the PERSIAN lords who had made him jealous of his son, he ordered them to be invited to a feast, and mixing poison with their wine, saw them with a savage pleasure expire before his face. And the officer who had readily obeyed his commands, to bring him the head of his son, he commanded to cut off the head of his own son: when he brought it in his hand, and told the king that the reflection of what he had done would bring him to his grave; ABAS replied, that he was now capable of judging of his grief, and bid him comfort himself with the thought, that in this particular he was not inferior to his sovereign. ABAS the GREAT died at sixty-three years of age, and the forty-fifth of his reign, and nominated his grandson for his successor, ordering him to take the name of SEFFIE, which was that of his injured father, whose death ABAS so much regreted.

#### SEFFIE, *A. D.* 1629.

It is said of this prince that he came into the world with his hands bloody, and that his grandfather ABAS the GREAT, had from thence predicted that he would live to bathe his hands in the blood of his subjects. This prediction was but too plainly verified: for he began his reign by ordering the eyes of his only brother to be cut out; and cast from a rock his two uncles, who had been blinded by order of SHAH ABAS. The instances of his cruelty were innumerable: he buried alive forty-four women of his harram, tho' when he was not hunting or over his cups



he used to pass his time with them. He interfered so little in the affairs of the government, that the PERSIANS would have scarcely perceived they had a king, had it not been for the frequent instances of barbarity which stained his reign with blood.

Before the time of SHAH ABAS, the children of the PERSIAN kings appeared abroad, and had governments allotted them on their coming of age; but after the death of SEFFIE MYRZA, ABAS entirely altered that method; and SEFFIE his grandson was educated in the harram, which afterwards became a rule for the education of the kings sons. SEFFIE being shut up in the harram, where he had enjoyed no conversation, except that of the eunuchs, was taught nothing more than to read and write, and was allowed no other diversion, than shooting with a bow, and riding in the gardens on an afs: it is therefore no wonder that he was so unfit to govern. This prince by his own folly lost KANDAHAR and BABYLON, two of the most import places on his frontiers.

He had ordered a eunuch to run an iron over the eyes of his son ABAS; the purport of this commission was well understood, but the eunuch having compassion on the prince, and recollecting that the king had no other heir to the throne, he made use of a cold iron; and the prince acted the blind man so well, that the king really believed he had lost his sight. When SEFFIE saw death approaching, and imagined that by depriving his son of sight, he had deprived himself of an heir to the crown, he was extremely afflicted, and expressed with what satisfaction he should expire if he had a son to succeed him. The eunuch assured him that he had a secret to restore sight to the prince. Transported with this expectation, the king sent one of the grandees with the eunuch to bring the prince to him, when finding that he could see, his joy, it is said, prolonged his life till the next year. He reigned 12 years.

#### ABAS II, A.D. 1642.

This prince was but thirteen years of age when he began his reign. He was of a disposition the reverse of that of his father, for notwithstanding his being too much addicted to wine, and committing some

acts



acts of cruelty, he was one of the best kings of the SEFFIES. He loved justice, and had no mercy on the public officers who abused his authority, and oppressed his subjects. He was kind to strangers, and openly protected the christians, declaring that he thought GOD alone was judge and master of the conscience; that as for himself he was only the governor of externals; and all his subjects of what religion soever, being equally members of the state, he owed equal justice to them all.

His troops were numerous: he recovered KANDAHAR which had been lost in his father's reign: and found the secret of acquiring a good treasury without oppressing his people. He reigned 24 years, and after languishing four months under the venereal disease, he died, leaving behind him two sons, of whom the eldest SEFFIE MYRZA succeeded to the throne.

SEFFIE named SULIMAN, *A. D.* 1666.

SEFFIE was remarkable for his great strength: but he had not been seated on the throne above two years, when his health being much impaired by drunkenness and women, his physicians were at a loss what remedies to apply in order to restore it; and therefore laying the blame on the stars, pretended that the astrologers had not chosen a happy day for his coronation. This ridiculous opinion had its weight; the king was crowned a second time, and took the name of SULIMAN.

Under this prince, PERSIA began to decline to that low state in which she now languishes. His reign was remarkable for nothing but a slavish indolence, a savage and inhuman cruelty. When he was intoxicated either by wine or anger, he often times ordered the hands, feet, ears and nose of those near him to be cut off, their eyes to be plucked out, or their lives to be sacrificed, as if it was his pastime. In this reign was born NADIR KOULI the great usurper of PERSIA. SEFFIE reigned 28 years, leaving two sons, of whom HUSSEIN succeeded to the throne, *A. D.* 1694.

Having thus given a chronological list of the PERSIAN kings, we proceed now to a more particular account of the reign of the unhappy prince sultan HUSSEIN, as preparatory to the history of NADIR.

PART

---

P A R T II.

T H E

R E V O L U T I O N S O F P E R S I A,

F R O M T H E

B E G I N N I N G O F T H E P R E S E N T C E N T U R Y

T O T H E

D E A T H O F M I R - V A I S

I N T H E Y E A R 1715.

C H A P. III.

*Origin of the different tribes of the AFGHANS, with a general view of the revolutions of their country from the year 1100 to 1701.*

PERSIA never enjoyed a more perfect tranquillity, than in the beginning of the present century. The treaties she had concluded with her neighbours were perfectly observed, and secured her against any foreign invasions: whilst the effeminacy and luxury of her inhabitants, the ordinary consequences of a long peace, left no room to apprehend any danger from the ambition of her own subjects. This monarchy, which had suffered so many revolutions in past ages, seemed to be settled on a solid foundation, when the news of its subversion surprized the whole world.

The authors of this amazing catastrophe, were a people, hardly known even to their own sovereigns, and have now acquired a reputation only by the fame of those nations which they brought under their subjection. These people, who are comprized under the general denomination of

AFGHANS,



AFGHANS, are divided into three principal tribes, who like most oriental nations, derive their genealogy from NOAH. According to their relations, “ JAPHET had three sons, ARMEN, AFGHAN, and CARDVEL; “ the former two continued in ARMENIA, which takes its name from “ the eldest; as CARDVEL, which forms a part of GEORGIA, is so called “ from the youngest, who settled in that province. The families of “ ARMEN and AFGHAN having greatly multiplied in process of time, the “ descendants of the latter quitted their country, and went to inhabit “ the foot of SULIMAN COUH°, a chain of mountains, which separates “ the province of KANDAHAR from the MOGHOL’s empire.”

This nation was formerly divided into two principal tribes; one of which lived on the mountains under the general name of AFGHAN; and the other extended itself on the plains, and was distinguished by the name of BALUCHE: but in the reign of ISMAEL SAMANI, *viz.* towards the end of the ninth century, a numerous colony of AFGHANS having quitted the country of KANDAHAR, a third tribe was formed in HASARAI, the eastern part of HERAT. The latter took the name of ABDOLLEES, and soon after embraced the MAHOMMEDAN religion, which they communicated to the rest of their nation, who, like themselves, had till that time professed the MAGIAN religion<sup>p</sup>.

In the beginning of the eleventh century, the tribe of CLIGI<sup>q</sup>, the most numerous and powerful of the three, was almost intirely destroyed by the celebrated MAHOMMED, founder of the dynasty of the GAZNAVIDS\*. This prince had established the seat of his empire at GHOZNAVI<sup>r</sup>, in order to be nearer the INDIES, which he intended to conquer. But having been obliged, in one of his successful campaigns, to return suddenly to his capital, he took only a small body of troops with him, and ordered the rest to follow by slow marches. His army was returning in  
separate

° The mountain of SOLOMAN: this is the CAUCASUS mentioned in the conquests of ALEXANDER. But the great mountain which runs from ARMENIA into INDIA, properly takes the name of CAUCASUS on the western coast of the CASPIAN; as that part of it which is on the southern coast, and runs eastward, goes under the name of TAURUS. <sup>p</sup> Worshippers of fire. <sup>q</sup> A division of the tribe of AFGHANS, who inhabited the mountain SULIMAN-COUH. \* They derived their name from GAZNA a city in KHORASAN, and paid homage to the khalifs of BABYLON. <sup>r</sup> A city in KANDAHAR.

separate detachments, loaded with the spoils of the nations they had subdued, when the temptation of booty raised him new enemies. The CLIGIS knowing that his troops must pass thro' their mountains, waited for them in the defiles, and successively defeated several different bodies of MAHOMMED'S army.

These AFGHANS were however no strangers to the valour and power of the prince whom they had thus offended; but as the winter was near, they concluded that he would not attempt to revenge himself till towards the spring; when they determined to retire into that part of their mountains which was least accessible: and if their enemy could reach them there, they should at least be able to oppose him the better. This reasoning was plausible enough; but MAHOMMED eluded the difficulty: for he no sooner received the news of the defeat of his army, than he assembled the best of his troops, and notwithstanding the rigour of the season, he entered the country of KANDAHAR with such expedition, that the news of his march had not reached the enemy. The CLIGIS having been compelled by the severity of the winter, their mountains being extremely cold, descended into the plains, where they divided their plunder. MAHOMMED attacked them briskly on every side, and made so terrible a slaughter, that their whole race was nearly extirpated.

The country was at length re-peopled by a small number of families, who had made their escape into the mountains, but it was so thinly inhabited for some ages, that scarce any mention was made of these people under the following dynasty, and it was not till the reign of TEMUR-BEG\*, that they appeared as numerous and formidable as they had been before their memorable defeat.

The ABDOLLEES having quitted the country of KANDAHAR 200 years before, were not involved in the same calamity. Being free from any foreign yoke, they were yet governed by their own laws, till towards the beginning of the seventeenth century. The OUSBEG TARTARS having then made an irruption into the province of HERAT, this tribe, tho' amounting to 30,000 families, was obliged to have recourse to ABAS, who

\* TAMERLANE.



who then sat on the throne of PERSIA. This prince, who by his conquests had already merited the surname of GREAT, took them under his protection, and putting himself at the head of his troops, marched against the usurpers, and obliged them in a very short time to retire. Whether it was owing to gratitude, or to necessity, the ABDOLLEES, who had been till then independent, made themselves tributary to their deliverer. The only condition they insisted on was, that the government of their country should be conferred on none but an ABDOLLEE chosen from among the chief men of the nation.

KANDAHAR was at that time under the protection of the MOGHOL. ABAS the GREAT having given some umbrage to the sons of MYRZA-BOYRAM, governor of the province, these young lords entered into a secret treaty with AKBAR emperor of HINDOSTAN<sup>t</sup>, and submitting to his government, opened their gates to a body of 5000 horse, which this monarch sent to their assistance.

AKBAR kept possession of this province during his life; but upon the succession of his son GEANGHIR<sup>u</sup>, SHAH ABAS returned thither with an army of 30,000 men, and notwithstanding the vigorous resistance of ASSOOF KHAN, he made himself master of the capital, the government of which he committed to one of his generals. The CLIGIS followed the fate of their country, and the ABDOLLEES having submitted, the whole nation<sup>w</sup> was united once more under the dominion of PERSIA. In this situation things continued for many years; till ALI-MERDAN-KHAN having by his immense riches excited the jealousy and avarice of the cruel SHAH SEFFIE, grandson and successor of ABAS the GREAT, was obliged, for his own preservation, to deliver up the fortrefs and country to the MOGHOL. SHAH SEFFIE, it is presumed, recovered and again lost this kingdom: Be that as it may, it fell once more into the hands of the INDIANS, at which time the CLIGIS were not less than 50,000 families, and formed the

<sup>t</sup> The proper name of the MOGHOL empire; from the word HINDOS, which signifies a swarthy people.

<sup>u</sup> This word signifies the conqueror of the world.

<sup>w</sup> The BALOUCHES having by their long separation lost the name of AFGHAN, it is presumed were not included.

the principal part of its inhabitants: but they soon had reason to be dissatisfied with their new masters. These people, according to their ancient custom, lived for the most part in tents: their ordinary occupation was feeding their flocks; but such as went into towns, were employed in the most menial and laborious offices. These circumstances, and the tribute which they paid for the right of pasturage, rendered them so contemptible, that the name of CLIGI became proverbial of reproach among the INDIANS of KANDAHAR.

Of all offences contempt is the hardest to be forgiven. These AF-GHANS not finding among people of the same religion as themselves, those sentiments of humanity which had been shewn them by the PERSIANS, whom they considered as heretics, resolved once more to change masters. With this view they made a secret deputation to the court of PERSIA, to invite SHAH ABAS II, to take possession of the province.

The situation of the province of KANDAHAR, renders it a strong barrier between the empires of PERSIA and INDIA; and its capital<sup>x</sup> passes for the most considerable fortress in ASIA. These circumstances excited the ambition of SHAH ABAS; who immediately raised troops on every side, and putting himself at the head of a great army, after a siege of two months, he took possession of the city by capitulation in 1650. SHAH JEHAN, who was then emperor of INDIA, endeavouring to recover his loss, sent two of his sons, who successively laid siege to this town. The first time ROUP, one of the RAJAHS<sup>y</sup>, planted his standards on the wall; and the second the EUROPEANS, who had the care of the artillery, made a breach that was practicable: but the little vigor shewn by the PERSIAN lords in the MOGHOL'S pay, on the first occasion, and the jealousy of AURING ZEBE<sup>z</sup> against DARAH SHAH<sup>a</sup> his eldest brother, on the second, rendered both these expeditions abortive. It is said, that five sons of kings perished in the course of this war.

Thus

<sup>x</sup> KAND-DAAR signifies the habitation of security. Some historians think it is one of the seven cities founded by ALEXANDER, and that the name of KANDAR, which is given him by the old PERSIAN histories, is an abridgment of that of ESKANDAR, by which this conqueror is known to the eastern nations. <sup>y</sup> A prince and chief of a district in INDIA. <sup>z</sup> Signifies ornament of the throne. <sup>a</sup> DARA in the PERSIAN language signifies sovereign. The LATINs render this name by that of DARIUS.



Thus by the repeated defeats of the MOGHOL's troops, and the intestine troubles which soon after broke out in INDIA, the possession of the province of KANDAHAR was secured to PERSIA. SHAH ABAS being now desirous of acknowledging the services which the AFGHANS had done him in these different expeditions, distributed rewards among their chiefs, and reduced the tribute which had been annually paid by those people. They continued faithful to their new masters till the end of SULIMAN's reign, and even during the first years of that of his son HUSSEIN, that is, so long as they were treated as subjects, and not as slaves: but the cruelty and avarice of the PERSIAN governors having alienated the peoples minds; in the beginning of the present century the AFGHANS were once more ripe for a revolt.

## C H A P. IV.

*Character of GURGHIN-KHAN prince of GEORGIA. He is made governor of KANDAHAR, and oppresses that province. Complaints of the inhabitants. GURGHIN-KHAN sends MIR-VAIS to court as a suspected person. Character of MIR-VAIS. Description of the court of ISFAHAN. Origin of the divisions and parties in PERSIA.*

THE indolence and effeminacy of the PERSIAN court was now arrived to a great height, but SHAH HUSSEIN and his ministers were in some degree awakened by the news, that the AFGHANS were disposed to a revolt: whilst they were thinking how to extinguish those sparks of rebellion, which might ere long blaze into a flame, the court was alarmed by a new circumstance. The MOGHOL not being able to forget that KANDAHAR formerly constituted a part of his dominions, had sent ambassadors to demand the restitution of that province, and there was reason to fear, lest the male-contents should favour that monarch in the enterprize, which he seemed to meditate.

There was then at ISFAHAN a prince of the family of BAGRATHIONI, which has often given sovereigns to GEORGIA. GURGHIN-KHAN, for



so he was commonly called, having been raised to the dignity of VALI<sup>b</sup> of his province, had lately tried to assert the independency of his ancestors. He had even ventured to make a stand in TEFLIS<sup>c</sup> against the PERSIAN armies; but being abandoned by most of the grandees of the country, who were bribed by the court, he soon came in person to make his submission to the king. Under a prince of less lenity, a step of this kind would have proved his destruction: but SHAH HUSSEIN, who had stood engaged for him at his circumcision, when he renounced the religion of his ancestors, being struck with an action that expressed so much confidence in his goodness, not only forgave what was past, but loaded him with favours, and confirmed him in all his governments.

The court being distressed what measures to pursue, laid hold of this opportunity to employ a prince, whose valour and other military virtues might render him dangerous in any other province. His brother LEVANKHAN was sent in quality of his lieutenant into GEORGIA, and GURGHINKHAN, who, beside the government of this province, had that of KHERMANIA<sup>d</sup>, was nominated also governor of KANDAHAR; and as such was commissioned to pacify the troubles that might arise, and to watch over the security of that frontier. This general spared no pains to put his orders in execution: for this purpose, he raised an army of 20,000 PERSIANS, and having reinforced it with a body of GEORGIANS, he made forced marches towards KANDAHAR, when the very news of his approach dispersed the rebels.

So sudden a calm gave him some suspicion: he was not satisfied with having suppressed the insurrection, but applied his thoughts how to root it up. With this view, he made a diligent enquiry after the authors of the past troubles, and being induced from the severity of his disposition, to think that these people would never be completely subjected without oppression, he abandoned them to the discretion of his army.

It is hardly credible to what excess the violence and cruelty of the troops was carried on this occasion. The chiefs of tribes, and the simple  
shepherds,

<sup>b</sup> VALI, a viceroy descended more immediately from the sovereigns of the country over which he presides.      <sup>c</sup> Capital of PERSIAN GEORGIA, on a branch of the KURA.      <sup>d</sup> Generally wrote CARMANIA.



shepherds, were equally in danger of their lives. They saw their tents and horses taken from them, without daring to complain. Women were publicly snatched from their husbands, and young virgins found no shelter in the arms of their mothers. Such horrid licentiousness increasing every day, the AFGHANS had private meetings, and sent a deputation to court, to complain of the tyranny under which they groaned. Those deputies set out unknown to GURGHIN-KHAN, and arrived safe at ISFAHAN; but this governor's friends having soon discovered the motive of their journey, prevented all access to the SHAH, in such a manner, that they were obliged to wait for the time when there was no possibility of hindering them from having audience.

According to an ancient custom, the kings of PERSIA always appear in public at the vernal equinox, when even the meanest of their subjects have free access. The AFGHANS embraced this opportunity to present their complaints: the petition which they brought with them was signed by the chiefs of the several tribes; it contained a very lively picture of the miseries they suffered, and would undoubtedly have moved SHAH HUSSEIN, who was naturally of a mild disposition, if the friends of GURGHIN-KHAN had not stifled those favourable impressions, and engaged the prince to dismiss those deputies as male-contented, unworthy of the royal clemency.

GURGHIN-KHAN having been informed of what passed, was not long before he shewed his resentment. The AFGHANS of KANDAHAR are divided into several tribes<sup>d</sup>; of ten or twelve thousand families each. MIRVAIS<sup>e</sup>, a chief of one of those tribes, was also one of the most powerful persons of his nation: his office of CALENTAR<sup>f</sup> added weight to his credit: but his birth, his generosity, and a certain graceful and popular air, with some indications of an ambitious spirit, were the cause of his being suspected as the author of the past disturbances. The KHAN in  
order

<sup>d</sup> Which the TARTARS call HORDAS.      <sup>e</sup> Sometimes wrote MIR-UVEIS, which signifies in ARABIC prince lion-whelp. The title of EMIR, of which MIR is an abbreviation, is conferred also on the CHERIFFS, successors of MAHOMMED; but every EMIR is not a CHERIFF. There are some who are christians, such as those of the DRUSES and the MARONISTS; these last are so named from MARON their head, and inhabited mount LEBANUS.      <sup>f</sup> CALENTAR signifies the greatest. This officer is however charged with collecting of taxes, and as already noted, sometimes acts as a sub-governor. Vol. I. p. 23.



order to revenge himself of his enemies, and at the same time by some signal piece of policy to over-awe the AFGHANS, ordered MIR-VAIS to be seized and sent to ISFAHAN; informing the court at the same time, that he was a turbulent man whom they ought by all means to secure; that he was the only author of the past commotions, and of such a disposition as was likely to foment new troubles, which might hereafter be of dangerous consequence to the monarchy: a remarkable instance of sagacity, which was afterwards justified by the event.

GURGHIN-KHAN having thus removed the only person, in whom he discovered all the qualifications necessary for the head of a party, began to be no longer afraid of the enterprizes of the MOGHOL, or of the murmurings of the AFGHANS. He therefore put a garrison in the capital, and, satisfied with keeping his GEORGIANS about his person, disbanded the rest of his army.

MIR-VAIS, far from being dejected by his disgrace, thought of drawing some advantage from it, by endeavouring to get a thorough knowledge of a court which was made the place of his confinement. The character of SHAH HUSSEIN<sup>§</sup> was too remarkable to escape him. This prince was born with that placid disposition, which borders on weakness, and consequently does not deserve the name of virtue. He had a strong attachment to his religion, and might be denominated an honest man, but so excessively indolent, and immoderately addicted to women and wine, as to be incapable of governing; thus unworthy of being a real, he was only a nominal king. It is easy to conceive then that the guardians of his pleasures were his favourites, and a council composed of the principal eunuchs of the seraglio, were the depositaries of the supreme power. This council was established by SHAH SULIMAN towards the latter end of his reign, who not content with rendering it superior to that of the antient form of administration, at his death gave it the power, in conjunction with the great officers of the kingdom, of chusing which of his sons they

§ CANTEMIR-HOSPODAR of MOLDAVIA, who fled for shelter into the territories of the CZAR, in 1715 drew the following character of SHAH HUSSEIN. "He is forty years old; of an indolent disposition; intirely abandoned to his pleasures; terminating all his disputes with the TURKS, the INDIANS, and his other neighbours, by the interposition of his governors, and by dint of money."



they thought fittest to succeed him. It was by means of the votes and credit of these eunuchs, that HUSSEIN was preferred, on this occasion, to his brother ABAS-MYRZA<sup>h</sup>: yet far from taking umbrage at the power which had raised him to the throne, contrary to the policy of arbitrary kings, thought only of strengthening the authority of that tribunal; whether it was that he followed merely the impulse of a grateful mind, without attending to any other duty; or finding himself incapable of holding the reins of government, he was glad to ease himself of a burthen, too heavy indeed for a prince of his character.

This senate thus invested with the supreme authority, were consequently the only disposers of the royal favours and employments. Merit became an empty sound; all offices and dignities were given to those who paid the highest price; money decided every thing; and the immense riches which were accumulated by this means, seemed rather to whet than to glut the avarice of those base ministers. Every part of the state felt the effects of this disorder. The troops being discouraged by ill discipline, and worse pay, served with reluctance. Robbers infested the high-ways, and interrupted commerce. Place-men, impoverished by the purchase of their offices, tyrannized over the people, and were rapacious with impunity; in fine, justice was publicly sold in the very capital of the empire.

SHAH HUSSEIN was perhaps the only person in his kingdom, that was ignorant of the disorder of the government. As he was buried in the pleasures of the harram<sup>i</sup>, the cries of the oppressed could not reach his ear. The eunuchs had in a great measure brought the feudatory princes of the empire under their subjection, by investing the younger brothers with the sovereignty, in prejudice to the elder; and as the grandees of the court were, like the rest of the nation, divided into two factions, they received no umbrage, but paid an implicit obedience to this tribunal, which triumphed over the public calamity.

In.

<sup>h</sup> MYRZA, an abbreviation of EMIR-ZADE, which in PERSIAN signifies son of the prince. The title of MYRZA put after the proper name, signifies a prince of the blood; but put before it, signifies writer; and is also a proper name, as MYRZA-MAHOMMED. See Vol. I.

<sup>i</sup> Harram, signifies prohibited to men. The womens apartment in PERSIA, INDIA and TURKEY,

In order to discover the origin of these divisions, we must trace matters as high as the reign of SHAH ABAS I<sup>k</sup>. This prince, whose great grand-father had usurped the throne, and who had lately added several provinces to his dominions, perceived that he could not long depend on the fidelity of his natural-born subjects, no more than on the several nations whom he had brought under subjection. He endeavoured therefore to set them at variance, that he might support his sovereignty by being their arbitrator. With this view, he peopled one half of every city and village of his empire with colonies chosen from among the nations most opposite in manners, customs, and character to the antient citizens; and that the equality which he had established between both these parties should be for ever preserved, he forbid them to alienate to each other, under any pretext whatsoever, the lands which they already possessed, or those which he might assign to them. This policy had the effect which SHAH ABAS expected. Jealousy soon gave birth to two opposite factions, who not content with distinguishing themselves by a particular name<sup>l</sup>, and some external marks, would neither inter-marry nor have dealings with each other. Their hatred shewed itself in a very singular manner at the feast of HUSSEIN and HASSAN<sup>m</sup>, for then they were allowed to come to blows, and tho' it was only with stones and sticks, yet those days of festivity seldom passed without costing the lives of a great many people. These combats were not only tolerated, but authorized by the prince, whose power they confirmed, inasmuch as the animosity which they fomented, produced a mutual jealousy between the two parties, which contained them both alike within the limits of obedience.

A policy so little founded on the good of society, could not but have some dangerous effects. The courtiers instead of using this artifice as a political engine, at length took a great share in it, and it was easy to perceive at the court of ISFAHAN, those sentiments of aversion which divided the common people: every grandee, either for the glory of protecting,

<sup>k</sup> The beginning of the last century.      <sup>l</sup> PELEUK and FELEUK. We may suppose them as mad as those were in 1640, who adopted the tenets of the church of ENGLAND and the church of SCOTLAND. I have already mentioned this in a general way in my 1st volume, concerning the PERSIAN religion.      <sup>m</sup> The sons of ALI, whose death they commemorate.



teasing, or for the advantage of being properly supported, was of one party or the other; and the antipathy which always prevailed betwixt the white and black eunuchs, was, in regard to them, what the spirit of faction was to the rest of the kingdom.

## C H A P. V.

*The intrigues of MIR-VAIS at the court of ISFAHAN. He goes a pilgrimage to MECCA: Different sects of MAHOMMEDANS. He proposes political doubts to the MOLLAHS at MECCA, which are resolved in his favour.*

SUCH was the state of PERSIA, when MIR-VAIS came to court. This 1707.  
 man had penetration sufficient to unravel these mysteries, and to make a proper use of such conjunctures as were favourable to his interest. He made it his first business to get acquainted with the party which opposed GURGHIN-KHAN. The steward of the king's household, and FATEY-ALI-KHAN<sup>n</sup>, grand veneur<sup>o</sup>, and afterwards prime minister, were at the head of this faction. MIR-VAIS found no difficulty to engage their favour against their common enemy: he knew that interest is generally a more prevailing motive than hatred to a foe, or even compassion for a friend, and made use of the greatest part of the money which the AFGHANS remitted him, to secure the protection of those lords. The presents which he made them on this occasion, amounted to thirty thousand tomans<sup>p</sup>.

The province of KANDAHAR was no longer divided like the rest of the kingdom by this spirit of dissension: the revolutions it had undergone, had insensibly extinguished their animosities. As MIR-VAIS was avowedly neither a PELEUK nor FELEUK; he made a dexterous use of this

<sup>n</sup> There was another KHAN of the same name, who is distinguished in the history of NADIR SHAH.

<sup>o</sup> MIR-CHEKAR-BACHI. <sup>p</sup> 75,000*l*. It is said that this sum was paid by the AFGHANS in thirty thousand woolen sashes of the manufactures of TERMAI, a city in the territories of the GREAT MOCHOL.

1707. this particular circumstance: for each willing to believe him of their party, espoused his interest. Having taken such wise precautions, he was not afraid to demand an audience: accordingly he appeared before the divan, and justified his conduct with such address and eloquence, that the king already prejudiced by some of his ministers, thought it justice not only to acquit him, but to grant him his favour and protection.

A man of common ambition would have been satisfied with this success; but to a person of MIR-VAIS's stamp, it was not sufficient to justify himself; he aspired at the destruction of his accuser. His noble birth, supported by a splendid fortune, with an artful and insinuating turn of mind, operated so effectually on the mistaken compassion of HUSSEIN, that he had now free access to this monarch: and he availed himself of this favour, and of the credit of his cabal, to strike the first blow. He always spoke of his enemy with respect, and a seeming sincerity; but he gave his auditors time to reflect on the valour and power of that general: he artfully insinuated that the government of GEORGIA, KHERMANIA, and KANDAHAR, with which the same person was invested, rather rendered him a formidable prince, than an opulent lord. He reminded them, on this occasion, of his presumption in holding out in TEFFLIS against the PERSIAN armies; in fine, taking every occasion to raise the same suspicions against the governor, as the latter had excited against him, the king now began to imagine, that GURGHIN-KHAN had removed him, only to get rid of an inspector, who by his fidelity and credit, might baffle his projects.

But it was not a spirit of revenge only that excited MIR-VAIS to render the KHAN suspected; this dangerous AFGHAN had more extensive, and more exalted views. The king's effeminacy; the want of experience in his ministers and generals; the confusion and irregularity which necessarily followed from thence in the administration; and above all, that spirit of division which excited one party continually to oppose the projects formed by the other; by means whereof their very best concerted enterprizes were frustrated: these circumstances, at length, inspired MIR-VAIS with the hopes of rescuing his country from the PERSIAN yoke. His knowledge



and experience of the court had given him too mean an opinion of it, 1707. to be afraid of any difficulty from that quarter, in the execution of his design; but he was too well acquainted with the valour and abilities of GURGHIN-KHAN, to neglect any method by which he might remove that general. But the most important point was to secure in his interest the different tribes of KANDAHAR. Tho' his superior genius, his winning deportment, his great generosity, had united the hearts of the chiefs, as well as of the common people, in his favour; yet he did not think this was enough to determine him to put an absolute confidence in them, as if they would certainly join with him in an enterprize of this nature. In order therefore to cover his design with the specious veil of religion, he took his measures to render a revolt legal, and according to the decision of the highest earthly authority.

It has been already observed, that the PERSIANS and the AFGHANS treat each other as heretics. The two sects of the MAHOMMEDANS are distinguished by the names of SUNNI and SCHIAS: as MAHOMMED is reputed both by the PERSIANS and TURKS as the true messiah, their difference is about the successor of this false prophet, and the sense of some particular texts in the khoran<sup>a</sup>. The sect of SUNNI comprehends the TURKS, some of the TARTARS, the subjects of the MOGHOL, with some other nations of less note, and among these the AFGHANS, who are all followers of OMAR. The sect of SCHIAS, includes the PERSIANS, and other nations of the same way of thinking, such as part of the OUSBEG TARTARS, and some princes of the INDIES, who are followers of ALI, and distinguish their sect also by the name of ADELIAH<sup>b</sup>. The AFGHANS, in submitting to the dominion of the kings of PERSIA, had made it an article of their capitulation, that they should not be molested on account of their religion; nor were they ever distressed upon that subject. But MIR-VAIS resolved to make this difference in religion the basis of his design of taking up arms against his sovereign. With this secret view, he begged leave of the king to make a pilgrimage to MECCA, where he intended to consult the MULLAHS<sup>c</sup>; as he was now no longer suspected, and

E 2

this

<sup>a</sup> See this subject in Vol. I. Chap. 51.

<sup>b</sup> ADELIAH properly signifies the sect of the just.

<sup>c</sup> MULLAN signifies a guide or director, the common name of priest.

1707. this pilgrimage removed him the further from KANDAHAR, his petition was granted without any difficulty.

He had not been long at MECCA, before he sent to MEDINA to desire the opinion of the chief doctors. The doubts he proposed to them were: “ Whether it is lawful for mussulmen oppressed and cramped in the exercise of their religion by heretics, to take up arms, and free themselves from the yoke.” The other was much to the same effect, *viz.* “ Whether those mussulmen were not released from the oath of allegiance, which the chief men of each family had been forced to make to a sovereign, who was a heretic, when this sovereign did not observe the conventions which he had sworn to, but had made them slaves to infidels.” After which, he expatiated on the sufferings of the nation from the avarice and violence of the GEORGIANS; observing, that several AFGHANS had already changed their religion, merely to free themselves from this tyrannical oppression.

The MULLAHS did not hesitate long about their answer; for according to the principles of the MAHOMMEDAN religion, the sword is one of the means enjoined to mussulmen, in general, for the propagation of their faith. They decided therefore in the affirmative, and MIR-VAIS having secretly obtained the FETFA<sup>u</sup>, dispatched in the usual forms, returned to ISFAHAN. Thus far things succeeded to his wish, but this holy authority for rebellion could be of no service to him, till he should return to KANDAHAR. Notwithstanding the eager desire he had to execute his project, he was too good a politician to apply for leave to go home. On the contrary, he affected an indifference, which entirely preventing those suspicions, which an impatience of returning might have revived, he waited to see what time would produce; when a circumstance arose which greatly facilitated his designs.

<sup>t</sup> GEBERS. MIR-VAIS by this name marked out the GEORGIANS. This word comes from GHEBR, which in the PERSIC signifies an idolater, but more particularly a worshipper of fire.

<sup>u</sup> FETFA, or rather FETVA, the decision of the mufti, when he is consulted upon any point of law.



## C H A P. VI.

*The emperor of RUSSIA sends an embassador to the court of ISFAHAN. MIR-VAIS's arts to alarm the court on this account. Character of the embassador. MIR-VAIS raises suspicion against GURGHIN-KHAN governor of KANDAHAR, and is sent back to his own country, under a notion of his fidelity.*

**T**HE governor of SHAMAKIE, at this time, gave intelligence to the court, that there was arrived upon the frontiers an embassador from the emperor of RUSSIA, charged with letters from the pope, and likewise from the emperor of GERMANY, and attended with a more than ordinary retinue. Advice was brought, at the same time, that this embassador, who was born in CAPAN a city of ARMENIA, had given out that he was descended from the antient kings of that province, and had let drop some hints, that he did not renounce the rights which his birth gave him to that sovereignty. These reports concerning the lineal descent of the embassador, frivolous as they were, alarmed SHAH HUSSEIN and his ministers: their puerile fears thus carried their apprehensions beyond all the bounds of probability, for they concluded, that an ARMENIAN who was born a subject of PERSIA, and had presumed to talk in that manner, did not come so well attended, and under the protection of three princes of the same religion as himself, to act merely as an embassador. The alarm was soon increased by those, who supposing that some parts of the reports were true, thought it their interest to magnify the whole. A FRENCHMAN, who had been sent to the court of ISFAHAN by LEWIS XIV, for the affairs of commerce; and some other EUROPEANS who were settled in that city, gave into this ridiculous story. They had been informed, that this embassador threatened to cause all the missionaries to be expelled the kingdom, and therefore endeavoured to shew that the letters of recommendation from the christian princes, by virtue of which he had met with a favourable reception, were supposititious pieces; using their interest at the same time to dissuade the court from receiving the



1708. the ambassador: alledging certain predictions preserved in the archives of the ARMENIANS, which foretold that the kingdom of ARMENIA should be re-established one day under the protection of RUSSIA. And in order to impose on a people naturally credulous with regard to future events, they corroborated these predictions with a FRENCH anagram taken from the ambassador's name, observing that in ISRAEL ORII<sup>v</sup>, were found the letters IL SERA ROI, that is, "he shall be king."

The artful insinuations of MIR-VAIS made a strong impression on the minds of the courtiers. With those of the same faction as GURGHINKHAN, he laid no great stress upon these circumstances; but with those of the opposite party, "the state," he said, "was in the most perillous situation: for there was no reason to doubt, but the CZAR, whose power and ambition were well known to all the world, had undertaken to rescue from the PERSIAN yoke, a nation who professed the same religion as himself. That the ambassador must be a secret emissary, who under the sanction of his character, was come to blow the coals of sedition even in the heart of the kingdom. Otherwise, why should an ARMENIAN have been chosen? Could those princes have been at a loss to find in their vast dominions, subjects of their own, who were properly qualified for such a function? And why should this minister pretend to be descended from the antient kings of ARMENIA, if it was not to obtain more credit with the credulous part of his country? But this was the smallest part of the danger. If the government had nothing to apprehend but the attempts of the MUSCOVITES and ARMENIANS, the brave inhabitants of GEORGIA, who are situate between them, would be an insurmountable barrier against the one; and as for the others, it is well known that they are more disposed to commerce than war; and consequently will not attempt to shake off their subjection to our invincible sovereign. But who can undertake to answer for the fidelity of those very GEORGIANS? Is there the least reason to doubt, but they submit with reluctance to a people of a different religion? Have we forgot the efforts they made some years ago, to withdraw themselves from their subjection, at the instigation of GURGHINKHAN,

<sup>v</sup> The name of the ambassador.



1708.

“ KHAN, who now is governor of three of the finest provinces of the  
 “ kingdom? In fine, are we ignorant, that SANAZARLI-KHAN, this prince’s  
 “ cousin-german, is now at the court of ST. PETERSBURG, from whence  
 “ perhaps he corresponds with him, while he continually sollicit the CZAR,  
 “ to free those unbelievers from their subjection to our empire<sup>x</sup>. The  
 “ RUSSIAN armies, reinforced by the troops of one of those infidel na-  
 “ tions, and paid by the other, may at any time without fighting march  
 “ over the high mountains of ALBURTZ<sup>y</sup>, cross the KURA<sup>z</sup>, and pitch  
 “ their tents on the banks of the ARAS<sup>a</sup>. And when these formidable  
 “ enemies shall have penetrated into the heart of the kingdom, are we  
 “ to presume that GURGHIN-KHAN, who has already attempted to ascend  
 “ the throne of his ancestors, will sacrifice his ambition and interest to  
 “ his duty? Or is it to be imagined, that this prince, who is descended  
 “ from the sovereigns of GEORGIA, and a christian in his heart, will em-  
 “ ploy the forces quartered in KANDAHAR and KHERMANIA, which he  
 “ can bring together at a single word, against his country, his religion,  
 “ and the subjects of his ancestors?”

These arguments were very specious and solid, to men who endeavoured to be frightened. In fact, every thing contributed to increase the general alarm; while MIR-VAIS was the only person at court, who saw into the falsity of these political visions. This man had too much sense and penetration, not to perceive immediately, that these chimerical ideas had no foundation; having been occasioned only by some indiscreet speeches of the ambassador, which shewed rather his folly and stupidity, than his having any design of this nature. For how prodigiously absurd was it to believe, that the emperor PETER the GREAT, should without any necessity deliver up the pretender into the king’s hands, and that this minister, who had such a personal interest not to be discovered, should begin  
 by

<sup>x</sup> This was a plausible motive of fear. MILITETZKI, prince of GEORGIA, had been in RUSSIA, and his only son was general of the artillery to PETER the GREAT. These princes were now dead; but as it was believed that the CZAR had promised MILITETZKI to re-instate him in his principality, as soon as the war with SWEDEN was ended: it was also imagined that this monarch still persisted (in 1715) in his resolution of dispossessing the usurper.

<sup>y</sup> Mount CAUCASUS.      <sup>z</sup> Formerly called CYRUS.

<sup>a</sup> Formerly ARAXES.



1708. by a voluntary indiscretion, the execution of his design, the whole success of which depended on secrecy and circumspection?

Nothing, indeed, could be worse founded than this panic. The pretended successor of the kings of ARMENIA, was an adventurer, who after having successively sold coffee, and served as a common soldier, became a subaltern in the service of the emperor LEOPOLD; but as he understood the ORIENTAL languages, he was, at length, chosen by the court of VIENNA, to sound the disposition of the TURKS, in regard to the peace which was afterwards concluded at KARLOWITZ. Upon his return from CONSTANTINOPLE, he passed into the service of PETER the GREAT, who in consideration of the same abilities, made him a colonel, and employed him also to negotiate a peace with the OTTOMAN port; to prevent his being interrupted by that power, during the war which he intended to declare against the king of SWEDEN.

ISRAEL ORII having discharged this important commission to the CZAR's satisfaction, desired as a reward for his services, that his majesty would gratify him with an embassy to ISFAHAN. He considered that this would be the surest way to enrich himself in a little time: ministers of this character enjoying great privileges in PERSIA, particularly that of not paying any customs. As soon as he had obtained his credentials, he took post to VIENNA, and thence to ROME, where he pretended to be capable of bringing the schismatic ARMENIANS into the pale of the ROMISH church, and having already obtained letters from the emperor, he procured also a brief from CLEMENT XI, for SHAH HUSSEIN.

These were the particulars of an event, which gave rise to so many idle speculations. The numerous retinue which attended the ambassador, consisted for the most part of ARMENIANS, who were proprietors of the goods he brought with him; except some RUSSIANS, who were going to BAKU, and had accompanied him to SHAMAKIE, in order to give the more lustre to his embassy. So that the pretensions of sovereignty, and the design of turning the missionaries out of the kingdom, were idle words which this minister let drop on purpose, to engage his companions to join with him in the expences of the journey into PERSIA. SHAH

HUSSEIN



HUSSEIN being ignorant of these circumstances, was for some time dubious how to act: but the fear of giving PETER the GREAT any pretence for a rupture, prevailing over every other consideration, he came to a resolution, contrary to the general expectation of the EUROPEANS, to receive the ambassador. ISRAEL ORII therefore set out from SHAMAKIE; and from the prejudice already conceived in his favour, the PERSIANS paid a yet greater regard to him, than is generally shewn to persons of his character; so that he had reason to be satisfied with the honours and distinctions which he received during his stay at ISFAHAN.

In the mean time, the artful speeches of MIR-VAIS had produced the effect which he expected. The court, continually terrified with chimeras, the natural consequence of a distemper'd government, began to take umbrage at the excessive power of GURGHIN-KHAN; and the enemies of that prince, at the head of whom was the prime minister<sup>b</sup>, taking advantage of these dispositions, found no difficulty in persuading the timorous SHAH HUSSEIN to join with them in suspicions, which were authorized by the remembrance of what had passed some years before at TEFLIS. It is probable, that GURGHIN-KHAN would have been recalled, but that they doubted, whether he would not undertake to maintain himself there by force; or, after the example of ALI-MERDAN-KHAN, he might not betray the country to the MOGHOL: they resolved therefore to pursue a less dangerous method; this was, to place near his person one whom they could confide in, who was capable of watching over his conduct, and at the same time able to make head against him, if he offered to create any disturbance. They were not long deliberating upon the choice: this commission was given to MIR-VAIS; and as it was of some consequence, on this occasion, to increase his credit with the people, he was honoured with the KHALAET<sup>c</sup>, and reinstated in his employment.

Thus

<sup>b</sup> ATHEMAT DOULET. In PERSIC, IKHTIMADOULET signifies supporter of the power. This post is different from that of the vizir-azem, or grand vizirs in TURKEY, inasmuch as the latter being generalissimo's of the armies, their dignity answers to that of lieutenant-general of the empire.

<sup>c</sup> KHALAET signifies perfect or accomplished: a robe of honour which is given by the king's orders; it is also used for arms, horses, or the like present from a superior. The TURKS call this CARTAN, and the RUSSIANS have the same word for a common coat.

1708. Thus Providence ordained, that a fearful apprehension, arising from the idle talk of an adventurer, should bring about the invasion of one of the most flourishing monarchies of the eastern world. MIR-VAIS, who from the very circumstances of this ridiculous terror, had made a discovery of the weakness of the PERSIAN government; was no sooner returned to KANDAHAR, than he applied his thoughts how to prevail on his countrymen, to embark with him in the enterprize he had meditated. He was wavering in regard to the manner in which he should acquaint them with his project, when a favourable opportunity offered of commencing the execution of it. This was owing to an event, which to those who are unacquainted with the difference of manners and laws between the EUROPEANS and ORIENTAL nations, may appear as a romance, though there is good reason to believe it true.

---

#### C H A P. VII.

*GURGHIN-KHAN demands the daughter of MIR-VAIS. The AFGHANS assemble and determine to revolt. MIR-VAIS by an artifice imposes upon GURGHIN-KHAN, and gains his confidence. A conspiracy concerted with the tribe of TIRINS. MIR-VAIS massacres the KHAN with all his retinue, and takes possession of KANDAHAR.*

**G**URGHIN-KHAN made no doubt, but his conduct to the AFGHANS had been censured at court; but he still continued to act towards them with his usual severity. Being now provoked at the return and justification of one of their chiefs, whom he had pronounced guilty, he determined to let these people know, that neither the favour nor honours which the king had granted to MIR-VAIS, should screen him from his resentment, who knew him so much better than he was known at the PERSIAN court. With this view, he resolved by some signal act to humble them all at one and the same time; and hurried by the impetuosity of his temper, he chose the most dangerous method he could have thought of; judging it the best adapted to his purpose, of making them feel the full extent of his power.

MIR-VAIS



MIR-VAIS had a daughter, who was esteemed the most beautiful lady in the province. The KHAN now demanded her for his harram, and explained himself in such terms, as shewed he was determined to be obeyed. This act of tyranny was more than MIR-VAIS expected, but his mind being already full of his favourite design, he made a proper use of this incident, to sound the disposition of the AFGHANS, in regard to the plot he was contriving. He acquainted the principal men among them, with his present case, by whom it was soon communicated to others. Those people have an utter aversion against marrying their daughters to strangers: but to give away as a slave, the child of one of the most powerful of their chiefs, and of a person who was a prince by his birth, to a man of a different sect, was to them the greatest mark of ignominy and reproach. There was no time to lose: the KHAN pressed the execution of his orders, and they were reduced to the alternative of either complying with his will, or resolving to oppose it; they accordingly determined upon the latter. Some of the warmest and most zealous of the tribe assembled secretly in MIR-VAIS's tent, and one of them is recorded to have made a speech to this effect:

“ O MIR-VAIS! thy country-men thus cry to thee with one common  
“ voice: judge from THY OWN situation, to what a miserable state we are  
“ reduced. We no longer reckon among our misfortunes, the tyrannical  
“ taxes with which we are loaded; no longer do we weep to see our-  
“ selves stript of our paternal inheritances, by a power that does not even  
“ seek to palliate its iniquities under the veil of laws. These calamities,  
“ which would create the most sensible affliction to other nations, affect  
“ us no longer. The loss of property is supportable, because it may be  
“ repaired; but there is no repairing the loss of honour. Recollect the  
“ odious contempt with which we are treated, by people who are in-  
“ debted to our pusillanimity for the authority with which they lord it  
“ over us. Does not this vile treatment, which will render us the dis-  
“ grace of mankind, excite thy courage? Shall we remind thee of those  
“ acts of violence, the very thought of which covers us with infamy?  
“ Neither innocence, nor the sacred matrimonial bands, are longer any



1708. “ barriers against the unbridled licentiousness of our barbarous masters.  
 “ Thou knowest it well: thou, O MIR-VAIS! whose birth and valour  
 “ have raised thee so far above the common level; hast not thou suffered  
 “ such treatment, as none but slaves can think of without indignation?  
 “ What fatality holds thy arm? Dost thou wait for fresh insults, fresh  
 “ outrages? Dost thou wait till the tyrant makes thee stoop, a second  
 “ time, under the ignominious weight of chains<sup>d</sup>? Or wilt thou invoke  
 “ his guards to fill up the measure of our shame, by ravishing from the  
 “ arms of thy wife, the young princess whom he demands of thee; not  
 “ to indulge his amorous desires with her, but to glut his hatred of thee.  
 “ If valour does not support us to oppose this tyranny, despair will direct  
 “ our blows like thunder-bolts from heaven. Let us retire into the moun-  
 “ tains; and if we must perish, let us at least wipe off the stain of infamy.”

MIR-VAIS listened without any seeming emotion, and the whole assembly having fixed their eyes on him, waited with impatience to hear what reply he would make; when, raising his voice, he spoke to this effect:  
 “ I thank the Supreme, for the generous sentiments with which he has  
 “ inspired your breasts. The interest of the nation calls on us aloud to  
 “ be of one common opinion; but there are many ways to attain the  
 “ same end: let our greatest dependance be on our courage and sagacity,  
 “ The serpent that lies awake, will overcome the lion when he falls  
 “ asleep: let us conceal our swords in beds of roses; and if you think  
 “ highly enough of me, to leave the revenge of your cause to my care,  
 “ this glorious design must be kept an inviolable secret.”

The AFGHANS answered with a general applause, and all promised the most submissive obedience, and the strictest secrecy. “ They swore to  
 “ suffer their wives to be torn from them, and their slaves to be set at  
 “ liberty, if they did not perform their engagements; and this they also  
 “ confirmed upon bread, salt, their sabres, and the khoran<sup>e</sup>.

We all know, that it is the custom of the east, for women of condition, or even those who are slaves to persons of any rank, never to stir  
 from

<sup>d</sup> He is said to have been sent to ISFAHAN in irons.  
 as it may be presumed to include their temporal as well as eternal life:

<sup>e</sup> A custom which is very significative,



from a certain inclosure<sup>f</sup>, which none but the master is permitted to enter. Young women remain there, till they are married, and consequently are never seen by strangers. MIR-VAIS now made his use of this circumstance: as soon as the assembly broke up, he sent for a girl who was young and handsome, and instructing her in the part she was to act, he ordered her to be magnificently dressed, and conducted to GURGHIN-KHAN, as his daughter. After giving this deceitful testimony of his obedience to the governor, he made it his business to court the acquaintance of his favourites, and even of his domestics, whom he gained by bribes and fair promises, insomuch that they all agreed to use their endeavours to reconcile their master to him. 1708.

GURGHIN-KHAN knew very well that MIR-VAIS had justified himself before the divan, and that the king had honoured him with the KHALAET: these circumstances, which at first excited his anger, now prejudiced him in his favour; apprehending that he had no design to create any occasion of fresh alarms. The solicitations of his creatures and domestics so far softened his resentment, that MIR-VAIS had leave to appear in his presence. This artful AFGHAN was now to give a master-proof of his dangerous abilities. He pretended so much respect and submission at this interview, that the KHAN flattered himself with having absolutely humbled the most powerful of his enemies.

MIR-VAIS did not stop there: for not satisfied with being thus reconciled in appearance to a man whose destruction he had vowed, he used all his endeavours to gain his confidence and friendship. He was oftener seen at the governor's levee, than in his own habitation: he no longer importuned him with representations of the grievances of the nation: he seemed to have forgotten all past injuries, and to employ his time intirely in courting his favour. Such a behaviour, joined to the great authority he had among his country-men, with an easy address, won the heart of GURGHIN-KHAN, so that he reckoned him among the number of his intimate friends.

As soon as MIR-VAIS saw his business brought thus far, he thought it a proper time to put the finishing stroke to his work. We have already mentioned,

<sup>f</sup> The harram.

1708. mentioned, that excepting the garrison of KANDAHAR, there were no other troops in the province but GEORGIANS, whom the KHAN had kept near his person. And tho' these did not amount to one thousand men, yet as they were the best troops in the east, they were an invincible obstacle to an open execution of MIR-VAIS's design: but this wary AFGHAN being fertile in stratagems, secretly engaged the chiefs of one of the tribes, named TIRIN, to refuse to pay the usual taxes; the KHAN was no sooner informed of this rebellion, than he ordered the greatest part of the GEORGIANS, in whom consisted his principal security, to march that way in order to suppress it.

1709. In the interim, MIR-VAIS had directed his tribe to approach within two or three leagues of KANDAHAR: and as soon as he heard that GURGHIN-KHAN had ordered troops to march against the TIRINS, he expressed the highest resentment of the mutiny of those people; so far was he from excusing them, that he enlarged upon the punishment which they deserved. This artful behaviour so totally defeated the wariness of the governor, that he made no difficulty to accept of an entertainment, to which MIR-VAIS had invited him, under a pretence of reconciling to his favour two leading men of his nation, who had not as yet appeared in his presence. On the day appointed for the feast, MIR-VAIS had every thing ready for the execution of his design. It was customary to admit every day into the town a certain number of AFGHANS, who were employed by the garrison and townsmen in laborious offices: that day he caused as many armed men, as might pass unobserved, to enter the town along with these labourers, and gave them orders, by all means to elude the prohibition which strangers were under, of staying in town after sun-set, which was the time of shutting the gates. He left nothing untried that was capable of confirming the resolution of the conspirators; and having taken every other measure that his prudence suggested to him, he waited, not with the anxious fears that attend plots, but with sanguine hopes, to see the speedy issue of his undertaking.

The governor set out from KANDAHAR in the morning, and arrived at the camp, which was designedly pitched near one of his country houses.



There he was received with the greatest demonstrations of joy and respect. Soon after a sumptuous repast was served up: the plenty of wine, together with the heat of the day, having overcome the governor, he fell asleep in the tent where the entertainment was given; while the officers and domestics of his retinue, took their rest in the tents of the AFGHANS, who had invited them thither, to partake of the feast. No sooner were these unsuspecting guests asleep, than MIR-VAIS at the head of fifty men armed with spears, rushed into the tent where the governor was asleep. This had been appointed as a signal to the other conspirators, who immediately entered the tents where the governor's retinue were sleeping, and instantly massacred every PERSIAN and GEORGIAN they could find. Their unhappy chief underwent the same fate; but it is said of him, that having had time to draw his sabre, he slew several of his assassins before he fell.

When this treacherous slaughter was over, MIR-VAIS ordered the dead bodies to be stript, and their arms, cloaths, and horses to be distributed among the bravest of his tribe; and taking to himself the cloaths, horse and arms of GURGHIN-KHAN, he marched towards KANDAHAR, in the same order as had been generally observed by the governor. It was about an hour after sun-set, when the conspirators arrived at the gates of the city. The guard, deceived by these false appearances, granted them admittance, and were cut in pieces before they were sensible of their error. The flower of the AFGHANS, that followed at a small distance, arrived soon after; and dividing themselves into different bodies, were soon joined by their country-men, who had been admitted that morning into the town; part of them marched towards the several posts, and part advancing towards the head quarters, they surprized the garrison, already weakened by the large detachment of the GEORGIANS, and made them an easy prey. MIR-VAIS with his usual presence of mind, now caused a proclamation to be made, that the townsmen should keep within doors, where they would be intirely safe. By this piece of policy, the garrison being deprived even of this precarious assistance, every soldier and person attached to the KHAN, were in a very few hours cut in pieces.

## C H A P. VIII.

*MIR-VAIS engages the inhabitants of KANDAHAR to join with him in the rebellion. Famous retreat of the GEORGIANS. MIR-VAIS makes himself master of the streight of ZEBIL. The PERSIAN court orders troops to be levied, and sends deputies to KANDAHAR.*

1709. **T**HE day after the taking of KANDAHAR, MIR-VAIS yet depending more on cunning than strength, caused the principal inhabitants to be summoned early in the morning; and after having quieted their fears by his soft and obliging behaviour, he protested to them, that ambition had no share in his undertaking; that his only aim was to free his country from the yoke under which it had so long groaned: he then expatiated upon what the AFGHANS in general, and himself in particular had suffered for some years; and very artfully treating the interests of the assembly as his own, he thus continued: “ You may judge from my  
 “ sentiments, and every circumstance of my conduct, that my design is  
 “ not to oppress, but to free you from slavery. The AFGHANS will al-  
 “ ways esteem you as the companions of their past servitude, and present  
 “ felicity. Do not be afraid that the happiness we are now going to en-  
 “ joy, will ever be interrupted. The tyrant GURGHIN-KHAN is no more;  
 “ he was the only person among the PERSIANS that deserved the name  
 “ of a soldier: can you imagine they will ever dare to undertake what  
 “ the emperors of INDIA have attempted in vain, with more troops than  
 “ there are stones in our walls? ’Tis only by motion that water is puri-  
 “ fied; an enemy immersed in luxury is far from being formidable. If  
 “ there are any amongst you that have not the courage to enjoy this  
 “ precious gift of liberty, which is dropt down to you from heaven,  
 “ let him declare himself: no harm shall be done to him; he shall be  
 “ permitted to go in search of some new tyrant beyond the frontier of  
 “ this happy state.” The inhabitants not expecting such mild propo-  
 sitions, answered with loud praises and acclamations. They all concurred  
 in offering to expose their lives and fortunes in support of the com-



mon cause; they swore eternal fidelity to him, and begged him to continue his labours to terminate an enterprize, on the success of which the public felicity depended. 1709.

MIR-VAIS now convened the chief men of his tribe: he made them sensible, that in such conjunctures, unanimity is essential to safety, representing to them what they had to hope or fear, from the good or bad understanding in which they might live with the inhabitants; and after joining authority to persuasion, he forbade them to give the least offence or molestation to the people. In order to secure his conquest, he took every step that prudence dictated; whilst necessity supplied the place of experience. The arms which he found in the town, he distributed among the bravest and best affectioned of his men; he gave orders for filling the magazines; for repairing the fortifications; and putting the artillery in order. Workmen were employed night and day, in making gun-powder and fire-arms: he sent messengers to the different heads of the tribes, informing them of his success, and inviting them to come and join him with all expedition.

Three days had elapsed since the governor's death, when the centinels descried from the ramparts a considerable body of cavalry; this was the detachment of GEORGIANS, who, ignorant of what had passed<sup>s</sup>, were coming to the city, loaded with the spoils of the rebels. As their return was expected, proper orders were given for their reception; they were suffered to advance within musket-shot, when the cannon of the town was discharged at them; so that they immediately conjectured that the place had changed masters. MIR-VAIS thought this a good opportunity for establishing the reputation of his arms; he accordingly marched out at the head of five or six thousand horse, intending to cut off the retreat of the GEORGIANS; but he soon perceived, that he had to do with troops better disciplined, and more inured to war, than his AFGHANS.

The

<sup>s</sup> All the PERSIANS and GEORGIANS in the town having been massacred, and the PATENS or AFGHANS of the open country favouring the enterprize. Tho' this may appear improbable to an EUROPEAN, yet it is easy to be reconciled in a country but thinly inhabited.

1709. The GEORGIANS quitting their booty, forced their way sword in hand, and passed the defile of ZEBIL. After fighting their way thro' the country for the space of eight days, with an amazing intrepidity, they marched out of the province. What the GEORGIANS suffered in this retreat, as well through want of provisions and forage, as the frequent attacks of their enemies, is hardly credible; but their courage was invincible. The AFGHANS made five different attacks upon them in one day, and notwithstanding the great superiority of their numbers, they were always repulsed; insomuch that they lost above two thousand men in these different engagements. As an instance of the resolution of the GEORGIANS, it is related, that they swam their horses over a considerable river, within three leagues of the defile of ZEBIL, on the side of KANDAHAR: one of them, who was dismounted, seeing an AFGHAN riding towards him in full speed, turned back to meet him, and holding out to him, with one hand, his sabre, as if he intended to surrender, with the other, he shot him thro' the head, with a pistol; then leaping upon the dead man's horse, he plunged into the river, which he crossed under the incessant fire of the enemy, who were amazed at his resolution. All the advantage that MIR-VAIS reaped from this expedition, was the making himself master of the defile of ZEBIL. This streight is on the side of PERSIA, as that of CABUL is towards INDIA, and these are the only passes thro' the mountains with which the province of KANDAHAR is surrounded. The AFGHAN chief, who had now so lately experienced, that valour alone is not sufficient in carrying on a war, left troops to guard these narrow passes, and applied himself to discipline his men, and also to gain the other towns of the province; in hopes, that by their means, together with the alliances which he intended to conclude with his neighbours, he should be able to withstand the forces that might be sent against him.

In the mean time the GEORGIANS marching back into PERSIA, spread the news of this revolt, which soon reached ISFAHAN. The PERSIAN court being sensible of their own weakness, and of the difficulty of penetrating thro' the mountains with an army, had likewise reason to apprehend, lest if they should gain any advantage by force of arms over the



AFGHANS, these people might be tempted a second time to surrender the country to the MOGHOL. In this critical conjuncture, new levies of troops were ordered; but before they proceeded to open force, they thought proper to try the ways of negotiation. 1709.

MAHOMMED GEANI KHAN was the person chosen for this deputation; accordingly he set out for KANDAHAR, where he used every art that the love of his country suggested to him, to prevail upon the rebel-chief to return to his duty; and having a particular intimacy with MIR-VAIS, he addressed him in this manner: “ My friendship for thee would not permit me to see the storm gathering over thy head, without endeavouring to avert it. I have prostrated myself with tears in my eyes, and bitter grief in my soul, at the threshold of the palace of their sublime majesties<sup>h</sup>, who, reluctant to punish, have let fall the arm that was lifted up against thee in their wrath; they have given me leave to come and speak to thee; and I am commissioned by them to tell thee, that tho’ they are justly offended at the death of the KHAN; yet they forgive this crime, as thou only hast anticipated a punishment which their justice was preparing for him: they consider what is since past only as a necessary consequence of that action: thus the storm is blown over; do not therefore excite new troubles, but restore KANDAHAR to its true defenders; and by this mark of submission, merit the favours with which the crown is ready to distinguish thee.”

MAHOMMED GEANI KHAN continuing his speech, added menaces to promises, when MIR-VAIS, who was afraid lest this discourse should make some impression on the minds of the hearers, silenced him abruptly to this effect: “ Deceitful man, what do all these artful subterfuges avail? Dost thou imagine that wisdom dwells only in the bosom of effeminacy, and hath never passed the mountains with which these states are surrounded? Know then, that all those who have here listened to thee, are as sensible, as myself, of the snares in which thou art endeavouring to entangle us. Let thy king either raise or let fall his arm, as he pleases; they are slaves, and not muskulmen, who are afraid of the blow. If

G 2

“ he

<sup>h</sup> For his majesty; the ORIENTAL way of expressing themselves as a mark of greater respect to their prince. It may be observed, that the PERSIANS use the third person plural even to private persons in common discourse.

1709. “ he were as formidable, as thou wouldst make us believe, it is with  
“ deeds, and not with empty words, he would oppose our just designs.”

Having thus spoke, MIR-VAIS ordered the deputy to be sent to prison: whether he thought by this means to prevent the court from receiving intelligence, and to gain time for making greater preparations; or intended by this act of violence, to cut off all hopes of reconciliation with the PERSIANS; certain it is, that the detention of MAHOMMED GEANI KHAN, and the exactness with which all the passes were guarded, hindered the court from being informed of what had passed. The ministers being uneasy at not hearing the success of this deputation, resolved at length to venture upon a second. As the lieutenant of MAHOMMED KHAN, governor of HERAT, had performed the pilgrimage to MECCA in company with MIR-VAIS, and had contracted a strict friendship with him; they were induced to imagine that such a person would be less suspected, and more agreeable to him, than any other. The new deputy arrived, and explained the subject of his commission: but MIR-VAIS told him in an angry tone, “ Thou mayst thank thy good fortune in being my fellow-  
“ traveller; and the laws of hospitality, by which thou art intitled in my  
“ house to bread and salt: were it not for these circumstances, thou  
“ shouldst be no longer in a condition to make such base proposals to  
“ men who are free. Slave to a king who is going to lose his royalty,  
“ listen to what I declare to thee this day. THE VICTORY COMES FROM  
“ GOD, AND THIS VICTORY IS NEAR<sup>i</sup>. The impure worship of the  
“ followers of ALI, has too long infected the most fertile provinces of  
“ ASIA. Heaven has at length declared against the PERSIANS: the AF-  
“ GHANS, who are charged with the divine vengeance, will not sheath  
“ their swords, till they have destroyed this prince and extirpated his  
“ nation.” After this menacing speech, which seemed in some degree prophetic, MIR-VAIS contented himself with detaining the deputy, but did not chuse to violate, in the person of his old acquaintance and friend, those laws which he had so little respected in that of the deputy of his sovereign.

<sup>i</sup> A passage of the khoran.



## C H A P. IX.

*The PERSIAN court raises troops, and sends deputies to KANDAHAR. Defeat of the KHANS of HERAT and TAVRIS. KHOSROFF KHAN is sent against the AFGHANS: obtains a victory over them, and lays siege to KANDAHAR. His defeat and death. Another PERSIAN army defeated. The province of KANDAHAR entirely subjected by MIR-VAIS, who dies in 1715;*

THE court at length perceiving that there were no hopes of recovering KANDAHAR by negotiation, gave orders to the KHAN of HERAT to march against the rebels, at the head of 15000 horse. MIR-VAIS who was well acquainted with the difference between the PERSIANS and GEORGIANS, went to meet him with only 5000 horse, which he had assembled in a hurry, upon the news of the enemy's approach. The AFGHANS having fired some field pieces, the PERSIANS were struck with a panic, and did not wait for the first onset, but flying before their enemies, gave themselves up to slaughter; and after a grievous carnage, the AFGHANS returned to their camp, enriched with spoils. This action, which was followed by two or three others of the like nature, in the space of 18 months, gave the rebels such a contempt for their enemy, that they attacked them upon every occasion, without regarding their numbers. Of this there was a melancholy instance in MAHOMMED KHAN governor of TAVRIS. This general by the king's orders, having marched in SEPTEMBER this year, against the rebels, at the head of 5000 horse, met with such a warm reception from their van-guard, consisting only of 500 AFGHAN cavalry, that he had above 1000 men killed and wounded, and was taken prisoner himself with three of his sons. 1710.

The bad success of these expeditions, induced the court to make preparations for the continuation of the war with more order and precaution. They had raised a considerable army, and had given the command of it to KHOSROFF KHAN<sup>k</sup> a GEORGIAN, which was a very natural piece of policy.

<sup>k</sup>This word is generally translated lord or governor; but KAI in the antient PERSIC signifies a giant, and metaphorically a king, or great captain.

1711. policy. This prince, entrusted with the care of revenging the cause of his own country-men, as well as that of his sovereign, marched into KHORASAN, and from thence advancing eastward, in the month of NOVEMBER, he pitched his tents in the neighbourhood of FARRA<sup>1</sup>; a city not far distant from the enemy's country. Valour without prudence does not merit the name of virtue in a general. KHOSROFF KHAN therefore resolved to wait in this neighbourhood, in order to be informed of the progress and forces of the rebels. Accordingly he made inquiries into the state of their troops, the nature of the country, and of their strong holds; and sacrificing his private resentments to the public good, he agreed to a suspension of arms, and entered into a negotiation, to try if any method could be found to prevent the effusion of blood. The king's army, consisting of 30,000 PERSIANS and 1200 GEORGIANS, advanced in good order towards the streight of ZEBIL; from whence part of these GEORGIANS had made the famous retreat already mentioned. The number of the AFGHAN army was inferior to that of their enemy. All these troops, according to the custom of that part of the east, were composed of cavalry. MIR-VAIS did not judge proper to make his men dismount, and being sensible how difficult it would be for cavalry to act in these defiles, he resolved to quit his post, and retire to the river BELESE, about three leagues distant, and there dispute the passage.

The PERSIANS greatly surprized to find the passes unguarded, at length discovered the enemy, who bordered the opposite banks of the river. KHOSROFF KHAN was the first who plunged in, the rest immediately followed the example of their general, and swam their horses over; the AFGHANS astonished at their resolution, and being charged with equal intrepidity, gave way, and retired in disorder. The GEORGIAN prince made a proper use of his victory: for his troops were scarce returned from pursuing the enemy, than he ordered them to march forthwith to invest KANDAHAR. The AFGHANS having had no time to recover their courage, nor accustomed to a regular manner of waging war, were amazed at this first disgrace: what added to their confusion was the absence of

MIR-VAIS,

<sup>1</sup> A square town, about half a league in circumference, surrounded with a mud-wall. It stands in a fertile country, abundantly supplied with water.



MIR-VAIS, who not confiding in them sufficiently to lock himself up in the town, kept the field with the shattered remains of his army. Things being thus situated, they sent deputies to KHOSROFF KHAN, with proposals to deliver up the place, on condition that he would preserve their lives, their liberty, and fortunes. 1711.

This general had it now in his power with a single word to terminate this destructive war; but his prudence forsook him. Transported by his resentment, and elated with his success, he thought it beneath his dignity to grant a capitulation to rebels, whom he had so lately vanquished. He therefore gave them to understand, that they must submit at discretion. Death appearing more eligible than slavery; the AFGHANS would not listen to so dangerous a proposal, and the KHAN began to attack the town.

In the mean time the impressions of fear were in a great measure worn out, and the number of MIR-VAIS's troops greatly augmented. There is a large country south of KANDAHAR, which modern geographers distinguish by the name of MACKERAN; it is bounded by KERMAN on the west; a chain of mountains separates it towards the east from the MOGHOL's empire, and the rest of it is inclosed by the INDIAN ocean. The BALOUCHES, a fierce and warlike people, descended, as already mentioned, from the AFGHANS, are dispersed throughout these deserts, which are reckoned a province of PERSIA. MIR-VAIS had sent a deputation to these people, and found no difficulty in persuading them to engage in a confederacy, on the success of which their common liberty depended. At the same time, the TIRINS<sup>m</sup> enrolled themselves in great numbers under MIR-VAIS's banners, who was now grown wiser by his mistakes, and resolved not to expose himself again to the hazard of an unequal combat. Cunning and stratagem which had been so often serviceable to him, were now his last resource; and he determined to deprive them of forage and provisions, so as to ruin the PERSIAN army, or at least oblige them to retreat. With this intent, he ordered his troops to lay waste the country about KANDAHAR: his commands were so well executed, that the besiegers soon began to feel the inconveniency of want. KHOSROFF KHAN being now vexed to the heart for having refused to sign the capitulation,

was

<sup>m</sup> One of the tribes of the CLIGIS already mentioned.

1711. was obstinately bent upon taking the town, and daily renewed his attacks; but the garrison defended themselves with such bravery, that the PERSIANS tired out with such a long resistance, and labouring under a want of all necessaries, soon deserted in whole troops. The KHAN seeing his army at length reduced to 10,000 men, and not knowing any longer how to find subsistence even for these, resolved to retire. This resolution however was too late; for he had scarce begun to raise the siege, when MIRVAIS, who was marching with 16,000 horse to the relief of the place, fell upon his troops, who were so disheartened that they fled at the first onset. Their general strove to rally them, but fear had stifled every sense of subordination; insomuch that finding his efforts vain, and resolving not to survive the disgrace, he rushed at the head of the few remaining GEORGIANS, into the midst of the thickest squadrons of the AFGHANS, where fighting with a desperate bravery, he was killed.

Such was the end of this prince, whom valour, military experience, and other virtues, rendered worthy of a better fate. He had been successively honoured with the posts of governor of ISFAHAN, and of DIVAN-BEGHI<sup>n</sup>, and by the death of his father was just raised to the dignity of VALI of GEORGIA, when the king named him generalissimo of his armies. He, as well as GURGHIN KHAN his uncle, had the weakness to sacrifice his religion to his ambition; yet in his heart he was still a christian; and the missionaries were always sure to receive protection and assistance from him; he had even in that expedition two of those religious people with him, one of whom was killed close by him. It seems as if he intended to return to the religion of his ancestors, yet he affected outwardly to pass for a MAHOMMEDAN; from whence we may suspect the report of his carrying a cross in his standard.

This was the most considerable shock which the PERSIANS had yet sustained in their war with the AFGHANS; for of their whole army, only 700 men escaped death or slavery: such was their distress for want of provisions and forage, during their retreat for several days, through rivers and defiles, whilst they were continually pursued by a numerous body of fresh cavalry.

The

<sup>n</sup> DIVAN-BEGHI, or lord of the council. He is lord chief-justice.



The PERSIAN court was greatly astonished at so important a loss, yet necessity seemed to dictate fresh efforts. Accordingly another army was raised, and the command given to MAHOMMED RUSTAN KHAN, who marched against the rebels: but whatever valour and abilities that general might have, fortune did not favour him more than his predecessor. His troops were beaten and put to flight; and after this engagement, all the towns and strong holds, which had yet held out against the new government, submitted to them, and the whole kingdom of KANDAHAR acknowledged no other laws than those of the AFGHANS. 1713.

The GEORGIANS, incensed at so many defeats, which they justly imputed to the cowardice and inexperience of the PERSIAN troops; made an offer to the king of subduing the rebels, on condition that their army should be composed only of troops of their own nation; and that the necessary sums for defraying the charges of this expedition, should be paid at a certain time: but this weak prince HUSSEIN, afraid of their making a bad use of their success, it is said, rejected their proposal. Be that as it may, the defeat of MAHOMMED RUSTAN KHAN, was the last remarkable transaction during the reign of MIR-VAIS. The court having lost all hopes of reducing him by open force, ceased to arm against him; so that this prince died peaceably in his new kingdom in 1714.

It may be said of this famous rebel, that he was as circumspect in engaging in any enterprize, as he was resolute in carrying it into execution; that his success was owing as much to his prudence as to his valour; and if he did not subvert the throne of his lawful sovereign, yet he gave the first blow to the PERSIAN monarchy, and formed the people, by whom it was afterwards subverted. He had for some time assumed the title of king, and ordered that the КХОТВАН°, should be made in his name, and arrogated to himself the other ensigns of sovereignty. The inscription round his coin was a PERSIAN distich, the sense of which is, “The celebrated MIR-VAIS, emperor of the world, a most just prince, has caused this coin to be struck at KANDAHAR, the place of his residence.” 1715.

° A prayer read by the IMAN or priest of every mosque, every FRIDAY in the afternoon, for the health of the king; and this is an essential mark of the acknowledgment of his sovereignty.

---

P A R T III.

T H E

R E V O L U T I O N S O F P E R S I A,

F R O M T H E

D E A T H O F M I R - V A I S I N 1715,

T O T H E

R E T R E A T O F P R I N C E V A C H T A N G A F R O M T H E

F R O N T I E R S O F D A G I S T A N I N 1720.

C H A P. X.

MIR-ABDALLAH *brother of MIR-VAIS succeeds to the government of the* AFGHANS. MIR-MAGHMUD, *son of MIR-VAIS, discovers a design of* *subjecting KANDAHAR, murders his uncle, and is chosen king of that* *country. The ABDOLLEES dissatisfied. The adventure of EZADALLAH,* *who defeats the PERSIAN army, and makes himself master of HERAT.* *Hostilities committed by the KOURDS. Incursions of the OUSEBEGS. Cha-* *raacter of the LESGEES, and their motives to invade PERSIA.*

1715. **T**HE effeminacy and weakness of the PERSIAN court seemed to devote the empire to ruin; so that instead of making a good use of the death of MIR-VAIS, SHAH HUSSEIN was disposed rather to quit all pretensions to KANDAHAR, than to bear any longer the inquietude that must attend all attempts to reduce this province: the emotions which he seemed to feel on this occasion, arose only from the apprehension he was under that the divan would oblige him to make fresh preparations against the rebels,



In the mean time, the AFGHANS met to nominate a successor to MIR-VAIS. This prince had left two sons; the rights of nature and gratitude pleaded in favour of either one or other of them; but as their tender years rendered them incapable of holding the reins of a government hardly settled, MIR-ABDALLAH, whom MIR-VAIS, his brother, had appointed his successor, was raised to the throne. This prince differed intirely from his predecessor: he had neither his genius, ambition, nor resolution: a timid circumspection, disguised under the name of prudence, constituted the principal part of his character. He soon convinced the AFGHANS that he was not born to supply the place of such a man as MIR-VAIS; for he was scarce invested with the supreme authority, when he formed a resolution of restoring KANDAHAR to the crown of PERSIA. This scheme being communicated to the tribe, they were divided in their opinions. Those of a timorous and peaceable disposition, and such as through age and infirmities, had less resolution than caution, despaired of being able to hold out long against so formidable a power as PERSIA. They compared their forces with the great armies of this monarchy, and looking upon themselves as already subdued, judged of the severity of their punishment by the damage they had done to their enemies. Thus they longed for a reconciliation, which they considered as the only means of screening themselves from the resentment of their ancient masters.

On the other hand, the military-men, and such whose youthful blood moved brisker in their veins, exclaimed against the project, the execution of which they concluded would plunge the whole nation into the extremest calamities, as they could no longer depend on any treaties with the PERSIANS; who would no sooner take possession of the strong holds of the kingdom, than without regarding the articles of peace, the observance of which themselves should not be able to enforce, would take signal vengeance for the infamy of so many defeats: “And what,” said they, “should induce us to submit again to be shackled, after having so bravely recovered our liberty? What disgrace have we since suffered; or what advantages have the enemy had over us? Are we disheartened by our victories? Have we not the same arm and the same head? Or

1715. “ have we shaken off so odious a yoke, only to submit our necks to it  
 “ again, at a time when our courage might secure our liberty? Let us  
 “ rather boldly advance and attack our enemy on their own frontiers,  
 “ since they no longer dare to carry on the war in our country: or if you  
 “ are afraid of this attempt, tho’ the success is far from being dubious,  
 “ permit us at least to enjoy a tranquillity, which the terror of our arms  
 “ has hindered them so long from interrupting.” The last opinion was  
 not only the most noble, but likewise the most reasonable. In the low  
 state to which PERSIA was fallen, there was no just grounds for hurrying  
 the AFGHANS to a submission; and if they must absolutely submit to a  
 master, it would have been more prudent to have chosen the MOGHOL,  
 whose interest it would have been to use them well; than a nation whom  
 they had so grievously offended.

MIR-ABDALLAH had however taken his resolution, and finding it ap-  
 proved of by some of the chief men of the tribes, he bent his thoughts  
 upon putting it in execution. His intention was to restore the city and  
 the province to the crown of PERSIA on three conditions: The first,  
 that the annual tribute which they paid before the revolt, should be taken  
 off; the second, that no foreign troops should be sent into the province;  
 and the third, that HUSSEIN should grant him the government of the  
 kingdom, which should be hereditary in his family. In consequence of  
 this resolution, they drew up the instructions of the deputies, whom they  
 intended to send to ISFAHAN; and as there was no reason to doubt but  
 their proposals would be extremely welcome, every thing seemed to secure  
 an approaching peace, when an accident happened which broke their  
 measures. Though they endeavoured to conceal this intended negotiation,  
 which they knew was disagreeable to the greatest part of the tribes; it  
 came to the knowledge of MIR-MAGHMUD, one of MIR-VAIS’s sons.  
 This prince, who was about eighteen years of age, being provoked to  
 see himself reduced to the condition of a subject, in a kingdom which he  
 looked upon as his patrimony, had hitherto dissembled his resentment,  
 from the expectation of a proper opportunity of shewing it. The aver-  
 sion which the military part of the nation had to this treaty, made him



think that the time was now come to gratify his revenge; with this view he assembled about forty of his father's friends, who went with him to MIR-ABDALLAH's palace, and made themselves masters of it. The young MAGHMUD, as a specimen of that slaughter to which he afterwards familiarized himself, entered the apartment where his uncle was asleep, and killed him. Immediately the forty conspirators proclaimed the new sultan with loud acclamations, and the people alarmed at the sound of drums and other military instruments, with which the palace echoed, flocked thither to learn the cause of it. 1715.

MIR-MAGHMUD seeing the people assembled, made no scruple to acknowledge the parricide which he had just committed; but at the same time excused himself, by declaring his motive was the public good, as a proof of which, he read with a loud voice the instructions and other papers relating to the treaty which his uncle was on the point of concluding with the court of PERSIA. This treaty, as already mentioned, was odious to the greatest part of the nation, without whose knowledge it was entered upon: besides, MIR-MAGHMUD was son to the founder of their monarchy; and having been accustomed almost from his infancy to follow his father in all his expeditions, had on every occasion given signal proofs of his courage. These circumstances determined the people in his favour. The military men were the first who declared for him; and their suffrages having been confirmed by the rest of the tribes, he was with the general consent proclaimed king of KANDAHAR, six months after the death of MIR-VAIS.

This young prince had scarce ascended the throne, when several events happened, which seemed to presage the troubles and desolation which his reign was to produce; at the same time they removed a part of those obstacles which stood in the way of his ambition. The family, to whom ABAS the GREAT had given the government of HASARAI, being extinct, the kings his successors had subjected this province to the authority of a khan or governor, who, in their name, commanded in the province of HERAT. The ABDOLLEES, who, it has been already observed, submitted to PERSIA on condition of not being subject to foreign governors, were very 1717.

1717. very impatient under their yoke, when the circumstances of the times determined them to follow the example of the AFGHANS of KANDAHAR. The ABDOLLEES are a wandering nation, and like the AFGHANS divided into particular tribes. MAHOMMED ZAMON KHAN, then governor of the province, pleased with the agreeable countenance of EZADALLAH, son to a chief of one of these tribes, demanded him of the father. Allured by the advantages which he expected, the parent used all his persuasion to engage his son to live with the KHAN. The young man heard the proposal with indignation; so that the father determined to use his authority. This induced EZADALLAH, in conjunction with some young men, to kill his father, and caused himself to be acknowledged chief of the tribe in his stead.

MAHOMMED ZAMON KHAN was soon informed of this action; and determined to punish the delinquent, not only as a parricide, but lest so bold a step should be followed by an insurrection. The KHAN accordingly ordered five hundred horse to march against EZADALLAH's party, who boldly met them, and routed the PERSIAN troops. The governor shocked at this disgrace, thought seriously of preventing the ill consequences of it. He therefore assembled his troops at HERAT, the capital of the province; and not chusing to trust the execution of an affair of this importance to any other person, he took the command of them himself, and marched towards the camp of the rebels. EZADALLAH, now at the head of two thousand men, went to meet the PERSIANS: he divided his troops into two bodies; one he ordered to lie in ambush, and with the other he waited for the enemy on the banks of the river MORGA. At length the PERSIAN army appeared; and the KHAN seeing so small a number of the ABDOLLEES, confident of victory, charged the enemy without precaution; when the troops that lay in ambush sallied forth with loud shouts and cries, which surprized and terrified the PERSIANS, inso-much that they turned their backs, and fled with the utmost precipitation to HERAT.

The young EZADALLAH, transported by his youth and courage, followed the enemy so close, that he entered with them pell-mell into the  
8 town.



town. The inhabitants had formerly been of the sect of the SUNNIS; several had still preserved their ancient religion; and there were some families descended from the ancient kings of the country. These circumstances, together with the lenity with which the inhabitants of KANDAHAR had been treated by MIR-VAIS, and the tyrannical extortion of the PERSIAN governors, induced the people to declare in favour of the ABDOLLES; infomuch that having joined with them in putting the garison to the sword, the city was soon delivered from the PERSIAN yoke. This revolution happened in the year 1717. EZADALLAH in less than three months got possession of the other strong places in the province, whose fidelity had been shaken by the example of the capital; and HERAT became an independent republic, in which its deliverer held the most considerable rank.

This year, the KOURDS, a restless roving people, situated west of IRAC-AGEMI<sup>p</sup>, appeared in arms at the gates of HAMADAN, and wasted the country round that city. They carried their insolence so far, as to commit robberies under the walls of ISFAHAN, where they took away a number of horses belonging to the king.

These hostilities and the revolt of HERAT, were not the only incidents that alarmed the court. The OUSBEGS<sup>q</sup>, a warlike tribe, whom their vicinity to PERSIA renders enemies to that crown, taking advantage of these circumstances, carried terror and desolation into the northern part of the vast province of KHORASSAN. At the same time, new troubles arose on the western shores of the CASPIAN SEA.

The province of DAGISTAN<sup>r</sup>, inhabited by the LESGEE TARTARS, are MAHOMMEDANS<sup>s</sup> of the sect of SUNNI. The ferocity of their natural disposition, joined to the sterility of their hills<sup>t</sup>, have induced them often

to.

<sup>p</sup> This is part of the country of the ancient PARTHIANS. AGEM signifies barbarous or stranger, with regard to the ARABS.

<sup>q</sup> This name signifies free and independent. They are generally understood to be the TARTARS of KHIEVA and BOGHARA, and take in also those of SAMARCAND, which flourished in the time of TAMERLANE. These people are comely, well-shaped, and active; much given to robbery, but make good soldiers. See G. THOMPSON'S account of them, Vol. I.

<sup>r</sup> DAGH, a mountain; DAGISTAN, a mountainous country. It is sometimes wrote DAGHESTAN. I have given an account of these people in my 1st volume.

christians.

<sup>t</sup> Their vallies however are fruitful.

<sup>s</sup> Formerly some of them were

1719. to infest the neighbouring provinces. ABAS II. upon his accession to the crown, came to an accommodation with them, and promised to pay annually, by way of subsidy, a certain sum to each tribe. Each of them promised to send every year an embassador to the king, with a present of two calves skins, and two lambs skins; as an acknowledgment of his sovereignty; and a peace was concluded on these conditions. As it was the interest of the LESGEES, they observed this treaty inviolate, as long as the subsidies agreed to were paid them; but the 1700 tomans<sup>u</sup>, appointed for that use, having for several years been applied to other purposes, by the avaricious ministers of HUSSEIN, these people had recourse again to arms, and renewed their excursions.

---

## C H A P. XI.

*The court prepares to attack the ABDOLLEES and OUSBEGS. SEFFIE KOULI KAHN is made general. Battle between the PERSIANS and ABDOLLEES. The MASCATS take possession of BAHARAIN. LUTF ALI KHAN is chosen general, and marches towards the PERSIAN gulf, and beats the rebels. MIR-MAGHMUD marches at the same time towards KHERMAN. The domestic enemies of the PERSIAN general cabal against him. The ATHEMAT-DOULET is confined, and his eyes plucked out. LUTF ALI KHAN is carried prisoner to ISFAHAN, and the PERSIAN army disbanded.*

SHAH HUSSEIN astonished to see so many provinces declare against him, at length roused from his lethargy. The ABDOLLEES and OUSBEGS having entered into a confederacy, appeared to be the most formidable of his enemies: he resolved therefore to make an extraordinary effort against them; and having deliberated some time on the choice of a general, he chose SEFFIE KOULI KHAN. This nobleman had been invested some years with the post of DIVAN-BEGHI<sup>w</sup> of ISFAHAN; but upon discovering, that the king was so far prejudiced by his enemies, as to look upon the rectitude with which he discharged his office, as an excessive severity, he voluntarily resigned it, and withdrew from court.

SEFFIE

<sup>u</sup> 4,200 l.

<sup>w</sup> Lord chief-justice.



SEFFIE KOULI KHAN was now sensible of the difficulties he should encounter in so dangerous a commission, and of the oppositions he should find in the execution of his office, from the prevailing faction, by whom he was not beloved. These considerations engaged him to refuse so delicate, though at the same time so glorious an employment : but the court hit upon a very artful expedient to engage him to accept of it: this was to send to his only son, a horse richly caparisoned, a spear, a buckler, a cuirass covered with gold brocade, and a turban enriched with diamonds. Such presents are never made, except when the king intends to invest some person with an absolute authority, such as that of generalissimo. The father saw plainly the snare that was laid for him ; but he who had presumed to refuse his sovereign, could not withstand the solicitations of a son whom he tenderly loved. This young nobleman, at the age of seventeen, was therefore declared generalissimo of the forces of the empire ; and his father, as the court foresaw, determined to accompany him in the expedition. He accordingly assembled a considerable body of troops, and both of them repaired to ISFAHAN to receive the king's orders. The young general met with the most flattering marks of distinction : the king made a public entertainment for him, and girt his sword to his side, in presence of the whole court ; and in order to give him an opportunity of shewing his dexterity, he ordered tilts and tournaments in the MEIDAN<sup>x</sup>, in which this young lord gained the applause of all the spectators.

After this kind of anticipated triumph, the general set out for the camp, in company with his father. His army consisted of 30,000 men, chosen troops ; so that it was reasonable to expect success from such a body of forces, conducted, tho' under another's name, by so experienced a general as SEFFIE KOULI KHAN. These expectations seemed to be confirmed by an event, which soon after ensued ; for scarce had the PERSIANS entered the province of HERAT, when they fell in with a body of 12,000 OUSBEGS, who were marching to the assistance of the ABDOLLEES ; and attacking them briskly, cut them in pieces.

This

<sup>x</sup> The principal square in ISFAHAN.

1719. This first enterprize raised the courage of the victors, but EZADALLAH, more enraged than intimidated by this disgrace, thought only of recovering his loss by a new engagement, which was to decide the fate of the province of HERAT. EZADALLAH, at the head of only 15,000 horse, was not afraid to offer battle to an army which had double the number of men, and had likewise the advantage of a formidable train of artillery. During the course of this war, there was not a more obstinate engagement. The PERSIANS and the ABDOLLEES, equally animated, the one to avoid the shame of being vanquished, and the other by the desire of preserving their liberty, fought without intermission from sun-rise; and at one in the afternoon, the victory was still undetermined, when the inattention of those who commanded the artillery, decided the fate of the day. These officers, not having observed that their own troops occupied a post which the ABDOLLEES had just quitted, fired upon them; and the PERSIANS, knowing that the enemy had no cannon, were surprized and thrown into confusion. The chiefs themselves apprehended treachery, and seemed irresolute in regard to what step they should take; when EZADALLAH tried to avail himself of a circumstance, the cause of which was perhaps unknown to him. He therefore renewed the charge with fresh vigour, and meeting with only a faint resistance, from men who were uneasy and intimidated, he pierced their squadrons, and obliged them to turn their backs.

EZADALLAH spurred on by his hatred to the PERSIANS, and his desire of enjoying all the advantages of his victory, pursued the enemy a whole day. The PERSIANS lost in the action and flight 8000 men, among whom was their general, and his father SEFFIE KOULI KHAN, who were killed in the retreat. Their baggage, the military chest, and 20 pieces of cannon fell also into the hands of the ABDOLLEES; who on their part lost 3000 men; which, to an infant republic, could be compensated only by the liberty obtained by that memorable engagement.

The PERSIAN armies being thus unfortunate, new enemies declared against HUSSEIN. The MASCATS are a tribe of ARABIANS<sup>y</sup>, whose country is the promontory towards the isle of ORMUS, which forms the

streights

<sup>y</sup> The country over against GOMBROON, on the northern coast of ARABIA.



streights of the PERSIAN gulf. These people are MAHOMMEDANS of a particular sect, yet more conformable to that of the SUNNIS, than of the SCHIAS<sup>z</sup>: they are subject to an IMAN<sup>a</sup>, who has an absolute authority over them. This prince taking advantage of the melancholy state to which the kingdom of PERSIA was reduced, had already made himself master of the isle of BAHARAIN<sup>b</sup>; and, not content with this success, he threatened to take possession of BENDER ABASSI<sup>c</sup>. 1719.

The court of PERSIA, unable to face all her enemies at once, seemed to have taken the resolution of arming only against those who declared last. They determined therefore to make preparations in order to oppose the designs of those ARABS; and as affairs were now reduced to an extremity by their late defeat at HERAT, FATEY ALI KHAN, at that time ATHEMAT DOULET<sup>d</sup>, offered to march thither in person; but the king fearing lest he should be rendered too powerful, by adding the authority of generalissimo to his present employment, returned him thanks, and appointed LUTF ALI KHAN, brother-in-law to that minister, to command the expedition.

In the beginning of the year 1720, this general marched a body of twenty thousand men to the neighbourhood of BENDER ABASSI; and as the PERSIANS have no ships in that sea, he waited for the PORTUGUESE fleet, which, pursuant to the treaty concluded with the viceroy of that nation, was to sail from GOA, in order to transport his troops to the isle of BAHARAIN. This fleet, consisting of four large vessels, fifteen pinks<sup>e</sup>, and some other transports, arrived soon after, and met with a kind reception from LUTF ALI KHAN. But whether it was that he did not think this fleet strong enough to engage that of the MASCATS, or whether his enemies at court had with-held the money designed for this use; 1720.

I 2

he

<sup>z</sup> PERSIAN sect.      <sup>a</sup> An ecclesiastical sovereign.      <sup>b</sup> BAHARAIN signifies the two seas. An island famous for the PEARL fishery; it takes its name from a province of ARABIA FELIX, situated near it, between the RED SEA, and the PERSIAN gulf.      <sup>c</sup> This place was called GOMBROON, before ABAS I. had put it in the condition in which it is at present. To effect this, he made use of the materials of the city of ORMUS, which he had lately demolished. BENDER is of the same signification as DERBEND, *viz* port or fence of iron; BENDER ABASSI being properly the strong port of ABAS.      <sup>d</sup> Prime minister, as already explained.      <sup>e</sup> Vessels of 1 or 200 tuns, commonly known by this name.

1720. he did not pay the sum that had been stipulated: the officer who commanded the fleet proposed to send for a reinforcement, if the KHAN thought it proper; but finding this also ineffectual to obtain the payment, he prepared to sail back again to GOA. In the mean time the enemy apprehending lest the PORTUGUESE fleet should be reinforced, resolved to attack them. Accordingly their vessels sailed from the port of MASCAT, and soon appeared at the mouth of the streight; the PORTUGUESE weighed anchor, and prepared to receive them; but having lost a small vessel in the engagement, which in other respects was not favourable to them, they retired in the night, and sailed directly for GOA. LUTF ALI KHAN thus became desperate, as this accident disappointed all his projects; and he was reduced to the necessity of defending the coast against the insults of the MASCATS, when a signal occasion happened of distinguishing his valour.

No sooner had MIR MAGHMUD deprived MIR ABDALLAH his uncle of his life and throne, than he seemed desirous of justifying so daring an action by some signal exploit. The PERSIANS had made no attempt for a long time against KANDAHAR; and the incursions of the LESGEEs, the KOURDS, and the OUSBEGS, together with the uneasiness occasioned by the taking of BAHARAIN, and the revolt of HERAT, left no room to apprehend the least danger from that quarter: And with regard to INDIA, the domestic troubles of that empire secured him sufficiently against the enterprizes of the MOGHOL, as will appear from the following relation:

MAHOMMED FURRUKHSIR, the GREAT MOGHOL, having advanced SEYD ABDALLAH KHAN to the title of vizir.<sup>f</sup> and his brother HASSAN ALI KHAN being the general pay-master<sup>g</sup> of the army; by their intrigues they acquired an unlimited authority, and at length seized on the person of their sovereign, and deprived him of his sight. In FEBRUARY 1719, they accomplished their work, and put him to an ignominious death, after a reign of seven years: they then chose RAFFEEIH AL DIRJAT, a prince of the imperial blood, who had been for some time confined in the

<sup>f</sup> He had also that of KOTEB AL MULUCK, or axis of the empire, and IAR-BA-VAFA the grateful friend

<sup>g</sup> MIR BUKHSI.



the castle of SELIMGUR, but this prince dying a natural death, a few 1720. days after these ministers proclaimed prince SUJAMBADOUR.

This new election was not attended like the former, with the unanimous consent of the people; for the inhabitants of AGRA, then esteemed the capital of the empire, proclaimed NASR O DIN MAHOMMED SHAH<sup>h</sup>, a grand-son of the famous AURING-ZEBE; and both parties being obstinately bent to support the emperor whom they had chosen, this double election was soon followed by a civil war. After several battles, the grand vizir apprehending that it would be a long time before the dispute could be determined by force of arms, resolved to bribe the principal inhabitants of AGRA, who opened their gates to him, and delivered up NASR O DIN MAHOMMED SHAH. But this event produced a very different effect from what might have been naturally expected; for a report being spread some days after, that prince SAJAMBADOUR had been put to death at DEHLI, NASR O DIN MAHOMMED, who considered himself as a sacrifice to the security of his rival, was not only set at liberty, but acknowledged as emperor by both parties. And though the report was false; as they were heartily tired of the war, both parties agreed to put SAJAMBADOUR to death.

It is very remarkable, that the grand vizir and his brother acted with such cunning, as to preserve their whole authority during these troubles, though they soon became great objects of jealousy. By disbanding the armies, they had restored peace, but neither their own power, nor that of the emperor, were sufficiently fixed, to engage them in an enterprize, the issue of which had been always fatal to the MOGHOLS.

As MIR MAGHMUD<sup>i</sup> was free from any apprehension on this side, he employed his thoughts intirely about the execution of his favourite design. MIR VAIS during his confinement at the court of PERSIA, had discovered so much of the weakness of the government, that it has been thought he then aspired not only at making himself master of the province of KANDA-

<sup>h</sup> NASR O DIN signifies the supporter and assister of religion. This is the same prince whom the PERSIAN usurper NADIR invaded 20 years afterwards.

<sup>i</sup> He is often called also MAGHMUD only; MIR has been already explained, page 29. and for this reason the hyphen between the words is discontinued as unnecessary.

1720. HAR, but likewise of subduing the whole monarchy. Be that as it may, MIR MAGHMUD now prepared for this great enterprize; but as his reputation was not yet sufficiently established, to venture to propose it to the AFGHANS, he resolved to engage in some expedition, by the success of which he might expect to gain their confidence. With this view, he assembled the chief men of the nation towards the year 1720, and having laid open his design to them, he caused a proclamation to be made, that whoever was willing to march with him against the enemy, should repair with his horse and armour to a certain place by him appointed. By this means he raised about 10,000 men, and putting himself at the head of them, he took the road to KHERMAN, while LUTF ALI KHAN was advancing with his army towards BENDER ABASSI.

That part of SEGISTAN, which separates the province of KHERMAN from the kingdom<sup>k</sup> of KANDAHAR, is a country in which for fifteen days march there is nothing but sandy plains, with very few inhabitants. These difficulties did not deter MIR MAGHMUD; on the contrary he was desirous on this occasion to try the courage and resolution of his troops: besides, as he had laid a scheme to penetrate very soon by that road into the heart of PERSIA, it was a point of some importance to be acquainted with the nature of that country. He knew that water is scarce in those parts, and what little is found is hardly potable; this induced him to take the smaller number of horses and mules, and to mount his AFGHANS two or three on a camel, this animal being inured to thirst. As soon as he arrived on the frontier, he ordered these camels to be loaded with water, and in the same manner every soldier to fill the sheeps guts which they carried for this purpose like a girdle about their waists; and thus prepared, the army entered these deserts. He met no opposition during his march: the difficulties which he defied by taking this rout, constituted his security; but as the want of water, provisions, and forage, of which it was impossible to carry a sufficient quantity with them, together with the scorching heat of the sun, supplied in some measure the place of enemies, he lost two thousand men,

<sup>k</sup> The reader must observe, that kingdom and province are sometimes used for the same country, not only according to the ORIENTAL expression, but that by revolutions they are rendered independent sovereignties upon many occasions.



men, and a considerable number of beasts of burthen. The AFGHANS, 1720. however, encouraged by the promises and example of their prince, bore with all these hardships, and at length passed the deserts. They had scarce appeared on the frontier of KHERMAN, when the khan of this province having no troops to oppose them, retired with his family. MIR MAGHMUD entered the country without fighting, and pursuing his march, came and refreshed his army in the very capital <sup>k</sup> of the province.

Tho' that city had opened her gates to MAGHMUD, yet he behaved as a conqueror: he laid heavy contributions, as well on the merchants, as the citizens, and put numbers of them to cruel tortures; suffering his troops to live at discretion: so that these miserable people experienced all the horrors and calamities of war, without having had the consolation of attempting to defend their lives and properties. They had been now four months subject to this tyrannical yoke, when LUTF ALI KHAN came and rescued them from oppression. This general, who was obliged to wait for enemies whom he could not go in search of, no sooner heard of what had passed in the province of KHERMAN, than he marched thither with a body of chosen troops. Fortune, which had been so favourable to the AFGHANS, now deserted them; for their little army was defeated and put to flight. The news of so important and unexpected a victory, being brought to TÆHIRAN, where the king was lately arrived, suspended the uneasiness of this prince, as well as of the whole court.

In the mean time, LUTF ALI KHAN perceiving that KHERMAN was the only place that could stop MAGHMUD, on the side of these deserts, fortified that part which is called the upper town, and serves as a citadel; after which he left a strong garrison in the place, and joined the main body of his army. Whether it was from a thirst of revenge of his enemies at court, who had considerable estates in those parts; or that he was obliged to have recourse to this expedient, in order to maintain his army; LUTF ALI KHAN laid heavy contributions on the country, ta-  
king

<sup>k</sup> This city, which bears the same name as the province, is famous all over the east for the beauty of the shawes and stuffs manufactured there. The wool, of which they are made, comes chiefly from the neighbouring mountains: it is said that when their sheep brouze on new grass, the whole fleece falls off, and leaves the sheep as if they had been shorn. Their wool is certainly allowed to be the finest and best we know of, and draws thither a number of INDIAN merchants.

1720. king all their arms, horses and camels; and dividing his forces into different bodies, he quartered them upon the inhabitants at discretion. This continued till the autumn, when the army marched for SHIRASS, the capital of FARSISTAN, which had been pitched upon as the general rendezvous. The troops assembled there in the month of NOVEMBER 1720, and a better appointed army had not been seen for many years in PERSIA. Their camp enjoyed great plenty; a vast quantity of provisions and ammunition having been amassed by means of several thousands of camels, which were employed for that purpose. The troops, encouraged also by the victory at KHERMAN, were impatient to be led against the enemy; and every thing seemed to presage the ruin of the AFGHANS, against whom all these preparations were making. But in spite of these favourable circumstances, PERSIA seemed devoted to ruin; for the general was arrested and sent a prisoner to court, and the whole army at once dispersed.

This sudden change was owing to those lords, whose lands had been lately ravaged by LUTF ALI KHAN: incensed at the disregard which he had shewn them on this occasion, they figured to themselves how low their own interest would be reduced, if so great a piece of service, as the reduction of KANDAHAR, were added to the credit which the general had already acquired with the king, on account of his first victory. They resolved therefore to employ every engine of falsehood and malice, to prevent his marching upon that expedition; and despairing to succeed in their design, so long as FATEY ALI KHAN continued in his office, this minister was the first victim whom they undertook to sacrifice to their own imaginary security.

The method which they took to attain their end, was as bold as it was wicked. The king's chief MULLAH<sup>l</sup>, and the HAKEM BACHI<sup>m</sup>, who were concerned in the plot, entered this prince's bed-chamber in the middle of the night, and imploring his pardon for so daring an intrusion, informed him of the imminent danger which he was in: they told him with all the appearance of the utmost consternation, that they had just discovered a conspiracy formed against his majesty's crown and life: that

LUTF

<sup>l</sup> Either the PICHE-NAHMAZ, or great almoner; or the KHODAGA, the chaplain.  
 chief physician.

<sup>m</sup> The



LUTF ALI KHAN was to enter ISFAHAN with his army, and to seize on the royal family; while the ATHEMAT DOULET<sup>a</sup>, supported by a body of 3000 KOURDS, who were on their march, under the command of a prince of that nation, was to secure his majesty's person: that there was not a moment to lose, for this very night the conspirators intended to execute their execrable design. In proof of what they had advanced, they produced a letter, which they pretended had been written by the prime minister to the prince of the KOURDS. This letter had the counterfeit of the royal seal upon it: SHAH HUSSEIN no sooner cast his eyes upon the seal, than imagining he knew it, he concluded he was undone, and his terror deprived him of his senses. While he was coming to himself, a council was called in a hurry, composed of some of the principal eunuchs, who were accomplices with the two accusers; and after a very short consultation, the king sent for the KURCHI BACHI<sup>o</sup>, and commanded him to go with what number of soldiers he could get together, to break open the prime minister's house, and to bring him his head.

This order however was not strictly executed; for the eunuchs intending to oblige him to make a discovery of his effects, which they hoped would be confiscated in their favour, represented to the king that it was not proper to put him to death if he made no resistance; to which SHAH HUSSEIN acquiesced. The ATHEMAT DOULET, who was asleep in his harram, made no scruple to obey: as soon as he was brought to the KURCHI BACHI, his eyes were plucked out, as if he had been convicted of high-treason; after which, under a pretext of extorting a confession of his accomplices, and the circumstances of the conspiracy, but in reality to force him to discover his effects, he was put to the torture.

No sooner was this wild resolution taken of arresting the ATHEMAT DOULET, than messengers were dispatched on every side to secure the relations and friends of this unfortunate minister. The commission however seemed difficult to execute in regard to LUTF ALI KHAN his brother-in-law;

<sup>a</sup> Prime minister.  
to his majesty's household.

<sup>o</sup> The general of the KURCHIS, one of the troops of horse belonging

1720. in-law; and it would have been so indeed, if this general had been guilty of the crime with which he was charged. The governor of SHIRASS was ordered by the king to intice him into the town, and there to seize on his person, and send him under a proper guard to ISFAHAN. The governor found no difficulty in executing his commission; for LUTF ALI KHAN, having no design but to march against the enemies of his country, suspected no evil. Such was the reward which this general received for his signal services. His disgrace was followed with the dispersion of the whole army; for the khans and other lords, who commanded the different bodies of which it was composed, apprehending from this example that they should be called to an account for the depredations committed in KHERMAN, retired to their own estates; insomuch, that of this flourishing army, which promised security to PERSIA, in a few days nothing remained, except the artillery, ammunition, and provisions.

In the mean time every thing was in confusion at TÆHIRAN, where they were making preparations to defend themselves against the three thousand KOURDS who were hourly expected; but as soon as it was day, and the king saw that no enemy appeared, and had also been informed by people arrived from different quarters, and by the several bodies of horse which were sent out as scouts, that every thing was perfectly quiet in the neighbourhood, this deluded prince began to suspect that they had imposed upon him. Under this suspence he sent for the HAKIM BACHI, and with a very severe tone, which he seldom assumed, he bid him take care that the wounds they had made in the ATHEMAT DOULET, by plucking out his eyes, did not endanger his life, for that his should answer for it. This declaration in all probability saved the life of that unfortunate man; whose barbarous enemies would probably have taken his life also, from an apprehension lest he should ruin them by detecting the villainous falsity of all their impostures.

The ATHEMAT DOULET recovered; and the couriers, who had been sent, bringing intelligence that the army had made no motion, the SHAH was confirmed in his suspicions, and resolved to examine the affair in a juridical manner.



## C H A P. XII.

*A divan is held, in which the king presides, to examine into the conduct of the ATHEMAT DOULET. Articles of accusation brought against him; his answer and defence.*

THE day being fixed for the trial of this great cause, the king de- 1720.  
 terminated to preside in person at the divan, which was composed of all the ministers and great officers of state. The prisoner being brought into the court, the session was opened with a recital of the several articles of complaint. The crimes laid to his charge were chiefly these, *viz.*  
 “ I. That he had written and sealed with the royal seal, of which he  
 “ was the depository in virtue of his office of prime minister, a letter by  
 “ which he desired one of the princes of the KOURDS, to bring a body  
 “ of 3000 men with him to TÆHIRAN, in order to seize on the person  
 “ of the king. II. That he had maintained a correspondence with the  
 “ LESGEEES, from his attachment to the sect of the SUNNIS which he  
 “ professed; and that he had written a letter to one of their chiefs, which  
 “ was also produced, and by which he gave him intelligence that they  
 “ might continue their depredations with all security, provided they did  
 “ not advance towards ERIVAN, where one of his nephews commanded.  
 “ III. That he had said one day, when he was in the city of KOOM, at  
 “ the tomb of SHAH SULIMAN, by whose orders his father had been put  
 “ to death; that the time would come, when he would revenge his  
 “ father’s death, by that of SHAH HUSSEIN, his son, and all the royal  
 “ family.” But this last accusation had no other proof to support it,  
 than the deposition of this minister’s valet de chambre.

Besides these three capital articles, several others were added, which seemed to be rather reproaches against his conduct, than subjects of accusation. It was laid to his charge, that he had decided all affairs of himself, and without the advice of the council, and the other ministers. That his orders were more respected in the provinces, than those of the king. That he had married his daughters and nieces to the principal

1720. lords of the kingdom, from whence it was inferred that he intended to form a powerful party. That he had disposed of the government of provinces to his nephews, who were but children: and lastly, that as his estate by his own acknowledgment, amounted to the sum of nine hundred thousand tomans<sup>p</sup>, it was impossible he could have amassed such immense wealth, without extortion, or, at least, embezzlement of the royal revenues.

These were the articles of complaint against this minister: upon which the king having asked him whether he had any thing to say in his defence, he turned towards the place from whence he heard the voice, and addressed the king with a heroic firmness, but in a respectful tone. “Great prince, the justification which you require of your slave, would be intirely usefess, were it intended for no other purpose than to preserve his life, in the deplorable situation to which malice and imposture have reduced him: life is now become a load to him, undeserving of such care. But since his honour, and the glory which his family has acquired in the service of your august ancestors, do not permit him to be silent, while envy and malice are raising their batteries against him, he will convince your majesty, that if you had deigned to hear him before you pronounced his sentence, it would have been as easy to confound the calumny of his accusers, as to ward off the fatal blow with which his innocence has been oppressed.”

After this tacit reproach, the ATHEMAT DOULET ceasing to address himself in direct terms to the king, continued his discourse to this effect:

“If the pretended conspiracy had not been the means projected, by which my enemies have ruined me, they would never have thought of so absurd, as well as heavy a charge against me. Does not this imposture refute itself? When was it they intercepted this fatal letter, which has served as a foundation to this monstrous structure of iniquity? Was it sent from TÆHIRAN; and intercepted before it came to hand? Or returned to them from the KOURDS? The KOURDS were to make their appearance that night; if the letter was intercepted, how was that possible, for these rebels had twelve days march to make?

“the



“ the letter must consequently have been a long time in the hands of  
 “ my accusers, which renders them accomplices of my supposed crime: 1720.  
 “ therefore the chief to whom I wrote, must have sent it back: but if  
 “ so, why should they have been afraid of those troops? And if they con-  
 “ trived to take it from him upon his march, who is it that has hindered  
 “ this prince from appearing before our gates? Let my enemies explain  
 “ themselves; how is this important piece come hither: and why have  
 “ they waited for the very moment in which the conspiracy was to take  
 “ effect, before they shewed it to their majesties?

“ The circumstances with which these informers corroborate their ac-  
 “ cufation, plainly shew their imposture. They say that I intended that  
 “ very night with three thousand men to lay hands on the sacred person  
 “ of my sovereign, surrounded by his courtiers, and by a guard of fifteen  
 “ thousand men; and yet they found me asleep in my harram, with no  
 “ other people about me than my own domestics. LUTF ALI KHAN,  
 “ who is supposed to have intended at the same time to take possession  
 “ of the capital, we do not hear has made any motion at all with his  
 “ troops; and the prince of the KOURDS, to whom I am said to have  
 “ ordered the gates of the city to be opened that night, is sixty farsangs<sup>a</sup>  
 “ distant from the frontier, and has not set his foot in the province. I  
 “ shall not dwell any longer on the refutation of this part of the charge;  
 “ their majesties have too much penetration not to see easily into the ab-  
 “ surdity of it. I shall proceed to the other crimes of which I am ac-  
 “ cused.”

“ It is true, I am a SUNNI<sup>r</sup>, as my ancestors were; nor have I ever  
 “ sacrificed my faith to the security of my fortune; but I never kept it  
 “ a secret from the king, nor from the rest of the nation; and their  
 “ majesties, by entrusting me with the administration of affairs, plainly  
 “ shewed that this difference of persuasion was no just reason for doubt-  
 “ ing of my allegiance. But they have produced a letter, which they  
 “ pretend I wrote to a chief of the LESGEEs, encouraging those people  
 “ to continue their depredations. Is it not evident that this is an artifice  
 “ like:

<sup>a</sup> A farsang is four ENGLISH miles.

<sup>r</sup> Sect of the TURKS.

1720. “ like the former? Is there any great difficulty in counterfeiting a BUL<sup>s</sup>  
 “ in a country, where the most experienced SĀRAF<sup>t</sup> can hardly discern  
 “ a piece of spurious coin from that which has passed thro’ the royal mint.  
 “ These dumb testimonies determine nothing, if they are not supported  
 “ by other proofs: and what other proofs have they to alledge against  
 “ me? Every one knows, that the king having enjoined me by a special  
 “ commission to suppress the insolence of those mountaineers, I charged  
 “ my nephew with this expedition. Now this young man, whom I  
 “ loved as my son, and had publicly adopted as my heir, was slain by  
 “ those very LESGEES, with whom they pretend I held a criminal cor-  
 “ respondence: and surely his unhappy catastrophe is a full justification  
 “ of my conduct in this particular. The depredations of those people  
 “ ought not to be laid to my charge, but to those who were the cause  
 “ of them, by converting to their own use, for several successive years,  
 “ the subsidies granted by treaty to the LESGEES.

“ With respect to the execrable menaces which they accuse me of  
 “ having uttered at KOOM, surely it would be a matter of amazement to  
 “ all the world, if in so numerous a family as that of an ATHEMAT  
 “ DOULET, there was not one domestic to be found whom money could  
 “ corrupt. But tho’ this testimony is not sufficient, according to law;  
 “ yet there is the highest reason, since the sacred person of the prince  
 “ is concerned, that no means should be neglected that can confirm or  
 “ invalidate his allegation. Let this wretch be therefore put to the rack,  
 “ and he will declare the persons by whom he has been corrupted; by  
 “ which means perhaps a complete discovery will be made of the ini-  
 “ quitous designs of my enemies. ‘This,’ continued the minister, “ is  
 “ what I have to answer to the former parts of my charge; and it will  
 “ be as easy to justify myself in the latter.

“ During my whole administration, I never determined upon any af-  
 “ fair of moment without the king’s express directions: for the truth of  
 “ this I appeal to their majesties, who know it best. As to the ordinary  
 “ business

<sup>s</sup> The BUL generally contains the name of the person, oftentimes with the addition of a moral sentence, engraved on a seal, which they use with ink, as described in Vol. I. Chap. 47. in the manner as EUROPEANS subscribe their names.

<sup>t</sup> A money changer.



“ business of my ministry, I always consulted certain persons who now 1720.  
“ make this complaint, till I found them disaffected to my person, and  
“ too much attached to their own private interest, to give me any counsel  
“ capable of promoting the public good. If those very persons, who  
“ now seem so tender of the respect due to the supreme authority, had  
“ not often caused the orders sent into the provinces, even in the king’s  
“ name, to be revoked, they would not have the boldness to accuse me  
“ of a fault of which they are conscious of being guilty themselves. For  
“ my own part, I observed a quite different conduct, by making it a  
“ rule never to retract, either through interest or sollicitation, whatever I  
“ had once determined, after a thorough knowledge of the matter.

“ I could not have expected, I own, that I should be accused of having  
“ settled my daughters and nieces in a manner suitable to my dignity and  
“ their birth. Do my enemies imagine, that a minister so greatly fa-  
“ voured by his master, should forget himself to that degree, as to seek  
“ husbands for his daughters from among the dregs of the people; or  
“ dishonour the blood of the ancient kings of DAGHESTAN, from which  
“ he has the honour of being descended? Would they have me court  
“ the protection of eunuchs, and ally my family with their creatures and  
“ domestics? But not satisfied with reproaching me for the advantageous  
“ settlement of my daughters; they require me to make an excuse for  
“ the king’s indulgence, in granting the government of some provinces  
“ to two of my nephews. It is true, I solicited that favour, but not  
“ without a precedent; since their majesties had granted it to others who  
“ were never censured for it. Thus, great prince,” continued he, “ the  
“ fury of my enemies has transported them so far, that they are not afraid  
“ of challenging me for your goodness. They demand of me an account  
“ of my effects, and forgetting that I hold the greatest part of what I  
“ possess from the royal bounty; can they pretend to be ignorant that I  
“ was born to a great estate, that I inherit my brother’s fortunes, and  
“ that the good œconomy with which I have always lived, has increased  
“ my property. I intended to leave all to my nephews, and my daugh-  
“ ters; and so natural a consideration might have justified my parsimony:  
“ but what pretext have my enemies for their insatiable avarice! have  
“ they

1720. “ they any such relations, or are they capable of heirs<sup>u</sup>? What use would  
 “ they make of their riches, unless they would send every year to MECCA  
 “ and MEDINA camels loaded with wealth, and violate with impunity  
 “ the laws of the kingdom, by which such pilgrimages are expressly  
 “ forbidden?”

The ATHEMAT DOULET having finished his vindication; his accusers alledged against him further, that the expedition of BAHARAIN had miscarried by his collusion with the officers of the PORTUGUESE fleet: that in conjunction with LUTF ALI KHAN, he had betrayed the interests of the state, by not making a proper use of the consternation of the rebels after the victory of KHERMAN by laying siege to KANDAHAR; charging him with all the violences committed upon the sea coast towards the end of the campaign, and insisting on his declaring the motives that engaged his brother-in-law to march towards SHIRASS, instead of leading his army, as the court intended, against the AFGHANS.

“ I might very easily,” replied the minister, “ avoid entering into any  
 “ discussion upon this subject; for it would be sufficient for me to al-  
 “ ledge, that since no man is answerable for more than his own actions,  
 “ I cannot, without manifest injustice, be charged with any faults com-  
 “ mitted by my brother: but the conduct of this general has been so  
 “ prudent and so agreeable to the real interests of the state, that I am not  
 “ afraid to be answerable for his military operations. All the world  
 “ knows, that the great SHAH ABAS having dispossessed the PORTUGUESE  
 “ of the isle of ORMUS, by the assistance of the ENGLISH fleet<sup>w</sup>; this  
 “ prince, in order to preserve his conquest, without being obliged to  
 “ maintain a number of ships, concluded a peace with them, and con-  
 “ sented to let them have the moiety of the duties collected in the island,  
 “ which was afterwards valued at a certain sum. It is also well known,  
 “ that the funds appropriated to this use have been for many years applied  
 “ to other purposes: the ambassador whom their majesties appoint to  
 “ reside

<sup>u</sup> Here he alludes to the eunuchs.

<sup>w</sup> ALFONSO DE ALBUQUERQUE conquered the isle and city of ORMUS in 1507; it was taken again by the PERSIANS in 1622, when the ENGLISH had a grant of duties at BENDER ABASSI the new town.



“ reside at GOA, could not therefore engage the viceroy to send his fleet 1720.  
 “ into that sea, without promising to pay part of the arrears. But LUTF  
 “ ALI KHAN not being able to perform such agreement, for want of the  
 “ money, which was never remitted to him, as we can easily prove, the  
 “ PORTUGUESE commander, incensed at this breach of promise, not only  
 “ refused to take our troops on board, but put back to sea. This is the  
 “ plain matter of fact, the truth of which will be attested, if necessary,  
 “ by the commissary of this very fleet, who is now at ISFAHAN.

“ But LUTF ALI KHAN, they pretend, ought to have made a proper  
 “ use of his victory, by forcing the rebels in their own capital\*. Is it  
 “ possible that such arguments as these should come from persons who  
 “ concern themselves in the administration of public affairs? Is it not  
 “ well known, that this general had only a detachment of his army with  
 “ him? Would it have been right in him, without ammunition or pro-  
 “ visions, to undertake, just after the harvest, the siege of a place ex-  
 “ tremely well fortified, and defended by an army double the number  
 “ of his own? He was too prudent to take so rash a step, but contented  
 “ himself, for that time, with putting the city of KHERMAN in a posture  
 “ of defence; and I am not afraid to own, that it was by my advice he  
 “ afterwards joined the main body of his army. Having afterwards de-  
 “ termined to carry the war into the province of KANDAHAR, he set  
 “ about making the necessary preparations for this great expedition. He  
 “ was then obliged to make the province † furnish the money and pro-  
 “ visions for the subsistence of his troops; and if in the execution of  
 “ those orders, there was a mixture of prejudice or resentment, this is a  
 “ fault that ought not to be ranked amongst crimes committed against  
 “ the state.

“ Such was the real cause of those irregularities which have been so  
 “ greatly exaggerated. In regard to the motives which determined LUTF  
 “ ALI KHAN to advance towards SHIRASS, it is easy to account for them.  
 “ This general, grown wise by the fatal example of KHOSROFF KHAN,  
 “ had

\* KANDAHAR.

† KHERMANIA.

1720. “ had determined to surprize the rebels, lest they should destroy the  
 “ crop, which is gathered in that country two moons before the vernal  
 “ equinox. He could not therefore take a better measure, than to ad-  
 “ vance towards this city; because here he was in a situation to traverse  
 “ the deserts by the shortest way: besides, he considered that it was  
 “ much easier to form magazines in the center of a fruitful province, and  
 “ at no great distance from the capital, than on a barren coast. It is  
 “ notorious, that he spared neither money, sollicitations, nor care, to  
 “ gather in those provisions; and that I even sent, at my own expence,  
 “ 3000 camels loaded with rice. If we had any design, as our enemies  
 “ pretend, to march the army against ISFAHAN, the carrying away such  
 “ a prodigious quantity of provisions was an unpopular measure, and  
 “ tended to incense the people against us; for they were already irritated  
 “ by the burthens laid on them. But it is needless to spend any more  
 “ time in justifying a conduct, the rectitude and prudence of which are  
 “ evident: it is now time that their happy majesties, who are the shadow  
 “ of God upon earth, should determine the cause between innocence  
 “ and imposture.”

### C H A P. XIII.

*Death and character of the ATHEMAT DOULET. Excursions of the LES-  
 GEES. Magnanimity of VACHTANGA; he puts on the turbant, and is  
 named VALI of GEORGIA. Preparations made by this prince against  
 the LESGEES, whom he reduces to extremity. They are saved from de-  
 struction by a court intrigue. VACHTANGA takes an oath never to  
 appear in arms in defence of PERSIA.*

**F**ATEY ALI KHAN having thus finished his apology, the king, far  
 from being offended with the liberty with which he had delivered  
 himself, could not help weeping at the misfortunes occasioned by his  
 precipitate judgment. And yet as this disgrace was irreparable, and the  
 court imagined they could no longer put any confidence in a man whom  
 they



they had used so barbarously; after he had been a victim to malice and credulity, he fell a sacrifice to policy, and was sent a prisoner to the castle of SHIRASS: but SHAH HUSSEIN to soften in some measure the rigour of this sentence, granted him a considerable pension, and endeavoured to comfort him by representing the inevitable necessity of fate<sup>2</sup>. The ATHEMAT DOULET died in prison a little after the taking of ISFAHAN<sup>3</sup>. It was imagined that he made use of poison, fearing lest MIR MAGHMUD should oblige him to make discoveries prejudicial to the state: but it is more probable that he fell under the weight of his own misfortunes, and those in which his country was now involved, by the evil government of his enemies.

SHAH HUSSEIN thus lost the wisest of his ministers. He had the noblest mien of any person at court; and as he mentioned in his justification, owed to his œconomy and good management, that great fortune of which he was possessed. As to the conspiracy, it was undoubtedly a contrivance of his enemies; but tho' his integrity was untainted in this particular, his reputation was not without blemish. It is beyond dispute, that after MIR VAIS was sent prisoner to ISFAHAN, FATEY ALI KHAN took him under his protection, and sent him back to KANDAHAR. Now, whether he was moved by compassion for that prince, who was a SUNNI as well as himself; or whether he acted from an aversion to GURGHIN KHAN; or lastly, through the temptation of the great presents he received from the prisoner; it was certainly a dangerous step, and sufficient to render his fidelity suspected. Besides, he was already appointed ATHEMAT DOULET, or of the same party as the person who then occupied that post, when KHOSROFF KHAN marched against the AFGHANS; and this cabal was charged with being the cause of the death of that prince, and of the total defeat of the army.

But these are not the only crimes with which some writers have stained the memory of this minister. A missionary, who was at SHAMAKIE at the taking of that city, asserts, that FATEY ALI KHAN, provoked at not having been able to obtain of SHAH HUSSEIN the abolition of the CA-

L 2

RACK,

<sup>2</sup> Predestinarianism is a fundamental principle of the MAHOMMEDAN religion.

<sup>3</sup> By the AFGHANS near two years afterwards.

1720. RACK<sup>b</sup>, imposed on the SUNNIS, and the custom of uttering maledictions against the three first caliphs, with which the PERSIANS always end their public prayers, formed a project to subvert the government of the SCHIAS, and to ascend the throne himself. Filled with this idea, he saw no nation on whom he could depend so well as on the LESGEEES, because he was descended from their ancient kings, and moreover most of their tribes are of this sect. Hence he engaged them to take up arms, and to make incursions into the province of SHIRVAN; not questioning but as a considerable number of the inhabitants professed this same religion, the province would shake off the yoke, and join their forces to those of the rebels.

Be that as it may, SHAH HUSSEIN remained so strongly persuaded of the innocence of this minister, that tho' he had the great weakness to pardon his accusers, yet the conduct he observed towards those who had been confined upon this account, sufficiently evinces that he did not believe him guilty. All of them, without exception, had their estates restored to them; and if some who were possessed of governments had them taken from them, and others were detained at ISFAHAN, this was only thro' fear, lest they should be induced by their resentments to justify the suspicions conceived of them. It is even observed, that tho' the ATHEMAT DOULET's estate was confiscated; yet the several portions were excepted, which belonged to his sons-in-law, MAHOMMED KOULI KHAN, the prince of KAKET<sup>c</sup>, and to the KOULLAR AGASSI<sup>d</sup>, brother of the VALI of GEORGIA, as their wives portion. True it is, that as the fidelity of these lords was well known, they were not included in the number of those whom the court was to have an eye over; and LUTF ALI KHAN, who had been considered as one of the chiefs of the pretended conspiracy, and as such had been removed to TÆHIRAN, underwent no other punishment than that of restoring to the king the plunder he had taken upon the frontier,

<sup>b</sup> A poll-tax paid in MAHOMMEDAN countries by subjects who are of a different religion from that of the prince.

<sup>c</sup> KAKET, a province, the government of which is sometimes joined to that of KARABAGH, and sometimes to that of GEORGIA. It has also had its general governors; from whence they have derived the name of prince.

<sup>d</sup> The chief of the slaves: a body of cavalry, composed of men of distinction, who stile themselves the king's slaves.



frontier, and of being watched at ISFAHAN, not as a state-criminal, but as a man who had just cause to be disaffected to the government. 1720.

This storm was at length succeeded by some days of calm. The LES-GEES, whose incursions had given great uneasiness to the court, sent deputies to ISFAHAN to sue for a reconciliation. The anxiety with which this revolt had filled the minds of SHAH HUSSEIN and his ministers, was well founded: for those people having driven away the collectors and other officers belonging to the king, assembled towards the beginning of 1719 to the number of two thousand men; and, commanded by MULLA ABDALLAH, and KANLU SABAN, their chiefs, they made incursions, and spread terror and desolation in some of the neighbouring parts of GEORGIA. Their reputation and forces having increased by their success, they were joined by a body of near 30,000 of the inhabitants of SHIRVAN, who were of the sect of the SUNNIS, and pushed their hostilities to the gates of GANJA and SHAMAKIE. At length the khan, who commanded in the latter, having received orders to oppose these hostilities, marched at the head of forty thousand men against the rebels, who were then incamped in a plain between GANJA and the borders of SHIRVAN. But just when he was preparing to attack them, they surprized him in the night, so that part of his army was cut to pieces, and the remainder dispersed. The khan<sup>e</sup> himself perished on this occasion, with most of his principal officers.

The fear of the resentment of a power over whom they had obtained so signal a triumph, was not the motive which induced these people to sue for peace. They were determined to take this step by a more pressing consideration; which I shall explain by tracing matters somewhat higher.

After KHOSROFF KHAN was slain before KANDAHAR, VACHTANGA, as the eldest of the family, ought in course to have succeeded him in the dignity of VALI of GEORGIA; but as he refused to wear the turban<sup>f</sup>, his younger brother, tho' the patriarch of that country, offered himself

in

<sup>e</sup> This being the first battle of any consequence that was fought between the PERSIANS and LES-GEES in HUSSEIN'S reign, renders it probable, that this khan was the nephew of FATEY ALI KHAN mentioned in his vindication, page 78.

<sup>f</sup> This is sometimes used as an expression to denote the MAHOMMEDAN religion; tho' the ARMENIANS, who are christians, wear turbans in PERSIA.

1720. in his stead. Their father, then DIVAN BEGHI of ISFAHAN, tho' a MAHOMMEDAN himself, was so incensed at this scandalous proposal, that he ordered this irreligious priest to be bastinadoed, and kept to his sacerdotal function. The investiture of this principality was then given to the third son, who being less scrupulous than the eldest, and somewhat less culpable than the second, embraced the MAHOMMEDAN religion.

VACHTANGA, tho' banished to KHERMAN, persevered in his glorious resolution many years; but at length the solicitations of the court, joined to the irksomeness of his exile, overcame his constancy: he renounced, or more probably pretended that he renounced, christianity, and in consequence thereof was named VALI of GEORGIA. This new prince repaired to TEFFLIS in 1719: he was scarce arrived there, when beholding with sorrow and indignation, the devastations which the LESGEES had committed in his territories, he determined to revenge the cause of his people in such a manner, as should secure them for ages against their dangerous neighbours. Having obtained the consent of the nobility, who were convened upon this account, he ordered every GEORGIAN that was able to bear arms, to join him in that capital; he also made every other preparation that was necessary, and the ensuing spring would have been ready to take the field at the head of 60,000 men.

The LESGEES saw into his design, and concluded they were undone: their only resource was to implore the clemency of SHAH HUSSEIN, and to persuade this prince to interpose his authority in their favour. Such was the motive of the deputation they now sent: but the GEORGIANS were in arms, when the king's first MULLAH, and the physician <sup>h</sup>, invoked their infernal genius to conjure up another storm. These treacherous courtiers, reflecting that a son-in-law of the ATHEMAT DOULET, who lately fell a sacrifice to their impostures, was brother to this prince; were afraid lest after having defeated the LESGEES, he might attempt to make use of so fine an army, to oblige the court to punish them for their iniquitous conduct. They availed themselves therefore of the ascendant they had gained over their weak and deluded sovereign, and represented that VACHTANGA, after  
defeating

<sup>h</sup> HAKEM BASHI.



defeating his enemies, might occasion great troubles in PERSIA, especially 1720. as it would then be very easy for him to receive considerable succours from RUSSIA by sea: therefore the only way to prevent these misfortunes, would be to grant a peace to the LESGEES, and order the VALI to cease all hostilities, which would oblige this prince to disband his troops, and remove all apprehension of danger from his ambition; moreover, that this measure would prevent the depopulation of a province, which the vicinity of the sea rendered very considerable, without exposing PERSIA to any future invasions from those people; for the dread of being delivered up to the resentment of the GEORGIANS, would necessarily contain them within the bounds of their duty.

SHAH HUSSEIN, persuaded by this artful discourse, made no difficulty to grant a peace to the rebels. And without keeping any measures with the VALI of GEORGIA, he forbid him in the most imperious and haughty manner to give them any further disturbance. His orders were: “ If you have got your foot in the stirrup, alight immediately. If you have drawn your sabre, put it directly into the scabbard; and if you are in pursuit of the LESGEES, stop the moment you receive our commands; in a word, take the utmost care not to infringe the peace which they have obtained from the clemency of him whom the universe obeys.”

VACHTANGA was already in full march, and upon the point of crushing his enemies, when he received these strict and unwelcome orders. It is generally believed that the only motive which induced him to stop his pursuit, and obey the imprudent orders of the PERSIAN court, arose from an apprehension lest the chiefs of the nation should desert him, as they had formerly deserted GURGHIN KHAN. Be that as it may, he declared he would obey, but it was in terms that clearly demonstrated the height of his resentment. After ordering the courier into his presence, he drew his sabre, and swore he would never fight again in the service of the king, nor in the defence of PERSIA. He then disbanded his troops, and withdrew to TEFFLIS, fully determined to observe his oath inviolate.

---

P A R T IV.

T H E

R E V O L U T I O N S O F P E R S I A,

F R O M T H E

C O M M E N C E M E N T O F T H E Y E A R 1721,

T O T H E

B A T T L E O F G U L N A B A D I N 1722.

C H A P. XIV.

*Pacific dispositions of the AFGHANS. Uneasiness given to the court of ISFAHAN by the arrival of the TURKISH embassador. HUSSEIN sends an embassador to the grand signior; and frightened by various presages, returns to ISFAHAN. The LESGEES lay siege to SHAMAKIE, take it, and commit great cruelties; they make themselves masters of the rest of SHIRVAN, beat the KHAN of ERIVAN, and lay siege to GANJA. The court in great consternation.*

1721.

**A**T the commencement of this year, things seemed to promise tranquillity. The ready submission of the VALI of GEORGIA, and the pacification of DAGISTAN, put an end to the anxiety which had been created by the formidable army of that prince, and by the excursions of the LESGEES. Advice was also come, that the rebels of KANDAHAR, intimidated by their defeat, were ready to enter into an accommodation: and the peace and restitution of the isle of BAHARAIN, which were negotiated by the king's orders, and actually concluded in



the course of this year, by means of eight thousand tomans<sup>i</sup>, gave room to hope, that the monarchy thus delivered from its principal enemies, might subdue the rest, whom fear and example would hereafter contain within proper bounds. 1721.

But there was one circumstance which still disturbed the court. They had heard by letters from HASSAN BASHA, the governor of BAGDAT, that an embassador from the OTTOMAN port was ready to set out for TÆHIRAN: and as it was well known that the grand vizir<sup>k</sup>, ALI BACHA<sup>l</sup>, designed to declare war against PERSIA, when he was killed at the battle of PETERWARADIN<sup>m</sup>; they had reason to apprehend, lest his successor should inspire the grand signior with the same sentiments, especially at a time when the peace of PASSAROWITZ, and the intestine commotions of that kingdom, afforded a favourable opportunity for such an undertaking.

Under these circumstances, the timorous court of HUSSEIN concluded that this minister was come to demand the cession of some province, and to declare war in case of a refusal. And tho' the king had already resolved to send an embassador to CONSTANTINOPLE, in order to sound the disposition of the port; and, if there should be occasion, to purchase the continuation of the peace, by offering to yield some extent of territory towards ERIVAN or KERKOD; yet the uncertainty he was under, whether the TURKS would be contented with these terms, occasioned great uneasiness.

As the king could not avoid giving audience to this minister, the governors of the places through which he was to pass, had orders to receive him with all the honours and respect due to his character. He came by KERMANSHA, HAMADAN, DERGHESIN, and CASBIN to TÆHIRAN, where he arrived towards the beginning of JANUARY 1721, two months after his departure from the frontier, and the disgrace of the ATHEMAT DOULET.

The

<sup>i</sup> 20,000 l.

<sup>k</sup> Vazir or vizir, in the ARABIAN tongue signifies a porter. In TURKY this title is given to the counsellors of state; and that of vizir-azem, or grand vizir, is first minister.

<sup>l</sup> This minister was remarkable for his integrity; but he was severe, and hated the christians, whom he considered as the natural enemies of his master.

<sup>m</sup> A strong town of SCLAVONIA on the DANUBE, subject to the house of AUSTRIA.

1721. The embassador, whose name was DOURI EFFENDI<sup>n</sup>, has given the following relation himself of the ceremony of his being admitted to audience. “ In this order I went to the palace of TCHARBAG, where having alighted from my horse at the third gate, I entered the audience chamber. The SHAH was seated opposite the door: at his right and left were a great number of officers<sup>o</sup>: there were also thirty PERSIANS<sup>p</sup> magnificently armed, and about ten ministers or great officers of the kingdom; the latter were seated. I passed through the midst of them with a stately gait; I wore a stiff turbant on my head, a gown lined with sable on my shoulders, and held the imperial letter as high as my head. I walked on very gently till I came near the sofa, on which the SHAH was seated; and when I was within two steps of him, I raised the imperial letter with my right hand; and with my left, I saluted him in the manner soverieigns are saluted<sup>q</sup>, and I spoke to him thus:”

“ May health reside with thee<sup>r</sup>: GOD preserve me from the SCHEITHAN<sup>s</sup> ALRAGIM. In the name of the most merciful GOD, this present writing tells thee the truth<sup>t</sup>. Behold the most happy and most magnificent imperial letter of their majesties, the most magnificent, the most formidable, the most majestic, the most potent SULTAN ACHMED, KHAN GAZI<sup>u</sup>; may GOD give glory to those who assault him; soverieign of the two continents, emperor of the two seas<sup>w</sup>; who is a second ALEXANDER ZUL KARNEIN<sup>x</sup>; servant of the holy ORIENTAL cities<sup>y</sup>; fultan,

<sup>n</sup> Signifies skill'd in law. <sup>o</sup> Beglerbeks and khans. <sup>p</sup> Of those who are called KUZZLEBASH, which signifies red heads; so called from the crimson caps worn when they were first formed into a body under this name, by SHEICH HEYDR, father of ISMAEL I. of the SEFFIE dynasty. They have been sometimes considered as the janizaries, *i. e.* ingecherris among the TURKS, though this distinction is in a great measure lost, for the soldiers in general wear crimson caps; but the corps of every different nation are kept distinct. <sup>q</sup> I presume he took the hem of his garment and kissed it. <sup>r</sup> The

TURKS generally begin all their recitals and writings with an invocation. <sup>s</sup> SCHEITHAN or SATHAN, with us satan; whom the MAHOMMEDANS believe to have been cursed for having resisted the will of GOD, when he was commanded to prostrate himself before ADAM. RAGIM, according to some commentators, signifies deprived of grace. <sup>t</sup> A passage of the khoran. <sup>u</sup> This

surname is given to those MAHOMMEDAN princes, who have made conquests over the enemies of their religion. <sup>w</sup> The BLACK SEA, and the ARCHIPELAGO. <sup>x</sup> With two horns,

that is, whose empire embraces the east and west, named by the eastern people the horns of the world.

<sup>y</sup> MECCA and MEDINA.



“ fultan, fon of fultan. He wifhes all health to the moft fortunate pre- 1721.  
 “ fence of their majefties, the SHAH GEMJA<sup>z</sup>, whose crown glitters like  
 “ the fun, and defires to be informed of his precious health.

“ I made him this compliment in the tone in which we fing the EZAN<sup>a</sup>,  
 “ throwing my words into a cadence. The prime minifter<sup>b</sup>, who was  
 “ during this time on my right hand<sup>c</sup>, attempted twice to take the im-  
 “ perial letter from me; but I took no notice of him. The SHAH him-  
 “ felf ftretched out his hand with the fame intent; but your flave<sup>d</sup> caft  
 “ his eyes on no fort of object till he had finished his harangue. Then  
 “ I kifled the imperial letter; and raifing it twice to my head, I pre-  
 “ fented it to the SHAH, who had already thrice offered to take it. He  
 “ raifed himfelf on his knees to receive it; and having kifled it, he made  
 “ a fign to the chief of his eunuchs<sup>e</sup>, who came for it, kifled it, raifed  
 “ it twice to his head, and then held it in his hands. The SHAH or-  
 “ dered me at the fame time to fit down; but your flave out of refpect  
 “ refufed it. He commanded me a fecond time; and as I continued to  
 “ refufe it, the chief mafter of the ceremonies<sup>f</sup> took me hold by the  
 “ arms, and forced me to fit down<sup>g</sup>.”

The king asked the embaffador many queftions; and after they had dined in the fame hall according to cuftom, he took his leave of the king, and retired. The 10th of MARCH<sup>h</sup> SHAH HUSSEIN gave audience for the third and laft time to this embaffador: on which occafion a minifter from RUSSIA, two envoys from the OUSBEGS, and ninety-four deputies of the LESGEES were introduced. The latter were come to demand, each in the name of his particular tribe, the ordinary fubfidies,

## M 2

the

<sup>z</sup> As great and as potent as GEM OR GIAMSCHID, an antient king of PERSIA. <sup>a</sup> The EZAN is what they cry five times with a loud voice from their turrets, to give the people notice that it is the hour of prayer. <sup>b</sup> ATHEMAT DOULET. <sup>c</sup> GIAMSCHID, the antient king of PERSIA juft mentioned, gave the preference to the left; though in general the right is efteemed in the eaft, as with us in EUROPE. <sup>d</sup> This description was given to the grand fignior. <sup>e</sup> The KISLAR AGA. <sup>f</sup> The ESİK AGASI BASHI, chief mafter of the ceremonies, whose office it is to hold the embaffadors by the arm, while they pay their refpects to the king. <sup>g</sup> From this extract we may form an idea of the formal manner of a TURKISH writer, as well as of the ceremonies of a TURKISH embaffador at a PERSIAN court. <sup>h</sup> Vernal equinox, or PERSIAN NEW-YEAR'S-DAY.



1721. the payment of which had been settled by the late peace. The king being pre-possessed with an opinion that the TURKS intended to take an advantage of the divisions which had rent the kingdom, was agreeably surprized when the embassador of the port assured him, that his master was fully determined to observe the peace. The beginning of APRIL the TURKISH embassador set out on his return for CONSTANTINOPLE. MORTAZA KOULI KHAN, appointed embassador to that court, was also preparing to take the same rout, with a more explicit answer than that which the king had given to the TURKISH minister.

In the interim, the court received fresh alarms from the eastern parts of the empire: the governor of MESCHED,<sup>i</sup> acquainted the court by a letter, that the ABDOLLEES of HERAT had made great incursions; observing, that if speedy measures were not taken to protect the city and its dependencies against the rebels, they must soon be obliged to submit. This intelligence was soon followed by news of a more dreadful nature: the 26th of the same month, TAVRIS, the second city of the kingdom, and capital of the province of ADERBEITZAN, was destroyed by an earthquake, in which very near a hundred thousand of the inhabitants perished<sup>k</sup>.

Under these melancholy circumstances, SHAH HUSSEIN prepared to take his leave of TÆHIRAN, and return to ISFAHAN, where he arrived with his whole court the first of JUNE. Towards the end of this month, the consternation of the people was increased by a phænomenon, which might be considered as such in that climate. They were ten days without seeing the sun; during that time it is said the horizon was covered with a reddish cloud, with but little more light than when the sun is totally eclipsed<sup>l</sup>. The astrologers pretended that all these signs presaged great calamities to ISFAHAN; and the king having questioned them concerning the nature of these calamities, some of them predicted an earthquake like to that which had lately destroyed the city of TAVRIS; others, that fire would fall from heaven and cause a general conflagration; but not one of them had sense enough to see, or not honesty and courage enough to tell this.

<sup>i</sup> Capital of KHORASAN.

<sup>k</sup> The same fate happened in 1657.

<sup>l</sup> This circumstance, tho' seriously attested, the reader is at his liberty to believe: when mens minds are distempered with fear, they easily imagine they see spectres.



this monarch, that his effeminacy and weakness had rendered him contemptible; and that his own subjects, no longer restrained by fear, would be themselves the cause of all the misfortunes with which he was menaced. The king, as a further mark of his imbecillity, frightened at these predictions, quitted his palace, and went to lodge in tents: part of the court and of the inhabitants having followed the example of the prince, the gardens and public squares were filled with people.

Things were in this situation, when a new disgrace seemed already in some degree to verify the prediction. The LESGEES, restless and unmindful of their great obligations to HUSSEIN, remembered only the oath of VACHTANGA the VALI of GEORGIA; and being informed moreover that from a strong persuasion of their not daring to break a peace, which had been granted as so high a favour, the neighbouring provinces were bare of troops, they were emboldened by these circumstances, joined to that of SHAH HUSSEIN'S removal to TÆHIRAN, to make an irruption into SHIRVAN, under the command of SULTAN IBRAHIM, and DAUD BEG their chiefs.

The pretext with which they covered this revolt, was the disgrace of FATEY ALI KHAN, who had been condemned, they said, only because he was descended from their antient sovereigns. They soon made themselves masters of the flat country: but their aim was above destroying defenceless peasants, and plundering villages. The riches of SHAMAKIE, the capital of the province, equally excited the ambition and the avarice of their generals; and tho' their army, which consisted only of 15,000 men, did not seem strong enough for the execution of such a project, yet they appeared the 15th of AUGUST before that city; in hopes that they should be favoured in their enterprize by the SUNNIS, who were the most numerous part of the inhabitants. This conjecture was justified by the event. The governor, HUSSEIN KHAN, knowing how little he had to depend on the fidelity of the inhabitants, made no folly, lest he should be deserted by the people that followed him, or betrayed by those who staid behind in the town; so that he determined to make as good a defence as he could within the walls. This resolution, which was the only one he could take, enabled him to withstand the attacks of the enemy



1721. for the space of 25 days; and perhaps the length of the siege would have tired out the LESGEEES, if the SUNNIS, who kept a correspondence with the enemy, had not found means, in spite of all the vigilance of the governor, to open one of the gates to them. The besiegers rushed in immediately, making hideous shouts; but altho' the garrison was surprized, they were not beaten. All the LESGEEES could compass that day, was to force their way to the SUNNIS quarter, where they entrenched themselves. Early the next morning they marched out in good order, intending to complete the conquest of the city. The governor made some stand against them; but perceiving that he was deserted or betrayed by his people, he determined at length to provide for his own safety. His loyalty and courage had prevented his taking this resolution in time; for the enemy having detached some cavalry after him, they soon came up with him, and brought him back to the town.

The situation of SHAMAKIE rendered it a staple between the RUSSIANS and PERSIANS<sup>m</sup>; but the great plunder of it did not satisfy the avarice of the LESGEEES: their generals were hurried by this base passion, to commit the most barbarous cruelties against HUSSEIN KHAN. They put him to the acutest tortures, imagining he had buried his treasure; but whether it was that this nobleman had not concealed any, or indifferent about his life he did not regard their fury, he made no discovery; for which reason they cut him in pieces, together with his nephew, and another of his relations, and flung their bodies to the dogs.

About 4000 inhabitants were put to the sword; and this massacre would have been greater, if many had not saved themselves the night on which the enemy entrenched themselves in the quarters of the SUNNIS: for we must likewise observe, that the LESGEEES put none to the sword of that sect. They also spared the wives and children of the SCHIAS, not through any motive of compassion, but because, according to their law, the right of conquest had made them their slaves. The SUNNIS and the SCHIAS were not the only inhabitants of that city. There was likewise a considerable  
number

<sup>m</sup> I have already remarked in Vol. I. the great loss sustained by YEURIINOFF, a RUSSIAN merchant.



number of ARMENIANS, JEWS, INDIAN idolaters, and several RUSSIAN 1721.  
merchants; and tho' the conquerors granted no quarter to the SCHIAS,  
whom they did not make slaves, yet they spared the lives and liberty of  
these different nations, considering them as strangers; thus a sense of  
justice hindered them from confounding them with their enemies. But  
this is to be understood only in regard to their property: for they stripped  
their habitations of every thing that was valuable. The RUSSIANS lost  
a great value<sup>n</sup>, which contributed to create new enemies against PERSIA,  
as we shall see hereafter.

So many misfortunes, upon the back of each other, completed the  
consternation of the divan. SHAH HUSSEIN, who had neither resolution  
enough to bear such a reverse of fortune, nor abilities sufficient to prevent  
any further ill consequences, was the first whom the weight of the bur-  
then overcame. Being convinced that heaven had declared against him, he  
thought no longer of struggling with his misfortunes, but bent his whole  
attention to appease the divine wrath. All public diversions were for-  
bidden; harlots were expelled the town; fastings and public prayers were  
ordained; and the ministers of religion appeared in the public squares  
and market-places, exhorting the people to avert, by a sincere repentance,  
the calamities impending over their heads. This conduct, if it was pious,  
was not politic, for it rendered the consternation general; the people in  
every part of the town being heard to say in a mournful voice, "CHEIK  
" OGLOU<sup>o</sup> has finished his career; the fatal period of his government is  
" come; his tottering throne is going to crush us under its ruins."

In the mean time the LESGEES, who had made themselves masters of  
SHAMAKIE, took possession of the rest of SHIRVAN; after which, know-  
ing that the khan of ERIVAN had orders to throw himself into GANJA,  
they passed the KURA, and marched forward to meet him. Tho' this  
general was at the head of 40,000 men, yet he only contributed to in-  
crease the triumph of the rebels. Part of his army was cut to pieces in  
different engagements; the remainder fled towards ERIVAN: the LESGEES  
having

<sup>n</sup> About 100,000 l.      <sup>o</sup> The king, who is the son of CHEIK, a name given to the kings of  
PERSIA of the SEFFIE dynasty, because they were descended from CHEIK SEFFIE.

1721. having made themselves masters of his camp and equipage, besieged him in GANJA, whether he had retired after his defeat.

---

### C H A P. XV.

MIR MAGHMUD *raises an army of 15,000 men. He marches towards KHERMAN, and makes himself master of that city; from thence he proceeds to YEZD, and lays siege to it, but is obliged to retire. He leads his army through deserts towards ISFAHAN, and arrives at GULNABAD. The PERSIANS prepare to oppose him. Different opinions in the divan upon that subject.*

PERSIA thus saw herself threatened with a storm from all sides, when MIR MAGHMUD, the most formidable of her enemies, disclosed his ambitious designs. The AFGHANS disheartened by the defeat they had met with before KHERMAN, considered themselves as utterly undone, when they heard that LUTF ALI KHAN was making preparations for the siege of KANDAHAR. The prudence and valour of this general; the number and discipline of his troops; and the quantity of ammunition and provisions with which his magazines were filled, made them conclude that their ruin was inevitable. In this situation, the whole nation seemed desirous of a peace, and waited only for the approach of the enemy to sue for it. But they no sooner were informed of the imprisonment of LUTF ALI KHAN, and the disbanding of his army, than security and joy succeeded their fear. MIR MAGHMUD, whose authority had been in some measure destroyed by these melancholy circumstances, insensibly resumed the command of his people.

The first use which MAGHMUD made of this change, was to put himself in a condition of making a vigorous resistance, in case the PERSIANS should determine to pursue their design. With this intent, he omitted nothing that might contribute to the security of the province; he raised troops, ordered arms to be made, and filled the magazines with every thing necessary to hold out a long siege. These preparations were just

com-



completed at KANDAHAR, when they heard of the extremity to which the city of MESCHED was reduced. The news of the destruction of TAVRIS, and of the irruption of the LESGEEES, followed soon after; and these different events eased the minds of the people, and gave their chief an opportunity of forming new resolutions. 1721:

MAGHMUD's apprehensions being thus removed, he began to think of becoming formidable in his turn: the hopes of conquests, which his last defeat seemed to have stifled, now crowded again upon his imagination. To dispose the AFGHANS to enter into his views, he reminded them of the several circumstances that ought to dissipate every thought of danger: he observed to them, that the provinces of KANDAHAR, HERAT, SABLESTAN, MECRAN, and DAGISTAN, had shaken off the yoke; that SEGESTAN, KHERMAN, and the greatest part of the vast country of KHORASAN had been ravaged, and SHIRVAN invaded; that the dispersion of the army which was under LUTF ALI KHAN, and the oath of the VALI of GEORGIA, rendered PERSIA entirely defenceless. He put them in mind of the advantages which he had obtained over this nation, at a time when her power was really great; and relating the success of the KOURDS, the OUSBEGS, and the MASCATS, he made the AFGHANS believe, that the throne was ready to fall a prey to the first who would venture to seize on it.

Such discourses as these, accompanied with several marks of his liberality, could not but make an impression on the minds of a people, who were naturally inclined to war. Hence they talked of nothing but conquests; and the hopes of booty engaged 15,000 AFGHANS to lift themselves under the banners of their chief. But MAGHMUD being sensible that these forces were not answerable to the greatness of his design, applied himself to the means of increasing them.

For this purpose he had no occasion for long negotiations: the restless and turbulent spirit of the neighbouring nations soon determined them in his favour. At the first news of an intended expedition into PERSIA, the ABDOLLEES, BALOUCHES, the inhabitants of CABUL, and the neighbouring country flocked to him; and in a very short time his army was greatly

1721. augmented by these adventurers of several countries and religions. But among the different chiefs who joined him, AMAN OLA brought him the most considerable reinforcement. This captain, whom some have imagined to be a prince of CABUL, was originally only a simple dervise, but chusing a military life, was now at the head of a considerable body of troops, and joined MAGHMUD rather as an ally than as a subject: embarking in this enterprize, upon condition of making an equal division of the fruits of their conquests. The union of their forces did not constitute an army of above 25,000 fighting men: they took with them a few elephants for burthen, with a considerable number of camels; these with their drivers, the servants of the soldiers, and the domestics of the chiefs, made this army appear much more formidable than it really was. MAGHMUD never had so many troops under his command before. They were scarce assembled, when this young chief full of ardour and hopes, began to carry his enterprize into execution. He entrusted the regency of KANDAHAR to his brother; after which he crossed the deserts of SEGESTAN with the same precaution and fatigue as he had done the preceding year;
1722. and entering KHERMAN towards the beginning of JANUARY this year, he sat down before the capital of that province.

This city did not make any long resistance. The PERSEES<sup>p</sup>, and the INDIANS, who were settled there, having refused to fight against an army which consisted partly of troops of their own nation, soon obliged the remainder of the inhabitants, who in other respects were not prepared for a siege, to open the gates to the enemy. When MAGHMUD was master of the town, his next point was to take the citadel. He tried several times to carry it by assault; for as he had no cannon fit for a siege, this seemed the only way he could take it: but he met with such a warm and gallant reception from the garrison, which had been left there by LUTF ALI KHAN, that he soon began to despair of success. Being thus provoked at a resistance which he did not expect, he knew not what measures to take. He was sensible of the consequences of his undertaking: he

<sup>p</sup> The PERSEES are the descendants of the antient PERSIANS, who worshipped fire, and have preserved their religion. These people are best known in the east, and even among us, by the name of GAUR or GEBER, which in the PERSIAN language signifies an infidel or an idolater.



he could not raise the siege without losing his reputation, by acknowledging himself defeated, at the very commencement of the campaign. Besides, how could he pretend, after miscarrying before so inconsiderable a place, to attack the capital of a vast empire? But it was yet a greater difficulty by what means to take a citadel strongly fortified, and provided with a numerous garrison. Some of the bravest of his men had thrown away their lives to no purpose; and several others, discouraged by the repulse, had already deserted him, and set out on their return to KANDAHAR; so that if he persisted in his design, it seemed to threaten the total dispersion of his army.

His mind was occupied with these reflections, when the governor, frightened at such vigorous attacks, or apprehensive of the want of provisions, offered to treat with the besiegers. He required that the army should raise the siege; and on his side he would pay, as an indemnity or ransom, 2500 tomans<sup>9</sup>. Tho' the tendency of this extraordinary capitulation was to preserve, and not to surrender the place, yet the present circumstances were such, that the proposals were received with joy. As soon as the money was paid, the hostilities, which had been already suspended, intirely ceased.

Fortune having thus favoured MAGHMUD, he now thought of pursuing his first design. He had lost 4000 men in crossing the desert, and at the siege; but the present conjuncture gave him a fair occasion of reinforcing his army. Many of the inhabitants of KHERMAN are PERSEES, who, from the remembrance of their past grandeur, being enemies of the reigning nation, were naturally inclined to espouse the cause of a prince, whom they considered as the scourge of their tyrants.

A few days after the capitulation, MAGHMUD marched at the head of his army towards the north, taking the road to YEZD. This city is situate about seventy leagues from KHERMAN: the country between is very sandy, and has only a few inconsiderable villages, at a great distance from each other. This circumstance shews, that this prince's view was not to enrich himself with the spoils of the open country, in the fruitful plains of

1722. FARŠ<sup>r</sup>: his thoughts were engaged upon another object; and he avoided every thing that might retard the execution of his design. He knew very well that he should not meet on this road with any fortrefs that might stop him, or with towns where his troops might be incumbered with pil-lage. It was with this very intent he preferred the road through the de-ferts, upon his first setting out, instead of taking the ordinary rout, which was much shorter and easier.

As soon as he arrived before YEZD, he attempted to take the town by assault, attacking it with all his troops on every side; but he was on every side repulsed with loss. Being grown more circumspect by his mis-takes, he resolved not to persist in the siege, the consequence of which must be extremely dangerous. He therefore continued his march; and after having proceeded with all possible expedition through the plains<sup>s</sup>, which separate the city of PAHANAVENS from that of BIBEN, at length he entered the cultivated country. The people, terrified at his approach, deserted the villages and towns that lay in his way; so that nothing retarded the rapidity of his march. At length, having dispersed some troops that seemed to have been sent rather to reconnoitre than to fight, he arrived within four days march of ISFAHAN; when two officers, who were de-puted by the court, were conducted into his presence.

MAHOMMED KOULI KHAN, then prime minister<sup>t</sup>, not knowing how to avert so sudden a storm, had sent these officers to treat with him: ac-cordingly they opened their commission, which was to offer him a sum of 15,000 tomans<sup>u</sup>, on condition that he would not proceed any farther, and that his troops should commit no devastation in the territory of IS-FAHAN. MAGHMUD judged from hence of the weakness and terror of the enemy, and dismissing the deputies without making any answer, ad-vanced with his usual diligence, and pitched his camp at GULNABAD<sup>w</sup>.

It is far easier to imagine, than to describe the terror with which the king and his ministers were seized, when they heard that MAGHMUD was marching

<sup>r</sup> FARŠISTAN OR PERSIA properly so called.

<sup>s</sup> This country abounds in nitre.

<sup>t</sup> ATHEMAT DOULET.

<sup>u</sup> 37,500 l.

<sup>w</sup> three leagues from ISFAHAN.

<sup>v</sup> Signifies conserve of roses. This village is



marching directly to ISFAHAN. They had lull'd themselves into security, 1722. from a persuasion that this prince would not leave behind him unconquered so vast a tract of country; and little thought that he would open the campaign in the very center of the empire; consequently they had not made the necessary preparations to oppose him. Hence there was neither ammunition nor provisions in ISFAHAN; and as the celerity of the march of the rebels, had not afforded time to collect the different bodies of troops, that were dispersed on the frontiers, they were absolutely at a loss how to stem the torrent. However, as something must be done, they collected the few troops that were at hand; to these they joined the militia, that was raised in a hurry in the city and the neighbourhood; and all the lords of the court, excepting those whose profession was inconsistent with arms, being ready to mount on horse-back, the army waited only the king's orders.

As this monarch was incapable of forming any resolution himself, he waited with impatience to hear what the divan would determine. In time of distress, when a union of counsels is most necessary, the pusillanimity of some, and the wickedness of others, generally create perplexity. The council was divided in opinion: the prime minister gave his advice not to hazard a general action, but to intrench their army, and cover the town. "By this means," said he, "our new troops will be insensibly  
"accustomed to see the enemy; a few skirmishes will rouse a martial  
"spirit by degrees; if the rebels attempt to force our lines, we shall fight  
"them to an advantage; if this measure should oblige them to continue  
"in their camp, it will be an easy thing to starve them, by cutting off  
"their provisions: thus the issue of the war will be protracted, and the  
"troops dispersed in the provinces will have time to join us, and cut off  
"the retreat of the rebels."

This was the opinion of the ATHEMAT DOULET. On the contrary, ABDALLAH KHAN, VALI of ARABIA, now at ISFAHAN, maintained,  
"that it was beneath the majesty of the empire to temporize with rebels  
"and slaves; that the grandeur of the king, and the honour of the nation,  
"were concerned to chastise their insolence. Why," said he, "should

1722. “ the frontiers be exposed to new invasions? The king’s troops are in-  
 “ censed; they long for battle; the best way therefore is to make use  
 “ of this first ardour of the soldiers, and to crush an infatuated youth,  
 “ who by the victory of LUTF ALI KHAN, and his miscarriages at KHER-  
 “ MAN and YEZD, ought to have learnt the difference between soldiers  
 “ and robbers.”

The ATHEMAT DOULET’s advice was certainly the most prudent and safe; but that of the ARABIAN prince suited most with the pride and revenge with which the divan was animated. PERSIA devoted to ruin, had hardly a single advocate devoid of passion, and whose mind was free from prejudice or treachery: the latter opinion was preferred by the plurality of suffrages, and as soon as they heard that the AFGHANS were arrived at GULNABAD, the army received orders to march and fight them. MAGHMUD was not surprized at this determination; for he never dreamt that the king would submit to see his capital besieged, without trying the issue of a battle; and therefore as he knew neither the number nor valour of his enemies, he intrenched himself in his camp.

---

## C H A P. XVI.

*The PERSIAN army marches to fight the AFGHANS. The day of battle is fixed by the astrologers. Order of battle, and disposition of both armies. The singular conduct of the two princesses of LORISTAN. Particular account of the battle of GULNABAD. Cause of the success of the AFGHANS. Reflexion on the conduct of the VALI of ARABIA.*

**T**HE seventh of MARCH the PERSIAN army appeared within sight of the enemy’s intrenchments; but SHAH HUSSEIN having, by the advice of his astrologers, fixed the eighth of that month for the engagement, there passed only some light skirmishes the first day. It was given out in the PERSIAN camp, that MAGHMUD, surprized at the number and beauty of the king’s troops, proposed to make his escape with a thousand of his best horse. The PERSIAN generals spread these reports in order to

encourage



encourage their soldiers; for they could not really think, that this prince intended to sacrifice, by an ignominious flight, his subjects and allies to the fury of an enemy, in search of whom he had made so long and so extraordinary a march. 1722.

SUNDAY the eighth of MARCH, according to the vain prognostics of the astrologers, was to deliver the PERSIAN monarchy. The generals began early in the morning to range their troops in order of battle. On the side of the PERSIANS; the center, which seemed to be designed only for a body of reserve, was given to CHEIK ALI KHAN, general of horse. He had under him several khans with their troops, 4000 of the king's horse, and the same number of his foot guards; the latter being armed with musquets and sabres: these were covered at some distance by a battery of 24 pieces of cannon, defended, and served by 2000 cannoneers, under the command of MAHOMMED KHAN, grand master of the artillery<sup>x</sup>.

The right wing was formed of 2000 of those horsemen who are called the king's slaves<sup>y</sup>, some of whom are armed with bows and arrows, and others with fusils and pistols; there were likewise some khans, and several other lords with their attendants. This wing was under the command of ROSTAM KHAN, the KOULAR AGASSI<sup>z</sup>, brother of VACHTANGA, VALI of GEORGIA. The VALI of ARABIA, who shared the general command of the army with the ATHEMAT DOULET, had strengthened this wing with a body of 3000 cavalry of his own nation, at the head of whom he intended to fight.

The ATHEMAT DOULET commanded in the left wing, which was composed of the king's household; the lords belonging to the court, and the rest of the nobility. ALI MERDAN KHAN<sup>a</sup>, VALI of LORISTAN<sup>b</sup>, joined them in person with 500 horse. Such was the order of battle in the king's army. They had, besides the forces above-mentioned, 18,000 infantry.

<sup>x</sup> TOPCHI BACHI.      <sup>y</sup> KULAMS.      <sup>z</sup> General of the slaves.      <sup>a</sup> It is affirmed that two daughters of this prince attended him in his former expeditions against the TURKS in mens habits, and now fought by his side.      <sup>b</sup> The province of LORISTAN is a mountainous country, that formerly depended on CHUSISTAN, or the antient SUSIANA; but having been peopled by colonies of the KOURDS, it was afterwards comprized in KOURDISTAN. BERONGIERD, a place situate near HAMADAN, is its principal fortrefs. We must take care not to confound this place with LARISTAN, which is on the sea coast.

1722.antry of militia, raised upon this occasion in the neighbourhood of the city, who were armed with musquets. The different troops formed all together a body of near 50,000 fighting men.

There is no agreement in the accounts of those who were at ISFAHAN during the siege, in regard to the number of soldiers in MAGHMUD'S army: the most probable opinion is, that it was not above half the number of the king's troops. It consisted chiefly of cavalry; these were armed with a sabre and lance, which those people handle with equal dexterity: their defensive armour are a buckler and cuirass, made of a double fold of hard leather, and many of them carry pistols. Their whole army was divided into four unequal parts: the most numerous formed the right wing under the command of AMAN OLA. MAGHMUD was in the second division, which he placed in the center: he gave the command of the third to NASR ULLAH, a PERSEE, whom he had made one of his lieutenant-generals: and the fourth, and least numerous of these bodies, were choice men of the PEHLEVANS or NÆSSAKHCHI<sup>c</sup>. The length and celerity of MAGHMUD'S march, as we have observed, did not permit him to bring any cannon with him; but he supplied this defect in some measure by a very extraordinary artillery: these are a kind of harquebuses, which carry a handful of musquet balls; each of these pieces, with its stock, was mounted on a camel, which lay down at command; and from the backs of these animals, trained to this exercise, they charged and fired these arms<sup>d</sup>.

The sun had just appeared on the horizon, when the armies began to observe each other with that curiosity, so natural on these dreadful occasions. The PERSIAN army just come out of the capital, being composed of whatever was most brilliant at court, seemed as if it had been formed rather to make a shew than to fight. The riches and variety of their arms and vestments; the beauty of their horses; the gold and precious stones with which some of their harnesses were covered; and the richness of their tents, contributed to render the PERSIAN camp very pompous and magnificent.

On

<sup>c</sup> The name which the AFGHANS give to their forlorn hope, which go on the most desperate actions. <sup>d</sup> NADIR SHAH afterwards used these kind of arms with great success: they are long, and carry a great distance.



On the other side there was a much smaller body of soldiers, disfigured with fatigue, and the scorching heat of the sun. Their cloaths were so ragged and torn, in so long a march, that they were scarce sufficient to cover them from the weather; and their horses being adorned with only leather and brass, there was nothing glittering among them but their spears and sabres. 1722.

The two armies stood in fight of each other the greatest part of the day, without making any motion on either side, but seeming rather to stand in mutual awe. MAGHMUD embraced this opportunity to ride through the ranks, and to encourage his soldiers. “ He represented to the PERSEES, that the hour was now come, which would free them from the yoke of their tyrants; that liberty was now in their own hands, if they would prove themselves, on this occasion, worthy heirs of the valour of their ancestors.” Turning to the AFGHANS and the BALOUCHES, “ he exhorted them to fight with that bravery which had rendered them so often triumphant over their enemies; he reminded them of those glorious feats, and desired them to look upon the riches of ISFAHAN as the first fruit of an easy victory; a victory, without which they must inevitably perish, either by the sword in their retreat, or by hunger and thirst in the deserts.”

While MAGHMUD was thus endeavouring to inspire his troops with that ardour, which they stood in need of on so important a conjuncture, the PERSIANS were taken up in debates. Though the king had sent positive orders to fight, yet the ATHEMAT DOULET, who shared the general command with the VALI of ARABIA, insisted strongly that they should avoid coming to an engagement: “ It is true,” said he, “ we may expect the most generous efforts of the PERSIAN valour, on an occasion in which the safety of the empire, and the liberty of the emperor are at stake: but what does valour avail, if it be not armed and directed by experience? Almost all our infantry, who are the principal part of our forces, are novices in the duty of a soldier; they are entire strangers to the use of the musquet; and have we then any reason to expect that they will be able, in this undisciplined state, to stand the shock

1722. “ of the enemy’s cavalry, or to attack in such order as to pierce thro’ their  
 “ squadrons? Too much security is oftentimes the cause, that even the best  
 “ concerted undertakings miscarry. Let us not despise an enemy whom  
 “ fortune favours: we have 4000 pioneers with us, let these cover the  
 “ army with intrenchments; and if you are absolutely determined to hazard  
 “ a battle, these lines bordered with cannon and infantry will be a sure  
 “ place of retreat, in case of a misfortune. But my opinion, is to wait till  
 “ famine compels the enemy to attack us in our entrenchments; then  
 “ our cavalry sallying forth from the extremities, will take them in flank;  
 “ and will meet with so much the less resistance, as they will have to deal  
 “ with troops already shattered and broken by the continual fire to which  
 “ they must be exposed.”

Thus the ATHEMAT DOULET endeavoured to bring them over to an opinion, which differed but little from that which he had openly declared in council. The proposal was prudent, inasmuch as it left very little to hazard, and secured all the advantage that ought to be expected from their infantry, which otherwise must be useless. The officers who commanded in the center<sup>e</sup>, struck with these reasons, had already approved the project; when the VALI of ARABIA, and the KOULAR AGASSI, who were afraid lest this opinion should be followed by the rest of the principal officers, cried out: “ This is no time to debate, but to fight; it  
 “ would be an eternal shame to so numerous an army, in which is the  
 “ flower of the nobility of the empire, to be afraid of appearing before  
 “ a gang of robbers and rebel herdsmen.” Saying this, they waited for no answer, but retired, and mounting led on their squadrons against the enemy: this served as a signal to the troops, who all moved forward at the same time, and fell upon the left wing of the AFGHANS with such impetuosity, as flung them into disorder.

MAGHMUD, who observed both armies from a throne raised on the back of an elephant, was surprized at this shock, and began to think that all was lost. His alarm was caused by the VALI of ARABIA, who having made a long winding to the right at the head of a body of ARABIAN cavalry,

<sup>e</sup> The general of horse, and the general of the artillery.



valry, overthrew all he met in his way, and made himself master of the camp of the AFGHANS. It is reasonable to believe, that the affair would have been soon determined in favour of the PERSIANS, if he had returned directly and charged the enemy in the rear. MAGHMUD, terrified at the danger, was preparing for flight, and had ordered the lightest of his dromedaries to be made ready for him; when a circumstance arose, that inspired him with more courageous resolutions. The ATHEMAT DOULET seeing both armies engaged, returned to his post, and charged the right wing of the enemy with as much bravery, as he had before given marks of prudence. AMAN OLA, who commanded that wing, made a feint of giving way, and retired gradually without breaking his ranks; but he had hardly let the enemy gain fifty paces upon him, when ordering his men to open their ranks of a sudden, one hundred camels appeared kneeling, each of which had one of the harquebuses above-mentioned on his back. The PERSIANS astonished at this unexpected sight, and a general discharge of this little artillery being made, most of the fore-most rank were killed, and the AFGHANS making loud shouts, attacked the rest, and obliged them to turn their backs.

AMAN OLA made the proper use of this stratagem: for without giving the PERSIANS time to recover themselves, he pursued them up to their battery, which he came behind, and having cut the cannoneers in pieces that guarded it, he caused the cannon to be pointed against the center of the PERSIAN army, who were thus put to flight before they had fought a blow. This artful step decided the fate of the day. The VALI of LORISTAN, who had lost one of his brothers in the action, and had been also wounded himself, seeing every thing rendered desperate by the defeat of the left wing, and of the center, went off directly with what soldiers he had remaining, and retired into his province. His example was followed by FERIZ OULLAH, KHAN of HAMADAN, and by ALI RIZA, KHAN of COHKILAN<sup>f</sup>, who having called off their troops, retired each to his respective province.

In the mean time, the VALI of ARABIA having made himself master of MAGHMUD's camp, amused himself with plundering the baggage; and

<sup>f</sup> A country situate ten days journey from ISFAHAN towards BASSORA.

1722. tho' he had observed the enemy's motion, yet instead of attacking them in the rear, as was expected, he refused the succours, that with repeated instances were demanded of him. The AFGHANS therefore had no enemy to oppose, except the KOULAR AGASSI. This general endeavouring to vindicate his opinion given in council, continued to fight with redoubled courage and resolution. Being determined to conquer or die, he had already cut part of the opposite wing in pieces, and pushed the remainder as far as their entrenchments, when MAGHMUD seeing the field almost clear of the enemy, advanced to take him in the rear. This motion dispersed the PERSIANS, who composed the greatest part of the troops of this gallant officer; but a body of 400 GEORGIANS refusing to desert him in this extremity, he defended himself on all sides with the utmost intrepidity; till at length, after having had two horses killed under him, he was overpowered with numbers, and with the companions of his glorious temerity, died sword in hand. The defeat of this valiant troop completed the victory. The VALI of ARABIA loaded with MAGHMUD's treasure, and with the plunder of the camp, had by this time taken the road to the town, which he entered by the opposite gate <sup>z</sup> to that <sup>h</sup> by which the army had marched out against the enemy.

Such was the fatal issue of the battle of GULNABAD, in which the PERSIANS, so long accustomed to blunders in politics, took two dangerous steps; one was, to divide the command between two generals who did not agree; the other, to plant their batteries so forward, that they could not be properly supported. This last circumstance, and the sagacious conduct of AMAN OLA, gave the victory to the AFGHANS: but we may say, that the treacherous conduct of the VALI of ARABIA decided the battle <sup>z</sup>. The king's army lost 15,000 men; a number which will not appear exaggerated, if we consider the circumstances of the engagement. The  
greatest

<sup>z</sup> The DER TOKCHI in the east part of ISFAHAN.      <sup>h</sup> The HAJAN in the west.      <sup>i</sup> It has been much doubted, if the VALI of ARABIA was induced to act this base part, merely from the temptation of plunder, or from resentment of the opposition which the ATHEMAT DOULET made to his proposals; he might be indifferent, at that time, which side obtained the victory, but his conduct afterwards proved him a traitor; nor do we find that he attempted to vindicate his conduct, or acknowledge that he had been guilty of an error, nor even that the natural avidity of his ARABIANS was not to be restrained.



greatest part of the troops under the command of the KOULAR AGASSI, fell in the field of battle; the infantry was in a great measure exposed to the mercy of the conqueror; and the 2000 cannoneers, with their general, were all slaughter'd at their post. The loss of the AFGHANS was inconsiderable; and the treasure, the artillery, and baggage of the PERSIAN army, was an ample recompence for the plunder which the ARABIANS had taken in their camp.

1722.

PART

---

P A R T V.

T H E

R E V O L U T I O N S O F P E R S I A,

F R O M T H E

B A T T L E O F G U L N A B A D,

T O T H E

A B D I C A T I O N O F S U L T A N H U S S E I N, A N D T H E

T A K I N G O F I S F A H A N.

C H A P. XVII.

*The king calls a council, and determines to remain in ISFAHAN. Preparations to defend the city. Orders sent to the khans of the provinces. The VALI of LORISTAN is declared generalissimo. MAGHMUD encamps at CHEERESTAN. Description of FARABAD; the AFGHANS take possession of it, and appear before JULFA. Description of JULFA, and the situation of the ARMENIANS.*

1722.

**A**S soon as the news arrived of the defeat of the PERSIAN army, which was commanded by the greatest part of the nobility of the kingdom, the city of ISFAHAN was under a general consternation. The PERSIAN troops, who fled from the field of battle, exaggerated the valour and conduct of the enemy, which served to increase the panic; insomuch, that the inhabitants of this great city already figured to themselves the distresses which followed not long after, and imagined they saw the AFGHANS, with their drawn sabres, practising all imaginable barbarities.

Under



Under these extremities the king called a council, in which he represented the danger his person would be exposed to, if he stood a siege in a city unprovided with ammunition and provisions; and whose ruinous walls could be but a feeble barrier, when defended by troops disheartened by their late defeat. His danger had however inspired him with some degree of fortitude; and with an air of dignity, in a very pathetic strain, he spoke to them to this effect: “ It is not for my own security, that I  
 “ propose to remove; a prince, who is afraid to die with his subjects, is  
 “ unworthy to rule over them: but the greatest part of the provinces still  
 “ obey me; their fate is connected with mine; for the rebel will be  
 “ master of the empire, as soon as he has my person in his power.”

The ATHEMAT DOULET confirmed the king's remarks; adding, that it would be very imprudent to expose the king's person to the hazard of such an event; that it would be adviseable for his majesty to retire that very night to CASBIN, while the enemy, yet intoxicated with their victory, would take no measures to oppose his retreat; that when the SHAH should be at full liberty, he might easily assemble an army, capable to raise the siege, and destroy the AFGHANS: that at all events, the loss of ISFAHAN would be only the loss of one city, which MAGHMUD could not keep with so small a number of troops; whereas, if the king should shut himself up there, the loss of ISFAHAN would draw on that of the monarchy.

This speech seemed to convince the greatest part of the assembly; when the VALI of ARABIA, who had so basely betrayed his trust that very day, and yet, by a strange fatality, was continued in his office, stood up, and spoke to this effect: “ It is debating to a great disadvantage,  
 “ just after the loss of a battle. Whilst men are affected with fear, in con-  
 “ sequence of a recent misfortune, whatever their natural intrepidity and  
 “ discernment may be, they are but ill capable of distinguishing the real  
 “ magnitude of objects: even prudence loses its very nature, and be-  
 “ trays itself. A panic terror, caused by a trifling unforeseen accident,  
 “ has snatched the victory out of our hands. Ought such an accident,  
 “ which is not uncommon in war, to make us tremble before a weak

1722. “ and contemptible enemy? Besides, were it presumed that their chief  
 “ will undertake to lay siege to so large and so populous a city as this, he  
 “ would hardly dare to enter it with the contemptible gang of robbers  
 “ about him. What is there then to fear? If he should be bold enough  
 “ to appear before our walls, the presence of the SHAH will encourage  
 “ their defenders; and the whole empire, incensed at this attempt, will  
 “ fly to the assistance of their sovereign. But if his majesty should de-  
 “ prive these loyal inhabitants of the opportunity of exerting that va-  
 “ lour, which his presence inspires, such a step will not only stain his  
 “ honour, but dishearten all his faithful subjects, and encourage the re-  
 “ volved: such a behaviour, much sooner than the force of arms, will  
 “ open ISFAHAN to the conqueror; and the rest of the empire, amazed  
 “ to see a base SUNNI<sup>i</sup> on the sacred throne of the successors of ALI,  
 “ will not stir in defence of their prince, because they will conclude  
 “ his fate irretrievable.”

The boldest opinion prevailed over the most prudent. SHAH HUSSEIN was ashamed to abandon his capital, and therefore determined to defend it; so that nothing more was thought on, than to make a vigorous resistance against the enemy. New levies were made; the ruinous parts of the walls were repaired; intrenchments were thrown up in those places which were most exposed, and especially at the head of the bridges which open a communication with the suburbs; and every other precaution taken, that the proximity of the danger, and the inexperience of the ministers would permit. The VALI of ARABIA was appointed governor of the town; and SHAH HUSSEIN sent messengers to the khans of the different provinces yet under his dominion, ordering them to repair with all the forces of their governments to HONSAR<sup>k</sup>, where they were to join the VALI of LORISTAN, whom he had declared generalissimo of his armies. In fine, this monarch, more sensible than ever of the mistake he committed in treating the VALI of GEORGIA with such imperiousness, sent magnificent presents to this prince, and wrote to him in the most pressing manner, to persuade him to march to his assistance.

These

<sup>i</sup> It may be presumed that he pretended to be a SCHIAS, tho' he was a SUNNI himself.

<sup>k</sup> This city is said to be about five leagues from ISFAHAN.



These regulations were prudent and suitable to the situation of affairs; 1722. but in the interim proper care was not taken to provide for a siege. The inhabitants of the open country, flying from the cruelty of the conqueror, flung themselves in crowds into the city; insomuch that the public squares, the gardens, and the streets, were every day filled with this useless multitude. The king, who did not consider the difference between a common man and a soldier, not only neglected giving orders upon this subject, but seemed to forget that there were no magazines of provisions in the city; and the dictates of fear suggesting to him, that his security must arise from his numbers, he forbade upon pain of death, every person in ISFAHAN, whether inhabitant or stranger, to stir from thence. In the mean while, some ARABS who had been sent upon the scout, having brought intelligence, that the rebels had left on the field of battle the 24 pieces of cannon, which they had taken in the engagement, a detachment of troops was sent to bring back the artillery; which they executed without any obstruction from the enemy, who continued quietly in their camp.

This inactivity was owing to the wavering disposition of MAGHMUD: he, who had hitherto shewn himself active and enterprising, now seemed astonished at his own victory. The little success he had at KHERMAN and YEZD; the vast extent of ISFAHAN, and the number of troops within its walls, gave him reason to apprehend, that the siege would be of long continuance; and that the governors of the provinces would have time to crush him with the joint forces of the empire: on the other hand, he could not with honour, nor common safety, abandon an enterprize, which had already cost him so much labour. Thus his mind was agitated with these different thoughts, when the return of the spies, whom he had sent into the city, removed his anxiety. By these he was informed of the great consternation into which the PERSIANS were thrown; from whence he concluded, that if instead of giving the enemy time to recover themselves, he had pursued them to the gates of ISFAHAN, he might have made himself master that very day of the king's throne and person. He resolved therefore to pursue his fortune. With this view he



1722. began his march, and plundering every place by the way, he encamped the 12th of the same month with his whole army near CHEERESTAN, a town a little to the eastward of ISFAHAN.

The PERSIANS finding the AFGHANS had abandoned the artillery above-mentioned<sup>1</sup>, began to think they had no intention to lay siege to the town; but this motion of the enemy's army undeceived them, as to the fond expectation they had entertained, concerning the retreat of the AFGHANS. The first step they took in consequence of this discovery, was to abandon FARABAD, a country-palace three miles from ISFAHAN. SHAH HUSSEIN, who had exhausted the treasures amassed by the kings his predecessors, to indulge his passion for building, had spared no expence to render this palace worthy of a great monarch. In fact, it was so spacious and magnificent, that he had often entertained thoughts of abandoning the capital, to make this his ordinary residence. The palace was encompassed with strong lofty walls, flanked at small distances with towers. In his present circumstances, this place ought therefore to have been considered as a fortress which might incommode the enemy, or at least retard their operations; but the rebels were scarce arrived at CHEERESTAN, when orders were sent to abandon FARABAD; which was executed in so imprudent a manner, that altho' the PERSIAN garrison might have easily carried off the cannon, they contented themselves with burying them.

This was too gross a blunder to escape the AFGHANS: some of their squadrons who were upon the scout, hearing what had passed, marched with all expedition, and took possession of the castle and its artillery, the 19th of the same month, without meeting with any opposition: they were soon joined by the rest of the army. MAGHMUD being now advantageously situated, and master of several pieces of cannon, determined to repair the loss of time, occasioned by his late irresolution; accordingly he mounted on horse-back, and appeared the same day before JULFA

This town is situated only a mile and a half south of ISFAHAN, on the south banks of the river ZENDEROD, or fresh river, on the side of which  
it

<sup>1</sup> It is hard to reconcile this conduct, otherwise than by supposing that the AFGHANS might be ignorant of the art of rendering the cannon useless, and finding them cumbersome, chose to neglect them.



it is extended for almost three miles. It was founded by ABAS the GREAT, 1722. on the following occasion. The ARMENIANS having revolted against the TURKS, and submitted to this prince, he removed part of the inhabitants of ARMENIA into different provinces of PERSIA. Those of the antient JULFA, a town on the banks of the ARAS, were transported to ISFAHAN, from whence they afterwards removed, and settled in this place, to which they gave the name of their former residence. The people who had been drawn from ERIVAN, SHIRVAN<sup>m</sup>, and the lower ARMENIA, had settled in the suburbs of ISFAHAN; but ABAS desirous of improving this new colony, obliged them to remove to JULFA, together with some PERSEES of the neighbourhood of KHERMAN and YEZD; by this means, four new quarters were formed. Most of the PERSEES took occasion to retire from thence, so that of fifteen hundred families, which were at first computed in their quarter, there remained only three hundred, all composed of artificers and labouring men. But the ARMENIANS being an industrious active people, applied themselves to commerce, and by their care this colony soon arose to a flourishing condition.

ABAS I. was too great a politician, to neglect any measure that might contribute to the welfare of such an establishment. He lent them considerable sums of money, without demanding any interest; he exempted them from all kinds of servitude; he granted them the free exercise of their religion; and in order to screen them from the jealousy and avarice of the PERSIAN officers, he allowed them a KALENTER of their own nation, to whom he assigned a place at those celebrated feasts, in which, pursuant to the custom of remotest antiquity, the kings of PERSIA dine in public with the grandees of the realm.

Some of the successors of this prince followed the same maxim, and JULFA in a very little time became a considerable place. It had the appearance of a republic, founded in the midst of a foreign nation; no MAHOMMEDAN was permitted to settle there, and the rigor of the law of retaliation, caused the inhabitants to be respected even by the PERSIANS themselves. The ARMENIANS of JULFA thus encouraged by so necessary a protection,

<sup>m</sup> Part of the antient MEDIA.



1722. were in a thriving condition for many years; and carried on in different parts of the world a considerable trade, which was very useful to the state. But the court at length, forgetful of its own interests, grew tired of favouring them; and in SHAH HUSSEIN'S reign, their privileges, which had suffered some diminution under his predecessors, fell into contempt. Under this government, no regard was paid to the law of retaliation. The ecclesiastics offended at the equality which this law established between mussulmen and christians, introduced a custom, that if a PERSIAN killed an ARMENIAN, he should expiate the crime by giving a load of corn to the relations of the deceased. The ARMENIANS considered so ignominious and unjust a treatment, as a mark of servitude: but they had no relief, and were equally a sport to the avarice of the great, and the insolence of the people. While they groaned under these calamities, industry declined among them; and the spirit of commerce, for which they had been so much distinguished, was in a great measure suppressed; so that they thought of little more than to preserve their lives, and the property they had already acquired.

---

#### C H A P. XVIII.

*The conduct of the PERSIANS towards the ARMENIANS of JULFA. The AFGHANS make themselves masters of JULFA; their barbarities towards the ARMENIANS. Description of ISFAHAN. MAGHMUD repulsed at the bridge of SHIRASS.*

THE ARMENIANS having been thus treated with great contempt, it was feared they would cherish a resentment, which might induce them to change their masters. The PERSIANS, at least, tho' they now stood in such need of their services, were jealous; and in this, as in many other instances, prepared the way to their own ruin, for fear of being undone. For the ARMENIANS, who are brave, and tenacious of their property, it ought naturally to have been expected, would have struggled hard to be delivered from a rapacious enemy: however, upon



the first news of MAGHMUD's arrival, the king enjoined them to appear with their military equipage before his palace, intending, as he said, to entrust them with the guard of his person, during the absence of his household troops, who were going to march against the rebels. The ARMENIANS, flattered with this testimony of benevolence, repaired to the place appointed in great numbers; but no sooner were they drawn up, than they were commanded to lay down their arms, and dismissed with strict orders to deliver up what arms might be still remaining among them. Tho' such a mark of distrust was more proper to provoke, than to soften the minds of a brave people; yet as soon as the ARMENIANS knew that the AFGHANS were advancing, they desired succour, offering to maintain the troops at their own expence. They repeated their instances, as the rebels approached; and finding that the VALI of ARABIA, who had promised to send them assistance, broke his word, they still put themselves in a posture of making as good a defence, as their situation and circumstances would permit.

Things were thus situated, when the AFGHANS appeared before JULFA: they attacked the place as soon as they arrived, which was in the night-time; and the assault lasted two hours. The besieged, in order to make the enemy believe they had regular troops, called one another during the engagement by PERSIAN names; and tho' they were very indifferently armed, yet they defended themselves with so much bravery, that the utmost the enemy could do, was to seize upon a little entrenchment, which had been thrown up in a hurry. The ARMENIANS, encouraged by this success, waited for the VALI of ARABIA, designing to attack the AFGHANS in their turn, as soon as they had any succour; but this general made them sensible of the indifference he bore to the common cause: for instead of keeping his word with them, observing that SEFFIE MYRZA<sup>a</sup> was marching during the attack at the head of a detachment of horse, in order to make a diversion, he hindered him from proceeding any further, by representing that the king his father did not intend that the presumptive heir of the crown should expose himself to so dangerous an encounter.

This

<sup>a</sup> This was HUSSEIN's eldest son, who was of a martial spirit, and therefore an object of jealousy among the eunuchs.



1722. This extraordinary proceeding, together with that of disarming the ARMENIANS, induced people to think, that it was the king's intention to sacrifice JULFA and its inhabitants to the safety of the capital. Nor is it altogether improbable, that this weak prince, through the instigation of his treacherous minister, the VALI of ARABIA, might imagine that the AFGHANS would be contented with the wealth they should find in that town, without persisting in so hazardous an enterprize as the siege of ISFAHAN. This ARABIAN prince, by religion a SUNNI, and actuated with the same ambition as his father, who thirty years before had attempted to shake off the PERSIAN yoke, either held a correspondence with MAGHMUD, which is most probable; or was governed by the pernicious maxim of those generals, who, to prolong their own authority, do not chuse to terminate a war, when it is in their power to bring things to a fortunate issue for their sovereigns and their country.

The ARMENIANS had not time to refresh themselves after the fatigues of the first assault, but were preparing against a second, when some of the besiegers taking the advantage of the obscurity of the night, went all round the town, to try if a breach was practicable in their walls of earth\*. A PERSEE in their service, undertook to pierce a hole through the wall; which having done to his purpose, an elephant was brought up to it, and by his means a part of those feeble ramparts was broke down: NAZRULLA, who commanded the party, took possession of the breach; and the ARMENIANS perceiving that he waited only for day-light to enter, deputed the chief persons among them, before the night was spent, to treat of a capitulation. The AFGHAN heard their proposals, as one who was sure of conquest: he obliged them to surrender at discretion, and to ransom their lives and effects, by a contribution of 70,000 tomans<sup>p</sup>.

Hard as this condition appeared to the ARMENIANS, MAGHMUD added another more severe: for scarce had he been master of JULFA, when he demanded of the ARMENIANS a certain number of young virgins, which they should pick out of the most considerable families of their nation.

The

\* Those of ISFAHAN are of the same kind, as indeed are almost all the fortified places in the kingdom. <sup>p</sup> 175,000<sup>l</sup>.



The AFGHANS were masters of the town; so that the ARMENIANS had no other resolution to take than that of submission. All the young women therefore that could be found, who were remarkable for their beauty, and whose age exceeded nineteen, were brought before certain persons appointed for this examination: these chose fifty out of the number, and conducted them to FARABAD, adorned with their richest cloaths, and with all their jewels, where they were presented to the conqueror. MAGHMUD kept part of them for his own harram, and distributed the remainder among his principal officers. 1722.

The ARMENIANS are very jealous of their honour, so that nothing could cut them deeper than to deliver up their daughters. The disconsolate mothers made JULFA resound with their lamentations; some of those young maids were so shocked to see themselves abandoned to the enemies of their country, that they died with excessive grief. The AFGHANS, whose hearts could not but feel, in some measure, the distress of these young women, and whose religion by no means allows of any violence, sent those home who were most afflicted; and others were ransomed by their parents; so that in a few days, there remained but a very small part of them in this kind of slavery.

The AFGHANS, humane in this respect, were inexorable in regard to the contribution. The ARMENIANS pretending that the chief part of their effects was in ISFAHAN, said they were under an absolute impossibility of paying such a sum. They offered, however, to enter into an obligation of paying it, as soon as they recovered their effects, that is, upon the taking of the city, or at the conclusion of a peace. This was making the fruits of the first success depend upon a new event. MAGHMUD, pretended to be satisfied with the proposal; but as soon as he had their bond in his hands, he ordered three of the principal men among them, who had signed it, to be arrested as sureties; and pretending that his treasure was exhausted, he insisted upon their paying immediately what money they had in their hands, as part of the sum. In consequence of this determination, he ordered their houses to be searched.

1722. The ARMENIANS, whose avarice had caused them to overshoot their mark<sup>a</sup>, began to be sensible of the folly they had committed, in endeavouring to evade the payment; but it was too late to rectify the mistake. The officers who made the search, discharged their commission with the utmost exactness; carrying off every valuable thing they could find, as gold, silver, jewels, moveables, rich silks, &c. so that the inhabitants, except the security of their persons, experienced on this occasion, almost every act of violence and barbarity, as when a town is taken by storm.

All this wealth did not satisfy the avarice of the conqueror; recourse was had to tortures, in order to increase it. The principal persons among the ARMENIANS were most cruelly bastinadoed, to compel them to discover the several effects, which they, and their friends, were supposed to have concealed. None of them could withstand the severity of the torture, except DOMINIC JAQUES KARDELANS, a man of weight and figure among his countrymen, and pretty far advanced in years, whom all the rigor of this punishment could not oblige to discover any other person. From this man and his brothers they took twelve thousand tomans<sup>r</sup>, in ready money, and seven thousand<sup>s</sup> from SHERIMANS<sup>t</sup>; hence it is very probable, that what they got by plunder, greatly exceeded the sum demanded: and yet it was valued at only twenty thousand tomans<sup>u</sup>, which he ordered to be struck off from the seventy thousand mentioned in the bond.

Such acts of violence flung the whole town into the utmost consternation: the missionaries withdrew to ISFAHAN, each order leaving only one religious person in their house. The bishop, and some of the inhabitants, took the same resolution; and though the ARMENIANS were not ignorant, that the PERSIANS accused them of holding a correspondence with the enemy, yet a great many of them had already thrown themselves into the town, and others were preparing to follow their example, when MAGHMUD ordered guards to be posted, to hinder any further desertion.

While

<sup>a</sup> See remark, Vol. I. page 120.

<sup>r</sup> 30,000 l.

<sup>s</sup> 17,500.

<sup>t</sup> These are re-

markable great traders to this day; NADIR in 1747, caused some of them to be burnt alive, to extort a confession of their wealth.

<sup>u</sup> 50,000 l. in part of 175,000.



While JULFA was thus a prey to the avarice and cruelty of the rebels; 1722.  
their chief was preparing to begin the siege of ISFAHAN. This city is distinguished, no less for the magnificence of its buildings, than for the vast tract it incloses; the circumference being ordinarily computed at 24 miles, including its gardens and suburbs. It is situated in a plain to the north of the ZENDEROUD, which separates it from JULFA. The source of this river is distant only three days journey: there are various accounts concerning the course of it, but it is agreed to be of very small extent. ABAS the GREAT caused a channel to be cut thro' the mountains, thirty leagues distant, by which means the waters of the river MAHMOUD KER, were conveyed into the ZENDEROUD; which renders it as wide and deep, upon the melting of the snows in the spring, as the SEINE is in the winter at PARIS.

There is a communication between the two banks of the river by different bridges. The largest and finest is that of JULFA: it is 360 geometrical paces in length, and 13 in breadth; the two extremities of it are flanked by four round towers, with a covered gallery, which ranges on both sides, the length of the bridge; the whole decorated with the richest ornaments of PERSIAN architecture. It is joined by two causeways, made with a gentle descent to a double row of trees above 3000 paces long. This delightful alley is lined with terrasses and plane trees: it is called TOHERBAG, or four gardens, and is bordered with gardens which belong to the king. The length of it is terminated by a large pavilion towards the town, and on the opposite side by a building, in the royal garden, called HAZAR JERIB, or thousand gardens. The town of JULFA on the one side, and the suburb of ABASABAD on the other, stretch along the ZENDEROUD: from the bridge of JULFA to the bridge ABASABAD is about a mile and a half: the last is so called from the neighbouring suburb, and serves as a communication to the western extremity of the town.

The bridge of BARBAROUI, which is less distant than that of ABASABAD from the bridge of JULFA, is the third we meet with descending: like the latter it is lined with galleries, and is not so much inferior to

1722. it in architecture, as in length. About a mile further, advancing eastward, is the bridge of SHIRASS, so denominated, because it is the roadway from ISFAHAN to that city; and near it is the village of CHEERESTAN. This city was now in its highest pitch of splendor, and esteemed the largest and most magnificent in ASIA<sup>x</sup>, with six hundred thousand inhabitants, exclusive of those crowds, who had fled thither for shelter from different parts of the open country, and were reckoned near an hundred thousand souls.

Such was the importance of this city, which MAGHMUD dared to besiege with so small an army. This young prince, who was still encamped at FARABAD, ordered entrenchments to be thrown up between the river and JULFA; and the same day he made himself master of this town, he commanded some squadrons to present themselves before the ramparts of ISFAHAN, to observe the disposition of the enemy. This detachment, supported by a considerable part of the army, began to execute their orders; but the PERSIANS, now recovered from their first panic, gave them so warm a reception, that they were obliged to retire, with some loss.

MAGHMUD then marched himself in person, intending to make a general assault. The 21<sup>st</sup> of MARCH he appeared at the head of his army, upon the banks of the ZENDEROUD; but finding the river overflowed, and the bridges strongly guarded, this action ended at the right, and in the center, in some random shots from their cannon, which were very ill served: the affair was more serious to the left; for the officer who commanded that attack, giving way designedly, drew the troops that guarded the bridge of ABASABAD after him; upon which he faced about, and brought on an engagement, in which about 200 men on each side were slain. The PERSIANS still continued masters of the bridge; and a retreat being founded, the AFGHAN army retired to their camp, after riding and hollowing, rather than fighting, for the space of six hours.

The besieged, who saw what passed from the tops of the terraces, with which the houses of ISFAHAN are covered, began to alter the opinion which they had conceived of the enemy's bravery. Their spirits were greatly raised  
upon

<sup>x</sup> It is probable some cities in CHINA exceeded it.



upon reflecting, how ill this last attack had been contrived, and how weakly executed: they now looked upon the slowness of the AFGHAN chief in advancing after the battle of GULNABAD, and the great precaution he used in entrenching himself, as a certain sign of a timorous disposition; but they were soon obliged to fly again to the defence of their ramparts. For MAGHMUD being informed by his spies in the city, of the effect of his imprudent enterprize, had taken a sudden resolution to re-establish the reputation of his arms by some signal exploit.

With this design his army appeared in battalia the 23d of the same month, and while part of his troops were founding the river in different parts, as if they intended to ford it, the remainder fell sword in hand upon the post which defended the bridge of SHIRASS. The AFGHANS behaved, on this occasion, with so much resolution and bravery, that they overthrew the PERSIANS at the very first onset. Their impetuosity carried all before them; they were already masters of the bridge, and considering the confusion into which the PERSIANS were thrown, the rebels might have entered the town pell-mell along with them, had not ACHMED AGA, a white eunuch, and a soldier of approved valour, whom the king had now deputed governor of ISFAHAN, come up with a body of veteran troops, and renewed the engagement. He drove the AFGHANS immediately back to the middle of the bridge; and while both parties were fighting there with equal obstinacy, some pieces of cannon, that were in battery upon the banks of the river, were pointed <sup>y</sup> at the AFGHANS, which cleared the bridge, and put the rebels to flight. ACHMED AGA pursued them as far as their entrenchments, and made a terrible slaughter. MAGHMUD had been undone, if the VALI of ARABIA had fallen upon him at the same time with his troops; but this prince now confirmed his treachery, in the esteem of those who were not infatuated; and sacrificed his reputation as a soldier, as well as the welfare of the state, to his sinister purposes <sup>z</sup>.

<sup>y</sup> This signal piece of service was performed by one JACOB a COURLANDER, who from a cartwright, was made an officer of the artillery. <sup>z</sup> As generalissimo he had fifty tomans, or 125 *l.* a day, but this motive only could not have induced him to make a sacrifice of those whose pay he received.

## C H A P. XIX.

*MACHMUD sends a deputation to ISFAHAN with proposals of peace, which are refused. He makes himself master of the bridge ABASABAD, and invests the city. The troops marching to the relief of the besieged are defeated. Gallant behaviour of the inhabitants of BEN ISFAHAN. Treacherous conduct of the VALI of ARABIA. Defeat of the KHAN of COHKILAN.*

1722. **M**AGHMUD was greatly disheartened at his disappointment in the last action; the promises of the VALI of ARABIA were his chief dependance; and yet what security could he have of the fidelity of a traitor? Thus he was perplexed in what manner he should proceed. The vigorous defence made by the besieged, and the repulses he met with in his several attacks, alarmed his fears, lest his troops might become dispirited, if his next attempt should meet with no better success. He knew, however, that ISFAHAN was destitute of provisions, and that it must fall, if he could cut off all communication between that city and the country: but for this purpose, it was necessary for the communication of his troops, to throw a bridge over the river; or to make himself master of one of those which had been so gallantly maintained by the PERSIANS: besides, the greatness of the circumference rendered this project extremely dangerous, as the siege could not be turned into a blockade, without giving the khans of the provinces time to assemble; and the junction of any body of forces with those in the city, must render his enterprize abortive. In order to obtain a peace, the king had some time before offered him a large sum of money, with the sovereignty of KANDAHAR, and consented to yield up also the province of HASSARAI, but refused to grant him one of the princesses his daughters in marriage. This refusal determined MAGHMUD to lay siege to ISFAHAN, at a time when he was thinking how to secure an honourable retreat.

But now he resolved to try what he could do by negotiation, of which his enemies had set him the example. He therefore deputed one of his

principal



principal officers, with a commission to offer to raise the siege, and to agree to a peace, on condition that the king would give him one of the princesses his daughters in marriage, with a portion of fifty thousand tomans<sup>a</sup>; and acknowledge him as sovereign, not only of KANDAHAR and KHERMAN, which he already possessed, but likewise of the province of KHORASAN, which should be yielded to him by the same treaty. 1722.

SHAH HUSSEIN was under great perturbation; but the conditions appeared very dishonourable. The manner in which the AFGHANS had hitherto conducted themselves, had flattered him into a belief, that the governors of the provinces, and the tributary princes would have time to march to his assistance, and there was then no reason to doubt but the enemy would be crushed; he therefore rejected these proposals.

MAGHMUD being informed by the return of his deputy, of the little success of his commission, prepared to obtain by famine, what he no longer expected by force of arms. This enterprize, however, was extremely delicate. The PERSIANS had by advanced posts, made a further addition to the largeness of the circumference, inasmuch that the AFGHANS could not divide themselves into so many bodies, as there were places to occupy, without running the risk of being beaten in separate detachments: these difficulties did not retard MAGHMUD, who secretly renewing his engagements with the VALI of ARABIA, applied all his thoughts to the execution of his project.

After he had taken this resolution, he detached different bodies of troops to ravage the district of ISFAHAN. This territory contained above one thousand villages, built by the orders of ABAS the GREAT, who peopled them not only with the natives of IRAC AGEMI, but likewise with several families which he transported thither from other parts of the empire. The plain is very fruitful, and produces provisions sufficient to maintain both the inhabitants of the open country, and those of the capital. The AFGHANS charged with this commission, took possession of some of these villages by main force, of others by cutting off the waters, and many

<sup>a</sup> 125,000*l.*

1722. many were abandoned upon their approach; infomuch that the number of those which by an obstinate resistance had tired them out, and escaped falling into their hands, was very small. The AFGHANS, according to the barbarities of the east, put most of the men to the sword, and brought off great numbers of the women and children into slavery: it is said that upon making a distribution of them, five or six fell to the share of every private soldier. The AFGHANS then sent home the ARMENIAN girls, that were yet left in their possession.

This expedition served not only to cut off all forage and provisions from the city, but likewise to bring great plenty into their own camp. Their magazines being thus filled, they might now invest the place without being obliged to send out detachments for provisions or forage. This was of the greater moment, as MAGHMUD had waited in vain for a reinforcement from KHERMAN and KANDAHAR; however, he augmented his forces by making soldiers of many of those who had followed his army as menial servants, supplying their places with prisoners whose lives he had spared.

From the affair of the bridge of SHIRASS, till the latter end of APRIL, that is, during the whole time they were plundering the open country, MAGHMUD had amused the besieged with different negotiations; but as soon as he had recruited his army, and his different detachments had joined him, he resolved to break off this kind of truce. The great object he had in view for the present, was to open a passage over the river, which a particular accident gave him a favourable opportunity of accomplishing. The head of the bridge ABASABAD was covered by an entrenchment, lined with some pieces of cannon. A detachment of GEORGIANS, to whom the defence of this bridge was entrusted, had obtained a supply of spirituous liquors: MAGHMUD was no sooner informed of this incident, which happened the last day of APRIL, than he detached fifteen hundred men to attack them. The GEORGIANS, as he had foreseen, were all stupified, or not able to stand, so that they were cut to pieces, hardly making any resistance; and the AFGHANS having made themselves masters of this important post, secured the possession of it, by turning the artillery against



the enemy. Part of the army filed off immediately over this bridge, and spread themselves all round the town. Guards were placed at the principal passages, and scouts ordered to march continually from one of these posts to the other, so that ISFAHAN was that same day entirely invested. 1722;

This success alarmed the besieged; they had for some time made earnest application for liberty to attack the enemy; but now their request was changed into murmurs. They loudly declared that MAGHMUD dreading the bravery of the PERSIAN troops, which he had so lately experienced, was determined to avoid all occasion of fighting, and endeavoured to destroy them by famine: that to temporize on so pressing an occasion was betraying the common cause; that it was no longer time to deliberate; that their only resource was to march against the rebels, before hunger had destroyed part of the citizens, and rendered the rest unable to make use of their arms. This generous and prudent resolution, if it had been carried into execution, would in all probability have quashed their enemies, and it really was the only expedient left. The ATHEMAT DOULET and most of the grandees were of this opinion, and even the king thought so himself; but this unhappy prince soon changed his sentiment. The VALI of ARABIA had so disguised his treacherous purposes, as to have an absolute ascendant over his weak and fluctuating mind: and tho' after what passed, this fatal advice ought in all reason to have confirmed what might otherwise be only a strong suspicion of treason, yet he easily prevailed on HUSSEIN to temporize, in hopes of the succours which he expected.

The inhabitants of ISFAHAN began now to feel the dreadful effects of famine; and all their hopes seemed to vanish. The governors of the provinces looking upon themselves as able, each separately, to beat the rebels, had refused to serve under ALI MERDAN KHAN, VALI of LORISTAN, who, in conformity to the orders of the court, appeared at the head of ten thousand men at HONSAR, where he expected they would join him. CASSUM, KHAN of the BACTIARIANS<sup>b</sup>, was the first who appeared with  
twelve

<sup>b</sup> BAKTHIAR, in PERSIC, signifies happy. These are the BACTIARIANS situate west of ISFAHAN; the ordinary residence of whose KHAN, is said to be the town of HONSAR. These people inhabit

1722. twelve thousand horse, and advanced towards ISFAHAN; but as AMAN OLA kept the field with a flying camp, he fell upon the KHAN when he was least expected. Two thousand BACTIARIANS were killed in this engagement, and the rest were dispersed and put to flight.

The love which the VALI of LORISTAN bore to his country, gave him a quick sensibility of this misfortune; though it was an effect of the contempt shewn to his authority. This prince had been banished for some time to KHERMAN, by the artifice of one of his brothers, who supplanted him in his command of VALI; but as soon as he knew that the AFGHANS were marching towards the capital, he came to offer his services. His experience and valour, virtues so necessary in these circumstances, were so well known, that he was reinstated in his principality; and he justified this mark of confidence, by the bravery with which he behaved at the battle of GULNABAD. But not satisfied with having given this mark of fidelity; he had, since the commencement of the siege, amassed a quantity of provision, and designed to force one of the posts belonging to the rebels, and to convoy it into ISFAHAN. He was just upon the point of making this attempt; when his brother defeated the design, by a new piece of treachery.

This wretch, who was ambitious of a dignity which he did not merit, and to which, as a younger brother, the order of birth gave him no right; took the opportunity to debauch part of his brother's troops, and to take the command himself, at a time when this prince was gone upon a journey of some days, in order to make new levies; and as he was now master of the convoy, and of a considerable number of soldiers, without waiting his brother's return with fresh forces, he joined the KHAN of HAMADAN, and marched with him to the relief of ISFAHAN. But his perfidy, tho' it might have a mixture of virtue, was attended with a signal punishment. These two chiefs had 6000 men under their command, and expected to be able to join the troops of COHKILAN upon their march; but falling in with the body of AFGHANS commanded by AMAN OLA,

within

habit the eastern parts of the deserts towards BAGDAT: they live mostly in tents, and are divided into two tribes, called CHAHAR-LING and EFH-LING. They pretend to have embraced christianity under CONSTANTINE the GREAT.



within three days journey of ISFAHAN, they were attacked before they had time to recover their surprize; above 3000 of their men saved themselves by flight, among whom was the brother of the VALI of LORISTAN: yet he did not long escape the fate he seemed to deserve; for ALI MERDAN KHAN, provoked at an action which defeated the chief hopes of the empire, sacrificed this unnatural brother to his own resentment, and to the public vengeance. 1722.

AMAN OLA having taken possession of this convoy, with all the baggage of the PERSIAN troops, was fully sensible of the great consequence of his victory; but he stained the lustre of it by his cruelty. Part of the PERSIANS had laid down their arms, upon promise of quarter; yet he paid no regard to his word, for he saved only those from whom he expected a considerable ransom, abandoning the rest to the inhumanity of his soldiers, who killed them in cold blood.

Three miles from ISFAHAN, there is a town called BEN ISFAHAN<sup>c</sup>, situated on the declivity of a hill, and fortified with the addition of some art, at the foot of which extends a plain, which several rivulets of running water contribute to render as fruitful as it is agreeable. After the battle of GULNABAD, many flocked thither from the neighbouring villages, so that there was a number of men capable to bear arms; and these had been extremely active in harassing the enemy. Having now received intelligence, that the AFGHANS were returning to their camp after their victory, much fatigued with the march, and without observing any order; they attacked them with great valour, and with an eager thirst of revenging the death of their countrymen, insomuch that they put them to flight, and seized on their baggage and convoy.

MAGHMUD was so much provoked at this affront, which might have been attended with dangerous consequences in the present situation of his affairs; that he instantly mounted on horse-back, and putting himself at the head of a body of cavalry, overtook the enemy as they were returning home with their booty. Fortune however favoured this prince

as

<sup>c</sup> In ARABIC as well as HEBREW, son of ISFAHAN.



1722. as little as it had done his general. These peasants gave him so warm and so resolute a reception, that after cutting part of his troops in pieces, they obliged him to turn his back, and to leave them a considerable number of prisoners, among whom were his uncle, his younger brother, and two of his cousins.

The vexation caused by this fresh disgrace, did not affect MAGHMUD so tenderly, as his fears for the preservation of persons whom he loved, and who were so nearly related to him. As soon as he returned to his camp, he sent an officer to SHAH HUSSEIN, entreating him to interpose his authority in their behalf; and this prince glad of an opportunity of doing an act of humanity, and still fondly expecting an accommodation; immediately dispatched MIRZA RAHIM, one of the officers of his court. The AFGHANS escorted this messenger as far as BEN ISFAHAN: he made all possible expedition, but he arrived too late; for at his entering the town; he saw the dead bodies of the captives fixed upon stakes; when he complained at their having acted so precipitately, in an affair of that importance, they stopped his mouth by telling him; that barbarians who, contrary to their promise, had murdered their prisoners in cold blood, ought not to be surprized, if they should meet with such treatment in their turn, when there was no promise given. Tho' MAGHMUD might naturally have expected these reprisals, they flung him into a kind of frenzy. He immediately ordered all the PERSIANS in his power to be massacred upon the spot; and not contented with so cruel a revenge, he forbid his men to grant any quarter hereafter to the enemy. His mind was agitated for some days with the emotions of grief and revenge; but as soon as he recovered, and began to reflect seriously, he fell into a state of despondency. He had never flattered himself with the hopes of reducing ISFAHAN, but by the reputation of his arms; and when that was lost, he could hardly expect, that the VALI of ARABIA would be able to prevent the besieged from taking advantage of his disgraces, by attacking him in their turn; or else, that this treacherous general, alarmed at his ill success, would cease to favour a party, which fortune seemed to have abandoned. In these embarrassing circumstances, he reinforced the guards of  
the



the bridge ABASABAD, and the other posts; and leaving only a very small garrison in JULFA, he ordered the remainder of his army to return to FARABAD, as if he intended to secure his retreat.

The fate of the empire was then in the king's hands. He might have easily forced some of those posts which were at too great a distance to be able to support each other; and if he had done that, or even made a feint towards it, there was reason to presume that the enemy would have abandoned their several stations; and instead of besieging, would have been besieged themselves. The ARMENIANS of JULFA, who were accused of favouring the rebels, and yet continued always faithful to their sovereign, to whom they gave exact intelligence of every thing that was passing, signalized their zeal on this occasion. They gave notice to the court of the consternation which had spread itself throughout the camp of the AFGHANS; and in order to induce them to make a proper use of it, they offered to put the garrison of JULFA to the sword, as soon as they could see the king's troops engaged with the enemy. This was such a proposal as no one in their right senses could refuse to accept, for there was great probability of its succeeding; and the AFGHANS would then have been inevitably undone. If the bridge of ABASABAD had been attacked on both sides, at one and the same time, it could never have held out; the detachments placed at the several posts, deprived of all hopes of succours, or even of a retreat, would have been forced one after another; and the remainder of the army, invested at FARABAD, to all human appearance would have been reduced to the necessity of imploring the clemency of the PERSIANS: the least benefit they could expect from such an enterprize, must have been the opening a passage for the convoy which the inhabitants of BEN-ISFAHAN had recovered.

These advantages were so evident, that the king could not help seeing them; and the troops received orders to act in consequence: but the VALI of ARABIA their commander, preserved the AFGHANS from this danger. This prince judging that his treacherous conduct would be discovered, if the enemy raised the siege, marched out of the town, but with a full resolution not to fight. He evaded coming to action for some



1722. days, under pretence that he waited for a body of troops, which, according to the advices he had received, was set out from one of the provinces, and could not be long upon their march; and having by this delay cooled the king's ardour in regard to his project, and given MAGHMUD time to provide for his security, he brought his army back into the city; alledging, that as the succours did not come, he did not think it prudent to hazard an action, which was to decide the fate of the empire, upon the promise of so suspected a people as the ARMENIANS of JULFA. This step saved MAGHMUD, and a new event soon revived his hopes. The KHAN of COHKILAN, being ignorant of the defeat of the troops which were to join him, was in full march towards the capital, when he was attacked, as the others were before him, at a time he did not imagine the enemy so near; and after losing two thousand men in the engagement, he made the best of his way back to his province with eight thousand men.

---

#### C H A P. XX.

SHAH HUSSEIN *applies in vain to the VALI of GEORGIA for assistance. He declares his son TÆHMAS MYRZA his successor. TÆHMAS escapes from ISFAHAN, and endeavours to raise an army to march to the assistance of his father. Famine in ISFAHAN. ACHMED AGA makes a vigorous sally to open a passage for a convoy of provisions, but is defeated by the treachery of the VALI of ARABIA. Death of ACHMED AGA.*

THE affliction which this news caused in ISFAHAN, was increased by another piece of intelligence, received soon after it. The king depended upon the GEORGIANS as his deliverers; the valour of those people was equally known to the PERSIANS, and the rebels; and there was no reason to doubt, but the enemy would raise the siege, upon the first notice of their march. From this persuasion, SHAH HUSSEIN wrote in the most pressing terms to their prince, immediately after the battle of GULNABAD; but the proud VACHTANGA, not being yet able to overcome the mortification which this monarch had given him, by preventing his revenge



revenge on the LESGEES, adhered to the rash oath he had made on that occasion, and by his present refusal to fight, sacrificed the whole empire. 1722.

As soon as it was known, that no assistance could be expected from the GEORGIANS; the apprehensions, which the inexperience of the rebels, and the advantages obtained over them, had in some measure suspended, revived with greater force. All hopes of success were now banished; and the minds of the people were intirely filled with the ideas of their past misfortunes, and those with which they were yet threatened. It was notorious, that the governors of the provinces were fully resolved not to submit to the authority of the VALI of LORISTAN; and the defeat of the KHANS of the BACTIARIANS, of HAMADAN, and COHKILAN, was a proof that no good was to be expected, so long as they refused to unite under the same commander.

As the danger increased every day, the king thought it high time to enter into some measures, to prevent the whole royal family from being involved in one common ruin. This monarch had fourteen sons, and four daughters. Three days after the battle of GULNABAD, he had declared ABAS MYRZA the eldest, his successor to the throne, and resigned the care of the government into his hands. This young prince being of a very warm temper, and disdaining to dissimulate, began his administration with ordering the VALI of ARABIA, the first physician, and some other persons of figure, to be put to death: however, they contrived to ward off the blow, by obtaining of the king to shut him up again in the seraglio; where, according to the policy of the state, he had been hitherto confined with his brothers. SEFFIE MYRZA, who followed him in order of birth, was substituted in his stead, but did not succeed better; for the courtiers judging him too weak to govern, about a month after he underwent the same fate. The third brother was not chosen, because the too scrupulous attachment which he professed to the duties of religion, seemed to disqualify him for such an office; so that TÆHMAS<sup>d</sup> MYRZA, who was next to him in order of birth, was acknowledged towards the end of MAY; presumptive heir of the crown.

The

<sup>d</sup> This prince's right name is TÆMASHEB, which in the antient PERSIAN language signifies most pure.



1722. The latter end of JUNE, the king resolved to send this young prince out of ISFAHAN. The desire of securing in his person a legitimate successor, was not the only motive, which induced him to take this resolution; he was also willing by this means, to deprive his generals of all pretence of disobedience, hoping that the difficulty they made to unite the forces of their respective governments, would no longer subsist, as soon as they had orders to assemble under the command of the presumptive heir of the crown. AMAN OLA, who had been sent with some forces to attack the troops, which were marching to the relief of ISFAHAN, was not yet returned, and his absence weakened the main army of the AFGHANS; infomuch that they could hardly supply forces sufficient to guard the different posts, which shut up the several avenues to the town.

TÆHMAS MYRZA being determined to follow the directions of the king his father, set out from ISFAHAN the 21st of JUNE in the night, escorted by three hundred chosen horse. MAHOMMED EMIR, surnamed ASHREFF<sup>e</sup> SULTAN, son of MIR ABDALLAH, whom MAGHMUD had deprived of his throne and life in KANDAHAR, commanded the post which intercepted the communication between the town and the country, on the side of the gate TOKCHI. MAGHMUD's mother was extremely fond of this young lord, and had by her intreaties saved him more than once from the cruelty of her son. ASHREFF disssembled the aversion he had conceived against the murderer of his father; and behaved with so much prudence and valour on every occasion, at the same time giving such demonstrations of zeal for the interest of his chief, that at length he gained his confidence, as well as the esteem of the whole army.

This post was the best guarded, as it was by the TOKCHI-gate the city could most conveniently receive succours. TÆHMAS intended to surprize it, and to force his way through, in order to retire to CASBIN. He advanced by the favour of the night; but could not escape the vigilance of the enemy, whom he found under arms, and ready to oppose him. Tho' the AFGHANS were inferior in number to the troops of TÆHMAS MYRZA, yet the engagement continued very obstinate and bloody, till

ASHREFF,

\* ASHREFF signifies most noble.



ASHREFF, after losing a great part of his men, was obliged to retire to a neighbouring fort, to save the remainder of his people from the fury of the PERSIANS. 1722.

This event filled the besieged with hopes: they flattered themselves that the presence of the prince would raise compassion in every breast; and that he would soon be in a condition to rescue them from the miseries in which they were involved. The AFGHANS on the contrary were in great consternation to hear that the heir of the diadem had escaped, and might soon return at the head of an army. MAGHMUD in particular fell into a transport of rage; the captivity of the whole royal family being the greatest advantage he had to expect from the taking of ISFAHAN. He was heard to say in the vehemence of his wrath, "that it would be to little purpose now to reduce the capital, since there would be still a prince able to dispute the throne with him." His passion prevailed over his reason so much, that though ASHREFF had behaved so gallantly, he accused him of holding a correspondence with the enemy; and condemned him to death.

So passionate and unjust a sentence however did not take place. ASHREFF appeared before an assembly of the principal officers of the army, to vindicate his innocence; he represented to them, that the post which he had guarded, was, like several others, weakened by the detachment made from the army under AMANOLA, and consisted only of one hundred men when TÆHMAS appeared: that this prince was at the head of a much more numerous body of troops, exceedingly well mounted, and composed of several persons of distinction of the bravest soldiers about the court: that notwithstanding these circumstances, he went out of his entrenchments to meet the prince; but so small a number of soldiers as he had under his command, however gallantly they might behave, could not hinder the PERSIANS from forcing their way sword in hand; and that, as a proof of his vigilance, thirty of his men were killed on the occasion. There is little room to imagine that ASHREFF was false to his trust; for MAGHMUD having neither children nor brother of a proper age to succeed him, this young lord might be considered as his heir. The divan pro-



1722. nounced in his favour; and MAGHMUD, disguising his suspicions, restored ASHREFF to his employments.

During this transaction in the camp of the rebels, TÆHMAS MYRZA, after a forced march of twenty-four hours, reach'd CASHAN, he then proceeded to KOOM, and from thence to CASBIN. This young prince had so great a sensibility of the danger, in which he had left the king his father, that he spared no pains to compass his delivery: but private interest, and the spirit of independency, intirely baffled an authority which had no force to support it; so that neither his orders nor entreaties prevailed. The greatest part of the people in the neighbourhood of ISFAHAN, had been dispersed through fear; and want of resolution now hindered them from uniting. Besides those bodies already mentioned, which found pretences to avoid coming to the assistance of the capital; the troops of GANJA excused themselves, alledging they were occupied in opposing the incursions of the LESGEEs, who were endeavouring to take advantage of the troubles. The forces in TAVRIS had mutinied against their KHAN, lately sent them from court, and consequently refused to obey the orders of the prince: thus the king hardly received any assistance from near 50,000 regular troops, which were quartered on those frontiers<sup>f</sup>.

The feudatory princes of the empire, being less interested than the natural subjects, in the preservation of the monarchy, shewed as little zeal on this occasion; and many considered the extremity to which their sovereign was reduced, as a proper opportunity to recover their independency. The VALI of LORISTAN, who kept still in the neighbourhood of HONSAR, seeing the impossibility of assembling an army, marched back with his troops into his own country.

The only hopes which TÆHMAS had now left, was to find more submission in the SHAH SEVEN<sup>g</sup>. TÆHMAS having summoned this militia, most

<sup>f</sup> SHAH SULIMAN, the predecessor and father of HUSSEIN, maintained 130,000 men on the frontiers, without reckoning his household troops, which were 14000 men. <sup>g</sup> The well affectioned to the king; this is a name they give to a militia, very little different from that of the



most of those lords pretended they were not obliged to march, unless the king commanded in person; and the small number furnished by the rest, consisted only of peasants ill kept and ill paid; who, conceiving a dislike to military service, from the fatigues of their march, soon disbanded, and returned to their home, before they had reached the general rendezvous. 1722.

In the mean while, the scarcity of provisions increased, and the besieged became desperate. The grandees, as well as the common people, plainly saw that the only way to open a passage for a convoy of provisions, was to attack the posts of the enemy. The king, yet incapable of supporting any resolution of himself, referred those who came to him to the VALI of ARABIA. This general flattered them with the hopes of the prince's return; and when their importunities obliged him to march out of the town, he came back immediately without making any attempt, under the idle pretext, that his astrologers declared that the hour was not favourable. Whether the besieged saw into his artifices, or the fear of starving prevailed over their obedience, they grew tired of these evasions; and in the beginning of JULY assembled in a tumultuous manner, demanding with loud cries that SHAH HUSSEIN should come forth, and lead them against the enemy.

This prince, who had been so cowardly as to shut himself up in the seraglio since the beginning of the siege, was far from yielding to such a proposal. He ordered some of his officers to let them know, that he would give his answer the next day; but the populace insisting that he should appear himself, the eunuchs dispersed them by firing some musquet shots from the palace. So extraordinary a behaviour, under such circumstances, might have occasioned a general insurrection, if ACHMED

AGA,

ZAIMS and INSARIOTS in TURKEY. It was established by ABAS the GREAT, and consisted of persons chosen among the nobility, to whom he gave lands, on condition of their leading a certain number of their vassals into the field, when the sovereign should have occasion for them. This body, which amounted at that time to 300,000 men, was the last resort in any extremity or sudden danger; but as these employments were hereditary, and, under the late reigns, very little care had been taken to oblige the holders of these possessions to discharge their duty, they no longer looked upon them in any other light, than as legal estates. Of this a very melancholy experiment was made on the present occasion.

1722. AGA, governor of ISFAHAN, had not prevented the ill consequences of it. This gallant eunuch put himself at the head of a body of veteran troops, and joining as many of the people as offered themselves, he marched out of the town at the head of near thirty thousand men, who were soon followed by the VALI of ARABIA and his ARABS.

As soon as they got out of the gates, they fell with great impetuosity on one of the principal posts belonging to the enemy; the troops which guarded it were obliged to give way to numbers; and tho' part of the rebel army came immediately to their assistance, yet ACHMED AGA would have maintained his ground, if the VALI had not deserted him. ACHMED, provoked at so infamous a behaviour, could not dissemble his resentment. He ordered his men to fire on the ARABIANS; and at the same time gave directions to TÆHMAS KHAN, one of his principal officers, to attack them. This division flung the troops into disorder; which the AFGHANS perceiving, charged them with new vigour, so that the PERSIANS being almost hemmed in, were obliged at length to abandon the post, and retire under their ramparts.

The intent of this sally was to open a passage for the convoy above-mentioned, which in all probability would have been followed with the raising of the siege. ACHMED, who had formed the project, spared no pains to render it successful; but neither his valour nor conduct could screen him from the displeasure of the king, who seemed to have so little discernment, as to shew no resentment against any but those who were faithful to him. This monarch was so infatuated by the artful discourse of the VALI of ARABIA, as to impute the misfortune intirely to ACHMED AGA: he blamed him openly for fighting in compliance with the importunity of the people, and without orders from the general: but above all, he condemned him for firing upon the ARABIANS: and refusing to give ear to what he had to alledge in proof of his innocence, much less to give him an opportunity of proving the perfidy of the ARABIAN prince, he took the government of the city from him. The faithful ACHMED could not survive this disgrace, together with the approaching ruin of his country. Whether he took poison the night following, or



grief overwhelmed him; he died a few days after; and the king too late 1722. regretted the loss of a man, whose distinguished zeal, bravery, and experience, might have saved his diadem.

---

C H A P. XXI.

*Consternation in ISFAHAN. Treachery of MELUCK MAGHMUD governor of SEGESTAN, who makes himself master of KHORASAN. Description of the famine in ISFAHAN. Capitulation for the surrender of that city. Ceremony of SHAH HUSSEIN's abdication. MIR MAGHMUD receives the diadem, and takes possession of ISFAHAN.*

THE death of ACHMED caused as much joy in the camp of the AFGHANS, as consternation in ISFAHAN. All hopes of succours were now vanished; and, to complete their misery, even the flesh of horses and other beasts of burthen was become very scarce. The besieged, thus pressed by famine, deserted in crowds; and tho' the AFGHANS massacred every PERSIAN who fell into their hands, the desertion augmented<sup>n</sup>. Whether ACHMED AGA had been the instrument of opening the eyes of the king, in regard to the VALI of ARABIA, or this monarch made an effort to change his fortune, by changing his general; he offered the command of the troops to LUTF ALI KHAN. This employment could not fall into better hands, if the choice had been made sooner; but things were reduced to the last extremity, most of the inhabitants having deserted in the manner related. A great number had perished for want, and the remainder, emaciated with hunger, had neither strength nor courage to make any desperate attempt; so that this lord not daring to rely upon them, and fearing if any mischance should happen, he should fall a victim to those secret artifices which had destroyed his brother-in-law the ATHEMAT DOULET, constantly refused every offer of that kind.

S 2

The

<sup>n</sup> About this time, father KRUSINSKI, the author of the memoirs, from whence part of this history is compiled, obtained leave to remove to JULFA. Two missionaries, of the same order, attempted to make their escape to SHIRASS, with the FRENCH consul: one of these fathers was killed, with some other EUROPEANS. The consul was wounded on this occasion; however he escaped, with several others of his little troop.

1722. The VALI of ARABIA was therefore left to carry on his treasonable practices; but SHAH HUSSEIN expecting no longer any succours from abroad; and despairing of the success of any attempt of his people within the walls, resolved to renew the negotiation, which the enemy had opened at the beginning of the siege. He sent the KURSHI BASHI to FARABAD, with orders to offer MAGHMUD the terms he had demanded; which were to give him one of the princesses his daughters in marriage, with 50,000 tomans<sup>i</sup>, and to yield to him the provinces of KHORASAN, KHERMAN, and KANDAHAR, in full sovereignty. How advantageous soever these proposals appeared, MAGHMUD was too well acquainted with the situation of affairs, and rejected them with the same air of pride and disdain, as ALEXANDER once affected on a like occasion; the AFGHAN prince answered almost in the same terms as the GRECIAN hero: "The king of PERSIA," said he, "offers me nothing that is in his disposal; this prince, and the princesses are already in my power; he is no longer master of those three provinces, which he offers me; the fate of the whole empire is now to be decided between us."

Things were thus situated, when news came that MELUCK MAGHMUD, governor of SEGESTAN, was advancing by forced marches to the relief of the capital. The king, touched to the heart at the arrogance of the AFGHAN chief, imagined that heaven had stirred up an avenger of his cause. These deluding hopes were augmented, when he heard that this general, with 10,000 men under his command, was encamped at GULNABAD. This event flung the rebel chief once more into great inquietude. The siege had already cost him above 2000 men; and he could not pretend to be a match for this army, which was composed of regular troops, and for the forces within the gates, who would certainly make some desperate effort to relieve themselves. Under this anxiety, he thought it more adviseable to tempt the fidelity of his new enemy, than to expose himself to the hazard of an engagement with an officer, whose valour and military skill he had already experienced.



NAZR ULLA was therefore appointed to repair to GULNABAD, with such magnificent presents <sup>k</sup>, as rather betrayed the fear, than expressed the liberality of the donor. NAZR ULLA executed his commission like a man of abilities: he represented to MELUCK MAGHMUD, that the capital was reduced to the last extremity, and that the rest of the empire being attacked on every side, could not avoid its approaching ruin: he made him sensible of the uncertainty of the issue of a battle, and that the friendship of MIR MAGHMUD might, in the present circumstances, procure him advantages far superior to his present expectations: he then laid before him the articles of his commission, and offered him the alliance and assistance of the AFGHANS, if he inclined to accept the sovereignty of one of the provinces of the kingdom.

The magnificence of the presents had already dazzled the eyes of MELUCK MAGHMUD; the uncertainty of the issue of a battle also staggered him; but the ambition of reigning determined his compliance. He made KHORASAN his choice, with a view of being supported in case of need by the provinces of KANDAHAR and HERAT, which their common interest gave him sufficient reason to expect. Having therefore concluded the treaty, he set out on his march to take possession of his new dominions.

MESCHED, the capital of that country, which the policy of ABAS the GREAT had raised to so flourishing a condition, was greatly fallen from its former lustre. The ABDOLLEES and OUSBEGS, who made incursions in this neighbourhood, at length took it by storm, after a few days siege; and not satisfied with stripping it of the wealth which had been hoarded there by the superstition of the PERSIANS, the inhabitants felt the utmost effects of avarice and cruelty. ISMAEL KHAN, governor of the province, unable to oppose MELUCK MAGHMUD, took the resolution of retiring to CASBIN. Whether the ABDOLLEES and OUSBEGS had no further view than to pillage, and consequently had abandoned their conquest; or whether the thing was concerted with the AFGHAN prince, the new usurper was received in MESCHED the 20th of NOVEMBER, and the other cities of the

<sup>k</sup> Seven horses magnificently caparisoned, saddles, bridles, a poniard enriched with diamonds, rich fluffs, and gold callyans.

1722. the province knowing he was a SCHIAS, made no difficulty to acknowledge him for their sovereign.

The joy which the approach of this general had occasioned in ISFAHAN, served only to heighten the forlorn condition to which they were reduced. The exorbitant pay of the military people, had exhausted the SHAH's treasure; so that the next expedient was to carry all the gold and silver plate in the palace, to the mint; and when this was all gone, the king borrowed considerable sums on his jewels, of different merchants, but especially of the ENGLISH and DUTCH<sup>1</sup>. At length, the latter end of SEPTEMBER, when there was neither money nor provisions left, this unfortunate prince ordered his ministers to go and treat for a capitulation.

MAGHMUD might at this time have regulated the conditions as he pleased; but this dangerous rebel had further views. He foresaw that he could never be safe in ISFAHAN, so long as the inhabitants were greatly superior in number to his troops; for which reason he took his measures, that a considerable part of those who remained, might perish with hunger, before he signed the treaty. It is true, he might have destroyed them at once, by ordering a general assault, which, in their miserable condition, would have been the least act of cruelty; his chief officers pressed him to this for some time, giving for reason, that this action would not only facilitate the conquest of the rest of the empire, by the terror which it would spread in all parts; but moreover, that it would justify his invasion, since according to the law, there is no better title to a crown, than taking it by the sword. Whether he was afraid of losing part of his best troops, or intended to preserve from the greedy hands of his soldiers, the great riches of this so late flourishing a city, he lay still within his lines, during the last two months of the siege, amusing himself with the idea of his future grandeur; whilst the besieged flattered themselves with the hopes of an accommodation, which he never intended.

What heart can reflect without horror, on the dreadful circumstances of the famine, caused by this artful conduct! In the month of AUGUST, horses, mules, and other beasts of burthen, were become so excessive dear,

<sup>1</sup> The DUTCH alone lent him 340,000 crowns.



1722.  
 dear, that none but the king, and the principal lords about him, or some of the wealthiest inhabitants, could afford to eat of them. Notwithstanding the aversion which the PERSIANS have from their religion for dogs, and some other animals, which they look upon as unclean, yet as many as they could find, were consumed in a few days: the people afterwards fed on the bark of trees, leaves, and leather, which they softened with boiling water; but when this sad resource was also exhausted, they had no other support than human flesh. Never was so much of it eaten in any siege as this. What pencil can describe their hollow eyes, their trembling knees, their emaciated bodies! Death, in his ghastly form, appeared in their livid countenances, whilst they were cutting slices of human bodies to support the feeble remains of life: some were even transported by the violence of hunger, to murder their fellow-citizens, or young children, to feast on their bodies. Under this lamentable necessity of perishing by famine, or of supporting themselves by means so contrary to nature, several poisoned themselves together with their whole family. The streets, the public squares, and the very gardens of the palace, were strewed with dead bodies, which no one had the heart or strength to bury. The water of the ZENDEROUD was so corrupted by the number of carcases thrown into it, that there was no possibility of drinking of it; and in a less wholesome climate<sup>m</sup>, the air must have been infected to that degree, as to destroy what few inhabitants were left alive. Such was the miserable situation of this unhappy city for above two months. The ARMENIANS were received in JULFA, excepting such as had carried provisions to the enemy, contrary to the prohibition of MAGHMUD; but if any of the PERSIANS were so desperate as to go thither, they were sure to meet with death: neither age nor sex could protect them from the barbarity of the AFGHANS; the men were massacred, and the women and children thrown into wells.

The 21st of OCTOBER, SHAH HUSSEIN, clad in mourning, went out of his palace on foot, and walked thro' the principal streets of ISFAHAN. This unfortunate monarch bewailed aloud the misfortunes of his reign,

<sup>m</sup> The air of ISFAHAN is remarkably rarified; it resembles much that of MADRID, as I was assured by a Jesuit, who lived many years in both cities.

1722. reign, imputing them to the bad counfels of his minfters; he endeavoured alfo to comfort the multitude that furrounded him, with the hopes of their meeting with a better fate, under a new government. This fpeech from a prince, whose gentlenefs of nature was the fault which had ever betrayed him, and by which he was now reduced to this ftate of humiliation, after a reign of eight and twenty years, could not but make a fenfible impreffion on the people, who in fpite of their own mifery, in the bitternefs of their fouls lamented the difgrace of their fovereign.

The king having thus taken his leave of his fubjects the 22d of OCTOBER, fent plenipotentiaries the day following, to fign the capitulation. By this act, he obliged himfelf to refign the empire to the conqueror, and to yield himfelf up into his hands, with the principal officers of his court. MAGHMUD on the other fide, promifed that no ill treatment fhould be offered, neither to the king, the nobility, nor any of the inhabitants. This treaty being figned, the day following <sup>n</sup> MAGHMUD fent horfes for the king and his court: this unfortunate prince having facrificed five camels <sup>o</sup>, perhaps the only ones left, mounted on horfe-back, in company with about three hundred perfons, among whom were the VALI of ARABIA, the ATHEMAT DOULET, a brother of the VALI of LORISTAN, and the principal lords of the court; they moved on flowly, with their eyes fixed on the ground; the few inhabitants who had ftrength to fee this mournful cavalcade, expreffed their grief by a gloomy f Silence, which prefaged the fad effects of this melancholy event.

It was now paff noon, when two couriers arrived, to give notice to the grand mafter of the ceremonies of MAGHMUD's court, that the king was drawing near. Thefe officers immediately entered MAGHMUD's tent, who to humble the PERSIANS ftill more, difpatched the fame couriers back, with orders to the SHAH, to halt at the foot of a hill near the camp, under the pretence that MAGHMUD was afleep. Thus the unhappy HUSSEIN was treated with marks of fervitude, even before he had quitted the en-

figns

<sup>n</sup> The 23d of OCTOBER 1722, was the day on which this catastrophe happened. <sup>o</sup> They were killed without any ceremony; I do not know for what purpofe this facrifice was ordered; that of one camel, which feems to be prefcribed by the law, fhould have been made at MECCA, the 10th of the preceding moon.



signs of royalty; he tarried about half an hour at the place prescribed, and then obtaining leave to continue his march, he arrived at FARABAD, where the AFGHAN chief had his head quarters. 1722.

The grand master of the ceremonies introduced him into a hall, at the corner <sup>P</sup> of which MAGHMUD was seated, leaning on a cushion of cloth of gold. The king advancing towards the middle of the chamber, saluted him, saying, SELAM ALEIUCOM <sup>Q</sup>. The AFGHAN then rose up, and returned the salute, with the same compliment; after which, the ATHEMAT DOULET conducted the king to another corner, on the left of MAGHMUD, where a place was prepared for him, like that which was occupied by this rebel prince.

The king being seated, opened the conversation by saying: “ Son, “ since the great sovereign of the world is no longer pleased that I should “ reign, and the moment is come which he has pointed out for thee to “ ascend the throne of PERSIA, I resign the empire to thee with all my “ heart: I wish that thou mayst rule it in all prosperity.” At the same time he took the royal plume of feathers <sup>R</sup> from his turbant, and gave it to MAGHMUD’s grand vizir; but this prince refusing to receive it from the vizir, the king stood up, and taking it again, fastened it himself to the usurper’s turbant, saying, “ reign in peace;” after which he retired, and sat down in his place. MAGHMUD continued sitting, while HUSSEIN was fixing this mark of sovereignty on his turbant. Coffee and tea were afterwards served up; and the AFGHAN prince, taking these liquors, addressed himself to the king after this manner: “ Such is the instability “ of human grandeur: GOD disposes of empires as he pleases, and takes “ them from one nation to give them to another: but I promise to con- “ sider you always as my own father; and I will undertake nothing for “ the future without your advice.” After these words, HUSSEIN was in- vited

<sup>P</sup> The corner is the most honourable place in ORIENTAL countries. It is also the most commodious, as it is the only one in which a person can lean on both sides on the cushions, which are placed round the walls.

<sup>Q</sup> All hail: this compliment is seldom given but to people of the same persuasion in religion; it is the highest expression of respect.

<sup>R</sup> This plume of feathers is called the GIGA, and is the mark of sovereignty. See Vol. IV. page 4.

1722. vited into another apartment, which had been appointed for him; and 4000 AFGHANS were ordered to take possession of the royal palace, and of the gates of the city.

Thus the reign of the SEFFIES, after having lasted 223 years, ended at length in the person of SHAH HUSSEIN\*, the tenth successor of ISMAEL the first king, and founder of this dynasty.

\* We may with propriety say it ended, since his son TÆHMAS was too weak or too unfortunate to re-establish it.

PART

T



P A R T VI.

T H E

R E V O L U T I O N S O F P E R S I A,

F R O M T H E

A C C E S S I O N O F M A G H M U D T O T H E

C R O W N O F P E R S I A I N 1722,

T O T H E

T R E A T Y C O N C L U D E D B E T W E E N S H A H T Æ H M A S

A N D P E T E R T H E G R E A T I N 1723.

C H A P. XXII.

*ASHREFF quits MAGHMUD's army. MAGHMUD ascends the throne, and receives the homage of SHAH HUSSEIN, and the grandees of PERSIA. He regulates the civil administration. TÆHMAS MYRZA takes the title of king. MAGHMUD orders new levies to be raised in KANDAHAR. He sends NAZR ULLA, with a detachment of troops, to lay siege to CASBIN. TÆHMAS retires upon the approach of the AFGHAN army. CASBIN surrenders.*

**T**HE tranquillity of the new reign was disturbed by a sudden event. ASHREFF SULTAN had not forgot the danger to which the escape of TÆHMAS MYRZA had exposed him ; but continued apprehensive lest that very protection which had saved him, should be imputed to him as a new crime, by a prince who was upon the point of being absolute master. As soon therefore as this AFGHAN prince received notice

1722.

1722, that SHAH HUSSEIN had submitted, he deserted his post, designing to retreat to KANDAHAR, under an escort of an hundred chosen horse. MAGHMUD, sensible of the consequence of such a desertion, sent NAZR ULLA in pursuit of him with five hundred horse: this general made such haste, that he overtook him at VERSENE, a village twenty leagues distant, from whence he brought him back to the camp. MAGHMUD had meditated his destruction, but he escaped the second time. He was really more beloved by the soldiers, than MAGHMUD himself, and they talked openly of retiring to KANDAHAR, if any attempt should be made to take away his life. MAGHMUD therefore thought it best to forgive him, at least to dissemble his resentment.

His thoughts were now employed in regard to the ceremony of ascending the throne, which had been just resigned to him. The 27th of the same month, was the day appointed for this solemnity. AMAN OLA posted centinels on the turrets, and other lofty edifices, to observe the motions of the people. The two kings marched out of the camp of the AFGHANS, and advanced towards the town. MAGHMUD, in order to shew himself to his new subjects, took his rout by the bridge of SHIRASS, so that he traversed the city to reach the palace.

The procession was opened by ten officers on horse-back, and about 2000 cavalry, among whom were several lords of the court of PERSIA. Next came the master of the horse to the AFGHAN prince, at the head of fifteen led horses magnificently caparisoned; he was followed by some musqueteers on foot, and these by 1000 common infantry. Immediately after came the grand master of the ceremonies, in the midst of 300 negroes dressed in scarlet cloth. These negroes had been chosen from among the slaves of ISFAHAN, to compose the conqueror's guard. Forty paces from thence was MAGHMUD, mounted on a horse<sup>t</sup>, of which the VALI of ARABIA had made him a present, on the day of the abdication. The unfortunate HUSSEIN rode on his left side. These princes were followed by about 300 pages on horse-back. The MUFTI<sup>u</sup>, and AMAN OLA<sup>w</sup>, whom MAGHMUD had appointed his grand vizir; MULLAH SAF-

FRAN,

<sup>t</sup> It is said that this horse cost 4000 crowns.

<sup>u</sup> The judge who decides on points of law.

<sup>w</sup> He is also called AMAN OLA KHAN, tho' his title of KHAN has not been observed.



FRAN<sup>x</sup>, and NAZR ULLA<sup>y</sup>, one of his generals; MOULA MOUSSA his high treasurer, and MAHOMMED AGA steward of his household, succeeded next; after these came the ATHEMAT DOULET, and the principal officers of the dethroned monarch, mixed with the crowd of AFGHAN officers. The whole was closed by 100 camels, each loaded with one of the harquebuses already mentioned, preceded by 600 musicians, and followed by near 6000 horse. 1722.

As soon as they had passed over the bridge of SHIRASS, SHAH HUSSEIN was conducted cross the gardens of the palace, to the place of his confinement. MAGHMUD seemed to think it impolitic to lead the conquer'd king in triumph, but continued his march, and soon arrived at the gates of the town. The inhabitants, notwithstanding their grief, felt a relief from their misery, in this change, in hopes of supporting their lives; which induced them to give some external marks of respect to their new master. They laid rich stuffs under his horses feet, and filled the air with perfumes. The guns on the camels backs were often fired, as they marched along; and in the intervals, the ten AFGHANS who walked at the head of the proceffion, pronounced loud imprecations against the followers of ALI.

In this order the new monarch came to the royal palace<sup>z</sup>; having seated himself on the throne, he was saluted the second time, as king of PERSIA, by the captive HUSSEIN, who was brought here for that purpose; after which he received the oath of allegiance, of the princes, ministers, grandees, chief officers, and principal citizens. Soon after, the artillery of the town and citadel proclaimed the news to the people; and the ceremony concluded with an entertainment, which the SULTAN<sup>a</sup>, for so he was afterwards called, gave to the deputies who came in the name of all the citizens, to acknowledge his authority.

Notwithstanding this great change of fortune, MAGHMUD did not forget himself; for it may be truly said, that in the beginning he ruled like

a

<sup>x</sup> This was MAGHMUD's chief ecclesiastic.

<sup>y</sup> NAZR ULLA was also denominated NAZR

ULLA SULTAN. <sup>z</sup> DEVLET KANE, the habitation of greatness.

<sup>a</sup> SHAH HUSSEIN was also called SULTAN, which seemed to be an additional mark of honour, but SHAH is the proper title of the PERSIAN kings. This prince was frequently stiled SHAH SULTAN HUSSEIN, a writing which I have adopted.



1722. a prince born to the throne. As the most pressing business was now to put a stop to the dreadful famine, which was still consuming the few inhabitants, he gave proper orders for a supply of provisions; these were so punctually obeyed, that the very day he made his entrance, a batman<sup>b</sup> of bread cost only one crown, which the day before was hardly to be had at any price. He then applied himself to the regulation of public affairs, in which he displayed the abilities of a consummate statesman. It was equally dangerous to commit the several subordinate branches of the administration to his own officers; or to continue them in the hands of the ministers of the late sovereign; for he could no more expect experience from the one, than fidelity from the other. MAGHMUD was sensible of this inconvenience; he therefore confirmed the PERSIANS in their employments, but associated with each of them a colleague of his own nation.

By this piece of policy, he not only formed ministers to his liking, but likewise prevented the jealousy and aversion, which his new subjects would have conceived, from his discarding the old ministry. He left no other post than that of DIVAN BEGHI, entirely to an AFGHAN; presuming that good sense and equity, were sufficient for the discharge of the duties of this office. Whatever was his motive, he had no reason to repent of his choice; for the PERSIANS themselves were soon astonished, to see justice administered with more rectitude and integrity by a foreign nation, than it had been during the reign of their natural sovereign<sup>c</sup>. The people were screened from violence by the severest prohibitions; and the safety of the conquerors was provided for by the strictest discipline. So prudent a conduct, insensibly diminished the consternation of the inhabitants, which was at length entirely removed, by punishing the treason of those who had been instrumental to his conquest, verifying that common observation, that we hate the traitor, tho' the treason may be convenient.

MAGHMUD ordered all those to be arrested, who, contrary to the allegiance due to their sovereign, had maintained a correspondence with the AFGHANS

<sup>b</sup> 12  $\frac{1}{2}$  pounds ENGLISH for five shillings.

<sup>c</sup> This might well be under such a reign as that of HUSSEIN, for it might be emphatically said of it, "Woe be to thee, O land, whose king is a child, and whose princes eat in the morning."



GHANS during the siege. They were all executed as guilty of high treason; their memory was branded with infamy; their estates were confiscated, and their bodies exposed in the public market place. The VALI of ARABIA, though the most criminal, was the only one who was not put to death. It was imagined, that MAGHMUD had made an oath never to take away his life; but perhaps he was afraid of provoking the ARABS by the death of their chief; however his villainy did not escape with impunity, for MAGHMUD confiscated his estate, and condemned him to perpetual imprisonment. His hereditary principality, which was that of CHUSISTAN<sup>d</sup>, was given to one of his cousin-germans, who had served in the rebel army; and MAGHMUD engaged to put him in possession of it, as soon as the situation of his affairs would permit. The manner in which he behaved to the late ATHEMAT DOULET, was not less agreeable to the PERSIANS. This minister had the courage to put a restriction on the oath of allegiance, which he swore to the new sovereign, by begging to be excused from ever bearing arms against prince TÆHMAS. MAGHMUD carried his policy on this occasion so far, as publicly to commend the generous behaviour of that minister; and even affected to shew him a particular esteem and confidence on that very account.

The PERSIANS were not the only people who had reason to commend the beginning of the new reign; the consuls of EUROPEAN nations were confirmed in their privileges; and the missionaries obtained the free exercise of their religion in their churches in ISFAHAN and JULFA. Such appearances of equity in a prince, who had been hitherto considered only as a chief of banditti, drew part of the inhabitants to town, who had fled for shelter to the country. SHAH HUSSEIN was almost the only person in the empire, who had any occasion to complain. MAGHMUD took from him a great number of young women slaves, who composed his harram, and distributed them among his principal officers. This monarch had carried his sensuality to such a height, as to render all his subjects tributary to his pleasures; the influence of his eunuchs, which was the ruin of the empire, arose from his boundless gratifications. How-

ever,

<sup>d</sup> Is the antient SUSIANA. The ARABS call this province after the name of its capital AHOVAS. It borders upon the PERSIAN gulph, and the banks of the EUPHRATES.



1722. ever, he was now reduced to the company of five of his women, and five domestics. The princes of the blood were shut up in another quarter of the palace, and guarded in the same manner as himself, by a hundred men. MAGHMUD, to all appearance, acted thus from a spirit of œconomy; for in other respects he shewed a great regard for this prince, consulting him on every occasion, and omitting nothing in his power that might sooth his misfortunes. SHAH HUSSEIN, before his abdication, had married one of his daughters to the SEDR<sup>c</sup>: the new sultan followed this example, and gave away the eldest of the remaining princesses in marriage to his MUFTI; and was married himself to the youngest with great solemnity. This respectful behaviour, joined to the necessity of obeying, induced the dethroned monarch at length to write a circular letter, by which he ratified his abdication, and enjoined all the inhabitants, both in town and country, to acknowledge the victor's authority.

During these transactions, TÆHMAS MYRZA, who was at CASBIN, having heard of the surrender of ISFAHAN, and the cession of the crown, took the title of SHAH, and was acknowledged as such by the provinces that continued true to their allegiance. This step served as a pretext to gratify the avarice of MAGHMUD; for he no sooner heard of it, than he demanded 120,000 tomans<sup>f</sup> of the city, to defray the expences of the war. At the same time he laid a tax of 20,000 tomans<sup>g</sup> on the king's first physician: this man had been for a long time his master's chief favourite, and was justly charged with having made no other use of his credit, than to hoard up immense riches, and to destroy the prime minister FATEY ALI KHAN, by an artifice, which occasioned, as we have related, the total subversion of the state. As these circumstances had rendered him odious to his nation, the AFGHANS made no scruple of treating him with the utmost rigour. His treasure, and the sum which ISFAHAN was obliged to raise, having been carried to the prince's coffers, the great treasurer, MOULA MOUSSAH, received orders to repair to KANDAHAR, and to employ these sums in making new levies: accordingly he set out soon after. MAGHMUD hearing that CASBIN was one of those

cities

<sup>c</sup> SEDR AL SCHERIAH, chief justice. The TURKS call this officer MUFTI, and the AFGHANS MIANGI.

<sup>f</sup> 300,000 l.

<sup>g</sup> 50,000 l.



cities which had acknowledged prince TÆHMAS, he turned his thoughts that way. It is pretended that his design was to yield this city and its dependencies in full sovereignty to AMAN OLA, as an equivalent for the throne and treasures of SHAH HUSSEIN; which, according to their original compact, he ought to have shared with him. MAGHMUD now entrusted this general with a detachment of 6000 AFGHANS, and 4000 foreign troops; ASHREFF and NAZR ULLA having joined this little army, they marched from ISFAHAN towards the end of NOVEMBER. 1722.

TÆHMAS, presuming that the AFGHANS would not open the campaign at the latter end of autumn, when the weather is pretty severe in those parts, had, by the advice of his prime minister, put his troops into quarters: he was therefore in no capacity of making head against the enemy. As soon as he heard of their approach, he withdrew to ZENGAN, and from thence to TAVRIS, but in no circumstances suitable to the dignity of a sovereign. The cities of CASHAN, KOOM, and KIARE, which lay in the direct road, sent deputies to meet AMAN OLA, and to ransom themselves from pillage. This general encamped the 20th of DECEMBER within three leagues of CASBIN. As soon as the inhabitants knew that the AFGHANS were arrived within their district, they sent deputies to meet them. AMAN OLA was conducted into the city with the sound of drums, and other military instruments. He took up his quarters, with great part of his army, in the palace<sup>h</sup>, whilst the rest of the troops were lodged in the houses of the citizens.

The joy which this news occasioned at MAGHMUD's court, was allayed by another piece of intelligence, which came soon after. MOULA MOUSSA, who was commissioned to convoy the treasure to KANADHAR, had entered the province of SEGESTAN without any opposition; but MYRZA ISMAEL, governor of BANDA<sup>i</sup>, having attacked him on his march, MOUSSA and his convoy were put to flight, and obliged to abandon the treasure. It is affirmed that the money amounted to 150,000 tomans<sup>k</sup>.

<sup>h</sup> See Vol. I. page 231. <sup>i</sup> A strong fortress in that province. which some historians report to have been sent to SHAH TÆHMAS by ISMAEL.

<sup>k</sup> 175,000 l.

## C H A P. XXIII.

*PETER the GREAT invades the northern provinces of PERSIA. Operations of the RUSSIAN army. PERSIA threatened by the TURKS. The inhabitants of CASBIN take up arms, and drive away the AFGHANS. Artful behaviour of MAGHMUD upon that occasion.*

1722. **M**AGHMUD was not the only formidable enemy, that appeared in arms against the crown of PERSIA. PETER the GREAT being convinced that commerce is the only source of riches, and consequently the basis of the splendor of a state, designed to open a communication between the CASPIAN and EUXINE seas, by joining the VOLGA and the DON<sup>1</sup>; as he had already opened a communication by a canal, between the VOLGA and the NEVA, which communicates with the BALTIC; by this means he had rendered ST. PETERSBURG, on the side of EUROPE, what ASTRACHAN was on the side of ASIA. As he was sensible, that the commerce of ASIA could not be conveniently carried on but by the CASPIAN sea, he ordered a chart of it to be made; he likewise sent prince BECKAWITZ<sup>m</sup> into TARTARY, where he was barbarously murdered. The cruelty with which the OUSBEGS massacred a whole caravan coming from CHINA in 1721, having revived the memory of this unhappy catastrophe, and of the outrages committed against the RUSSIAN merchants at the taking of SHAMAKIE<sup>n</sup>; the RUSSIAN emperor was induced to send an ambassador into PERSIA. This minister was commissioned to make his complaints to SHAH HUSSEIN, if this prince was still upon the throne, concerning what had passed in SHIRVAN; and if he no longer reigned, to insist upon the usurper's giving satisfaction for the behaviour of the LESGEEES, the OUSBEGS, and his other allies.

It is very probable, that the real motive of the embassy was to examine the situation of the affairs of that kingdom, of which the RUSSIAN court had received but imperfect accounts. MAGHMUD, to whom the RUS-

SIAN

<sup>1</sup> See Vol. I. page 99.

See page 93.

<sup>m</sup> See his history, Vol. I. chap. 29.

<sup>n</sup> By the LESGEEES.



SIAN minister addressed himself, made answer, “ That he was desirous  
 “ of living upon good terms with the CZAR, whom fame had represented 1722.  
 “ as a wise and warlike prince ; but as the people he complained of were  
 “ neither his allies nor subjects, he could not prescribe laws to them, nor  
 “ be accountable for their conduct. He therefore recommended to him,  
 “ to provide for the security of the caravans henceforwards by strong  
 “ convoys, unless he chose to enter into an alliance with those nations,  
 “ through whose territories they were to pass.”

The CZAR was not satisfied with this answer ; the opportunity was favourable to make himself master of the western shore of the CASPIAN. For this purpose, he assembled in the neighbourhood of ASTRACHAN, an army of 30,000 men, composed of those veterans who had served in the war with SWEDEN ; these were joined by a body of TARTARS, COSSACKS, and KHALMUCKS. The 29th of JULY, he embarked on the CASPIAN, and anchored the 4th of AUGUST at the mouth of the river of TERKI, on the frontiers of DAGHESTAN. From thence a lieutenant was dispatched to TARKU, with orders to deliver to ALDI GHERAI, one of the princes of the LESGEEES, a manifesto, in which the CZAR pretended, according to the ordinary stile of such writings, “ That it was not any ambitious view of  
 “ enlarging his dominions that brought him thither ; but an intent to  
 “ rescue the king of PERSIA, and his loyal subjects, from the tyranny of  
 “ the AFGHANS ; and to chastise those rebels, for the disorders and excesses  
 “ which they had committed against the RUSSIANS : he concluded, with  
 “ threatening severe punishments against those who should persist in their  
 “ rebellion.” These manifestos were also sent to DERBEND, SHAMAKIE, and BAKU.

During these transactions, a brigadier, who had been detached with a body of 6000 horse to take possession of ANDREOF, was attacked by 5000 of the inhabitants of that place ; but he gave them so warm a reception, that he drove them back into the town, which was soon abandoned to pillage. The tenth of AUGUST the fleet landed the infantry at AHRAHIN near SULACK, where they threw up some entrenchments to cover themselves :

1722. here the SHAMKALL ALDI GHERAI, the lords of GORSKI and AXAN, and the fultan of a district, whose name was MAHOMMED, were presented to the CZAR. ALDI GHERAI received the RUSSIANS into TARKU: the end of the month the army resumed their march, passed the rivers MANAS, AHCHY, and BOYNAK, and encamped on the borders of the NITZI. The SULTAN MAHOMMED opposed their march with a body of 10,000 men; but after a sharp encounter, his troops were put to flight.

The first of SEPTEMBER the army encamped on the banks of the BUHAN, where they received intelligence, that the inhabitants of BAKU earnestly desired the protection of the CZAR against the insults of the LESGEES, who had vexed them with inroads for two years. As the army drew near to DERBEND<sup>o</sup>, the governor marched out of the town, followed by the principal inhabitants, and presented the keys to the RUSSIAN monarch. This prince was received with the sound of a numerous artillery, and the acclamations of the people. Passing thro' the town, he encamped at a small distance from the walls, on the south side. The situation of this place, I have already observed, is such as constitutes it the gate into ASIA. After this conquest, he resolved to return home: having therefore confirmed the governor<sup>p</sup> in his office, and left a garrison of two thousand RUSSIANS in the citadel, he ordered part of his troops to march back: of these, some were re-imbarked, and others went by land to ASTRACHAN; those remaining being sufficient to extend his conquest the next year: he arrived himself in that city by sea the middle of OCTOBER.

While the RUSSIANS were making themselves masters of the northern provinces of PERSIA, this unhappy empire saw a new storm impending towards the west. The port having been informed by SHAH HUSSEIN's own embassador, of the extremity to which his master was reduced, thought of reaping some advantage by his misfortunes. The opportunity was favourable, as she was secured against her ancient enemy by the treaty of PASSAROWITZ<sup>q</sup>. The spirit of faction, which generally pre-

cedes

<sup>p</sup> DERBEND, in the PERSIAN language, signifies a strong fortification; as in TURKISH, DEMIR CAPI, by which name they call this place, is a gate of iron.

<sup>o</sup> The city is considered as

distinct from the citadel, in the latter a RUSSIAN officer commanded.

<sup>q</sup> Concluded the 21<sup>st</sup>

of JULY 1718 with the emperor CHARLES VI.



cedes the subversion of monarchies, had diffused itself from ISFAHAN into the western provinces; so that the TURKS had all reason to expect that they might extend their conquest with a rapid progress. Things being thus situated, the PERSIAN minister was ordered to depart from CONSTANTINOPLE in the month of APRIL; and the grand vizir turned his whole attention to improve these favourable circumstances to the advantage of the OTTOMAN empire. Such were the different motions of these powers to the end of this year. 1722.

We shall now see what was transacting in the center of PERSIA during the course of the ensuing year. The city of CASBIN had no reason to be long pleased with the change of government; for AMAN OLA was hardly master of the place, when his insatiable avarice prompted him to treat the inhabitants with all the rigour which MAGHMUD generally shewed to conquered cities. These extortions, and the unbridled licentiousness of the soldiery, soon alienated the minds of the people. The yoke growing more intolerable every day, the leading men among them assembled privately, to consult on the means of delivering themselves from this oppressive tyranny. It was resolved, that part of the inhabitants should attack the royal palace at an hour appointed, while the rest were to fall sword in hand upon the AFGHANS dispersed in different quarters of the town; and to the end that their signal might cause no alarm, it was agreed to strike the first blow at the sound of the horn, which they make use of a little after sun-set, to give the people notice that the baths are ready.

The eighth of JANUARY was the day fixed for putting their design in execution. The conspirators had made all the necessary dispositions, and were waiting only for the critical moment of taking their full revenge; when some suspicious appearances determined them to anticipate the time. They had perceived early in the afternoon, that the AFGHANS abandoned some of their posts, and took possession of others; and that they were assembling in a body, in a manner which seemed to express the fear of danger. Upon this the conspirators took to their arms with great precipitation, and, without waiting for any other signal, fell upon the enemy on every side with the utmost fury. 1723.

1723. AMAN OLA, alarmed at the report of musquets, mounted on horseback, and hurried away to the great square, whither the common danger had brought most of the AFGHANS together. Both parties were equally animated with the spirit of hatred and revenge, which rendered the victory for some time dubious. AMAN OLA, though wounded in the right shoulder by a musquet ball, continued to encourage his troops by his example; but seeing them in danger of being overpowered by numbers, he was obliged at length to retreat to the palace, where not thinking himself secure, he went thro' the gardens by a private way, and got out of the reach of the enemy. The AFGHANS lost 1600 men in this action; their flight was so precipitate, that they left all their baggage and treasure behind them, and their slaves recovered their liberty.

No sooner did this melancholy news reach the ear of MAGHMUD, by an express messenger from AMAN OLA; than this prince resolved upon an expedient, to prevent an insurrection in ISFAHAN. He ordered the guns to be fired, giving out that his general had taken TÆHMAS MYRZA prisoner; and to confirm this report, he caused illuminations and other public rejoicings to be made, which served as a pretext to double the guards, and to hinder any stranger from entering the city. This piece of policy could not be exerted upon a more proper occasion; for as the sending away the detachment under AMAN OLA had considerably weakened the army, there was room to apprehend, that the people of ISFAHAN, upon being informed of what had passed, might attempt to follow the example of the inhabitants of CASBIN.



## C H A P. XXIV.

MAGHMUD orders the PERSIAN ministers and lords to be massacred. Arrival of a TURKISH envoy. ISFAHAN is almost depopulated. Excursions of NAZR ULLA. Heavy contributions laid upon the EUROPEAN traders.

THE great uneasiness which the affair of CASBIN had created in the mind of MAGHMUD, was in some measure removed a few days after, by the return of the detachment under AMAN OLA. But how different was their appearance! When they set out upon the expedition, their numbers, their spirit, their intrepid countenance seemed to promise new victories; but the excessive cold, against which they were not provided, and the wounds which numbers of them had received, had rendered them rather objects of compassion than fear. The misery and hardships they had endured, destroyed many of them on the road, and the remainder were harrassed by their march, and dispirited by their defeat. 1723.

ASHREFF, upon leaving CASBIN, had taken the road to KANDAHAR with 300 horse, from an apprehension that this insurrection would be followed by a general revolt; or from a desire of freeing himself from the danger, to which the jealousy of MAGHMUD continually exposed him; so that this army, by no means appeared the same, as that which had left ISFAHAN two months before.

MAGHMUD now resolved on a project which he had been meditating for some time. The insurrection of CASBIN made such an impression on him, that he thought himself in great danger in the midst of a numerous and disaffected multitude, with only a handful of soldiers about him. The ordinary suggestion of his cruel mind under these circumstances was that of murder; for by putting one part of them to death, he hoped to remain more absolute master of the other. To prevent this barbarous expedient from causing the very insurrection which he apprehended, he determined to begin with those, whose credit, rank, or birth, might enable them to form or support a faction. With this intent, the very same day that AMAN OLA arrived, he invited the ministers, lords, and other PER-

SIAN

1723. SIAN chiefs, to a public entertainment. They came without any mistrust, to the number of three hundred ; but as soon as they were seated, his guard fell upon them with their sabres, and barbarously murdered them.

Among these victims to his infernal policy, were the great chancellor of the empire, the governor of ISFAHAN and his younger brother, both of them brothers of MAHOMMED KOULI KHAN, prince of GEORGIA; the KHAN of COKHILAN, the grand master of the artillery, and most of the principal persons of note belonging to the court of HUSSEIN. The ATHEMAT DOULET was spared, in consideration of his brother's having facilitated the escape of the AFGHANS at the affair of CASBIN. The horror of this cruel execution, was increased by the circumstance attending the murder of a boy of twelve years of age. He was son to ROSTAM MYRZA prince of GEORGIA, and as he had been adopted by an AFGHAN, he fled for shelter during the massacre to the officers of that nation, whose protection he implored with tears; but neither his tender years, nor the solicitations of the officers could save him: he was torn from them and butchered.

The bodies of those that were massacred, were exposed on the MEIDAN before the palace. To prevent their posterity from rising up in revenge, MAGHMUD gave orders for all their children also to be murdered. The impious manner in which he relieved his dastardly fears of these children, was yet more shocking. Two hundred young persons of the first nobility of PERSIA and GEORGIA, were led together from the academy where they were educated, to an open field; and being there permitted to run for their lives, the AFGHANS galloped after them, and enjoyed the horrible sport of chasing them like savage beasts, till they were all slaughtered. MAGHMUD, whose design was to secure the throne by the total extirpation of the nobility, to colour so flagitious a conduct, pretended that these young lords had formed a conspiracy against his life. His barbarous policy did not stop here: he had picked out of SHAH HUSSEIN's guards, and other troops belonging to that prince, near 3000 men, and taken them into his pay. These he assembled in an area within the palace, under the pretence of giving them an extraordinary allowance of PLEO; and while they were eating

it,



it, a body of troops, which had been posted there for that purpose, fell upon them, and cut them to pieces, before they had time to recover themselves. 1723.

MAGHMUD now imagined he might, without any disguise, securely destroy such as were objects of jealousy. Accordingly he gave general orders to his soldiers, to put every one to the sword, who had at any time received pay from the exchequer, either by way of salary, or pension. As the enquiry was committed to the soldiers, who were constituted in a great measure the judges of the sentence which they were to execute, the intentions of their chief were extremely well answered; for during the fifteen days this massacre lasted, the despondency of the people was arrived to such a pitch, that one might see a single man leading three or four PERSIANS to execution. It was impossible to render such a series of barbarities excusable. MAGHMUD however pretended that he had been informed the inhabitants of ISFAHAN, after the example of those of CASBIN, intended to rise up in arms, and to massacre all the AFGHANS. It is even believed, that he spared the lives of some PERSIANS of distinction, to give his conduct the air of justice, as if these had disclosed to him this pretended conspiracy.

The third day of this tragedy, OSMAN AGA, whom the BASHA of BAGDAT had dispatched into PERSIA by order of the grand signior, arrived at ISFAHAN. A detachment of two hundred men was assigned for his guard, with orders not to suffer any one to come into the palace where he was lodged. The subject of his commission is not known: MAGHMUD suspected from the discourse he had with him, that he was a spy, who, under the sanction of the law of nations, was come to pry into the state of affairs. This prince, who was naturally of a proud and violent temper, would have paid but little regard to this law, if his ministers had not represented the inconveniences which might attend the violation of it. He was therefore prevailed on, not only to dissemble his resentment, but also to permit that this TURKISH minister, in company with some AFGHANS who were appointed to watch him, should see SHAH HUSSEIN.



1723. The TURKS not knowing what was transacting at ISFAHAN, had sent OSMAN to this unfortunate prince; but he was ordered eighteen days after his arrival to depart. He had reason enough to think, that his presence had been disagreeable; for they searched both himself and his baggage twice at the city gates; and three miles from thence, upon visiting some chests which had not been opened in the town, two young PERSIAN women were dragged out of them, and stabbed upon the spot, as also some slaves of the same nation, who were disguised in a TURKISH dress, thinking to escape among the AGA's retinue.

MAGHMUD, in the mean time, used every endeavour to weaken the PERSIAN inhabitants of ISFAHAN. The blood which he had spilt, was not sufficient to remove his anxiety. He ordered a proclamation to be made, that whoever was inclined to quit the town, should be at liberty to retire; except a certain number of young PERSIANS whom he had chosen, in order to train them up to the manners and discipline of his own nation. In consequence of which, all those who were able to bear arms, and had not complied with the tacit orders implied in that permission, were secretly put to death.

The few inhabitants that were left in the city could give him no further umbrage; he therefore applied his thoughts to those in the open country. Encouraged by the insurrection at CASBIN, these were every where in arms against the rebels; especially the inhabitants of BEN ISFAHAN, who continued to signalize their hatred against the AFGHANS, so as to kill several of them at the very gates of the town, from whence they also carried off some pieces of cannon. The probable effect of such an example, was not the only circumstance that disturbed MAGHMUD. The provisions which he had caused to be brought into ISFAHAN were almost consumed; and as the insurrection of the open country hindered a fresh supply, the AFGHANS were in danger of being famished in their turn.

To remedy these inconveniencies, MAGHMUD gave orders to NAZR ULLA to take the field with a detachment of 3000 men. This general was repulsed at several of these little towns; however, he took some by storm,

and



and obliged others to surrender ; so that at length he obtained a supply of provisions. Among other places KOOMSHA, a city situated fifteen leagues south of ISFAHAN, submitted to him. As this supply had been raised in a country ruined by the war, it was not sufficient to maintain the AFGHAN army for any length of time : MAGHMUD therefore gave NAZR ULLA a reinforcement of 1000 men, with orders to make an incursion into the northern parts of IRAC AGEMI. This general set out accordingly the 4th of APRIL, and directing his march thro' the deserts to the southward, the better to surprize the enemy, appeared suddenly in the neighbourhood of HAMADAN. The KHAN who was governor of that country marched out at the head of 3000 men to give him battle : but his troops were too raw to stand the fire of the AFGHANS, who, after putting them to flight, made three attempts to take the city by storm.

We have already observed, that the AFGHANS had neither patience nor skill to carry on a regular siege ; so that a single wall retarded their progress as much as the strongest bastion. NAZR ULLA being discouraged at the loss he had sustained in endeavouring to take the place, contented himself with ravaging the country. As things were situated, there was nothing difficult in this undertaking. The terror occasioned by this sudden incursion, and by the apprehensions of the cruelty of the AFGHANS, was so great, that wherever they turned their arms, they found the towns and villages deserted. It is mentioned as a matter of astonishment, that during the whole course of this expedition, none but the keeper of the king's studs in KHOUSISTAN, and the KHAN of HAMADAN, had the courage to oppose the rebels. The former indeed was more successful than this general ; for taking 2000 men with him, who were appointed to guard the king's horses, he attacked a party of the rebels, and carried off a considerable number of camels loaded with plunder.

This little army had therefore leisure and opportunity to pillage as much as they pleased ; after which NAZR ULLA, willing to fulfil his master's intentions, led them towards DERGHEZIN, a town situate within three days journey of HAMADAN, on the side of CASBIN. This town and its neighbourhood, are inhabited by people of the same sect as the AF-



1723. GHANS. It was the policy of ABAS I. to transport the inhabitants of conquered places from one country to another, with the view not only of preventing any danger from their disaffection, but likewise of depopulating the frontiers exposed to an enemy: this prince had removed these people from KOURDISTAN, to the territories of HAMADAN, about DERGHEZIN; where, according to their original custom, they lived the greatest part of the year in tents. This conformity of manners and religion, first gave the notion to NAZR ULLA of inviting them to ISFAHAN. He engaged their chiefs, and managed the affair so dexterously, that he persuaded them to agree to this new migration. It is probable the chiefs themselves might prefer the houses of the capital to their cottages and tents; but NAZR ULLA had soon reason to think, that this change was not agreed to with the unanimous consent of these people, for numbers of them, biassed by their affection for their own habitations, deserted, and returned home again.

While NAZR ULLA was ravaging this part of PERSIA, MAGHMUD did not act more humanely towards the people of ISFAHAN, not sparing even the foreigners, as the ENGLISH factors there experienced; for besides a considerable sum in money, he took a large value in cloth and stuffs. The DUTCH EAST-INDIA company's factors were treated more severely. The merchants of that nation had sold, during the famine, a great quantity of bad sugar at an excessive high price; and as the extravagant dearness of every kind of provision, had stripped even the wealthy of the greatest part of their money, the DUTCH laid out their whole capital, in purchasing at a very low rate the most valuable moveables and commodities in the city, as stuffs, silks, furs, jewels, &c. But they were at length obliged to refund; for MAGHMUD ordered their standard<sup>r</sup> to be beaten down; and compelled them to discover where they had concealed their wealth. They had found the means of remitting some part of their treasure at different times to BENDER ABASSI, yet the sum said to be extorted from them upon this occasion amounted to near 400,000 crowns<sup>o</sup>.

The

A kind of ensign or banner, like that used on board of ships, which the consuls of EUROPEAN nations put up before their houses. <sup>r</sup> 100,000 l.



The INDIANS, whom commercial views had induced to settle in ISFAHAN, were also taxed at the rate of 27,000 tomans<sup>t</sup>. After this MAGHMUD made a fresh attack upon the ARMENIANS of JULFA. We have already mentioned that they had given a bond payable at the termination of the siege, and that nine of their chiefs had been arrested as sureties for the engagement, which still amounted to 50,000 tomans. Whether it was thro' design or inability, these people had failed payment; but MAGHMUD sent for the principal of them, and caused the heads of three of the sureties to be cut off; among these was their CALENTAR or civil magistrate. After extorting some money from the rest through the terror of this execution, he at length permitted them to return home.

---

C H A P. XXV.

*ZEBERDEST KHAN lays siege to GHIEZ, and takes it. The inhabitants of BEN ISFAHAN surrender by capitulation. NAZR ULLA returns with a considerable booty and provisions. A new colony of AFGHANS arrives from KANDAHAR. The VALI of GEORGIA deposed. NAZR ULLA is sent into FARSISTAN. MAGHMUD besieges GHULPAIGAN. TÆHMAS marches an army to raise the siege; his army defeated, and GHULPAIGAN<sup>v</sup> taken. Resolution and unhappy fate of LUTF ALI KHAN.*

**I**N the mean time MAGHMUD carried on the war with great vigour against the several towns situated in the neighbourhood of ISFAHAN. He had committed the care of subduing those places to ZEBERDEST KHAN, who was taken prisoner twenty years before by the AFGHANS, and had passed from the state of slavery, to one of the principal posts in their army. This officer maintained the reputation of bravery, by which he had made his fortune. Without amusing himself, as his predecessor had done, in ravaging the open country, or in plundering a few defenceless towns, he ventured towards the beginning of MAY to lay siege to GHIEZ, a fortress before which the AFGHANS had miscarried more than once.

This

<sup>t</sup> 67,500 l.

<sup>v</sup> This is a town near CASHAN.



1723. This place was situated within three leagues of ISFAHAN, upon an eminence which commands the country, and was esteemed very strong. The KHAN summoned the garrison to surrender; upon the governor's refusal, he sent some PERSEES to break open the gates with their hatchets. But the reception his men met, soon convinced him that he must proceed with greater precaution. He therefore resolved to undermine the walls, and open a subterraneous passage into the town. The work was directed by a PERSEE, whose profession was to dig wells: when it was completed, he ordered a detachment to make their way through it sword in hand. The besieged, astonished to see the enemy start up from under the ground, a thing of which they had no conception, no longer resisted. Most of them were put to the sword, and their wives and children carried into slavery. This conquest proved of great service to the AFGHANS, for it not only secured the neighbouring villages, but likewise contributed greatly to engage the inhabitants of BEN ISFAHAN to submit to their government.

It was against this town that ZEBERDEST KHAN turned his arms, after the taking of GHIEZ. We have already seen, how its inhabitants maintained the reputation, which they had acquired by the advantages gained over MAGHMUD and AMAN OLA: their example served to keep up the spirit of resistance in other neighbouring towns. Hitherto they had been deaf to every proposal made by the usurper, but their present circumstances began to render them more docile: they considered that prince TÆHMAS, whose name was hardly any longer mentioned, was not in a capacity to lend them assistance; that the taking of GHIEZ enabled the enemy to blockade them more conveniently; and as it was now impossible for them to support an independency, it would be exposing themselves to inevitable miseries to no purpose, to hold out any longer. These reflections inclined them to acquiesce to the solicitations of ZEBERDEST KHAN. On the other hand they were deterred by the apprehension that MAGHMUD might resent the treatment shewn to his brother and his other relations, with the several damages they had done him. The KHAN however dissipated their fears, by offering that the capitulation should be

signed



signed by the principal officers of the army, who were to engage their honours for the strict execution of it. On these conditions, they submitted at length to the yoke of the usurper. 1723.

MAGHMUD soon justified their suspicions: he could not forgive the damages they had done him, nor their having several times endeavoured to persuade the inhabitants of ISFAHAN to deliver themselves by a general insurrection from the yoke under which they groaned. His intention was to engage them in some step, which would justify his breaking the capitulation, and serve as a pretext to his vengeance. He therefore endeavoured by means of some persons, who should feign a detestation of himself and his government, to persuade them to revolt; but these people were too wise or too virtuous to be caught in this snare. They were as religious observers of the oath they had taken to him, as of the allegiance they had sworn to their lawful sovereign; hence they seized those emissaries, and sent them to ISFAHAN in irons, that MAGHMUD might inflict what punishment he pleased upon them. This mark of fidelity at length reconciled him to them.

The return of NAZR ULLA, after an excursion of three months, afforded no less pleasure to MAGHMUD, than the reduction of those two places. The apprehension he had been under, that the city would be depopulated by a second famine, was intirely removed when he saw this general arrive safe in ISFAHAN, with a great number of camels loaded with provisions and booty; also with many thousand DERGHEZINS, who might be considered as a new colony, not subject to be suspected, but intirely agreeable to the AFGHANS.

Towards the end of JUNE appeared a second colony; this was a caravan of several thousand camels, which arrived from KANDAHAR. These succours were owing to the prudence of MAGHMUD, at the very beginning of his reign. After the defeat of MOULA MOUSSA by MYRZA ISMAEL, by which a great treasure was plundered, he sent MAHOMMED NISCHAN, his grand master of the ceremonies<sup>w</sup>, with a fresh supply of money into that country, to make new levies: and as this prince perceived that his

soldiers

<sup>w</sup> ESICK AGASSI.



1723. soldiers deserted in bodies, and that whole companies had returned home, from the desire of seeing their wives and children; he intrusted this officer with 8000 camels, to bring the families of those AFGHANS who were already in the army, as likewise of those whom he should enlist into the service. This precaution, together with the fame which he had acquired of having ascended the throne of PERSIA, rendered this caravan much more considerable than was expected.

MAGHMUD distributed part of the deserted houses and lands to the AFGHANS and DERGHEZINS \* lately arrived; and finding that these colonies, tho' numerous, were not sufficient to re-people the town, he raised a new fund out of the last taxes, and put it into the hands of MAHOMMED NISCHAN, with orders to lay it out in raising 15000 men more, and to bring them from KANDAHAR with their families.

In the mean time SHAH TÆHMAS continued at TAVRIS, contriving means to recover his dominions; but gave no demonstration of a capacity equal to the part he had to act. His conduct was but a natural consequence of the manner in which he had been educated. According to the custom established by ABAS the GREAT, he was not permitted to go out of the seraglio, till the very day he was named successor to the throne. The same prince, by an effect of his jealousy, committed the education of the princes of the blood to eunuchs, whose principal care was to keep them in ignorance. TÆHMAS came so rude and unpolished out of their hands, that he was obliged to rely intirely upon the information and fidelity of the people about him. The severe manner in which he was educated, was moreover productive of another inconveniency. He was hardly released from the seraglio, when his favourite passions began to predominate. Thinking himself no longer accountable for his conduct, he abandoned himself intirely to his pleasures, which neither reason nor experience had instructed him how to regulate. To pursue the true objects of pleasure, as agreeable to the character of a prince, can only be the effect of wise instructions. What then could be expected from this heir of the PERSIAN diadem?

He

\* Sometimes called DARGUZZIS.



He had already made one false step in discharging his army at CASBIN; 1723. and now he made another no less injurious to his interest. Soon after he was declared king, he sent a messenger to VACHTANGA, VALI of GEORGIA, with orders to repair forthwith to TAVRIS, and pay him homage. A resentment of this prince's behaviour in refusing to march to the succour of ISFAHAN, or some false policy, occasioned this summons to be couched in terms, which only served to irritate a person who was naturally haughty, and very little inclined to obedience. The VALI provoked at this treatment, despised the orders; but foreseeing danger from the disaffection which the grandees of the country shewed to him; and having already fruitlessly attempted to subject his territories to RUSSIA, he<sup>n</sup> now wrote to CONSTANTINOPLE, offering to pay the port annually twenty-four purses, by way of tribute, on condition they would maintain him in the possession of his government, and confirm the privileges which the kings of PERSIA had granted to the princes his predecessors, as well as to the nation in general.

The VALI had not time to execute this last project; for TÆHMAS deposed him in MARCH following, and nominated in his place, MAHOMMED KOULI KHAN, prince of CAKET, who was also descended from the antient kings of GEORGIA. The new VALI presented himself before TEFLIS not long after, in order to take possession of his government; but not having a force sufficient to contend with VACHTANGA, who, contrary to the advice of the grandees of the nation, had given arms to the people; he was obliged to return to his principality for succours. As soon as he arrived there, he assembled all the military people that could be found, and entered into a treaty with his neighbours the LESGEES, who supplied him with a body of 7000 men; the junction of these forces augmented his army so considerably, that on the 8th of MAY he appeared again before TEFLIS.

VACHTANGA foreseeing this storm, had already concerted his measures. Finding that the inhabitants began to treat him publicly as a rebel, and that he could no longer depend on their affection, he quitted the town privately the preceding night, and carried with him his family,

<sup>n</sup> Towards the end of FEBRUARY.

1723. and the great treasure which he had amassed during the course of a long reign. This proud GEORGIAN then felt the punishment of the mischiefs caused by his disobedience. Having wandered from place to place as a fugitive, in AUGUST 1725 he took refuge in ST. PETERSBURG; where, for reasons of state, and the connexion he had with the RUSSIAN court, he found a safe azylum. The new VALI meeting no longer with a competitor, made his entrance into TEFLIS. The grandees, and the inhabitants in general, were convinced of their former error, and received him with great demonstrations of joy. He had not been long with them, when he taxed them with 50,000 tomans<sup>y</sup>, part of which was paid immediately, and the remainder a few months after.

In this interval the AFGHAN army was increased by a body of 6000 DERGHEZINS, whom NAZR ULLA had collected before his return, and by a considerable number of TURKISH adventurers, whom MAGHMUD had taken into his pay, as likewise by the recruits arrived from KANDAHAR. This prince was now able to engage in some fresh enterprize, but apprehending that his absence might cause some troubles in the capital, he resolved to entrust the execution of his designs to the experience of NAZR ULLA. Thus the army was again divided into two bodies: this general having the most numerous under his command, received the SULTAN'S directions to fall upon the province of FARSISTAN.

MAGHMUD was of too active a genius to be long idle: leaving a sufficient garrison in ISFAHAN, he led the remainder of his troops against GHULPAIGAN, a town situated in a plain westward of CASHAN. The inhabitants of this place were strongly attached to TÆHMAS'S party, and had neglected no precaution necessary to enable them to hold out a long siege. MAGHMUD caused his cannon to be fired against the walls, and then commanded his troops to storm the town in three different places. The PERSIANS defended themselves with great resolution, but not without abandoning some of the works which they had thrown up.

Things were in this situation, when MAGHMUD received intelligence, that a new enemy had started up against him. The success which TÆHMAS had

<sup>y</sup> 125,000 l.



had in reducing TEFLIS, raised the courage of that prince; he appointed FENDOUN, KHAN of the KOURDS, to command his troops; and having ordered the VALI'S of LORISTAN and ARABIA, and the KHAN of COHKILAN to join that general with all the forces of their respective governments, he gave directions to him to march to ISFAHAN, and attack the usurper. FENDOUN KHAN was prevented from drawing any succours from those provinces, by the motion of the OTTOMAN armies; who having invaded GEORGIA, as we shall have occasion to mention more particularly, became masters of that country, and threatened the frontiers of PERSIA on every side. This general had however 8000 men under his command, all choice troops, which TÆHMAS had assembled in the neighbourhood of TAVRIS, and with which he might have rendered some service: but preferring plunder, he pillaged the quarter of the city where the ARMENIANS reside, under a pretence that these people favoured his master's enemies; and adding imposture to this act of villainy, he sent the heads of some of those who had been murdered on this occasion to the SHAH, as if they belonged to the AFGHANS killed in battle; but the fraud was easily discovered, as the heads of several ARMENIAN priests were known by the tonsure.

A general so little a friend to justice, seemed to promise no great success towards retrieving the affairs of the SHAH; however he determined to attack the enemy. He knew that MAGHMUD had marched out of ISFAHAN with only 10,000 men; and presumed with good reason that this army, already harrassed with the cold and continual rains, would not be able to withstand the joint attack of his troops and of the inhabitants of GHULPAIGAN. Flattered with this notion, he marched against the AFGHANS, but was soon put to flight, with the loss of 2000 of his forces. He then retired to his own country, whither he invited the TURKS, who, on condition of his fealty to them, left him in possession of his government.

TÆHMAS was thus punished for intrusting the command of his troops to a man, who had no military abilities; and whose fidelity he ought to have suspected, since he could not be ignorant that the KOURDS are of the

1723. same sect as the TURKS their neighbours. This event was followed with the loss of MACON. These new rebels having entered that place by surprize the very same year, put the garrison to the sword, and made themselves masters of that fortress, which in those countries is esteemed impregnable.

The loss of this battle was also attended with that of GHULPAIGAN. Some of the inhabitants endeavoured to throw themselves into a fort contiguous to the town, but MAGHMUD cut most of them to pieces. The remainder no sooner beheld a barbed elephant brought against their walls in order to make a breach, than they submitted to the conqueror.

The SULTAN having thus routed an army, taken a town, and obliged a fortress to surrender, returned triumphant to ISFAHAN. He then entrusted the command of his troops to ZEBERDEST KHAN, who not long after made himself master of HONSAR, a large town situate within five days journey north-west of the capital. Towards the end of DECEMBER this general marched against CASHAN, whose inhabitants, contrary to the allegiance they had sworn when AMAN OLA was upon his march towards CASBIN, had taken up arms in favour of prince TÆHMAS.

LUTF ALI KHAN, famous for the defeat he gave the rebels before KHERMAN, and afterwards for his disgrace at a time when he might have saved the empire, was not included in the massacre of the nobles already mentioned. MAGHMUD was desirous of gaining him over to his interest; and tho' this faithful subject had always avoided entering into any engagements prejudicial to his lawful sovereign; yet the SULTAN, hoping to win him, continued to load him with favours. LUTF ALI KHAN being thus esteemed and respected at court, might have spent his days in ease and tranquillity; but his loyalty would not permit him to be passive: he thought it his duty to serve TÆHMAS his lawful sovereign. With this view he waited a favourable opportunity, and made his escape from ISFAHAN, designing to join the SHAH in TAURIS.

The flight of LUTF ALI KHAN, flung the AFGHANS into fresh apprehensions. They could not forget that this general, after the victory he had obtained



tained over them, was just upon the point of crushing them in their own country. They knew that he was acquainted with their weak condition; and should he put himself at the head of an army, which his reputation might enable him to collect, it was hard to say what would be the consequence. MAGHMUD caused diligent search to be made for him, and promised considerable rewards to those who should discover him. They had not yet finished their enquiries, when the unfortunate LUTF ALI KHAN appeared in sight. The people of BEN ISFAHAN having discovered him in their town, brought him to the usurper. MAGHMUD no sooner approached him, than forgetting his own dignity, he fell upon him like a mad-man, and hewed him in pieces with his sabre. How greatly the tyrant stood in fear of the virtues of this illustrious general, appeared by this barbarous and unprincely action; as well as by the privileges and favours, with which he rewarded the zeal and affection of the inhabitants of BEN ISFAHAN.

---

C H A P. XXVI.

*The TURKS send an army into GEORGIA. The CZAR subdues GHILAN. Uneasiness of the OTTOMAN port at the progress of the RUSSIANS. TÆHMAS sends an ambassador to the port, who miscarries in his negotiation. ISMAEL BEG is sent ambassador to the court of RUSSIA, and concludes a treaty with the CZAR. Particulars of this treaty.*

**D**URING these transactions in the interior parts of the PERSIAN dominions; in the month of OCTOBER the preceding year, the OTTOMAN court dispatched NISLI MAHOMMED AGA, as envoy to PETER the GREAT. As he passed through CRIM TARTARY, the KHAN informed him of the circumstances of this monarch's expedition into PERSIA. He took the road to ASTRACHAN, where he expected to meet the emperor<sup>z</sup>; but hearing that this prince was set out for MOSCO, he changed his

<sup>z</sup> We use the word emperor and CZAR in common, the former is most proper, though the latter is most familiar.

1723. his rout. NISLI MAHOMMED AGA had received a strict charge to make all possible expedition; but as soon as he arrived on the RUSSIAN territories, he was detained by the officer who commanded on that frontier, under a pretence that he could not permit him to proceed any further, without express orders from his court. This difficulty, which seemed to arise only from too scrupulous an exactness in the officer, was not removed till the CZAR received news from NEPLEUIFF his resident at CONSTANTINOPLE. This monarch being then informed of the dispositions of the port, commissioned one of his officers to receive the TURKISH envoy upon the frontier, and to conduct him to court.

NISLI MAHOMMED AGA then proceeded on his journey, and arrived at MOSCO, where he made his public entry the sixth of FEBRUARY. Some days after he was conducted to the audience of the CZAR, with the honours due to his character: he delivered his credentials, and begged that commissaries might be nominated to treat with him, concerning the affairs committed to his charge. The grand signior's letter to the CZAR was conceived in very strong, tho' moderate terms. The OTTOMAN emperor intimated to him, that he had carried his resentment to a sufficient length against the LESGEEES; and gave him to understand, that as these people were SUNNIS, and consequently under his protection, he could not be an idle spectator, in seeing them reduced under the dominion of any christian prince. This was signifying, that if RUSSIA intended to preserve the peace inviolate, she must give up TARKU and DERBEND, and demolish the fort of the holy cross.

The AGA explained himself fully upon the subject to baron SCHAFIROFF, vice-chancellor of RUSSIA, and solicited strongly for a quick dispatch; but the CZAR, being informed from CONSTANTINOPLE that the TURKS were as desirous as himself to avoid coming to a rupture, deferred giving an answer.

While the TURKISH envoy endeavoured to discover the motive of this affected delay, HAHDGEE DAOUD BEG, chief of SHAMAKIE, being alarmed to see DERBEND in the hands of a prince, who pretended he had taken



up arms with no other view than to chastise him for his misdemeanours, had sent a messenger to CONSTANTINOPLE, offering to put himself under the protection of the grand signior. As this proposal facilitated the views which the TURKS had upon GEORGIA, it was received with joy; and the HAHDGEE was assured by the grand signior, that to discharge the duties which his office of IMAM<sup>a</sup> imposed upon him, he would soon rescue him from the yoke of the christians, and be revenged of the GEORGIANS, who had encouraged the enemy to invade their country. After which he nominated the HAHDGEE, KHAN of DERBEND, and in this quality he sent him the standards and horses tails, with which BASHA's of the first rank are honoured in TURKEY.

This event confirmed the port in the resolution of engaging the CZAR to abandon his conquests. In order the more easily to persuade him into this measure, the grand signior published a manifesto, setting forth, that as DERBEND formerly constituted a part of his empire, and as the protection which he owed to mussulmen in general, obliged him to assist the LESGEEs against the enterprizes of christian powers, he could no longer continue the peace with RUSSIA, unless the CZAR would withdraw his troops from DAGISTAN, and particularly from DERBEND; which he could so much the less forsake, as there was still a mosque there, which was formerly built by the port.

The last reason was so much the more plausible, as the law forbids the MAHOMMEDANS to give up, either by capitulation or treaty, any of those towns where such temples have been raised. This manifesto was hardly sent into RUSSIA, and distributed among the foreign ministers at CONSTANTINOPLE, when the port received letters, by which VAGHTANGA offered, under the conditions already related, to acknowledge the sovereignty of the grand signior.

The port, inclined to make advantage of these different proposals, gave orders to the BASHAS of the provinces of ASIA, to join all the troops of their respective governments to those of the BASHA of ERZEROU, who was named general in chief<sup>b</sup> of the army designed against GEORGIA.

And

<sup>a</sup> Chief and defender of the law, and sovereign of the people who profess it.

<sup>b</sup> SERASKIER.

1723. And in order to provide against any enterprizes of the RUSSIANS, the garrisons were reinforced, and the magazines of the frontier towns filled with provisions. But the real designs of the port were against PERSIA; this is manifest from her refusing the offer which the KHAN of CRIM TARTARY made to obstruct the progress of the RUSSIANS on the side of PERSIA, by laying siege to ASTRACHAN.

PETER the GREAT was in the same disposition, in this respect, as the port, and was making the same military preparations. He gave orders for putting DERBEND into a state of defence, and for rendering the troops complete. He then assembled an army on the frontiers of DAGISTAN, under pretence that the LESGEEs threatened to make an irruption into the kingdom of ASTRACHAN.

In the mean time he continued to amuse the TURKISH envoy, and to insinuate to this minister, that the interest of both courts was to agree concerning the conquests they were to make in PERSIA; that this was the way to avoid any obstacles that might arise on either side; and that acting thus in concert, they might settle the government of that monarchy, in the manner most agreeable to their respective interests. And joining menaces to persuasion, he dispatched NISLI MAHOMMED AGA home with an answer to this effect: that it was not his intention to make the least infringement in the peace, which he had concluded with the port: but if this power should attempt to oppose his views, he would take proper measures to cross the designs which the grand signior might have against the countries situate between the two seas<sup>c</sup>. At the same time he gave orders to transport the artillery, with ammunition and provisions, for taking the field; and leaving MOSCO, he set out the beginning of MARCH for ST. PETERSBURG.

It is evident that the CZAR's proposals were equally advantageous to both empires: of this the port was convinced, but it was difficult to put them in execution. The RUSSIANS and TURKS had in some measure declared war against PERSIA, one by invading DAGISTAN, and the other by marching an army into GEORGIA; so that it did not seem

<sup>c</sup> CASPIAN and BLACK SEAS.



seem consistent for TÆHMAS to commit his interests to neighbours who were stripping him of his dominions. 1723.

The port had still greater obstacles to surmount. As soon as MAGHMUD was become master of ISFAHAN, he enjoined the inhabitants, upon pain of death, to break off all epistolary correspondence, and by the different precautions which he had taken on this occasion, the success of the siege had been kept a secret. Upon the return of OSMAN AGA from ISFAHAN, the court of CONSTANTINOPLE was informed that this prince had obliged SHAH HUSSEIN to resign his capital and his diadem. This great event occasioned new deliberations. MAGHMUD seemed possessed of the qualifications and fortune of those conquerors, who in former ages had ravaged ASIA. The TURKISH ministers however were not so much afraid of his power, as embarrassed by his being of the sect of the SUNNIS as well as themselves. They concluded that their troops would refuse to fight against a prince, who, by the destruction of the PERSIAN empire, appeared as a hero of their religion. This difficulty increased, as they were to enter into an alliance with a christian power, not only to share between them the different provinces of a monarchy ceded by the abdication of SHAH HUSSEIN to MAGHMUD, but likewise to dethrone him, and to substitute in his stead TÆHMAS, a prince of the sect of ALI. Yet it seemed prudent to put a stop to the progress of a man, whose ambitious enterprizes already threatened the empire; and there was no possibility of effecting this with any security to the frontier, but by accepting the CZAR's proposal.

The port was thus in suspense between the fear of MAGHMUD's future success, and the hope of reaping some advantage from the situation to which he had reduced the kingdom of PERSIA. The CZAR, who had prolonged the negotiation with the TURKISH minister upon the same principle, gave orders that he should be conducted to the frontier by very slow journeys; so that he did not reach CONSTANTINOPLE till the end of MAY. As soon as he arrived, he assured the grand signior, that the CZAR had no other intention than to support a good understanding with his highness; adding, that this prince had sent full powers to his resident,



1723. to act in concert with the port, that no umbrage might be taken on either side.

In the beginning of MARCH, GHILAN submitted to the RUSSIAN troops. About the same time IBRAHIM, BASHA of ERZEROUM, was joined by the BEGLERBEGS of DIARBECK, TREBESONDE, and several others, who formed an army of 40,000 men. The BASHA put himself at the head of them, and sent a messenger to MAHOMMED KOULI KHAN, VALI of GEORGIA, demanding the delivery of the city and castle of TEFLIS. The VALI wanted neither courage nor experience; but he had very few troops, and the taxes which he had imposed, alienated the affections of the people from him, in the very beginning of his reign. Under these circumstances he submitted to the OTTOMAN dominion, on condition that the SERASKIER would confirm him in his principality. The TURKISH deputy promised him this upon oath, and returned to give an account of his negotiation to the general.

Agreeably to this convention, the TURKS marched to the walls of TEFLIS the 12th of JUNE. MAHOMMED KOULI KHAN met the SERASKIER with a numerous retinue in due form, and delivered the keys of the town and castle to him. This general received the VALI with great demonstrations of benevolence, and as a mark of honour gave him a vest lined with sable; but as soon as he took possession of the fortress, he ordered him to be arrested, thus confirming a GEORGIAN proverb, "To trust an OTTOMAN is to lean upon a wave." The deposed KHAN found means a few days after to escape from prison; and retired into his principality of CAKET. In the mean time the port had nominated BACCAR, VACHTANGA's eldest son, for his successor. This prince was so averse to the new government, that a few months afterwards he went out of TEFLIS, under pretence of diverting himself by hunting, and voluntarily retired from a place, where he enjoyed only the empty title of sovereign.

In the mean time the SERASKIER, encouraged by the reduction of TEFLIS, cast his eye upon GANJA, and marched his army the autumn following,

\* TURKISH honour has had a reputation, but most modern writers mention it as an imaginary thing.



following, in order to lay siege to it. He made himself master of the suburb of the ARMENIANS; but the garrison and inhabitants of the town recovering from their surprize, attacked him in his camp. The TURKS, being pressed hard on every side, abandoned their artillery and baggage, and fled with the utmost precipitation: they lost on this occasion 3000 men. The SERASKIER, dispirited by this disgrace, retired with the shattered remains of his army to his government of ERZEROUM. 1723.

The reduction of GEORGIA had in some measure made the TURKS amends for the uneasiness occasioned by the RUSSIANS taking possession of GHILAN. The courts of ST. PETERSBURG and CONSTANTINOPLE seemed now to triumph successively at the expence of the fugitive king of PERSIA. As their jealousy of each other increased with their success, they took such measures as they judged most convenient for their mutual security. The CZAR marched fresh troops towards SHIRVAN; and the grand signior put AZOFF, and the other towns on the RUSSIAN frontiers, in a posture of defence.

TÆHMAS SHAH being thus on all sides oppressed, resolved to try his success in negotiation. With this view he confirmed the credentials which his father had given ISMAEL BEG, as ambassador to the court of ST. PETERSBURG; and nominated another for that of CONSTANTINOPLE. They both set out at the same time. The person appointed for the OTTOMAN port was detained at CARS; but he dispatched two of his retinue in a secret manner to notify the subject of his embassy. These deputies took the opportunity of the grand signior's coming out of the mosque at the feast of BEIRAM, to present their memorial to him. They were then introduced to the grand signior and the mufti, to whom they delivered their dispatches; the result of which was, that in OCTOBER following the PERSIAN ambassador was permitted to come to CONSTANTINOPLE. His commission was, to request the assistance of the TURKS against the AFGHAN rebels. The grand vizir being informed that an ambassador had been sent into RUSSIA upon the same errand, not only made it a reason to evade a definitive answer, but reproached TÆHMAS for making any such application to a christian power. This behaviour was in some measure owing



1723. to the reception which had been given at CONSTANTINOPLE some months before to the envoy of MIR MAGHMUD. The court seemed desirous at this time to humour the affection which the people shewed to the AF-GHANS; as well as to pursue the projects which they had formed, in consequence of the reduction of GEORGIA.

ISMAEL BEG, whom TÆHMAS had nominated as embassador-pleni-potentiary to the court of RUSSIA, was more successful. He arrived at ST. PETERSBURG the second of SEPTEMBER. The CZAR, whose active genius was impatient of delay, fixed the audience for the fifth. This ceremony was performed before the senate, after the following manner: The embassador, with his retinue, left their sabres at the hall-door. He made his entrance, holding up in his hand his master's letter, which, after he had made his harangue, he presented to the CZAR. This prince gave it to his chancellor, who laid it upon the table, desiring the embassador to draw nearer to the throne; which having done, upon his knees, he kissed the hem of the CZAR's garment, and afterwards his hand: at the same time the CZAR inquired after the king's health. The PERSIAN minister applying this to SHAH HUSSEIN, and believing he was dead, made no reply, but shed tears. The chancellor then informed the embassador, that his majesty's ministers would answer the letter which he had brought; upon which he withdrew to the hall, where he had left his retinue.

Soon after arrived news of the surrender of BAKU. The necessity of preserving a communication by land with GHILAN, had determined the CZAR to make himself master of that coast; in consequence of which, he had given orders to major-general MATUSKIN to embark with 3000 men at ASTRACHAN, and the 28th of JULY they arrived at BAKU. The general immediately wrote to the commanding officer, " That as the inhabitants  
 " had sued the preceding year for the protection of the emperor his  
 " master, tho' his majesty then shewed some repugnance to accept of  
 " their allegiance, yet in consideration of the friendship subsisting between  
 " him and the king of PERSIA, and through compassion for themselves,  
 " he had resolved to send a body of troops, with ammunition and pro-  
 " visions;



“visions; therefore they ought to render themselves worthy of this favour  
 “by a ready submission, if they were willing to be considered as loyal  
 “subjects, and good citizens.” 1723.

In passing through ASTRACHAN, ISMAEL BEG had left a letter, which was now delivered, exhorting the inhabitants of BAKU to a submission; but the governor answered, that he could not admit foreign troops into the town, without the express orders of SHAH TÆHMAS. As he persisted in this resolution, general MATUSKIN began to cannonade the town, and employed the two galliots, which he had brought with him for that purpose, in bombarding it. The garrison of BAKU was very numerous, and the commandant seemed determined to make an obstinate defence; but on the 7th of AUGUST he demanded to capitulate, and sent a deputation of the principal inhabitants to acquaint the general that he would surrender up the town.

This conquest created no difficulty in the negotiation with which ISMAEL BEG was charged. He was well acquainted with the melancholy situation of his master's affairs, and knew that he could not obtain any succours upon better conditions: he took no notice of the hostilities which he had in some measure authorized by his letter, but solicited the CZAR's ministers in so strong a manner, that they signed a treaty of alliance with him the 23d of SEPTEMBER, on the following conditions:

- I. That the CZAR should pacify the troubles of PERSIA, drive out the AFGHANS, and re-establish the government.
- II. That TÆHMAS, as lawful sovereign of that kingdom, should yield in perpetuity to the RUSSIAN monarchy, the towns and dependancies of DERBEND and BAKU, with the provinces of GHILAN, MAZANDERAN and ASTRABAD.
- III. That he should furnish, at the prices stipulated in this public act, camels and provisions for the RUSSIAN troops.
- IV. That hereafter there should be full liberty of commerce between both nations.
- V. In fine, that this alliance should be mutually defensive.

## P A R T VII.

T H E

## R E V O L U T I O N S O F P E R S I A,

F R O M T H E

T R E A T Y C O N C L U D E D B E T W E E N T H E  
 E M P E R O R O F R U S S I A A N D  
 T Æ H M A S S H A H I N 1 7 2 3,

T O T H E

D E A T H O F M I R M A G H M U D I N 1 7 2 5.

## C H A P. XXVII.

*Pretensions of AMAN OLA to the crown, compromised. Surrender of CASHAN. Death and character of NAZR ULLA. He is succeeded by ZEBERDEST KHAN, who takes and plunders SHIRASS.*

1723.

**W**HILE TÆHMAŠ was thus obliged to yield to necessity, MAGHMUD was in danger of being stripped of the sovereignty by the very man who had most contributed to his conquests. We have already mentioned that AMAN OLA followed him in this expedition as a confederate, and not as a subject. This general, jealous of the superiority which the partner of his victories had acquired over him, dissimulated his resentment in hopes of indemnifying himself by the wealth which he expected to draw from CASBIN. It is pretended that MAGHMUD had consented to his being declared sovereign of that city and its district;



district; but the bad success this general met with in that expedition irritated him so much, that he was hardly recovered of his wounds, when he insisted boldly on MAGHMUD's sharing with him the treasure and sovereignty annexed to the PERSIAN diadem, pursuant to the compact which he said they had entered into upon their setting out from KANDAHAR. 1723

Regal power, divided between two persons, is absolutely inconsistent, even in a limited monarchy; and consequently impracticable in despotic governments: as to the treasures, they were necessary to the support of the state. MAGHMUD therefore could not agree to these proposals; it was his interest however to carry it fair with an experienced general, who had moreover brought a considerable body of troops with him, which would obey only his orders. This circumstance seemed to presage the downfall of their usurped power. MAGHMUD amused him with different promises; till AMAN OLA perceiving that he was trifled with, resolved to keep no further measures. One of SHAH HUSSEIN's daughters, whom MAGHMUD had given him in marriage, contributed to inflame his temper, which was naturally fierce. She reminded him of the perfidy and ambition, of the avarice and cruelty of MAGHMUD; she made him also sensible of the danger to which his life was exposed, if he did not immediately remove out of the power of the tyrant; and at length prevailed on him to join his forces to those of TÆHMAS SHAH, in order to drive away the usurper, and divide his spoils between them.

With this intent, towards the end of DECEMBER, AMAN OLA left ISFAHAN. As soon as he was out of the gates, he put the royal plume upon his turban; and, in order to deceive MAGHMUD, he took the road to KANDAHAR. MAGHMUD did not venture to oppose his march; he was afraid of increasing the number of his enemies; and perhaps was not sorry, though at the expence of part of his army, to be disengaged from a man who had the presumption to declare himself his competitor. But as soon as he heard that this general had altered his rout, he was so affected with a sense of the danger that might ensue, that he set out immediately in pursuit of him with what forces he could collect, ordering

1723. ing the rest of his army to follow him with all possible expedition; and in four days he came up with him.

It was presumed, that AMAN OLA would not venture himself again into the power of a man, to whom he had given such subject of offence, but rather decide the quarrel by the sword. Instances of caprice and inconstancy are very frequent among the eastern warriors: as soon as they came in fight, they ran and embraced each other. Whether the remembrance of past friendship stifled all reproaches, and opened their eyes to a mutual interest; or that AMAN OLA did not depend on the fidelity of his troops, to measure his strength with that of the young conqueror; these marks of affection were followed by a reconciliation; and AMAN OLA was won once more by MAGHMUD's promises.

This prince artfully soothed the ruling passion of his disgusted friend, and made him the compliment of his own horse: they embraced each other, and renewed their former oaths on the points of their naked sabres. MAGHMUD sent him back to ISFAHAN, escorted by a body of horse; with orders to the governor of the city to pay him all the deference he could desire, except granting him his full liberty.

MAGHMUD having thus prevented the danger of his friend's resentment, obliged the troops belonging to that general to swear allegiance to him, and had the judgment to incorporate them with his own. He then joined the forces under ZEBERDEST KHAN. This general had lately raised his reputation by a new conquest. He blockaded CASHAN, the inhabitants of which, intimidated by the taking of GHULPAIGAN and HONSAR, surrendered by capitulation. The KHAN paid a religious regard to his promise, so that there was neither any disorder nor plundering in the town; but it is said that he afterwards massacred a considerable number of those fit to bear arms, in order to secure a conquest, which he had not otherwise sufficient force to garrison.

It was not till after this barbarous execution that MAGHMUD joined the victorious army: the news he had received from FARSISTAN, was the cause of this motion. NAZR ULLA, who had been intrusted with the

reduction



reduction of that province, made himself master of all the towns and villages in his way, without meeting with any resistance. The terror of his name induced them to make a ready submission. Thus he arrived in the neighbourhood of SHIRASS, without shedding any blood. Here his fortune changed. In the first attack at the siege of this place, he was wounded by a musket-ball, which put an end to his life. The loss of this general, who had the highest reputation as a soldier, plunged his army into the greatest grief. Of this they gave the most melancholy tokens, by the bloody funeral rites with which they honoured his memory. For after the whole army had marched round his body, with colours trailing on the ground, they obliged their slaves and prisoners to perform the same ceremony, and then sacrificed them at his feet; according to the barbarous superstition which they had learnt of the INDIANS<sup>e</sup>. They killed also the finest of his horses, the flesh of which, agreeably to the custom of the AFGHANS, was divided among the soldiers, in order to make a funeral entertainment.

NAZR ULBA was in stature very tall, but ill shaped. The custom he had contracted of keeping one eye shut, procured him the name of the one-eyed lord<sup>f</sup>, by which he was often distinguished. He was fond of the ARMENIANS, whom he took openly under his protection. The incursions and robberies in which he had been exercised from his youth, had formed him early to military exercise, in which he acquired great reputation, and was esteemed by his own people as a consummate general. His great prudence, and the series of success attending it, made him suspected of having learnt the magic art, ascribed to the INDIANS. It was perhaps this prejudice that created an extraordinary confidence in his soldiers, who thought him invincible.

He was of a mild and humane temper, behaving towards those who submitted to him, with a strict regard to his word, and with a certain degree of clemency, to which the other rebel chiefs were utter strangers. All nations reverence virtue, tho' it is not always attended with success,  
nor

<sup>e</sup> See Vol. IV. Chap. XVII.<sup>f</sup> KIOR SULTAN.



1723. nor always the object of vulgar attention. Humanity in a soldier, whose duty calls him into scenes of blood, is an illustrious quality. The good inclinations of this AFGHAN, tho' of the religion of the MAGI, gained him honour even after death. MAGHMUD erected a stately monument to him, near the burying place of the ARMENIANS. The AFGHANS looked upon him as a saint, and expressed a high veneration for his memory. This was the more extraordinary, as they could not plead ignorance that he was a worshipper of fire; since there were two priests hired by the sultan, who kept the sacred flame near his tomb.

MAGHMUD chose ZEBERDEST KHAN to succeed that general; accordingly he ordered him to set out immediately for SHIRASS; after which he returned himself with the army to ISFAHAN, where he arrived towards  
1724. the end of MARCH.

As he entered the city, he was struck with surprize and admiration, at an extraordinary event. A woman disguised in man's apparel, seeing his troops upon their march, rode up to them in full gallop, and falling sword in hand upon the first that fell in her way, she is said to have killed about twenty, before she was seized. This woman was a native of GEORGIA, and possessed the military disposition of that nation in so eminent a degree, that she had formed the design of revenging on the first AFGHANS she could meet, the death of her husband, who was slain at the bridge ABASABAD, when ISFAHAN was taken. For this purpose, she committed the care of her effects, and of her two children, to her brother; and without being daunted at the rigor of the season, or the length of the journey, she set out from GEORGIA in a secret manner, in man's dress, well armed and equipped. She was brought before MAGHMUD covered with wounds; this prince, upon being informed of her sex, admired her resolution, and gave orders that she should be treated with all the care and attention, which the greatness of her courage deserved.

In

\* Military courage is a virtue much in esteem in the east, among people who live by the sword; but women are no where more defenceless than in ASIA. This seems to be a stronger instance of female resentment than that of the SPANISH lady, who dug up the body of one who had been false as a lover, and whom she had caused to be murdered; in order to enjoy the pleasure of tearing his heart in pieces with her teeth.



In the mean time, the news of NAZR ULLA'S death being spread, some of the cities and towns of FARSISTAN, which had submitted, took up arms again, as if this single event secured them from any further danger. ZEBERDEST KHAN had therefore some difficulty to join his army, whom he found desirous of revenging the death of their late general. The glory of succeeding a man so much regreted, was a new subject of emulation to him; and indeed he omitted nothing that might contribute to the success of this new enterprize. 1724.

The KHAN of the province remained in the town: he was a man unpractised in the military art, but loyal and honest; and from a consciousness that he was not possessed of skill sufficient to extricate himself out of such a difficulty, he had by presents and promises engaged MIR BAGHIR, brother of ABDALLAH, VALI of ARABIA, to come to his assistance. This prince was esteemed a very good general: he repaired to SHIRASS with as many of his own people as were disposed to follow him; and took upon him the command of the town under the KHAN. The walls were in a good condition; the parts most exposed were covered with entrenchments; and frequent sallies from the town had induced the AFGHANS almost to despair of success; when the KHAN was so ill advised as to check the ardour of the garrison, by not permitting them to stir any more from the walls: this was the fault which had occasioned the misfortunes and surrender of ISFAHAN.

This step was soon followed by the inconveniencies naturally attending it. The ardour of the troops abated; a scarcity of provisions ensued; and the soldiers were so disheartened, as to think only of making their escape, to prevent being starved. The enemy being sensible of the advantage of such a desertion, favoured it, by granting a free passage. The scarcity increasing, MIR BAGHIR undertook to save the town, by making a vigorous sally. Accordingly he marched out at the head of 6000 men, who surprized and dispersed the besieging army: but such fortune did not attend him long. Soon after, he endeavoured to re-enter the town with a convoy which he brought with him, but was opposed by a body of troops, who, tho' inferior in number, attacked him with such resolution, that



1724. his army was put to flight. This brave ARABIAN, whose character was the reverse of his brother's, who occasioned the loss of ISFAHAN, stood his ground with only 200 men, who, imitating his example, died like him, fighting gloriously to the last gasp.

The cutting off so necessary a supply, was not the most considerable advantage which the AFGHANS reaped from this victory. The country was ravaged, and the neighbouring towns kept so much on their guard, that the scarcity was greater in their camp than in SHIRASS; insomuch that ZEBERDEST KHAN was upon the point of raising the siege, when the taking of the convoy enabled him to wait at his leisure, till the enemy, overcome by famine, would be obliged to implore his mercy. He was not deceived in his expectations; for SHIRASS was soon reduced to a very melancholy situation, numbers of the inhabitants dying with famine; so that the KHAN determined to capitulate. On the 13th of APRIL he sent his brother to treat with the enemy.

This resolution was followed by an easy and imprudent security. The AFGHANS perceiving that the besieged had neglected their posts, detained the deputy, and made a general assault. The PERSIANS, surprized and disconcerted, made very little resistance. The AFGHANS put every one they found in arms to the sword; and this unhappy town was under these dreadful circumstances, when the officers restrained the fury of the soldiers. The massacre being over, the conquerors plundered with their ordinary licentiousness. One remarkable incident is recorded of the punishment of covetousness: some of the soldiers having found in the house of a private man a considerable quantity of corn, which he had concealed in prejudice to the other inhabitants, they tied him to a stake in his granary, where he died with hunger; revenging the death of many, whom this wretch had sacrificed to his avarice.

Thus one of the most celebrated cities of the east was taken and sacked, after a blockade of near eight months: the AFGHANS having despaired to reduce it otherwise than by famine, confined themselves to their several posts. They lost before it 2000 of the troops of their own nation, and



a considerable number of DERGHEZINS. The number of PERSIANS who died by the sword, was not so great as that which perished by famine. ZEBERDEST KHAN exacted no more of the inhabitants by way of tribute, than what they annually paid to the kings of PERSIA. He then ordered them to collect provisions from all the neighbouring parts, that he might send a supply as soon as possible to ISFAHAN, where it was greatly wanted. 1724.

## C H A P. XXVIII.

ZEBERDEST KHAN's expedition against BENDER ABASSI. MAGHMUD marches into COHKILAN, and loses great part of his army. Imprudent conduct of SHAH TÆHMAS towards the ARMENIANS. The TURKS take ERIVAN. The ARMENIANS of NACHIVAN invite the TURKS into their country. TAVRIS besieged by the TURKS, and taken. Siege of HAMADAN.

ZEBERDEST KHAN was animated by the taking SHIRASS, a place of such consequence; and began to meditate new conquests. He had hardly settled the government of that city, when he ordered HUSSEIN AGA, one of the officers of MAGHMUD's household, with four hundred men, to make an incursion into the southern part of the province. This detachment penetrated without any obstacle as far as LAR, the capital of LARISTAN, a province formerly governed by its own kings. HUSSEIN AGA plundered the city with his small body of men, but the castle held out, and the governor of it refused to capitulate. The AFGHAN commander then pushed on as far as BENDER ABASSI<sup>b</sup>. This was the second time during the war that this city was exposed. In JANUARY 1722 it was pillaged, without making any resistance, by 4000 BALOUCHES; but upon their attempting to break into the fortresses, where the ENGLISH and DUTCH EAST INDIA companies had their counting-houses, they were repulsed with considerable loss.

The AFGHANS succeeded still worse. Upon the first report of their march the inhabitants retired with their most valuable effects: but the EURO-

PEANS:

<sup>b</sup> GOMBROON.

1724. PEANS were prepared to give them a warm reception. The AFGHANS therefore thought proper to accept a supply of provisions, without making any attempt on them. The greatest part of this detachment died: the malignity of the air, and the bad quality of the water not agreeing with them, insomuch that they were reduced within two months to a very small number, who rejoined the army without making any accession by the plunder of this city, to the riches they had amassed in their expedition.

During this interval, the news of the taking of SHIRASS having reached ISFAHAN, the AFGHANS were animated with fresh ardour. MAGHMUD resolved to lead them himself in person to new conquests. Accordingly he set out in JUNE with an intent of subduing COKHILAN, a country situate within ten days journey of the capital, towards BASSORA<sup>i</sup>. His army was near thirty thousand men: so that he had all the reason to promise himself undoubted success; but the event did not answer his expectation. His troops were not only harrassed continually by the ARABS who inhabit the neighbouring country, but also distressed for want of provisions; whilst the air had the most pernicious effects on his soldiers, insomuch that he did not bring half of his men back to ISFAHAN. His disaster would have been still greater, if CASSIN KHAN, a PERSIAN, who was possessed of a government in those quarters, had not given him all the assistance in his power.

MAGHMUD compounded with the ARABS to return back, on condition of being furnished with provisions; but these people perceiving his inability to withstand them, broke their word, and harrassed his army to the greatest degree. Thus was the formidable MAGHMUD by too great confidence, and the efforts of some bodies of roving ARABS, reduced to the utmost streights. He was so shocked at his losses, that he made his entrance into ISFAHAN without those honours which it had been customary to pay him on the like occasions. His army being thus discouraged, prudence suggested to him the expedient of distributing fifty thousand tomans<sup>k</sup> among his troops, to indemnify them for the loss of their

<sup>i</sup> This is part of CHUSISTAN, whose capital is AHOVAS.

<sup>k</sup> 125,000 l.



their baggage; and he employed them the rest of the summer in repairing this accident, as far as the melancholy situation of his affairs admitted. 1724.

In this state of weakness and despondency, to which MAGHMUD was reduced, TÆHMAS SHAH might have entertained great hopes of recovering the diadem, and taking ample vengeance of the AFGHANS; but this prince was entangled in inextricable difficulties: forgetting that his imprudent resentments had the preceding year occasioned the revolt of TEFLIS, he loaded the ARMENIANS with excessive taxes, which were levied with the utmost rigour. So severe a proceeding, contrary to his natural disposition, alienated the affections of these people in the very beginning; and things were soon carried to an extremity. Necessity being without law, he entered some of their principal towns by force, and plundered them, especially such as refused to obey the orders he had sent them to join his troops, though by law they were exempted from all military service.

The ARMENIANS of CAPAN and CHIAVA, finding they were treated as enemies, took up arms. TÆHMAS, who seemed to exert his resolution only where prudence was wanting, intended to reduce them by force; but they gave him so warm a reception, that he became more circumspect, and determined at length to enter into a treaty with them. He gained by gentle measures, what he could not obtain by force; and those people having returned to their duty, gave the greatest proofs of their fidelity. But it was not in the nature of things, that TÆHMAS should recover his dominions at this time.

The TURKS being jealous of the advantages secured to the CZAR by the treaty of ST. PETERSBURG, endeavoured to counterbalance them by their conquests. With this view, they provided for the security of GEORGIA; built a new fortress near TEFLIS; and assembled different bodies of troops on the frontiers of the PERSIAN dominions. ABDALLAH, BASHA of VAN<sup>1</sup>, entered this province the beginning of the year.

MAHOMMED

<sup>1</sup> His surname was KOUPRUL OGLOU, or the son of KOUPROLI. This family is descended from the grand vizir KOUPROLI MAHOMMED BASHA, son of a country parson in the neighbourhood of BELGRADE in ALBANIA. This is almost the only family in TURKEY that has a proper name.

1724. MAHOMMED KOULI KHAN, the same who had surrendered TEFLIS, made a stand at the head of a body of troops. The BASHA having reinforced the garrisons of the several towns in GEORGIA, marched against him with 35000 men, and soon put him to flight. After this, in FEBRUARY, he penetrated into ADERBEITZAN, and laid siege to KHOI, which held out two months, and was then taken by storm, and plundered.

ARIFIE ACHMED, BASHA of DIARBEKIR, whom the port had nominated SERASKIER, now projected a more important expedition. This general passed the ARAS the end of JUNE, and entered the province of ERIVAN with an army of above 30,000 men. In order to intimidate the inhabitants, he treated them with great cruelty. The towns and villages upon his march, were intirely sacked; and he made slaves of above 20,000 persons of both sexes. After these barbarous hostilities, in the middle of the same month he arrived before ERIVAN, the capital of the province.

This city, the capital of ARMENIA, is distant about six leagues from mount ARARAT<sup>m</sup>. In 1635 it was situated a mile from the spot where it now stands. SHAH SEFFIE having taken it from the TURKS, made choice of the present situation. The castle is built on a steep rock, inaccessible towards the west; and on the other sides it is defended by a triple wall of brick. At the foot of this rock runs the river ZENGUI, which descends from the lake SEVAN<sup>n</sup>, and mixes its waters three leagues lower with the ARAS. The KHAN of the province resided in the castle. The town is encompassed by a double wall, and abounds more in gardens and vineyards than houses. The adjacent country is a large fertile plain, terminated by the mountains, of which ARARAT makes a part; and the whole forms a most delightful prospect. This advantage, however, is counterbalanced by great inconveniencies. The water and fruits are very unwholesome; the country is subject to frequent earthquakes; their winters, notwithstanding their latitude, are long and severe; and they have excessive heats in summer. During the months of JULY and AUGUST,

most

<sup>m</sup> I have already had occasion to mention, that according to the tradition of the ARMENIANS the Ark rested on this mountain.

<sup>n</sup> This lake is about 70 miles distant northward of the city.



most of the inhabitants leave their houses, and retreat to breathe a more temperate air in the mountains. It is computed, that in the heat of summer there are often 20,000 tents in their neighbourhood; for not only the KOURDS travel thus far northward, but likewise the people from the extremity of CALDÆA, come hither with their flocks. 1724.

The OTTOMAN army had with them a numerous artillery, with which they soon made a breach in the walls. The SERASKIER then attempted to storm the town; and tho' his troops behaved with great courage, they were as bravely repulsed by the garrison. They met with the same reception at three general assaults; and the air being in some measure infected with the number of dead bodies; the TURKISH general desired a truce of three days, in order to bury the dead.

In the interim, the BASHA of CUTAYA joined the army. This determined the SERASKIER to try his fortune once more. The 10th of SEPTEMBER he ordered the fourth general assault; but with so little success, that he suffered more on this occasion than in any of the former attacks. The TURKS having lost near 20,000 men by the sword, and the unwholesomeness of the air, were discouraged. They had indeed received frequent succours, and their bombs had reduced great part of the town into ruins; but the PERSIANS as well as the ARMENIANS, actuated by the double motive of rage and self-preservation, still shewed the same courage and resolution. The besiegers, almost exhausted with the fatigue of so long a siege, threatened openly to retire; when the arrival of a reinforcement of fresh troops from EGYPT, changed the scene. SARI MUSTAFA, BASHA of ERZEROUM, also brought a considerable reinforcement with him towards the end of the month; so that the murmurings of the soldiers began to cease, and they thought of nothing further than bringing this enterprize to a happy conclusion.

The KHAN, who commanded the town, began to be intimidated at the sight of such large reinforcements. The garrison was already in distress for provisions; and a great number of the soldiers and inhabitants had perished with hunger, sickness, or the sword. They expected no succours

1724. from TÆHMAS, and were reduced, for want of lead, to new-cast the few balls that were remaining, and those which they found in the breaches and ditches, by putting a pea in them; an expedient which might conceal their want of this kind of ammunition; but yet it diminished the weight of the ball, which must consequently do less execution. These circumstances, and the pressing solicitations of his brother, whom the TURKS had taken prisoner near the ARAS, determined the KHAN to enter into a capitulation.

The first of OCTOBER he sent deputies to the TURKISH camp, and after some difficulties it was agreed, that the governor and the garrison should be safely conducted with all their effects to the frontiers of KARABAGH<sup>o</sup>: that the inhabitants of the castle, and those who had retired thither during the siege, but had no share in defending the town, should quit it and retire to the old ERIVAN: that none of them should be molested, either in their persons or effects: and that the town, the castle with the artillery, and ammunitions, should be immediately surrendered to the grand signior.

These articles were punctually executed. The BASHA of KARA HISSAR conducted the garrison to the frontier, from whence the KHAN proceeded to AHR, where TÆHMAS then resided.

During this interval, the troops under the command of the BASHA of VAN, were not idle. This general having defeated MAHOMMED KOULI KHAN, as already related, and taken the fortrefs of KHOI, had formed a design upon TAVRIS. As he had not troops sufficient to attempt a place of that importance, he acquainted the court; and the BASHAS of CARAMENIA and ALEPPO, with some others were ordered to join his army.

Towards the beginning of AUGUST, he received a deputation from the ARMENIANS of NACSIVAN<sup>p</sup>. The inhabitants began to despair of succours from the PERSIANS, and were afraid of the cruelties of the TURKS; the subject therefore of their deputation was, to recommend the conquest of their

<sup>o</sup> A district south of the ARAS, full of inaccessible mountains. DE LISLE has a place called CACHABAN. <sup>p</sup> NACSIVAN signifies the first made. The ARMENIANS pretend it was the first city that was built after the deluge.



their country to the BASHA. Upon this he ordered the chiefs <sup>a</sup> of KOUR-DISTAN to march thither with 12,000 men, and to these he joined a detachment of 1000 TURKS, commanded by IBRAHIM AGA. These troops no sooner appeared in the province, than the ARMENIANS rose up in arms. The PERSIANS were driven from NACSIVAN and ORDOUBAD<sup>r</sup>. This expedition, together with the taking of ERIVAN, reduced the greatest part of ARMENIA MAJOR under the TURKISH yoke. 1724.

In the mean while, the BASHA of VAN marched with an army of twenty-five thousand men towards TAVRIS. Tho' a great part of this town had been destroyed by the earthquake already mentioned, it was still one of the finest cities in the east; but it had neither walls nor artillery, so that like antient SPARTA, its only bulwark consisted in the number and strength of its inhabitants. The TURKS, crowding upon one another, had already made themselves masters of a whole quarter of the town, when the inhabitants flocking from all parts, barricadoed the streets by which the enemy had entered; and their communication with the main body of the army being cut off, four thousand of their men were surrounded, and cut in pieces.

The BASHA was not discouraged by this disaster: he made several attacks, but his troops were constantly repulsed. He began to waver in his resolution, when his spies informed him, that the inhabitants were preparing to attack him the next night in his entrenchments. Finding the valour of his troops unequal to his design, he ordered fires to be made in his camp as usual; and the 21<sup>st</sup> of SEPTEMBER in the night he marched off silently, leaving his tents standing, the better to deceive the enemy. Some hours afterwards the inhabitants came out of the city, to the number of twenty thousand: finding that the TURKISH army was retired, they followed them till the next day at noon, but could not come up with them. In revenge they massacred not only all the stragglers that fell in their way, but likewise the sick and wounded, which the enemy had been obliged to leave to their discretion.

The OTTOMAN army, considerably reduced, retired to TASSOU, a town situate within twenty leagues of TAVRIS, on the north bank of the lake

<sup>a</sup> BECS.<sup>r</sup> This place is noted for its trade in silken and other manufactures.

1724. CHAHI. Here the TURKISH general added to his disgrace, by attempting to be revenged of the PERSIANS for the gallant defence they had made. Tho' the neighbouring villages had submitted without making any resistance, yet he carried the women and children with him as slaves, and put the men to the sword. The inhabitants of TAVRIS were so provoked at this cruelty, that they took the resolution of pursuing him, and preventing his retreat. The BASHA having notice of their approach, marched out at the head of eight thousand men; most of these were killed in the engagement, and he retired to KHOI with the few who saved themselves by flight.

These were not the only armies which the TURKS had in PERSIA. HASSAN, BASHA of BAGDAT, and ACHMED his son, BASHA of BASSORA, entered this country with the troops belonging to their respective governments, and laid siege to HAMADAN. TÆHMAS, encouraged by what had passed before TAVRIS, sent part of his troops under the command of FLAGELLA KHAN, one of his principal officers, to the relief of this town. But the success did not answer his expectations: his general was defeated, and put to flight.

The OTTOMAN army being thus free, continued the operations of the siege without interruption. In the mean time, the enemy defended themselves with the same resolution; and it was now two months since the opening of the trenches, when a GERMAN renegado sprung a mine, of which he had the direction. The effect determined the fate of the besieged. The TURKS mounted the breach with loud shouts, and carried all before them: a slaughter of the inhabitants ensued, till some of the TURKISH generals, moved by a sense of humanity, facilitated the escape of great numbers, by giving them a passage out of one of the gates of the town.

The taking of ERIVAN and HAMADAN, and the repulse of the BASHA of VAN, concluded the campaign on the side of the TURKS. The army under the SERASKIER, together with the remaining forces of the BASHA of VAN, were reduced to forty thousand men, including the garrisons of GEORGIA. The troops of EGYPT and the KOURDS separated, and took up their



their winter quarters in ERIVAN, NACSIVAN, and ORDOUBAD. Those of BAGDAT and BASSORA, retired to their own country, after leaving a sufficient garrison in HAMADAN, to secure their conquest. 1724.

## C H A P. XXIX.

*Rejoicings at CONSTANTINOPLE. The port is dissatisfied with the conduct of PETER the GREAT. The conferences renewed by the mediation of the FRENCH minister to the OTTOMAN port. Conclusion of the treaty between the CZAR and the port. Articles of that treaty.*

THE TURKS having extended their conquests so far as HAMADAN; this event seemed to quiet the minds of the people, already uneasy concerning the success of a war hardly commenced. This circumstance added to the satisfaction of the ministers of the port. The public rejoicings lasted nine days, and were scarce finished, when they were ordered to be renewed on the following occasion. MAHOMMED KOULI KHAN, who still thirsted after revenge, had passed the KURA near GORI, and laid siege to the fort by which that little city is defended. He was carrying on the attack with great vigour, when REGEB, BASHA of TEFLIS, marched with 6000 men to the relief of the place: this, together with the defection of the principal GEORGIANS, who were gained by the port, obliged the KHAN to retire with great precipitation. The TURKS came up with him as he was passing the river; and he lost a thousand men in the action. He then retired with the rest of his troops into the mountains.

The FRENCH ambassador<sup>a</sup> thought proper to distinguish himself, upon the occasion of these rejoicings, for the accomplishment of one of the articles of the treaty, concluded by the mediation of the court of FRANCE. To explain this, we must trace matters somewhat back.

It has been already mentioned, that the port being informed of the success of ISMAEL BEG, the PERSIAN ambassador at the court of ST. PETERSBURG, pushed on her conquests in PERSIA without reserve. Whether the CZAR slighted the resentment of the port, on account of this

<sup>a</sup> The marquis of BONNAC.



1724. this treaty; it was scarce concluded, when he sent copies of it to his resident NEPLUEOFF, but without any instructions to him or to the FRENCH ambassador; at the same time, he made it public in all the courts of EUROPE. This caused a general surprize at CONSTANTINOPLE. Neither the ambassador, nor the RUSSIAN resident, expected such an event. They were greatly confounded, whilst their enemies laid hold of those circumstances to decry their conduct. This was not difficult to effect. The TURKISH commissaries having opened the conference in the beginning of JANUARY this year, with bitter reproaches, declared in the name of the grand signior, that such a prince as TÆHMAS, wandering from place to place, without succour or support, could not with any validity consent to the dismembering of his dominions; therefore such engagements were void: that the grand signior would not suffer any foreign power to extend his dominion in PERSIA: consequently, that the only method to preserve the peace subsisting between the two empires, was to relinquish all pretensions derived from this treaty, and likewise to abandon the conquests made on the borders of the CASPIAN sea.

After so explicit a declaration, the TURKISH commissaries broke off the conferences abruptly. It was thought the port would declare war against the CZAR, and send the RUSSIAN resident to the castle of the seven towers. This minister having no instructions, refused to yield to the solicitations of the FRENCH ambassador, to enter into a negotiation; which served to increase the disgust of the TURKISH ministers; so that the storm seemed to be gathering, when the ambassador ventured to take the consequence of negotiating upon himself.

With this view he waited on the ministers of the port, and entered into a close conference with them; in which he reconciled all matters so well, that they were soon agreed upon almost every article<sup>t</sup>. The grand vizir, who pressed the conclusion of this affair under-hand, found it very difficult to make the divan come into it; especially as the point was to enter into an alliance with a christian power, in order to share the dominions of a MAHOMMEDAN prince. There was no time to lose: they must

I

either

<sup>t</sup> This relation being made by a FRENCHMAN belonging to the ambassador's ministry, we must allow for some partialities as to the abilities of his master.



either conclude the treaty entered upon with RUSSIA, or stop the progress of that power, by declaring war against her. IBRAHIM, the grand vizir, laid this before the divan, which he convened in the name of the emperor his master. After very warm debates, the divan declared for the continuation of the peace: upon which, the FRENCH embassador dispatched monsieur D'ALION <sup>u</sup>, a relation of his, to the court of RUSSIA, with the preliminaries of the treaty; who arrived at MOSCO the middle of MARCH. 1724.

The first article in his commission was, that SHAH TÆHMAS should be obliged to send a solemn embassy to CONSTANTINOPLE, to beg of the grand signior that he would set limits to his conquests, and consent, as far as was consistent with the glory and interests of his highness, to the execution of the treaty concluded the year before at ST. PETERSBURG. The others contained a project of accommodation, in regard to the limits of the conquests made, or which were to be made in PERSIA, by either of these contracting powers.

These preliminaries having been agreed to, the RUSSIAN resident received new instructions, and the 19th of MAY the conferences were renewed. The vizir had made it an established rule, to live in peace with the christian powers, as necessary to his security. How favourable soever his disposition might have been, there were great obstacles to surmount, before they could come to a conclusion of the treaty. DAGISTAN, and part of SHIRVAN, inhabited by MAHOMMEDANS of the sect of the SUNNIS, were to continue under the dominion of the CZAR: moreover, this monarch required that the port should acknowledge TÆHMAS as king of PERSIA: that she should join her forces to those of RUSSIA, in order to put this prince in possession of the throne: and lastly, that she should engage to receive neither proposals nor ministers from MAGHMUD, or any other usurper. These articles were contrary to their religion, which the MAHOMMEDANS consider as the basis and primum mobile of political government.

Part of these difficulties were removed in a long conference, which the grand vizir had the fifth of JULY with the FRENCH embassador; and the

general

<sup>u</sup> This person was minister at the court of ST. PETERSBURG, for some time after the marquis DE CHETARDIE.

1724. general conferences being renewed, the several articles of the treaty were agreed to. They were six in number, preceded by a preamble, setting forth in a summary way, the cession which SHAH TÆHMAS made to the CZAR, of the provinces situated on the borders of the CASPIAN SEA.

The first article determines, that the barrier betwixt RUSSIA and TURKEY shall be regulated by a line, to begin within twenty-two leagues of the CASPIAN SEA on the confines of DAGISTAN, to pass within the like distance of DERBEND, and afterwards within seven leagues of the coast, including SHAMAKIE, after which it is to be drawn in a direct line to the conflux of the KURA and the ARAS. It is likewise stipulated, that the contracting parties shall nominate commissaries, and desire the mediation of the court of FRANCE with regard to the regulation of those limits. That either party shall be free to erect forts upon their own territories, on condition of giving notice thereof to each other, and of building them at the distance of three leagues at least from their frontier.

The second, that SHAMAKIE, the capital of SHIRVAN, shall not be fortified, nor receive a TURKISH garrison; and that if some unforeseen accident, such as a revolt, should oblige this monarch to send any troops thither, they shall acquaint the RUSSIAN officers before they passed the KURA, and retire from thence as soon as the troubles are appeased. The grand signior promises, that his armies shall not pass this river in any part of GEORGIA, without giving notice of the reasons of such motion to the officers appointed by the CZAR, along the coast of the CASPIAN SEA.

The third establishes the barrier which is to separate TURKEY from PERSIA. This line commences where the other finishes, that is, at the conflux of the KURA and ARAS; it passes within three miles of the walls of ARDEVILLE towards TAVRIS, and from thence to HAMADAN, which city, together with the territory belonging to it, falls to the grand signior's share; after which it turns off towards KHERMANSHA, the new conquest of this monarch, where it terminates.

By the fourth, the CZAR promises the grand signior, to employ his mediation, that the provinces assigned him in the preceding article, shall



be voluntarily surrendered to him, or recovered for him, by a joint effort. This article concludes with a reciprocal guaranty of those provinces of PERSIA, which these monarchs adjudged to themselves. 1724.

These powers declare, that if SHAH TÆHMAS should refuse to agree to the treaty, they will jointly endeavour to conquer the respective places assigned to each; after which, the rest of the kingdom shall be intirely given up, without any foreign dependance, into the hands of SHAH TÆHMAS.

In the fifth, the grand signior engages, as soon as the places assigned him by the third article shall be voluntarily delivered up, to acknowledge TÆHMAS for king of PERSIA; to give him full security of his restoration, and afford him all proper assistance: that in case the usurpers should by any hostility reduce him to the necessity of declaring war against them, he will join his forces to those of RUSSIA, in order to place this prince on the throne of his ancestors.

The sixth article declares, that if TÆHMAS should refuse to conform to the treaty, the contracting powers, after having made themselves masters of the provinces assigned to them, shall appease the disturbances of PERSIA, and restore this kingdom to the PERSIAN most deserving of it, towards whom they shall conduct themselves as they have done towards the kings his predecessors. That they shall not in any manner interfere in the government of his dominions, but jointly take every measure necessary for his tranquillity, without listening to any proposal on the part of MIR MAGHMUD.

This treaty was signed the eighth of JULY, and the ratification of the CZAR being arrived, the exchange was solemnly made some days after in the apartment of the grand vizir. The peace being thus confirmed, the KHAN of the CRIM TARTARS, and the generals of the OTTOMAN troops, who were on the frontier of the UKRAIN, received orders to retire, the one to CRIM TARTARY, and the others towards the DANUBE.

1725. In the mean time TÆHMAS, who was at ARDEVILLE, received an embassador from the CZAR; but this minister had so little reason to be satisfied, that he returned home without taking leave of this prince.

TÆHMAS had lately sent an embassador to the OTTOMAN port, who was arrested at ERZEROUM: at first they treated him in a manner suitable to his character<sup>w</sup>, but soon after he was confined as a close prisoner in the castle, and his effects were confiscated.

The unhappy SHAH TÆHMAS saw his country thus torn from him: the PERSIAN monarchy was become a prey. He soon learnt the tenour of the treaty concluded between the RUSSIANS and the TURKS. The passive conduct of his minister ISMAEL BEG<sup>x</sup> gave him great offence; but in his circumstances what less was to be expected? He immediately ordered the CZAR's resident to withdraw from his court: but this mark of resentment did not hinder the RUSSIAN monarch from ordering the embassador-extraordinary, whom he had sent to TÆHMAS, to continue his journey. It is presumed that PETER the GREAT would have been contented with GHILAN only, could he have thus prevented the progress of the TURKS, and restored TÆHMAS to his dominions, in which the RUSSIANS were more sincere than the TURKS.

### C H A P. XXX.

MIR MAGHMUD *raises new troops. A caravan arrives from KANDAHAR. He marches an army, and lays siege to YEZD; but is obliged to raise it. ASHREFF returns. Disposition of the AFGHANS in his favour. Uneasiness of MAGHMUD upon that account. He undertakes a religious penance. Reports concerning SEFFIE MYRZA.*

**W**HILST this partition of the PERSIAN dominions was negotiating, MAGHMUD was employed in repairing the breach, which the expedition of COKHILAN had made in his troops. With this view, he enlisted

<sup>w</sup> Sixty dollars a day were ordered for his maintenance. <sup>x</sup> He remained at ASTRACHAN and was there still in 1744, and had a guard appointed him, with a daily allowance, not chusing to trust himself at home.



lifted a great number of DERGHEZINS : he also levied some new companies of TURKS ; and knowing how important a matter it was to conceal his weakness, he not only renewed the prohibition of corresponding by letters, but moreover made it death for any stranger that should attempt to leave the town<sup>y</sup>. 1724.

Things were thus situated, when the caravan which he expected, arrived at ISFAHAN. It was not near so numerous as that of the preceding year ; owing, in a great measure, to the complaints of some of the AF-GHANS, who at their return to KANDAHAR, accused their sovereign of avarice, and a partial neglect of those who had performed the bravest actions. MAGHMUD, however, perceiving he had now as strong an army as that which had raised him to the throne, was ambitious of effacing the memory of his late disgrace.

After some time, he resolved to lay siege to YEZD, which he had in vain endeavoured to take upon his march to ISFAHAN. The inhabitants of this city had lately routed a reinforcement of 2000 men, who were coming to him from KANDAHAR. The necessity of securing a communication with that province, as well as the desire of retrieving the reputation of his arms, engaged him to turn the greatest part of his forces that way.

Towards the end of DECEMBER, he set out upon this expedition, with an army of 18000 men. Such a number of troops, together with a good train of artillery, which he carried with him, and the correspondence he held with the PERSEES, who inhabit a particular quarter of the town, seemed to render him confident of success ; but Providence had otherwise ordained. The inhabitants of YEZD discovered the treachery of their fellow-citizens, and put them to the sword. Having taken this step, they laid the country waste for several leagues round, destroying, or carrying off every thing that might be of any service to the enemy. After this they prepared to defend themselves.

This precaution of the inhabitants, obliged MAGHMUD to push on the siege with the utmost vigour. His artillery was scarce mounted in bat-  
tery,



1724. tery, when he ordered a general assault. The AFGHANS attacked the town on every side with great bravery, in confidence of the promises of the PERSEES; but they were received with so much resolution and courage, that they were soon convinced there was no dependance to be made on any assistance from that quarter.

This assault was followed by several others, which proved equally unsuccessful. In the mean time, the severity of the season very much distressed the AFGHANS; they were also straitened for provisions; which reduced them to the necessity of raising the siege a second time, or of weakening the army considerably, by sending out large detachments to some distance, in search of provisions. MAGHMUD determined upon the latter; but he had soon reason to repent his choice. The garrison had been increased by a number of people who had fled for shelter from the open country; finding the AFGHANS weakened, they fell suddenly upon their principal quarters, and confounded them by so brisk and unexpected an attack; insomuch that they put several parties of them to flight, and killed near 3000 men, before the main body of the army could be assembled. MAGHMUD himself was in danger of being surrounded, and obliged to abandon his baggage and artillery, and save himself by flight.

The uneasiness occasioned by this new disgrace, was augmented by the mutinous disposition of the army. The soldiers declared loudly, that their defeat was a consequence of the change of manners introduced into the nation; that they were upon the brink of being ruined by that very effeminacy and luxury, which had destroyed their enemies; that MAGHMUD was already a PERSIAN in his apparel, and his luxurious diet, but still more so by the excessive number of concubines with which he had filled his harram; adding, that no further hopes of success remained, so long as they were governed by a chief, who, not satisfied with adopting the manners of the conquered, affected likewise to espouse their sentiments in matters of religion. This last reproach was owing to some words which MAGHMUD had let drop, perhaps with a design to vex the TURKS, or to render himself more agreeable to the PERSIANS.



Mean while the danger increased by the impunity of these murmurings. 1724. ASHREFF was also come back with the last caravan from KANDAHAR : and the army, who had been always extremely fond of him, now behaved in such a manner, as plainly shewed they thought him the fittest to reign. He had retreated only to avoid the jealous eye of MAGHMUD ; and the expressions of esteem and affection of the AFGHAN army, had been the chief inducements of his return from KANDAHAR. While he remained there, he lived intirely in the country, in pursuit of rural pleasures, and his own domestic affairs. But such tranquillity was not his lot ; he seemed born to move in a higher, tho' less happy sphere. During his absence, the soldiers expressed a great desire for his return. The principal officers considered the dangers to which the army would be exposed, if MAGHMUD, who had but indifferent health, should die without male issue capable of holding the reins of government ; thus, in some measure, they obliged this prince to recall ASHREFF, in order to declare him his successor to the empire.

ASHREFF having quitted his solitude, MAGHMUD was obliged to dissemble his jealousy, and entertained him for some days with all the appearances of the most tender friendship ; but he was no sooner informed of the murmurings of the troops, than he ordered ASHREFF to lodge in the palace, where he was strictly guarded. This prudent step checked the soldiers ; but did not make the sultan easy in his mind. The disgrace he lately met with in COHKILAN, and before YEZD, had weakened his power and authority. He began to be in as great fear of the mutiny of his troops, as of the revolt of the PERSIANS.

To extricate himself in this situation, required more steadiness and virtue than MAGHMUD was master of. This prince, who had been so bold in projecting, and so brave in executing, was frightened at the thought of a danger to which he had not been accustomed. Under these circumstances, he tried to obtain from heaven that light and assistance, which he no longer expected from those who had been the followers of his fortunes. A design of this nature, however commendable in itself, seem-  
ed



1724. ed in his condition to argue the troubled state and weakness of his mind, rather than a sense of religion.

With this intent, MAGHMUD undertook to perform the spiritual exercises<sup>z</sup>, which the INDIAN MAHOMMEDANS, who are more addicted to them than those of other countries, have introduced into KANDAHAR. This superstitious practice is observed, by shutting themselves up for fourteen or fifteen days in a place where no light enters; the only nourishment they take, is a little bread and water at sun-set. During this retreat, they employ their time in repeating incessantly with a strong guttural voice the word HOU, by which they denote one of the attributes of the deity. These continual cries, and the agitations of the body with which they are attended, naturally unhinge the whole frame. When by fasting and darkness the brain is distempered, they fancy they see spectres, and hear voices. Thus they take pains to confirm the very distemper of mind which puts them on such trials. They presume to pry into the secrets of providence, from an opinion, that during this penance, the devil is compelled by the agency of a superior power, to let them into the knowledge of futurity.

1725. Such was the painful exercise which MAGHMUD undertook in JANUARY this year, and for this purpose he chose a subterraneous vault. In the beginning of the next month, when he came forth, he was so pale, disfigured, and emaciated, that they hardly knew him. But this was not the worst effect of his devotion: solitude, often dangerous to a melancholy turn of thought, had, under the circumstances of his inquietude, and the strangeness of the penance, impaired his reason. He became restless and suspicious; often starting, as if the very persons most attached to his interest, had an intent to destroy him. He was in one of these fits, when it was rumoured in ISFAHAN, that SEFFIE MYRZA, son of SHAH HUSSEIN, had found means to make his escape from the seraglio, and had retired towards TURKEY. Whether the PERSIANS spread this alarm in order to intimidate the tyrant, or himself caused it to be reported; he made it a pretext to cover a new scene of the most execrable barbarity.

C H A P.

<sup>z</sup> They call it the RIADHIAT.



## C H A P. XXXI.

*Cruelty of MAGHMUD in murdering SHAH HUSSEIN's children. Numerous offspring, and great voluptuousness of SHAH HUSSEIN. MAGHMUD falls into a delirium. Ceremony of the ARMENIAN priests in reading the red gospel over him. Conspiracy of the AFGHANS against him, in favour of ASHREFF. ASHREFF is elected sultan. Miserable death of MAGHMUD. Character of this prince.*

**H**ITHERTO MAGHMUD, amidst all his cruelties, had not im- 1725.  
brued his hands in the blood of his ancient sovereigns. Many princes of SHAH HUSSEIN's family were confined with him in the seraglio, as the sad companions of his captivity: among whom were several brothers, three uncles, and seven nephews of that unfortunate monarch.

The tyrant's heart being now rent with anxiety for the support of his declining power, regardless of his more declining health, and approach to eternity, he resolved to sacrifice all the royal family, except HUSSEIN SHAH. The seventh of FEBRUARY was the day appointed for the execution of this bloody purpose. These victims to cruelty and a distempered mind, were assembled in the palace-yard with their hands tied behind their backs. The tyrant, attended only by a few of his most intimate confidants, began himself this horrid butchery with his sabre! There were only two sons of SHAH HUSSEIN remaining, when this unfortunate prince, hearing their cries, came running to the place of slaughter. These princes, the eldest of whom was only five years of age, flung themselves into the arms of their father. Nothing but the tenderness of a parent could have supported this prince at the sight of so sad a spectacle: he bathed his children with his tears, and put himself in the way to receive the fatal stroke. MAGHMUD, now drunk with slaughter, stepped forwards to murder these royal infants, tho' sheltered in their father's bosom: the SHAH stretched out his arm, and received the blow. Here the horrid scene was ended. At the sight of blood gushing from the wound of a king, and a man of whom this tyrant had been used to think

1725. with some reverence, heaven stopped his murdering hand. As these children were yet of so tender an age, and incapable of giving umbrage, he determined to leave them to their parent, now oppressed with such an accumulated load of misfortunes.

It is not agreed what number of princes were murdered on this occasion, but they are reckoned above an hundred. It is easy to reconcile their being yet more numerous, if we attend to the circumstances of eastern courts. Few men have carried their voluptuousness, however permitted by a particular faith, further than SHAH HUSSEIN. The year 1701, was called in PERSIA the year of virgins<sup>a</sup>. This prince then ordered a search to be made through the whole extent of his dominions, for all the young virgins of distinguished beauty: and the commissioners appointed for this inquiry, brought all those whom they thought worthy of the harram. The governors of the provinces, knowing their master's predominant passion, paid their courts in the most prevailing manner, even till the siege of ISFAHAN, by sending him the finest girls in their province. This strong passion, or rather appetite for the sex, was sufficient to render the royal family extremely numerous; insomuch, that in the space of a month, thirty cradles were carried into the seraglio. Besides, this monarch being more humane than any of his predecessors, put none of the princes of the royal blood to death<sup>b</sup>. All those princes, excepting TÆHMAS and the two children already mentioned, perished on that day.

This bloody execution, instead of dispelling the fears of MAGHMUD, only contributed to increase the terrors with which he was tormented. His mind was perpetually agitated with the most frightful ideas; and the remorse of this last act of barbarity gave him no repose. His intellects, which had been so much weakened by the austerity of his spiritual retreat, appeared to be yet more impaired; and besides this, he had an insupportable pain in his bowels. The most skilful physicians of the court, endeavoured

<sup>a</sup> KISVERAN.

<sup>b</sup> It was common in later times to kill them all, insomuch that I never heard that NADIR had any children alive, at least no males, except his two sons RIZA KOULI MYRZA and NESR ALI MYRZA, who were born long before NADIR was made king.



endeavoured in vain to restore him to his senses. They then had recourse to a religious remedy. 1725.

In cases of the like nature, the ARMENIANS had been wont to engage one of their priests to read over the head of the patient, what they call the red gospel<sup>c</sup>. This custom was received not only by those christians, but also by the greatest part of the MAHOMMEDANS of the country, who together with the ARMENIANS affirmed, that several PERSIANS affected with the same degree of madness as MAGHMUD, had been cured by this means: so that they resolved to try to work a miracle. In the beginning of APRIL, the clergy of JULFA being dressed in their sacerdotal habits, and with wax tapers lighted, went in solemn procession to the palace<sup>d</sup>, where they were received with great respect. They passed thro' the apartment between two rows of courtiers and guards, whose modest countenance, and profound silence, expressed such a reverence for these priests, as could hardly be expected from persons of their religion. After the ceremony was performed, the clergy retired in the same order to JULFA, attended by a great number of the lords of the court.

In one of the lucid intervals of his disorder, MAGHMUD having been informed of the relief which the ARMENIANS had endeavoured to give him, he sent them two thousand tomans in specie<sup>e</sup>, and as much in effects; promising to restore the remainder of what he had exacted from them, if he recovered his health. He did the same in regard to the DUTCH and the INDIANS. A sense of the danger he was in, having excited some sentiments of piety in his breast, he recommended himself also to the prayers of those different nations. After some hours of ease, he relapsed into a more terrible condition: his body was covered with leprosy, his flesh rotted, and seemed to fall from his bones.

Such

<sup>c</sup> Probably some passage relating to the miracles of our Saviour. Exorcising without the use of the scriptures, it is pretended, is common in PORTUGAL.

<sup>d</sup> The late king of PORTUGAL, at different times, caused the several bodies of the clergy in and about LISBON, to walk in procession through his chamber; and a book was published, giving an account of the manner and ceremonies of each fraternity. Whether the king's life was protracted by any miraculous interposition, is a point about which the ROMISH clergy will be most ready to determine.

<sup>e</sup> 5000 l.

1725. Such was the frightful condition of MAGHMUD, when news was brought that SHAH TÆHMAS had advanced at the head of a body of troops, and defeated a party of AFGHANS near KOOM, as they were marching towards CASBIN, under the command of their general SEIDAL. It was not merely the desire of taking advantage of the present conjunctures, that drew the PERSIAN army so near to ISFAHAN. Since the beginning of MAGHMUD's illness, ASHREFF had been no longer watched with the same strictness; so that he found means to enter into a correspondence with TÆHMAS. As soon as he found that things were ripe for his purpose, he sent him word that now was the time for him to ascend the throne of his ancestors; that he needed only to advance towards ISFAHAN, where every thing was in confusion by the sickness of MAGHMUD; that upon the first rumour of his approach, his friends would join him in a body; and that this step would induce part of the rebels to return to their duty, and put it out of the power of the rest to withstand him.

ASHREFF had imparted this design to the PERSIAN lords, who had been spared at the time of the massacre, with a design to ensnare them, and it was by their intervention that this correspondence was carried on. Accordingly they wrote to acquaint TÆHMAS, that the only condition ASHREFF insisted upon for himself and his party, was, that their lives, their liberty, and their effects should be sacred: thus the treaty met with no difficulty. TÆHMAS sent him a deed<sup>f</sup>, in which he engaged under the most sacred oaths, to observe his word inviolably: after which, he advanced as far as KOOM, where meeting a body of AFGHANS commanded by SEIDAL, he put them to flight.

This new disgrace greatly alarmed the rebels. So many defeats began to weaken that reputation of bravery and success, in which their security chiefly consisted; it behoved them to stop the progress of a prince, who, taking advantage of the present conjunctures, threatened to drive them from ISFAHAN; but the confusion occasioned by MAGHMUD's illness, was an insuperable obstacle to the execution of any military projects. These circum-

<sup>f</sup> This is called NACHLATHEMA, probably resembling the anathema of the HEBREWS.



circumstances renewed their former ideas of revolting ; hence their whole discourse soon turned on the necessity of chusing another master. 1725.

AMAN OLA, tho' considered as prime-minister and generalissimo of the sultan, became the most active of all the conspirators. He was hardly returned to ISFAHAN, when he perceived that he was strictly watched ; which affronted him so extremely, that when MAGHMUD returned from his expedition into COHKILAN, he obstinately refused to go and meet him. That which confirmed his opinion of being an object of jealousy, excited his revenge also. It was not long before this time, that he was insulted to a great degree. He went out upon a common occasion, with a numerous retinue, to perform his devotions at his brother's tomb : MAGHMUD, apprehensive lest under such pretexts he should escape a second time, sent one of his officers, with orders to pierce with his lance the horse on which the general was mounted <sup>g</sup>.

AMAN OLA was too proud to put up with such an affront. As soon as he returned, he took the opportunity of killing several fine horses belonging to MAGHMUD's stables ; so that this prince was obliged to come himself in person to appease him. At this interview, they seemed to be again reconciled.

The general however meditated the sultan's destruction, and it was impossible for him to find a better opportunity. His opinion determined the generality of the AFGHANS ; so that the council and the army unanimously agreed on the necessity of chusing a new sovereign. This choice, according to nearness of blood, should have fallen on HUSSEIN KHAN, brother of MAGHMUD, who was at that time in KANDAHAR, and commanded in the name of the sultan : but affairs were so critically circumstanced, that they could not wait till his arrival from so distant a country, had the army been disposed to it. ASHREFF was the most beloved, and was now chosen with an unanimous consent.

<sup>g</sup> This seems to be a capricious action, yet such as the genius of the people, and the temper of MAGHMUD renders credible.

1725. The moment this election was proclaimed, the troops ran to their arms, in order to take the new king out of custody. The ABDOLLEES, who guarded him, disputed the entrance for some time, but at length yielded.

ASHREFF, being at liberty, was proclaimed king of PERSIA by the AFGHANS on the 22d of APRIL. This prince, under the specious pretence of revenging the death of his father MIR ABDALLAH, would not accept the ensigns of royalty, till they brought him the head of their late sultan. The miserable MAGHMUD, who had hardly many hours to live, suffered the execution of this sentence, without knowing the additional misfortune into which he was fallen <sup>h</sup>.

Thus perished, at the early age of twenty-seven years, this destroyer of one of the fairest monarchies of ASIA, leaving the world a sad monument of human misery in the character of a prince and a conqueror. Nature had refused him those external advantages, by which great men are sometimes distinguished. He was middle-sized and clumsy; his neck was so short, that his head seemed to grow to his shoulders; he had a broad face, a flat nose, and his beard was thin, and of a red colour; his looks were wild, and his countenance austere and disagreeable; his eyes, which were blue, and a little squinting, were generally down-cast, like a man absorbed in deep thought.

He had made it a rule from his earliest youth, to supply by habit and custom his natural unfitness for bodily exercises. In this he succeeded so well, that very few excelled him either in horsemanship, or in the use of the lance. He applied himself to military exercises; and that he might not lose his dexterity in wielding the sabre, he often caused  
sheep

<sup>h</sup> It is said that such a horrid frenzy had seized him, that he tore his own body with his teeth; that this rage continued upon him for seven days, and he was just ready to expire with the wounds which he had given himself, when they put an end to his life and his misery. The Jesuits and ecclesiastics, who have had the greatest share in collecting this account, might aggravate this part of the story; but as Providence does, I believe, interpose sometimes to punish such murderers, we may suppose that he was marked out as an example of divine vengeance.



sheep to be brought to him with their feet tied, and after they had been hung up, he cut off their heads at a blow<sup>1</sup>. 1725.

To these talents, which were common to the generality of his nation, he joined some virtues more worthy of a sovereign. Tho' his soldiers in their discontent reproached him with an immoderate love of women, which seems to prove how far prejudices may transport men, he was very chaste; and is reported to have had only one wife, to whom he was ever constant. He slept little; and in his campaigns suffered hardships with great indifference. He was so vigilant, as often to visit the centinels in the night, not only in the field, but also in ISFAHAN. In labour he was indefatigable, in danger intrepid; and what is properly the characteristic of the man of honour more than of the conqueror, he was a strict observer of his word towards those for whom he ever professed a friendship: he shewed a great regard for AMAN OLA upon that account, even when he was convinced that this general was contriving his ruin.

These qualities procured him respect, but he was too much feared to be beloved. His soldiers accused him of a severity in military discipline; they charged him also with avarice, and that he had deprived them of the booty for which they had bravely encountered the greatest dangers: but above all they could not forgive his having said in the first emotions of his resentment after the defeat of YEZD, that he wished they were as great beggars as when they first came into PERSIA, that they might fight as bravely as they did then. They could perhaps with more reason have reproached him with want of conduct, which was the chief cause of his miscarrying. To this might be added his cruelty to his enemies; his want of fortitude under his disgraces; and if success had not in some measure justified his enterprize of conquering ISFAHAN, it would have appeared rash and extravagant.

Such was the man, whom posterity will hardly number among the eastern heroes, tho' the blood he spilt, and the mischiefs he created, will give

<sup>1</sup> He is represented also so strong, as to cut the body of a sheep in two at a stroke; but these stories are generally exaggerated.

1725. give him a rank among the ravagers of the earth. He sat only two years and a half on the throne of PERSIA: but this short time was too long for his reputation as a conqueror, and he died very seasonably for the interest of his nation. That inconsiderate temerity, which constituted the chief part of his character, was fit only for making conquests; to secure them, other qualifications were necessary, which he did not possess.

---

PART



P A R T VIII.

T H E

R E V O L U T I O N S O F P E R S I A,

F R O M T H E

A C C E S S I O N O F A S H R E F F T O T H E

T H R O N E O F P E R S I A I N 1725,

T I L L T H E

P E A C E C O N C L U D E D B E T W E E N T H I S P R I N C E A N D T H E

T U R K S I N 1727.

C H A P. XXXII.

*Character of ASHREFF: his hypocrisy and artful behaviour to SHAH HUSSEIN. The princes of the blood, who had been murdered, buried at KOOM. ASHREFF punishes the conspirators who placed him on the throne: His behaviour towards the mother of MAGHMUD. His cruelty to his own brother. He endeavours to render himself popular, by the mildness of his administration in general.*

**T**HE qualifications wanting in MAGHMUD, were for the most part united in the person of ASHREFF, who was justly considered as the properest person to possess the throne. He was naturally sober, courageous, active, and vigilant. He had been inured to hardships from his earliest life; and having acquired the accomplishments of a statesman, he had learnt at the same time the art of dissimulation, and affected being moderate and upright: among the eastern war-

rriors

1725. riors he also passed for a consummate general. Upon the whole it may be said, that in ASHREFF were joined the valour and military virtues of MIR MAGHMUD, to the moderation and cunning of MIR VAIS.

The resistance which the partisans of ASHREFF met with at the royal palace, served as a pretext for this new sultan to remove some of his enemies. The very same day he caused the guards of the late sultan to be put to the sword; and the ministers and intimate confidants of that prince underwent the same fate.

The KOULAR AGASSI<sup>k</sup>, named ALMAS, was too much attached to MAGHMUD's interest to expect he should be excepted out of the number of the proscribed; therefore he endeavoured to save himself by flight. He was overtaken, and brought back to ISFAHAN, where they put him to the rack, in hopes of obliging him to discover the treasures which he was supposed to have concealed. The unfortunate ALMAS bore these torments with great constancy; but as soon as the executioners left him, he slew his wife, and then stabbed himself, to avoid the repetition of [ such unworthy and cruel treatment.

Of all the officers whom MAGHMUD favoured with his confidence, none had done so much honour to his choice as ALMAS. He never used the ascendant which he had over his master, to any other purpose, than to soften the ferocity of his natural disposition, and divert him from barbarous resolutions. He had a soul generous, compassionate, and liberal, of which he gave repeated instances. Far from endeavouring to accumulate riches, he even refused to accept of presents, tho' this method of acquiring wealth is authorized by the practice of ASIA. The EUROPEANS considered him as their protector, and joined the AFGHANS and the PERSIANS in bewailing his death. Even ASHREFF himself was moved at it, or affected to appear so, in order to avoid the censure, which the fate of a man so generally esteemed must have thrown upon him in the beginning of his reign.

The first impressions in disfavour of ASHREFF, were in some measure effaced by his subsequent conduct. He had hardly received the ensigns of royalty,

<sup>k</sup> Chief of the slaves.



royalty, when he waited on SHAH HUSSEIN, and expatiating on the ill consequences of MAGHMUD's ambition, pressed him to re-ascend the throne, which none but himself could lawfully fill. This monarch, naturally of a timid disposition, was rendered more circumspect by his present situation, and quickly saw into the artifice of this new TIBERIUS. He therefore made answer, "That he had too deep a respect  
 " for the decrees of Providence, which had obliged him to abdicate the  
 " supreme power, to accept of such offers, though suggested by an un-  
 " exemplified generosity; that since he had descended from the throne of  
 " his ancestors, heaven had opened his eyes in regard to the vanity of  
 " human grandeur; and therefore he now preferred the sweets of an  
 " obscure retreat, to the splendor of his former condition, in which he  
 " had always experienced an alloy of bitterness and sorrow." He took this occasion however to complain of the little regard which MAGHMUD shewed to his personal wants, and of the great cruelty exercised towards his family; then begging the new sultan to be kinder to him, he invited him, after the example of his predecessor, to marry one of the princesses his daughters.

SHAH HUSSEIN having thus solicited his enemy to possess his throne, without hesitation granted him a formal act of abdication. ASHREFF then took the title of king, and to convince SHAH HUSSEIN of the regard he paid to his representations, he allowed him fifty tomans<sup>m</sup> a week for his household; whereas, in the former reign, no more had been paid monthly. He likewise gave him the direction of the buildings, which were carrying on within the inclosure of the palace; and after repudiating his wife, he married one of the princesses his daughters, whom MAGHMUD had left in the harram, together with other females of the royal blood.

To render the memory of his predecessor odious, as well as to alleviate the affliction of the unfortunate HUSSEIN, ASHREFF caused the dead bodies of the princes, who were still left above ground in the court where they had

<sup>m</sup> 125 l.

1725. had been massacred, to be put into coffins, and conveyed at his own expence<sup>n</sup>, with a funeral pomp to KOOM, the antient burying place of the PERSIAN kings. With this melancholy caravan, he sent some rich carpets to decorate the mausoleums, and a thousand tomans to be distributed among the dervises, and poor of the place. The caravan was received at the gates of the palace by great numbers of people, who attended the procession, with all the tokens of the deepest sorrow, to the further end of the suburbs: after which, it was conveyed under an escort of AFGHANS to KOOM, where the scene of lamentation was again renewed.

The officer who commanded at KOOM, deposited the bodies in the mosque, and shewed a great regard to the AFGHAN officer who had attended the convoy; but in compliance with the PERSIAN custom of abusing the messengers of bad news, a GEORGIAN of the company was very ill treated<sup>o</sup>.

ASHREFF had not been eight days upon the throne, when he shewed by a bold stroke of politics, that he looked upon his authority as perfectly established. He ordered those who were concerned in the conspiracy which placed him on the throne, to be arrested; and affecting the appearance of justice in preference to gratitude, he confiscated all their estates, put some of them to death, and imprisoned the rest.

Under the colour of justice, this prince thus endeavoured to establish his own security; but he had also a further aim. By this blow, he removed several of the principal officers, whose turbulent and enterprising spirit rendered them objects of jealousy; he likewise filled his coffers with the riches which the conspirators had acquired since the taking of ISFAHAN.

The proud AMAN OLA, who had pretended to share the throne with MAGHMUD, was among the number of those who perished; the consideration of his daring intrepidity, as well as of his riches, hastened his fate. He had been generalissimo and prime minister of the usurper, and these employments

<sup>n</sup> They were carried on camels.

<sup>o</sup> Some accounts say his eyes were cut out, which seems to be so unjust and barbarous an action, as hardly to be credible, since this person was in no degree faulty.



employments afforded him an opportunity of glutting his avarice; so that his treasures were hardly inferior to those of the crown. This will not appear improbable, if it be considered that the very presents which he received at his entering upon the ministry, amounted to nine thousand tomans<sup>p</sup>, and that he obtained the confiscated estates of most of the PERSIAN lords who had been massacred under the last reign. 1725.

An INDIAN of CABUL, formerly governor of the late sultan, and afterwards raised to the dignity of high priest<sup>q</sup>, was, next to AMAN OLA, the richest man at court. By his prudence, and the strength of his genius, he passed for a second ZOROASTER among the credulous vulgar, who attributed the greatest part of the success of the war to his sorcery. The respect which MAGHMUD paid him, increased his credit; for this prince used to do nothing without his advice, continuing to behave towards him in the same respectful manner as when he was under his tuition: he always advanced half way to meet him, with his arms crossed on his breast; he then kissed his hands, and never attempted to take his place till this INDIAN was first seated.

From these circumstances, there was no room to believe that the MIANGI was concerned in the conspiracy; he was not indeed suspected of any such design; but his great possessions, so much out of character for a priest, rendered him guilty. ASHREFF however went no farther than the confiscating of his estate; he even promised to send him back by the first opportunity to KANDAHAR, with as much money as he should have occasion for, to spend the remainder of his days in ease and quiet.

The reputation which ZEBERDEST KHAN had acquired by the siege of SHIRASS, and his prudent conduct in the government of that city, which had been conferred on him by MAGHMUD, exempted him also in some degree from the fate of the rest. His person however was seized, and his goods confiscated: but the sultan being sensible of his moderation and military abilities, sent him soon after to his government, with a liberty of taking twenty thousand tomans<sup>r</sup> out of his own confiscated estate.

E e 2

This

<sup>p</sup> 22,500 l.<sup>q</sup> The person whom the TURKS call MUFTI, and the PERSIANS MULLAH BASHI, the AFGHANS nominate MIANGI.<sup>r</sup> 50,000 l.

1725. This general was the only one that had his liberty restored to him; and of all the persons of note either in the army or at court, none but SEIDAL, the same whom SHAH TÆHMAS had lately routed, and MAHOMMED NISCHAN, grand master of the ceremonies, remained unmolested, either in their persons or effects. The latter had been always upon terms of friendship with ASHREFF, and was the chief person who solicited his return from KANDAHAR.

MAGHMUD's mother had stooped to marry a simple officer of the guards, and could not be prevailed upon to quit her own country, till her nephew ASHREFF was upon the point of setting out for ISFAHAN. The desire of seeing her son in all the splendour of his regal power, then determined her to undertake the journey. The PERSIANS, so much accustomed to pomp and shew, were greatly surprized to see the widow of the famous MIR VAIS, and the mother of their sovereign, mounted on one of the camels of the caravan, and entering the capital of a kingdom, subject to her son, without attendants.

The entreaties which this lady had used, to prevail on ASHREFF to return to ISFAHAN, were not the only marks of her affection towards him, it was chiefly at her solicitation that MAGHMUD spared his life. Gratitude for benefits received, seldom makes such deep impressions, as to prevent our resentments, when those benefits cease. On the contrary, among men of base minds, it adds a poignancy to real or imaginary injuries. No sooner was ASHREFF seated on the throne, than he caused this lady to be confined a whole night in the palace-yard, where the dead bodies of the princes, massacred by her son, still lay above-ground. It was presumed this punishment was inflicted for her having refused to solicit his releasement. He did not however intend to carry his resentment farther: for after this wanton penance, he treated her with kindness, and in a manner suitable to her rank, promising to send her with a considerable treasure to KANDAHAR.

The severity, which ASHREFF shewed to his younger brother, was much greater. This prince, being apprehensive that according to the



custom of PERSIA he should be confined in the seraglio, tried to make his escape to KANDAHAR. Being taken, he was deprived of his sight, and then shut up in the very place to which he had shewn so great an aversion. A son of MAGHMUD, yet in his cradle, was treated in the same manner; and as the mother, who was then pregnant, survived the sultan her husband only eight days, it was presumed that this princess was poisoned by the orders of the new king. 1725.

Such a series of cruelty, did not alienate the minds of the people. They looked upon the misfortune of those princes, with the massacre of the guards, ministers, and favourites of MAGHMUD, as an act of prudence, authorized by custom. The justice which appeared in punishing the conspirators, made this conduct pass for an act of generosity. Thus the new sultan secured his power, and took possession of almost all the riches that had been amassed in the pillaging of ISFAHAN, without forfeiting his reputation for moderation and equity.

ASHREFF was indeed ambitious of the affection, not only of his own nation, but likewise of the PERSIANS. For this purpose, immediately upon his accession to the throne, he distributed money among his soldiers; and established so exact a discipline, that the shops were all kept open by his orders, from the very evening of MAGHMUD's death.

He imposed no new tax, neither on the natives nor foreigners, but contented himself with causing the sums which MAGHMUD had restored during his illness, to be brought back to the exchequer; pretending, that as this prince was then delirious, he was incapable of making any such donations.

## C H A P. XXXIII.

*ASHREFF endeavours to obtain the acknowledgment of his sovereignty in KANDAHAR. He forms a design of seizing the person of SHAH TÆHMAS<sup>s</sup>; who makes his escape into MAZANDERAN. ASHREFF takes KOOM. He massacres the PERSIAN lords, who had disclosed his designs upon TÆHMAS.*

1725. **A**SHREFF having thus settled affairs in the capital, began to establish his authority in the more distant parts of the empire. His first care was to obtain an acknowledgment of his sovereignty in the kingdom of KANDAHAR. With this view, he privately sent several officers with orders to join all his party in the country, in order to excite some disturbance, by means of which they might seize or destroy HUSSEIN KHAN, the brother of the late usurper MAGHMUD. What steps those emissaries took on this occasion are not known; but it is certain that the attempt proved abortive.

Nor did he succeed better in a scheme of greater importance. He had hardly passed from the prison to the throne, when this sudden change of fortune induced him to avail himself of the correspondence into which he had entered with SHAH TÆHMAS, to make a vigorous effort to seize the person of his competitor. For this end, as he could not impose on the father by an offer of the diadem, he sent a magnificent embassy to the son, making almost the same proposals. The deputies had orders to explain to him what had passed relating to this subject; to persuade him that their master persisted in these sentiments; and that he desired a place might be appointed for an interview, to regulate their respective interests, so that they might jointly engage in such measures as were most suitable to re-establish peace and good order in the empire. These deputies were charged with a present for TÆHMAS, of ten beautiful horses richly caparisoned, like those which the kings of PERSIA usually ride.

At

<sup>s</sup> TÆHMAS is called SHAH and prince indifferently; he had taken the name of SHAH, tho' his regal authority can hardly be said to have been established.



At the same time, the artful ASHREFF dispatched circular letters to every place, which acknowledged the authority of TÆHMAS, to notify his pacific measures to the commanding officers, and to assure them that the AFGHANS would commit no act of hostility before this interview. 1725.

While the embassadors were upon the road, TÆHMAS not knowing of the death of MAGHMUD, was advanced as far as CASHAN. Here he met with SEIDAL, who flattering himself with the hopes of revenge, had marched with a more numerous body of forces than he had with him at his former defeat. These two armies attacked each other with great vigour; but fortune having declared a second time against the AFGHANS, they were compelled to give way, and at length were totally routed.

ASHREFF however determined to pursue his political schemes. The PERSIAN lords, of whom we have made mention, ventured to write jointly to TÆHMAS, informing him of the death of the usurper, and of what had passed since that time at ISFAHAN. And as they were apprehensive, that the real motive of the proposed interview was to draw this prince into a snare, they recommended to him to be upon his guard.

Unluckily for TÆHMAS, the bearer of this letter was stopped by some of the AFGHANS that were retreating after the engagement, and carried before SEIDAL; this general secured him, and upon his arrival at ISFAHAN, delivered him into the hands of ASHREFF, together with the letters he had found upon him.

In the mean while, the ambassador sent by ASHREFF returned with an answer, that TÆHMAS, who had retired towards CASBIN, had chosen the plains of VARAMI<sup>1</sup> for the interview. ASHREFF having received this intelligence, set out immediately with a body of 12000 men; and arrived first at the place of assignation.

TÆHMAS was advancing, on the first of AUGUST, without any mistrust, with no more than 3000 men; when he received advice, that ASHREFF was followed by a much greater number of troops than they had mutually

<sup>1</sup> This place is between KOOM and TÆHIRAN.

1725. tually agreed to take for their escort. This intelligence having opened TÆHMAS's eyes, he considered what measures to pursue. He had no reason to doubt of the superior number of the AFGHANS; but the desire of being revenged of their perfidy, and the confidence he had acquired by his late victories, almost tempted him to try the fortune of a battle.

The troops he had with him, were of two different sorts, PERSIANS<sup>u</sup> and KHAJARS. The latter, who were the most numerous, insisted, that in consideration of the services which they had already rendered, and still were disposed to render, the prince would promise, that in case of success, the ATHEMAT DOULET should be always chosen from their body. The KEZELBACHS opposed such an innovation. This dispute, which seemed to be very ill timed, divided this little army into two opposite factions. TÆHMAS perceived that his authority was too feeble to quash the disturbance, and therefore resolved to retreat. But curiosity seeming to prevail over fear, he kept only a thousand men with him, and ordered one of his general officers to march with the other two thousand, to reconnoitre the rebels. AMUR ASLAN KHAN<sup>w</sup>, his general, had soon demonstrative proofs of what he was sent to discover. The AFGHANS having already passed the limits agreed upon, were in full march; and the number and disposition of their troops plainly shewed that their design was to surround the SHAH. The KHAN perceiving their intention, dispatched some horsemen to acquaint this prince, that nothing but a speedy flight could save him from the treachery of the enemy.

This advice arrived at the very interval that ASHREFF, having been informed by his spies of the place where this prince then was, had detached a body of two thousand five hundred men, with orders to make a long winding, and cut off the prince's retreat. TÆHMAS perceiving the danger into which his credulity had engaged him, abandoned his troops, and fled to TÆHIRAN, attended only by two hundred men.

AMUR ASLAN KHAN, who was soon hemmed in by the AFGHANS, put himself in a posture of defence. The engagement was obstinate: this  
brave

<sup>u</sup> KEZELBACHS.  
RESHD in 1748.

<sup>w</sup> The man by whose orders the BRITISH factory was pillaged in



brave general twice repulsed his enemies, but at length gave way to numbers; he was in the utmost danger of being crushed, when the approach of night preserved him, and as many of his soldiers as could save themselves by flight, and the favour of the neighbouring mountains. In a few days he arrived at TÆHIRAN. 1725.

TÆHMAS, who had retired thither, being apprehensive lest the enemy should follow him, continued his march with great expedition towards MAZANDERAN. The ruggedness of the mountains, which surround this province, has often rendered it the azylum of the PERSIAN kings: here this prince took shelter, followed by his general AMUR ASLAN KHAN, and those whose horses could bear the fatigue of so precipitate a march.

The prudence of this conduct was soon proved by the event. ASHREFF, being persuaded that TÆHMAS was still at TÆHIRAN, resolved to surprize him before he could have time to remove from thence. With this intent, he compelled the peasants to serve him as guides, and soon appeared with his army before the walls of the town. Upon discovering that TÆHMAS was fled, he ordered his troops to attack the place; but the besieged behaved so well, that he was obliged to abandon his enterprize.

Being greatly irritated at his disappointment, and the laborious march he had made in vain, he directed his course southward towards SAVA, which surrendered by capitulation. He afterwards marched to KOOM, a city of great importance, and before which he must in all probability have miscarried, had the inhabitants been prepared for his reception; but the want of provisions obliged them to capitulate, after a siege of eight days. The sultan, more politic than his predecessor, observed the conditions of his treaties very strictly. By the reduction of KOOM, he became master of twenty pieces of cannon, and three elephants. He also found some treasure belonging to TÆHMAS, together with the wife, and part of the court of this prince. However, his fortune here did not compensate for the failure of his plot; and he returned to ISFAHAN greatly vexed at his disappointment, and uneasy at the accounts he now received of the new enterprizes of the OTTOMAN court.

1725. The apprehension of being charged with cruelty, which had rendered the memory of his predecessor so odious, was the only motive which had induced the sultan to spare the lives of the authors of the letter already mentioned; and though this had been intercepted, it was presumed that others of the same nature might have raised a suspicion of his designs. Now he was returned, he thought it essential to his preservation to exterminate this remnant of the nobility; especially, as he would be ever subject to their treasonable correspondency. Accordingly he assembled them at his country-palace of FERHABAD, under pretence of a hunting match; and having convicted them of holding a correspondence with his enemies, he condemned them to be beheaded; which sentence was executed upon the spot.

#### C H A P. XXXIV.

*Death of PETER the GREAT. Deplorable state of the PERSIAN monarchy. The TURKS take TAVRIS and GANJA. ACHMED BASHA marches an army, and takes possession of LORISTAN. Division among the BACTIARIS. The VALI of LORISTAN makes an incursion into the territory of BAGDAT.*

THE conquests which the TURKS had made the preceding year, and the indolence into which the RUSSIANS seemed to have fallen, with respect to PERSIA, gave the port a superiority, at which these new allies began to take umbrage. The inconveniencies which the TURKS apprehended in waging war against the AFGHANS, of the sect of SUNNI, and the very name of the emperor of RUSSIA, kept the TURKS in the resolution of adhering to their engagements, when they received advice of the death of that monarch. General ROMANZOFF<sup>\*</sup>, envoy extraordinary of RUSSIA for the ratification of the treaty, and commissary for regulating the limits in PERSIA, was sensible of the difficulties which this accident would create in the execution of his commission. However, he kept his

own

\* I am not sure that he was at this time a general, tho' he was so afterwards.



own counsel, and endeavoured to persuade the TURKS, that the empress 1725.  
CATHARINE had adopted such measures, as would prevent the death of  
his much lamented master from making any alteration in the system of  
affairs in the RUSSIAN empire.

The grand vizir pretended to be convinced of the truth of what he  
said; and declared, that the intention of the grand signior was to con-  
form exactly to the engagements, which he had entered into with the  
deceased monarch; and therefore, he would immediately dispatch the  
commiffaries, who were to regulate the limits upon the spot.

This minister, nevertheless, under the pretence of putting the port in  
possession of the provinces, which were fallen to her share by the par-  
tition treaty, had no other view than to extend the frontiers of the OTTO-  
MAN empire. For this purpose, he made extraordinary preparations,  
that the armies which were to act this year against PERSIA, might be  
in a condition of making new conquests.

This distressed monarchy was thus a prey to several different enemies  
at one and the same time. The port had stripped her of GEORGIA, al-  
most of all ARMENIA, and part of ADERBEITZAN. The CZAR had  
made himself master of the western coast of the CASPIAN, except SHA-  
MAKIE, which was in the hands of the LESGEES. KHORASAN, KHER-  
MAN, KANDAHAR, and the governments of ISFAHAN and SHIRASS, were  
in the power of the AFGHANS or their associates. The authority of SHAH  
TÆHMAS was acknowledged only in MAZANDERAN, ASTRABAD, and  
some few places of IRAC AGEMI. The rest of the provinces which had  
not openly revolted, either despised the orders of this prince, or formed  
independent armies, which attacked indiscriminately the RUSSIANS, the  
TURKS, and the AFGHANS.

These troubles soon reached some of the provinces lately conquered  
by the TURKS. The sovereign<sup>y</sup> of the LESGEES, who had put himself  
under the protection of the port, shook off this new yoke, and attacked  
HAHDGEE DAUD, who held SHAMAKIE under the OTTOMAN domi-

1725. nion. The province of SHIRVAN was thus divided between these two parties, and the SHEMKALL, who had submitted to the authority of the RUSSIAN emperor, pillaged at large.

Whilst the LESGEES gave proof of their inconstancy, the Janissaries of the garrison of ERIVAN, mutinied against ARIFI ACHMED. In consequence of this revolt, they plundered his palace, and the grand signior's chest. This general was wounded in the fray, and saved himself by flight.

This insurrection was not however attended with those consequences, which might naturally be apprehended. The troops soon repented of the violences they had committed, and returned to their duty. They recalled their general; they sacrificed the authors of the disorder; and brought him home in triumph. The port, however, always disposed to shew a particular regard to the Janissaries, appointed ARIFI ACHMED governor of ERIVAN; but gave the command of the army to SAÏE MUSTAFA, BASHA of ERZEROUM.

The campaign was opened in MAY, and ABDERRAHMAM BEG, son of ABDALLAH KOUÛROLI, BASHA of VAN, gained some advantages over the PERSIANS, on the side of TAVRIS. After which, he made himself master of the city of MARAND, and of the fortrefs of ZONOUS, without any resistance.

About this time, LATIF KHAN, a nephew of SHAH HUSSEIN, upon the credit of his astrologers, appeared before HAMADAN with some troops, and according to their prediction he entered the town, but in a different manner from what he expected; for he was carried off by a detachment belonging to the garrison, and led into the city as a prisoner of war.

These advantages were followed by conquests of greater importance. The port, not having yet succeeded against TAVRIS, determined to send a sufficient number of troops to reduce that place, where the number of the inhabitants fit to bear arms was very large, and who, from a generous resolution of defending themselves to the last extremity, had sent



their families and most valuable effects into the mountains of GHILAN. 1725. The command of the army designed against this city was given to ABDALLAH KOUPROLI, BASHA of VAN: eleven thousand TARTARS, who passed over into ASIA, by the way of CONSTANTINOPLE, were ordered to join him; and also the BEGLERBEG of NATOLIA, with the troops of his government. This general having collected a body of seventy thousand men, did not think it necessary to wait for these reinforcements; but put himself at the head of his army, and appeared before this great city the thirtieth of JULY.

The PERSIAN general did not wait within ruinous walls, but took the field as soon as the TURKS appeared in fight. His army consisted chiefly of the inhabitants, who understood the use of arms, but had not been accustomed to military discipline; however, they determined to force their enemies to an engagement, before they had time to entrench themselves.

The BASHA saw into their design: as soon as he perceived that the number of those who had marched out of the town amounted to twenty or thirty thousand men, he fell upon them with the fury of an enraged enemy, in resentment of what had passed the preceding year. The PERSIANS stood their ground; and fresh succours continually pouring in, they fought on both sides with equal bravery till night, when the PERSIANS, being routed on every side, flung themselves in the utmost confusion into the town.

The TURKS were so eager in the pursuit, that they entered pell-mell with them, where the fight was renewed again with incredible obstinacy. The inhabitants had thrown up intrenchments in the nine different quarters, of which this great city is composed, and defended themselves with the same bravery and resolution, which they had hitherto displayed on all occasions<sup>2</sup>. The TURKS were four days and nights before they made themselves masters of seven of those entrenchments, notwithstanding they made repeated assaults: at length, on the third of AUGUST, about twenty thousand

<sup>2</sup> The taking of TAVRIS, as related by the TURKS, seems to be exaggerated with regard to the number and bravery of the PERSIANS, as if they meant by this circumstance to render the conquest the more distinguished.

1725. thousand men, who had retired to the two last entrenchments, finding themselves unable to hold out any longer, offered to capitulate; in consequence of which, they were permitted to retire to ARDEVILLE, with what effects they could carry along with them.

Few sieges have been so bloody as this. The PERSIANS lost near thirty thousand men, and the TURKS about twenty thousand; among whom were OSMAN BASHA of OURFA, who commanded the right wing of the army, the BASHA of CARAMANIA, and many other officers of distinction.

The news of so important a conquest, was an agreeable surprize to the grand signior; and the more, as it was hardly believed that ABDALLAH KOUPROLI had as yet undertaken the siege. Soon after, the fortrefs of LORE surrendered to SAVI MUSTAFA. The BASHA of BAGDAT made himself master of several small towns<sup>a</sup>, situated within a few days journey of HAMADAN, in the road to the capital.

Nothing more was wanting to complete the prosperity of the OTTOMAN court, than to be revenged of the affront which one of her generals had received before the walls of GANJA in 1723. SAVI MUSTAFA, who had conquered LORE, was charged with this new expedition. Towards the end of AUGUST, he besieged the place with an army of forty thousand men, and after two days resistance, the commanding officer surrendered by capitulation.

SAVI MUSTAFA then marched into SHIRVAN, in hopes to subdue the LESGEES; but he did not succeed in this expedition: for the weather setting in very sharp, his soldiers deserted in such numbers, that he was obliged to retire. To make amends for this disappointment, AHR submitted voluntarily to ABDALLAH BASHA, who confirmed the governor in his office.

Whilst this general and SAVI MUSTAFA were carrying on their conquests in the northern provinces, a third army was ordered by the port to

<sup>a</sup> These are called ASSITAN, GEANGERE, FIROUZABAD, places which I do not find in any map, so imperfect are these with respect to PERSIA.



to force their way to ISFAHAN. This was commanded by ACHMED, 1725. now BASHA of BAGDAT, who availing himself of the present circumstances, had entered LORISTAN, and was advancing towards HOROMABAD, capital<sup>b</sup> of the country.

ALI MERDAN KHAN, VALI of this province, was in no condition to make head against the enemy, for all his troops did not exceed fifteen thousand men: he therefore retired into CHUSISTAN. His example was followed by the inhabitants of HOROMABAD, insomuch that when ACHMED appeared before this town, he found it intirely abandoned. He entered without resistance, and with the same facility subdued the rest of the province.

In the mean while<sup>c</sup>, the BASHA of MOSUL made incursions into the country of the BACTIARIS, with a body of troops subject to the orders of ACHMED. These people are divided into two tribes, one called CHAHAR LING, and the other EFH LING; they pretend, that under CONSTANTINE the GREAT they embraced the christian religion, which they have since renounced. They live all the year in tents. It is said, that the BACTIARIS joined to the LORIANS, would have been able to raise the siege of ISFAHAN, in the late revolution by the AFGHANS, if the antipathy which reigns between these two neighbouring people, had not prevented their acting in concert upon that important occasion: this spirit of diffension brought on the disgrace of both nations. We have seen how the VALI of LORISTAN abandoned his country upon the approach of the TURKS. SEFFIE, KHAN of the BACTIARIS, took a less prudent step, tho' in appearance more generous: he marched with all the troops he could collect to meet the enemy; the fortune of the day was for a long while  
dubious;

<sup>b</sup> DE L'ISLE calls the capital by the same name as the province, viz. LORISTAN. <sup>c</sup> AHOVAS seems to be the proper name of the capital of this country, if it is neighbouring to LORISTAN; tho' in page 112. HONSAR near ISFAHAN is represented as the capital. BACTIARIA is a country, which does not appear in maps under that name. It is sometimes confounded with the antient BACTRIA, a country quite remote, bordering on INDEPENDANT TARTARY, on the eastern side of the CASPIAN SEA. DE L'ISLE has a BACTRIANI to the north of GEORGIA. We seem to be left pretty much in the dark with respect to the countries bordering on ARABIA; but this in question may probably be meant of that country, of which AHOVAS is the capital, according to DE L'ISLE.

1725. dubious; but the PERSIANS at length gave way to numbers, and saved themselves by flight.

After this victory, the BASHA of MOSUL advanced within four and twenty leagues of ISFAHAN; and would doubtless have approached nearer, if he had not met with the advanced posts of the AFGHANS on the road, against whom, as there was no declaration of war, he did not presume to commit any act of hostility. The BACTIARIS, who were retired with their flocks into the mountains, sought for an opportunity to revenge their defeat; and harrassed the TURKS by frequent and sudden attacks. The BASHA, unaccustomed to this method of fighting, was more disposed to retreat than pursue his victory, when he was informed that the VALI of LORISTAN, tho' unable to stand against the TURKISH army, carried the war into their country, by which means he soon obliged them to abandon this province. The KHANS of AHOVAS and SUSTER, convinced of the facility of plundering a country, which by the BASHA'S excursions was left defenceless, joined him, and formed an army of near 20,000 men. They entered the territories of BAGDAT, and spread terror and desolation over all the country, as far as the capital. The two daughters of the VALI, who fought by his side at the battle of GULNABAD, were induced by their filial duty and military genius to attend their father in this expedition; as they had also done in a late incursion towards BASSORA, from whence their father returned loaded with a considerable booty.

The prudent conduct of the VALI produced the effect which he expected. As soon as ACHMED BASHA heard that the enemy were ravaging his government, he sent orders to the BASHA of MOSUL to re-join his army, and left the VALI at liberty to return home by another rout. The TURKS lost a great number of men in this expedition: all the advantage they reaped from it, was the empty glory of having marched within three days journey of ISFAHAN.



## C H A P. XXXV.

*The RUSSIANS uneasy at the conquests made by the TURKS. Success of the RUSSIAN arms in PERSIA. The TURKS evade settling the limits of their conquests with the RUSSIAN resident. ASHREFF sends an ambassador to the port. Character of this minister. He is admitted to an audience of the grand vizir. His conferences with the TURKISH ministers.*

**T**HE rapidity of these conquests gave great uneasiness to the RUSSIAN ministers. Since the taking of TAVRIS, the grand signior affected less condescension towards that court; and now the important successes of the last campaign, together with the slow progress of these new allies, greatly diminished the regard which had been shewn them before the death of the RUSSIAN emperor. 1725.

The inaction of the RUSSIANS in PERSIA, was owing to the circumstances of the court of ST. PETERSBURG. There was some reason to fear, that the throne was not so securely established, as to venture upon the pursuit of conquests in ASIA, by which nothing could be gained; and which, it is probable, were never meant on any other account than to check the TURKS. And as for the SWEDES and other neighbouring powers, being no longer restrained by the reputation which the CZAR had acquired, they might be the more disposed to seize the first favourable opportunity to renew or form pretensions; for which sovereigns are never without reasons.

The RUSSIANS, however, during this time had obtained some advantages in PERSIA. MATUSKIN, one of their lieutenant-generals, having been informed, that the former vizir of RESHD had built a fort on the confines of GHILAN towards MAZANDERAN, with a design of molesting his foragers; he sent a body of troops thither in the month of JUNE, and drove the enemy into MAZANDERAN.

The vizir afterwards assembled his forces, and marched in order to fight the enemy; but the RUSSIAN infantry soon put them to flight. The



1725. demolition of the fort, and the taking of LAHIJAN<sup>e</sup>, were the fruits of this victory. The SHAMKALL of TARKOU, having submitted with reluctance to the yoke imposed on him by the CZAR, engaged some of the neighbouring princes in his quarrel: he took the field at the head of an army, but soon had reason to repent this step; for a body of RUSSIANS attacked him the twenty-sixth of SEPTEMBER, defeated, and drove him into the mountains. TARKOU, and several villages belonging to its dependancy, were pillaged and burnt; and his allies lost on this occasion one of their princes, with four of their chiefs.

But these advantages could enter into no comparison with the conquests made by the TURKS, who being now become masters of the several provinces adjudged to them by the partition treaty, reproached the RUSSIANS for keeping on the defensive, when, according to the treaty, they ought to have acted with vigour, in order to drive the AFGHANS out of PERSIA.

ROMANZOFF, the RUSSIAN minister at the port, was too expert a politician not to foresee the uneasiness he should be exposed to: he therefore solicited to go and settle upon the spot the respective limits. At length he had a conference upon this subject, when the REYS EFFENDI represented, that the season was too far advanced; and moreover, that as the principal articles of the partition treaty were to be performed in SHIRVAN, it would be requisite to give time to SAVI MUSTAFA to subdue the people of that province, who had lately blockaded SHAMAKIE. Thus the general ROMANZOFF had the mortification to see his journey postponed till the next year.

The port, not chusing to carry things to extremity, affected a condescension towards the RUSSIANS. The inhabitants of ARDEVILLE had sent deputies to ABDALLAH BASHA, soliciting the protection of the grand signior. The TURKISH general knowing that this city was beyond the limits prescribed by the treaty, would not send any troops thither without orders. The grand vizir communicated this affair to the envoy and resident of RUSSIA, assuring them that these proposals should be rejected. This appearance of sincerity, already contradicted by the invasion of LO-

RISTAN



RISTAN and other conquests, did not last long. ABDALLAH BASHA received 1725. secret orders, in consequence of which he took possession of ARDEVILLE, as it were provisionally, and under a pretence that the rebels had a design upon it. OUROUMI, a city in the neighbourhood of TAVRIS, had lately imitated the same example, by submitting voluntarily to the TURKS. The irregularity of this proceeding, occasioned fresh complaints. The RUSSIANS alledged moreover, that the port had committed a new violation of the treaty, by receiving an embassador from the rebel AFGHANS.

ASHREEF was so terrified at the progress of the OTTOMAN arms, that he addressed a manifesto to the inhabitants of MIANA, and some other frontier towns, exhorting them to submit to his dominion; after which, he attempted to reconcile by treaty, what he could hardly obtain in the field. The negotiation was committed to ABDUL AZIZ KHAN an AFGHAN, who from a simple mule-driver, had, by his courage and resolution, attained to the posts of colonel and commandant of JULFA. He set out from ISFAHAN in SEPTEMBER; but having been detained twenty days at HOROMABAD by ACHMED BASHA, and twelve at HAMADAN, he did not reach SCUTARI till the twentieth of JANUARY this year.

1726.

The arrival of this embassador, induced the OTTOMAN court to believe, that the AFGHANS, intimidated by the success of the TURKISH arms in the last campaign, would acknowledge the grand signior as IMAM<sup>f</sup>, and sue for peace at any rate. However, it was determined in council, that this minister should be received only as a simple messenger, deputed by a prince of the same religion as the TURKS. ABDUL AZIZ expected an audience as an embassador from a king of the sect of the SUNNIS; but perceiving that the court did not intend to acknowledge him in any public character, he pretended to be ill, and desired to be removed to CONSTANTINOPLE. As it was the intention of the port to grant him an audience, they easily consented to his request, which perhaps had been suggested to him; but instead of a galley, according to the custom observed towards embassadors, he was sent in a gondola.

<sup>f</sup> The supreme head, both in spirituals and temporals, of the MAHOMMEDANS. See page 175.



1726. The ninth of FEBRUARY, he was conducted to the audience of the grand vizir, with more ceremonies than he could reasonably expect, as the agent of a chief, whose sovereignty was not acknowledged by any crowned head. He persisted in vain that he would deliver ASHREFF'S letter to none but the grand signior himself; which as the case stood, was not practicable. The TURKS, who are not very scrupulous in regard to the privileges even of the most authorized ministers, finding they could not prevail upon him to deliver up the letter, resolved to take it from him.

ASHREFF'S proposals were very bold, and far from being couched in the most respectful terms. This prince in his letter assumed the pompous title of king of kings; he concluded it with four ARABIAN verses, the sense of which seems to be very romantic, as well as imperious, *viz.*

“ The sabre and the lance are our sweet basil ;

“ We despise the daffodil and myrrh ;

“ Our drink is the blood of our enemies,

“ And their skulls serve us for our cups.”

The sentence on the signet<sup>s</sup> was of the same nature. “ The faithful  
“ observer of the commandments of the most high ; the dust of the feet  
“ of the four friends, ABUBEKER, OMAR, OSMAN, and ALI, is ASHREFF,  
“ by the divine permission become the most illustrious of the sovereigns  
“ of the earth.”

The apprehensions which had been entertained at CONSTANTINOPLE, concerning the humiliation of the AFGHANS, were changed into indignation. As they looked upon the haughtiness of ASHREFF as unpardonable, the ministers were very desirous that the people should approve of the war, so that they spared no pains to inflame their resentments.

In the mean time, ABDUL AZIZ supported his master's interest, with a confidence answerable to the pompous title which that prince had assumed. The negotiation seemed to tend more to mortify the TURKS,  
than

<sup>s</sup> They give this signet the name of BUL. It is an impression in ink, which serves instead of a signature. See Vol. I. page 317.



than the refusal of the OTTOMAN court to acknowledge ABDUL AZIZ as 1726. embassador, had humbled this AFGHAN. He behaved, under these delicate circumstances, with great intrepidity, and as much confidence, as if he had been acknowledged in a public character; infomuch, that the ministers of the grand signior began at length to be embarassed. In the answer which the MUFTI, and the expounders of the law at CONSTANTINOPLE, gave to a letter written to them by the MIANGI and the expounders of the law at ISFAHAN, we find the principal points on which these conferences turned.

Religion was the object on which the AFGHANS founded their pretensions. ABDUL AZIZ reproached the TURKS, with having failed in an essential point of their faith, in not making all their efforts, as the AFGHANS had done, to destroy the monarchy of the SCHIAS. He allowed, that the grand signior was lawful IMAM in TURKEY; but he added, that this did not hinder ASHREFF and his successors from being IMAMS in PERSIA; especially, as a single chief is not sufficient to govern countries so vastly extended, as those possessed by mussulmen. He maintained, that a conqueror, acknowledged by the grandees of a kingdom, was the lawful sovereign of it; and as such had a right to claim the towns and provinces which had been torn from it; since his sovereignty extended to those provinces and towns, as well as to places where his authority was established.

The TURKISH commissaries appointed to treat with him, made answer, that the wars which the grand signior had been obliged to maintain against the different christian powers, had prevented his destroying the empire of the SCHIAS; that he had deprived the SCHIAS of many considerable provinces, and as soon as the peace concluded with the princes of EUROPE afforded him leisure, he would accomplish the work. They added, that according to law and tradition, there could not be more than one IMAM at a time, unless their dominions were separated by the sea, which might prevent all communication: that this was not the case with respect to PERSIA; nor was ISFAHAN at such a distance, as to render the nomination of another chief necessary; since under the reign of OMAR, whose empire



1726. pire extended from MECCA to HAMADAN, a plurality of Caliphs had never been acknowledged: that the sovereignty of the conquests made by the AFGHANS, as well as of those made by the grand signior, belonged of right to this monarch, in quality of IMAM, while the AFGHANS could pretend to nothing further, than the moveable goods of the people whom they had vanquished; and they defied ABDUL AZIZ to prove the contrary.

### C H A P. XXXVI.

*The TURKISH ministers propose queries to the MUFTI, relating to the consistency of a rupture with ASHREFF. Answer of the MUFTI. The port declares war against ASHREFF. The AFGHAN ambassador sets out from CONSTANTINOPLE, and is arrested on the road by orders from the grand signior. CASBIN surrenders to ABDALLAH BASHA. Dispute between the TURKISH generals. Misunderstanding between the RUSSIANS and the TURKS. ABDALLAH BASHA defeats TÆHMAS's troops before ARDEVILLE.*

**T**HE TURKISH ministers persisted in maintaining that there could be only one IMAM, and that this IMAM ought to be the grand signior, not only on account of his hereditary sovereignty, but because he had in his power the principal places of worship of the three written religions<sup>h</sup>. This dispute, the decision of which seemed to rest on the longest sword, was however supported by ABDUL AZIZ, who answered undauntedly; that if the mussulmen of the two empires could acknowledge only the same head, this title was due to ASHREFF, as descended from the illustrious tribe of CORAICH<sup>i</sup>, to whom the dignity of Caliph by right belongs, and as destroyer of the monarchy of the SCHIAS; and not to a prince born among a nation of an obscure original, who, not satisfied with granting peace to heretics, had, by a treaty contrary to the law, delivered

into

<sup>h</sup> MECCA, because of the temple, which they say ABRAHAM, father of the HEBREWS, built there, and as the place where MAHOMMED was born: JERUSALEM, respected by the JEWS, and much more so by the christians; and MEDINA, the seat of the empire, and burying place of their prophet, and of the first Caliphs his successors.

<sup>i</sup> The tribe of MAHOMMED, one of the most illustrious of MECCA, who were distinguished by their care of the temple which was intrusted to them.



into the hands of infidels, several cities <sup>k</sup> in which mosques had been erected. 1726.

These conferences served to increase the animosity of both parties. The port was desirous of war; but as the MAHOMMEDANS look upon it as vile and dishonourable to declare war against a people of their own sect, the TURKS would have been glad at least, that ASHREFF should lay them under a necessity of breaking with him, or to find some proper reason for a rupture: the most plausible seemed to arise from the very nature of the negotiation, especially as the AFGHAN, in the course of the argument, pretended to prove his master superior in birth and dignity to the grand signior.

The letters which passed between the MUFTI of CONSTANTINOPLE, and the MEANGI of ISFAHAN already mentioned, were made public, and served as a manifesto; and perhaps had a stronger effect, than if it had borne that title; for it was made use of to conciliate the minds of the people to a rupture with the AFGHANS. The port then demanded the FETFA <sup>l</sup> of the MUFTI, proposing the following queries:

“ 1. Whether it be permitted by the law, for the true believers to acknowledge and obey at one and the same time two different chiefs?”

“ 2. In what manner they ought to act against a mussulman, who after subduing the capital of PERSIA, and some other towns contiguous to the conquests made by the OTTOMAN arms, should contest the grand signior’s sovereignty, annexed to the dignity of IMAM, and send letters demanding those conquests, under pretence that they constitute part of an empire which belongs to him of right, as possessor of the capital, and of the throne of the SCHIAS?”

The MUFTI answered the first of these queries, “ That a plurality of chiefs was declared unlawful by the assembly of the ASHABS <sup>m</sup>, unless there should be some barrier betwixt their territories, such, for instance,

“ as

<sup>k</sup> BELGRADE ceded in 1718 to the emperor by the treaty of PASSAROWITZ, and DERBEND to the empire of RUSSIA.

<sup>l</sup> See page 36.

<sup>m</sup> A name given to the companions of

1726. “ as the INDIAN OCEAN, which might hinder them to consult, and to  
 “ assist each other.”

On the second query he determined, “ That if the mussulman in  
 “ question desisted from his pretensions, and submitted to the authority  
 “ of the head of the faithful, every thing would be right; but if he  
 “ persisted in his rebellion, his death was declared necessary by a precept  
 “ of the law, which enjoined the destruction of him.”

These FETVAS were followed by a declaration of war. The grand  
 signior being affronted at the insolence of ASHREFF'S seals, caused a signet  
 to be made, with an inscription of the same romantic nature as that of  
 ASHREFF'S already related.

“ The defender of justice, zealous for the four friends ”,

“ Is ACHMED, son of the warlike MAHOMMED, ever accustomed to  
 “ subdue his enemies.

“ By the eternal truth, ASHREFF is not the most illustrious of the  
 “ kings of the earth :

“ He is a paste kneaded with the leaven of MIR VAIS, a rebel, and  
 “ symbol of ignominy.”

If we consider with what a blind enthusiasm some religious wars have  
 been carried on in EUROPE, we shall not be surprized at these romantic  
 preludes to the shedding of MAHOMMEDAN blood. After these contests,  
 ABDUL AZIZ had his audience of leave from the grand vizir on the last  
 day of MARCH, with very little ceremony. This minister however pre-  
 sented him with ten purses ° for himself, one for his nephew, who had  
 accompanied him in his journey, and another for his chaplain. He also  
 sent a very fine watch for ASHREFF'S ATHEMAT DOULET, in acknowledg-  
 ment for a string of pearls which he had received from that minister.  
 The next day ABDUL AZIZ took his leave of the musti, and departed for  
 BAGDAT under the conduct of a TURKISH AGA.

This AFGHAN embassador had scarce entered the province of DIARBE-  
 KIR, when he was arrested by the commandant of KERKISIA, a fortress  
 near

° ABUKERKER, OMAR, OSMAN, and ALI.

° 500 dollars of 4 s. each purse.



near the EUPHRATES. The port, in order to authorize such a proceeding, gave out that ASHREFF had set the example, by confining, in the common jail, an officer whom ACHMED BASHA had sent to him; but it may be presumed, that the grand signior was unwilling this envoy should inform ASHREFF, of the repugnance which the TURKISH army shewed to the war. 1726.

In the mean time, the inhabitants of CASBIN made an offer to AEDALLAH BASHA, of submitting to the OTTOMAN dominion, on condition the grand signior would be satisfied with sending them a TURKISH governor, but no troops. This general, however, sent 12000 men under the command of ALI BASHA, one of his principal officers, who took possession of the town in the name of the grand signior. MARAGA also fell under the dominion of the port; but this conquest had like to have proved fatal, by the jealousy which arose between the BASHAS ABDALLAH and ACHMED, who both pretended to the government of that place. This town had always been in the district of TAVRIS, a circumstance which seemed decisive in favour of ABDALLAH; and yet the reputation of ACHMED prevailed over every other consideration. ABDALLAH would have retired to OURFA, the capital of his government, if the grand signior had not recommended his sacrificing his private resentment to the interest of the empire.

The RUSSIAN minister at the port having learnt that a body of TURKS had advanced towards GHILAN, made his complaint, and was answered, that the RUSSIANS ought to repel any troops who should disturb them, contrary to treaty. It could not however be supposed, that this detachment had acted without orders; hence it was inferred, that the TURKS had entered GHILAN, only to feel the pulse of the RUSSIANS, who were considered as enjoying the choicest province in the whole country, tho' in fact they drew but very little, if any advantage from it. It is reasonable to presume, that the curiosity of the TURKS was excited by the sollicitation of both the ENGLISH and FRENCH ambassadors: the ARMENIANS, who were wont to bring silk to them from GHILAN, on account of these troubles discontinued their caravans, which was by no means satisfactory to the merchants of these nations.

1726. The OTTOMAN armies had in the mean time taken the field, and their first operations seemed to promise as much success as the preceding years. ABDALLAH BASHA received advice, that the PERSIANS had assembled troops near the conflux of the ARAS and the KURA, designing to attack ARDEVILLE. Upon which he detached 10,000 men against them, under the command of his son ABDERRAHMAM, and put them to flight.

## C H A P. XXXVII.

TÆHMAS SHAH endeavours to negotiate a treaty with the RUSSIANS and TURKS. ASHREFF fortifies ISFAHAN. He marches an army to meet ACHMED BASHA. Stratagem used by ASHREFF to evade a battle with the TURKS. ACHMED resolves to give the AFGHANS battle. The TURKS are defeated.

TÆHMAS SHAH was now a fugitive in the province of MAZANDERAN, after his escape from the snare which had been laid for him by ASHREFF. That escape convinced him, that the throne of his ancestors was recoverable only by force of arms; and seeing himself betrayed or deserted in every quarter, he determined to agree to the execution of the treaty of CONSTANTINOPLE. In consequence hereof he sent an embassador to the court of RUSSIA; and at the same time he wrote to ABDALLAH BASHA, desiring this general to acquaint the port of his resolution.

His letter, among other particulars, contained as follows: “ The vilest  
 “ of our subjects, some miserable tribes of AFGHANS, have by the per-  
 “ mission of the Supreme, revolted against their lawful sovereign, and  
 “ made themselves master of part of our dominions. You have taken  
 “ advantage of this fatal conjuncture to attack us, and these hostilities have  
 “ prevented our stopping the progress of the rebels. Such a behaviour we  
 “ did not expect. Who could have imagined, that an OTTOMAN ge-



“ neral would have had recourse to artifice, to make himself master of  
 “ TEFLIS? 1726.

“ How can we discover an enemy disguised under the veil of friend-  
 “ ship? Does the bird know that the spray on which it perches, will  
 “ one day make its cage<sup>h</sup>?

“ The RUSSIANS have offered us their assistance, but we refused it  
 “ from a nation who are enemies to our religion. Being therefore under  
 “ a necessity of punishing our rebellious subjects, we earnestly beg you  
 “ will engage our illustrious father, the PADISHAH<sup>i</sup>, who is the refuge  
 “ of the universe, to grant us a truce of three years; and we agree that  
 “ the countries which he has conquered, shall always remain in his  
 “ hands.”

How advantageous soever these proposals might appear, the port wa-  
 vered in her determination. If she granted the truce, TÆHMAS might  
 be enabled to recover his dominions, which he now yielded by necessity.  
 On the other hand, if she continued deaf to his petition, he might throw  
 himself intirely into the hands of the RUSSIANS. Under these circum-  
 stances, the grand signior commissioned MUSTAFA EFFENDI, a man, who  
 by his extraordinary abilities had raised himself early in life to very con-  
 siderable employments, to go and examine upon the spot into the situa-  
 tion of affairs, under the specious pretext of negotiating the treaty which  
 this prince had proposed.

TÆHMAS's proposals to the court of RUSSIA did not meet with greater  
 success. Prince DOLGORUKI, who commanded this year in the con-  
 quered provinces, detained the embassador; and we do not find that any  
 regard was shewn to the proposals: indeed it was not probable that the  
 RUSSIANS should appear in behalf of the fugitive king of PERSIA, when  
 they remained inactive with regard to their own conquest.

These negotiations of TÆHMAS did not create so great uneasiness at IS-  
 FAHAN, as the neighbourhood of the OTTOMAN armies. ASHREFF,

H h 2

considering

<sup>h</sup> ARABIAN OR PERSIC verses.

<sup>i</sup> A title which the grand signior assumes, and which is  
 explained by that of emperor, but carries with it also a different meaning, as the chief of the MA-  
 HOMMEDANS both in spirituals and temporals.



1726. considering that all his forces would be insufficient to defend so large and ill fortified a town, had formed a project of a very singular nature. This was to build a second city within the inclosure of the first. The walls were made of earth, and about forty feet high; they were flanked with towers near fifty paces distant from each other, and surrounded with a large deep ditch. This new city included the old citadel, the great square, and the king's palace; and what is most surprizing, it was finished in less than three months, tho' it was above four miles in circumference.

ASHREFF having thus prepared a place of retreat, thought of rendering it more difficult of access to his new enemies. With this design, he detached some troops, who ravaged the open country from this capital to the very gates of CASBIN.

ACHMED BASHA, who was marching towards ISFAHAN at the head of a formidable army, was therefore obliged to change his rout. He was not advanced far, when the inhabitants of CASBIN, excited by the emissaries of ASHREFF, declared for this prince, and drove away the garrison which ABDALLAH KOUPROLI had quartered in that city, contrary to the treaty which they had made.

ASHREFF, depending more on his cunning and politics, than on the strength of his armies, published several manifesto's upon this occasion; by which he exhorted some other towns to follow the example of CASBIN: and in order to persuade them to it the more easily, he promised to exempt them from all imposts during the space of three years, if they would voluntarily submit to his dominion.

This prince, after the example of his predecessor, used all his endeavours to prevent the inhabitants of the capital knowing what passed abroad: yet they received some imperfect accounts concerning the motions and designs of the TURKS, which flung the city into a general consternation. The OTTOMAN army were apprehended to be very numerous, so that the fall of the AFGHANS was considered as inevitable. The PERSIANS and christians were equally desirous of changing masters, the one thro' aversion, and the other from views of commerce; but the recent remembrance



remembrance of the miseries they had suffered, and the notion they had entertained of the cruelty of the TURKS, made them consider this new revolution as a misfortune, in which they were in great danger of being involved. 1726.

ASHREFF was not without anxiety, but he concealed all emotions of fear, with a seeming indifference. That he might not risk his whole fortune at once, by waiting for the enemy under the walls of his capital, he put himself at the head of his troops, and went forward to meet them. His first camp was at SHAH BAGHI, a place distant five or six leagues from ISFAHAN. Here he spent some days in making the necessary preparations; after which he marched towards HAMADAN, by the same road which he knew ACHMED BASHA had taken.

The TURKISH army was advanced about twenty leagues from that city, when his scouts brought him word, that the AFGHANS were within sight. Towards the 20th of NOVEMBER, the two armies incamped within three leagues of each other; they had been in this position some days, when ACHMED BASHA resolved to try the mettle of an enemy, with whose manner of fighting he was not acquainted. With this view, he ordered two thousand horse<sup>k</sup>, supported by four thousand Janissaries, to advance before the main body of his army; but this detachment having been conducted by guides not well acquainted with the road; within half a league of ASHREFF'S camp, were surrounded by the AFGHANS, and cut in pieces; almost in sight of their general, who was in full march with his whole army to their assistance.

ACHMED, discouraged at this misfortune, ordered his army to entrench themselves. ASHREFF, in the mean while, had recourse to art and stratagem. The small number and the inexperience of his troops not permitting him to expect any advantage over his enemy by nobler methods; he endeavoured to sow the seeds of sedition in the TURKISH camp. He spared neither money nor promises to tempt those officers whom he thought least mindful of their duty; whilst his partisans in the TURKISH army handed writings about in form of manifesto's, wherein he protested,

“ That

<sup>k</sup> Spahis, or ASIATIC cavalry.



1726. “ That it was with the greatest concern he saw mussulmen bent upon  
 “ the destruction of each other; that this war, unlawful in itself, and  
 “ dishonourable to religion, had already lasted too long. In regard to  
 “ himself, he called GOD and MAHOMMED to witness, that he wished  
 “ for nothing with so much earnestness, as to enter into a reasonable ac-  
 “ commodation.” To this he added another expedient of a more public  
 kind, but not less artful: He chose from among his nation four CHEIKS<sup>1</sup>,  
 the most venerable for their age and knowledge; and ordering them to  
 put on their ceremonial habits, he sent them as ambassadors to the  
 BASHA’S camp.

These old men presented themselves unarmed, and were conducted to  
 the general, who treated them with respect. After the usual compliments,  
 the eldest of them addressing himself to the BASHA, in an audible but  
 modest tone of voice, spoke to this effect: “ ASHREFF, our sovereign  
 “ lord, has sent us to desire you not to draw your sabre against mussul-  
 “ men, who have obeyed the precept of the law in subverting the throne  
 “ of the SCHIAS. He is surprized that the OTTOMANS should treat him  
 “ as an enemy, and make an alliance with christians, with a design to  
 “ strip him of a kingdom, to which his being a descendant of the pro-  
 “ phet’s own tribe, his religion, and his conquests, give him such just  
 “ rights. He protests before GOD, that he lays all the blood that shall  
 “ be spilt in this iniquitous war to your charge, if you oppose his establish-  
 “ ing the true worship in his dominions, and reduce the AFGHANS to the  
 “ hard necessity of defending themselves against their own brethren.”

This audience was given, according to custom, in full assembly. The  
 TURKISH general perceiving that this discourse made an impression on the  
 minds of some of his soldiers, who were already influenced by the age  
 and character of the deputies, made answer immediately; “ That he  
 “ was come into PERSIA in consequence of the orders of the emperor his  
 “ master; that mussulmen could not, according to law, have more than  
 “ one head in spirituals, as well as temporals; and that the grand signior  
 “ being

<sup>1</sup> This ARABIAN word signifies not only an old man, but likewise a prince, a doctor, or the head  
 of a community.



“ being possessed of this title as successor to the Caliphs, ASHREFF must  
 “ acknowledge him in that quality, or he should soon feel the effects of  
 “ the strength and courage of the OTTOMAN forces. 1726.

The general had scarce finished, when the callers to prayer<sup>m</sup> gave notice that it was noon. The CHEIKS, attentive to the purpose of their commission, as well as their duty in point of religion, rose up immediately without making any reply, and joined in prayer with the TURKS. By this act they gave proof of the conformity of their religion; they concluded their prayer, begging with a loud voice, that the Almighty would please to open the eyes, and to touch the hearts of these mussulmen their brethren.

After this they withdrew, making fresh protestations that their master was innocent of the blood that was going to be shed. This artful conduct, strengthened by the secret intrigues of ASHREFF, soon began to produce its effects; for the deputies were hardly out of the camp, when they were followed by a prince of the KOURDS, with five thousand men of his nation.

The BASHA being informed, that the CHEIKS were attended by more troops than he had sent to escort them, suspected some treachery, and dispatched a large body of horse after the deserters: part of this detachment joined the KOURDS, so that the rest being inferior in number, were obliged to suffer them to proceed unmolested to the enemy's army.

ACHMED being struck with this event, which might prove of a very dangerous consequence, resolved to give the enemy battle. ASHREFF, grown braver by necessity, and the reinforcement of the KOURDS, who came over to him, marched immediately out of his camp, and advanced towards the enemy. The TURKS quitted their lines, and ranged themselves in battalia. Their army consisted of between seventy and eighty thousand men. The right wing was formed by twenty thousand KOURDS, who were all cavalry, under the orders of BABEC SOLIMAN OGLOU their prince. The left was commanded by SELICTAR MAHOMMED, and five other BASHAS, among whom were ABDERRAHMAM, son of the SERAS-

KIER

<sup>m</sup> These are called MOZZINS.

1726. KIER ABDALLAH, and HUSSEIN also, of the celebrated family of KOU-PROLI. This army was also attended with a train of seventy pieces of cannon.

ASHREFF's army consisted of seventeen thousand foot, among whom were twelve thousand AFGHANS, with coats of mail<sup>a</sup>; sixteen thousand horse, AFGHANS, PERSEES, and DERGHEZINS, with forty harquebusses mounted on camels backs. This prince, surrounded by his principal ministers, was seated, according to the custom of the INDIAN kings, on a throne carried by an elephant.

The TURKS gave the signal of battle at six in the morning, by firing ten pieces of cannon. The AFGHANS returned it with five: upon which the SERASKIER charged them briskly at the head of the right wing, and repeated the attack three several times with great bravery, during which time his artillery kept an incessant fire; yet he was repulsed on every side, and obliged, towards three in the afternoon, to retire in disorder to his entrenchments. The TURKS lost twelve thousand men: their defeat would probably have been more complete, if ASHREFF had not forbid his men to pursue them.

This conduct might also be imputed to a new piece of policy. The greatest part of the OTTOMAN army had not engaged, and an eagerness of pursuit might have snatched the victory from him; especially as there was little reason to believe that the enemy, contrary to their custom in such cases, would keep the field.

<sup>a</sup> This is a light iron net-work about the head and shoulders, and sometimes they wear the same kind of armour on their bodies under their cloaths.



## C H A P. XXXVIII.

*Artful behaviour of ASHREFF towards the TURKS. Situation of the port in regard to other powers. Great preparations in TURKEY against the AFGHANS. The TURKS unsuccessful against the ARMENIANS. Prudent administration of ASHREFF. The TURKS send commissaries into PERSIA to treat with ASHREFF. A treaty of peace concluded in the camp of HAMADAN, between the TURKS and the AFGHANS in 1727.*

**A**SHREFF, after his victory, removed his camp to the field of 1726. battle. The event justified the prudence of his measures; for the next night, the KOURDS spread themselves along the lines of the TURKS, crying out, that as part of the army was gone over to the AFGHANS, they would also retire immediately; after which, taking an advantage of the disorder which they had occasioned, they began to plunder the baggage.

These seditious clamours produced the effect, which the authors of them intended. The SERASKIER perceiving that he should expose himself to no purpose, in venturing a second engagement, while his troops were thus disheartened and mutinous, decamped silently in the night; and leaving his baggage and artillery behind him, he retired to KHERMANSHA.

The AFGHAN prince did not interrupt his march: it was not his design to demolish an army which might be easily replaced, but to baffle the projects of the port, by increasing the repugnance which the TURKISH nation in general shewed to this war. The same religious zeal, which has ever created such bloody contests between the TURKS and the PERSIANS, was now a reason not to fight with the AFGHANS. ASHREFF accompanied rather than pursued them as far as the walls of this city. But not satisfied with having defeated his enemies, and driven them from his frontiers, which was acting merely on the defensive, he used other gentle expedients to disarm them.

He was no sooner arrived near KHERMANSHA, than this artful AFGHAN sent deputies to ACHMED BASHA, who, upon the approach of the PER-

1726. SIAN army, retired with his scattered forces towards BAGDAT. Instead of proposing a negotiation, as was expected, these deputies declared to him publicly to this effect: “ It is the opinion of our sovereign ASHREFF, that  
 “ the spoils taken from people of the same religion, cannot be kept as a  
 “ fair booty: as he is possessed of his dominions as a lawful prince, he  
 “ does not think fit to act as a robber, by detaining the property of his  
 “ brethren; for which reason he has commissioned us to acquaint you,  
 “ that you may send for your treasure and baggage, and, except arms, in  
 “ general for whatever your troops left in their camp.” To this act of generosity, ASHREFF added that of returning the prisoners he had taken. Doubtless this prince intended to create friends of people, whom he had no further reason to fear, at least in the present campaign.

The TURKS were the more affected with it, as they had other troubles upon their hands. The death of PETER the GREAT, had not been attended with any of those changes, which they expected. This monarch's last will, supported by the grandees, and by the whole army, established the empress CATHARINE on the throne without any competition. VACHTANGA, the GEORGIAN prince, who was driven from TEFLIS, and retired to ST. PETERSBURG, was now sent to ASTRACHAN. The RUSSIAN empress being affronted at the little regard which the port shewed to the representations of her ministers, required of this prince to take up his residence in that city, in the neighbourhood of his own country. This circumstance, joined to the inconstancy of the GEORGIANS, alarmed the TURKS.

SULTAN DELI, a nephew of the KHAN of the CRIM TARTARS, now headed a body of male-contents, and gathered new strength and courage, by a great number of CIRCASSIANS and other TARTARS, whom he drew to his standard. The reputation of his arms, and the desire of plunder, had lately tempted them to make an expedition towards AZOPH, from whence they returned loaded with spoils, before the KHAN had time to oppose them.

In the mean time, things continued in some confusion on the western coast of the CASPIAN SEA. Prince DOLGORUKI made no progress on the



side of SHIRVAN: the LESGEEES were masters of great part of that province, and were interested to oppose the intended partition; so that the RUSSIAN and TURKISH deputies had no opportunity to execute their commission. Towards the south, the ARABS, naturally fierce and impatient of any foreign yoke, would not submit without the utmost reluctance. The title of CORAISH, which ASHREFF assumed, joined to the desire of novelty, might engage them in that prince's party; and with such assistance he might easily become master of MECCA and MEDINA, and cause himself to be proclaimed head of the MAHOMMEDANS°. The troubles, which had lately broke out in EGYPT, were not intirely pacified. The court endeavoured to insinuate for some time, that ASHREFF had embraced the religion of the PERSIANS; but this artifice was easily seen thro' by the people. A war, undertaken against a nation of the same faith, was considered as odious and unlawful; and the most zealous attributed the loss of the battle to the divine justice, which had confounded the temerity of those who opposed the propagation of the faith, by declaring against the destroyers of the monarchy of the SCHIAS.

Under such circumstances, a person of less esteem than ACHMED BASHA, might have had the disaster imputed to his misconduct, and, according to the usual policy of eastern countries, under this pretence been sacrificed to the public resentment. But this general was the son of a man, whose head the port had demanded several times to no purpose; and they were now to behave towards him with deference, that he might not declare in favour of ASHREFF, by which means he might assume an independent sovereignty in this province.

The republic of VENICE had not forgot her rights to the MOREA, nor the emperor of the ROMANS his to BOSNIA: this prince, already dissatisfied with the ALGERINES, who had taken one of the ships belonging to the EAST INDIA company of OSTEND, was not only in peace with all EUROPE, but also closely connected with the RUSSIANS.

With regard to SHAH TÆHMAS, they did not treat him with such contempt, as to neglect demanding of him the cession of the provinces they

1726. they had conquered; yet all the abilities of MUSTAFA EFFENDI, could not prevail on him to agree to the conditions proposed. So that the TURKS, tho' masters of great armies, and strongly inclined to reduce PERSIA to their obedience, saw themselves in danger of being forced to relinquish this favourite object.

The grand signior, sensibly disgusted at his late disgrace, opened his treasures, and employed all his ministers in making dispositions for the next campaign. They embarked twelve thousand men at ALEXANDRETTA. Six thousand men of EYDIN received orders to join them, as also a body of troops drawn from the standing forces of EGYPT: and concluding there was better reason to depend on christian subjects, who could not be worked upon by the artful insinuations of ASHREFF, they ordered the BASHA of NISSA, with twenty thousand ALBANIANS, and the BASHA of BOSNIA, with ten thousand BOSNIANS, to take the same  
1727. rout towards PERSIA. The beginning of APRIL this year, ten men of war were also sent to SALONICA for fresh reinforcements.

These powerful succours were sent to ACHMED BASHA. The winter had passed without any action worth notice, except that of SAVI MUSTAFA, who marched out of GANJA, of which town he was governor, and dispersed the ARMENIANS in the neighbourhood of SHAMAKIE. These people, laying hold of the present circumstances, formed themselves into a kind of republic, which, as we have mentioned, distinguished itself by the total defeat of a body of six thousand men, whom ABDALLAH BASHA had sent against them the preceding summer. It was not long before they had their revenge also of the governor of GANJA. It was their custom to assemble in great numbers during Easter, in a plain in that neighbourhood. Having received intelligence that the TURKS, who could not pursue them into their mountains, had formed a design to surprize them on this occasion, they took their measures, and not only defended themselves, but also drew the TURKS into their defiles, where they obtained an easy victory over them.

ASHREFF saw that the OTTOMAN court meditated his ruin; and tho' he had kept the field, and obtained a victory in the last campaign, he  
had



had hardly any other support than his own abilities to maintain himself upon the throne. His great point was to increase his reputation for piety and religion. With this design he obliged his ministers and principal officers to give him an exact account of their conduct and administration: at the same time, to demonstrate how much he meant to govern as a just prince, he sent to all his governors and great officers, a detail of his military operations, and of the manner in which he had governed since his accession to the throne. 1727.

This piece of policy was less necessary than he imagined. The vast preparations, which seemed to threaten his utter destruction, vanished of themselves. The new raised troops in TURKEY, who had been deceived with regard to the place to which they were at first ordered to march, obstinately refused to pass the frontiers of the empire. The desertion was so much the greater, as the apprehension of a general insurrection secured them from punishment. The people and the soldiers murmured alike against a war, which their honest, tho' superstitious, prejudices, taught them to look upon as unjust and impious.

The port, alarmed at an opposition which defeated her projects, did not hesitate long upon what measures to take. She dispatched orders to the SERASKIER, ACHMED BASHA, to enter as soon as possible into a negotiation, and to conclude a peace with ASHREFF on the most honourable conditions he could obtain.

How pressing soever these orders were, ACHMED was in no hurry to comply with them. This general having received fresh succours from the KOURDS and ARABS, had formed an army of 60,000 men; with these he hoped to repair his loss in the last campaign, the disgrace of which could not be imputed to him. The temper of this general was too well known by the TURKISH ministers, to depend on an absolute compliance on his side. Therefore they sent RICHIDI EFFENDI, a man of abilities and experience in business; he arrived in SEPTEMBER at the army, which had already entered the plain of HAMADAN. ACHMED BASHA had at least the satisfaction of treating at the head of a numerous body of forces.

1727. The AFGHAN army was not far off, when the BASHA sent to ZOULA, prime-minister and general of ASHREFF's troops, that now was the time to decide their quarrel; therefore he had only to accept of the conditions which he was commissioned to propose to him, or he must prepare for battle; when he hoped to shew what an OTTOMAN general, at the head of a faithful army, was capable of performing.

This blunt manner of opening the conferences, contributed to hasten the conclusion of a peace, now become equally acceptable to both parties. The negotiation being referred to men of abilities and moderation, towards the beginning of OCTOBER a treaty of peace was at length signed in the camp of HAMADAN.

The articles were as follows:

- I. The grand signior shall be acknowledged head of the mussulmen, and the true successor of the Caliphs.
- II. In this quality, the public prayer <sup>P</sup> shall be made in his name throughout all PERSIA.
- III. The provinces, cities, and towns, which he possesses in PERSIA, shall be ceded to him in perpetuity.
- IV. He shall re-enter into possession of CHUSISTAN, retaken from him during the war.
- V. He shall take possession, and hold in like manner, the cities of ZENGAN, SULTANIE, EBHER, TÆHIRAN, and their dependancies.
- VI. The artillery, arms, and standards, taken from the OTTOMAN army in 1726, shall be restored.
- VII. ASHREFF shall be acknowledged by the grand signior as lawful soveraign of the kingdom of PERSIA.
- VIII. He shall be named as such after the grand signior in the public prayers, and shall coin money in his own name.

IX. He



IX. He shall appoint an EMIR HAHDGEE to conduct the PERSIAN caravan, which goes every year in pilgrimage to MECCA<sup>1</sup>. This caravan shall, according to custom, take the road of BAGDAT; and the governor of that city shall not have a power, as formerly, to appoint a chief over it; nor shall it be subject to the authority of any of the grand signior's officers. 1727.

The treaty being ratified on both sides, the peace was proclaimed by circular letters through the OTTOMAN empire; and the grand signior, by a solemn embassy, acknowledged ASHREFF as the lawful sovereign of PERSIA.

<sup>1</sup> This custom, as I have observed, had been discontinued by the PERSIANS, though the SUNNIS make a point of it.

The END of the THIRD VOLUME;

---











Blackey delin :

Major sculpt :

Nadir Shah.

Publish'd according to Act of Parliament .



\*\*\*\*\*

An HISTORICAL  
A C C O U N T  
O F T H E  
BRITISH TRADE  
O V E R T H E  
C A S P I A N S E A;  
W I T H T H E  
Revolutions of P E R S I A.  
V O L. IV.

\*\*\*\*\*





THE  
REVOLUTIONS

OF

PERSIA:

Containing the

HISTORY

Of the celebrated USURPER

NADIR KOULI,

FROM HIS

BIRTH in 1687, 'till his DEATH in 1747.

To which are added,

Some particulars of the unfortunate reign of his successor  
ADIL SHAH.

---

V O L. II.

---

By JONAS HANWAY, Merchant.

---

---

L O N D O N.

Sold by Mr. DODSLEY, in Pall-mall; Mr. NOURSE, Mr. MILLAR, Mr. VAILLANT,  
and Mr. PATTERSON, in the Strand; Mr. WAUGH, in Lombard-Street; and Mr.  
WILLOCK, in Cornhill. M DCC LIII.







*A. Walker delin et Sculp.*

To the RIGHT HONOURABLE  
**JOHN EARL of HYNDFORD,**  
 Viscount INGLESBURY, and GRANGE,  
 Lord CARMICHAELL of CARMICHAELL,

Knight of the most ancient order of the THISTLE, one of the lords of his MAJESTY'S bed-chamber, lord-lieutenant, and principal sheriff of the county of LANARK, one of his MAJESTY'S most honourable privy-council, and one of the lords of the police in SCOTLAND.

MY LORD,

THE protection I received under your LORDSHIP'S ministry at the RUSSIAN court, authorises this testimony of my gratitude. The countenance of persons in your LORDSHIP'S



SHIP's high station, is a circumstance which ought to afford pleasure in the reflection ; particularly when providence has prospered our labours abroad, and enabled us to return to our native country, there to live under the happy government of that good prince, whom your LORDSHIP so worthily represented.

The first part of this work gives an account of some points of moment to the commerce of this nation, which fell within the compass of your LORDSHIP's ministry. I was a witness then, and still have the satisfaction to remember, with what zeal and attention your LORDSHIP endeavoured to support the trade of this nation over the CASPIAN SEA.

This volume which I have now the honour to present to your LORDSHIP, is the result of my enquiries in PERSIA. It contains the history of great military atchievements, and events that seem to have excited the attention of the whole world : indeed the memory of them, will, to all appearance, be preserved to the latest posterity. I am entirely sensible that how glorious soever such atchievements may appear to vulgar apprehensions, there can be nothing truly great, that is not consistent with the laws of GOD, and the happiness of society. The pursuits in which your LORDSHIP has been engaged, and the important negotiations you have conducted, were calculated to promote and protect liberty ; not to enslave or oppress mankind. These my LORD have been the object of  
your



your care: in these you have been long exercised with great honour and success; and by these you have gained the affection of foreign princes, as well as of our own sovereign.

Politeness joined with dignity, a just discernment with an easy address, and a facility of expressing the noblest sentiments in the most becoming language, are endowments universally allowed to your LORDSHIP: such qualities have justly recommended you to the esteem of that prince, who makes the welfare of his subjects the great end of his government. May your LORDSHIP long enjoy, under his happy reign, all the pleasures and advantages which are due to your distinguished merit. I am, with great respect,

M.Y LORD,

YOUR LORDSHIP'S

most obedient

humble servant,

London,  
January, 1753.

Jonas Hanway.





---

---

# C O N T E N T S

## O F T H E F O U R T H V O L U M E.

### P A R T I.

The birth and life of NADIR KOULI, from 1687, till his putting TÆHMAS SHAH in possession of MESCHED in 1727.

Chap. I. **T**HE name of the PERSIAN usurper, his birth, captivity, robberies, and employment in the service of a BEG, whom he murders; he marries the daughter of the deceased, and retires into the mountains: his engagement in the service of the governor of KHORASAN: he commands an expedition against the OUSBEGS, acquires great honour, and is afterwards disgraced. page 1

II. NADIR retires to KÆLAT, and is well received by his uncle. From thence he retreats into the mountains, where he forms a strong party, and robs for several years. The AFGHANS take ISFAHAN. SEF O DIN BEG deserts SHAH TÆHMAS. NADIR's uncle obtains a pardon for his nephew of the SHAH. NADIR's treacherous conduct in seizing KÆLAT. He beats a strong party of the AFGHANS, takes NICHABUR, and reinforces his army with 1000 men. 8

III. NADIR KOULI hears of the distress of SHAH TÆHMAS at FARABAD, desires his pardon, and obtains it. He joins his forces with those under the command of FATEY ALI KHAN<sup>a</sup>, whom he afterwards kills, and acquires the sole command of the army. He conducts SHAH TÆHMAS to NICHABUR, and from thence to MESCHED. SHAH TÆHMAS's devotion in that city. 14

### P A R T II.

From the recovery of the whole province of KHORASAN in 1728, to the expulsion of SULTAN ASHREFF out of ISFAHAN in 1729.

IV. TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN reduces KHORASAN and HERAT. He returns in triumph to MESCHED, with the head of the governor of HERAT. SHAH TÆHMAS sends an  
VOL. IV. b embassa-

<sup>a</sup> Viz. FATEY ALI KHAN KHAJAR.

- ambassador to the OTTOMAN court. The TURKS send SULIMAN EFFENDI into PERSIA. ASHREFF destroys SAID ACHMED KHAN governor of KHERMAN, and prepares to attack TÆHMAS SHAH. ASHREFF marches to DAMGOON, and is defeated; he retreats to ISFAHAN, and encamps his troops at MOURTCHAKHOR. page 21*
- Chap. V. TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN engages the SHAH to remain at TEHIRAN. The battle of MOURTCHAKHOR. ASHREFF murders SHAH HUSSEIN, and flies from ISFAHAN. The city taken by the PERSIAN army. The PERSIANS revenge themselves on the AFGHANS. SHAH TÆHMAS enters ISFAHAN, and gives his general TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN, the power of raising money. 30

## P A R T III.

From the total defeat of the AFGHANS in January 1730, till TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN is chosen king in March 1736.

- VI. ASHREFF stops at SHIRASS. TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN marches and defeats the AFGHANS the 15th of January 1730. Flight, distress, and death of ASHREFF. TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN marches against the TURKS, and takes HAMADAN and TAVRIS; he makes a truce, returns to HERAT, reduces that province, and marches into KHORASAN. The SHAH marches to ERIVAN, obtains some advantages over the TURKS, and is afterwards defeated near the ARAS, and again at HAMADAN. 37
- VII. An account of the revolution in TURKEY. The GRAND VIZIR and several other great officers put to death. ACHMED III. dethroned. MAHOMMED advanced to the government. The extraordinary adventures of PATRONA KALIL, chief of the rebels. 44
- VIII. ACHMED BASHA of BAGDAT, negotiates a peace with the PERSIANS in January 1732. TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN augments his army in KHORASAN. He disapproves of the peace with the TURKS, and enters into intrigues with his officers. He makes his son governor of KHORASAN; arrives at ISFAHAN in August 1732, and endeavours to vindicate his conduct to the SHAH. 63
- IX. KOULI KHAN seizes SHAH TÆHMAS. The infant ABAS elected king. Intrigues of KOULI KHAN. TÆHMAS SHAH removed to SEBSAWAR. The two sons of KOULI KHAN nominated to the principal governments. His manifesto disclaiming the peace with the TURKS. TOPAL OSMAN BASHA appointed seraskier of the TURKISH army. KOULI KHAN marches to BAGDAT. 69



Chap. X. *Description of BAGDAT. This city is besieged. The conduct of KOULI KHAN. The vigilance of ACHMED BASHA. Stratagem of TOPAL OSMAN. The PERSIAN army defeated with great slaughter. Letter of ACHMED BASHA to the GRAND SIGNIOR. Great rejoicings at the OTTOMAN court for the victory over the PERSIANS. TOPAL OSMAN sends his army into quarters.* page 78.

XI. *TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN prepares for another action: his stratagem. TOPAL OSMAN obliged to continue in his command. POULAK BASHA abandons the post of TAKAJAK. TOPAL OSMAN collects his forces, and meets the PERSIANS. Battle of LEILAM the 22d of October. Second battle of LEILAM. TOPAL OSMAN killed, and the TURKISH army routed. ABDALLAH KOUPROLI, BASHA of CAIRO appointed generalissimo.* 93.

XII. *The education, and most remarkable incidents of the life of TOPAL OSMAN BASHA; with a particular account of his gratitude and great generosity to his benefactor, who ransomed him in his youth from slavery.* 100.

XIII. *TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN acquaints the RUSSIAN court of his success. ACHMED BASHA prepares to stand another siege. MAHOMMED KHAN BALUCHE declares for TÆHMAS SHAH at SHIRASS; is defeated by KOULI KHAN, and hangs himself. The TURKS prepare to take the field. KOULI KHAN marches into GEORGIA the beginning of 1734, and takes TEFLIS. Description of that country. SELIM BASHA retires out of GEORGIA. KOULI KHAN takes GANJA and SHAMAKIE.* 109.

XIV. *The TURKS desire a peace. KOULI KHAN sends an ambassador to the RUSSIAN court. ABDALLAH KOUPROLI gives battle to KOULI KHAN in the valley of ARPAKAVI, and is slain, together with 20,000 TURKS. ABDALLAH BASHA retreats to CARS. CARA ACHMED appointed seraskier of the TURKISH army. ERIVAN taken. The TURKS declare war against the RUSSIANS. KOULI KHAN'S conduct towards that nation.* 116.

## P A R T - I V.

From the electing of TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN king of PERSIA in 1736, till his return from his memorable expedition into INDIA in 1740.

XV. *The young SHAH ABAS dies. The RUSSIANS evacuate DERBEND, and yield up their conquests in PERSIA. TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN declared king. Conditions of ac-*

- accepting the diadem. The MULLAH BASHI put to death. NADIR coins money, and seizes the lands of the church. Edict concerning the sect of the SUNNIS and SCHIAS. page 123
- XVI. NADIR SHAH marches to CASBIN, and sends an ambassador to TURKEY. The GRAND SIGNIOR'S orders to ACHMED BASHA concerning peace. All the conquered provinces yielded up to PERSIA. NADIR SHAH marches to ISFAHAN. Great preparations for an expedition against KANDAHAR. 131
- XVII. A succinct account of the incursion of the MAHARRATTAS, and the enmity between NIZAM AL MULUCK governor of DECCAN, and DEVRAN KHAN, the first minister of MAHOMMED SHAH, emperor of HINDOSTAN, with the general state of his court from 1720 to 1736, preparatory to the expedition of NADIR SHAH into INDIA. 138
- XVIII. Reflections on the different characters of ALEXANDER the GREAT and NADIR SHAH. Moral considerations on false glory. Motives to ALEXANDER and NADIR'S invading INDIA. NADIR leaves ISFAHAN in December 1736. Conduct of HUSSEIN KHAN governor of KANDAHAR, and of the AFGHANS. RIZA KOULI MYRZA subdues the OUSBEGS of BALKH and BOCKHARA. His indiscreet conduct in PERSIA. INDIAN lords correspond with NADIR. 143
- XIX. The news of the taking of CABUL arrives at DEHLIE. Measures taken to oppose the PERSIAN army. Jealousy between NIZAM AL MELUCK and DEVRAN KHAN. NADIR sends an embassy and writes to MAHOMMED SHAH. The difficulty which NADIR encounters in going from CABUL to the banks of the INDUS. PEISHOR taken. ZECHARIAH KHAN, governor of LAHOR, acquaints the court of his situation. The INDIAN army marches to KARNAL. 152
- XX. NADIR'S pomp when he entered the INDIAN territories. His manner of passing rivers. Short account of the INDUS. NADIR passes this river. JEMINABAD and LAHOR taken. NADIR arrives on the plains of KARNAL. 160
- XXI. The number of the PERSIAN army. SAADIT KHAN arrives at the INDIAN camp. He and DEVRAN KHAN begin the engagement. NADIR'S stratagem to draw the INDIANS to battle. SAADIT KHAN taken prisoner, and DEVRAN KHAN mortally wounded. NADIR'S manner of opposing the INDIAN elephants. Loss of the INDIANS in the field. Distress of the INDIAN camp after the battle. Interview between NADIR and NIZAM AL MULUCK ; also between the PERSIAN king and the  
GREAT



C O N T E N T S.

xiii.

- GREAT MOGHOL. *Numbers of the INDIANS slain in marauding.* MAHOMMED SHAH *delivers himself into the hands of* NADIR. *INDIAN effects sealed up in* DEHLIE. page 164
- Chap. XXII. *March of the PERSIAN and INDIAN armies from KARNAL to DEHLIE.* NADIR'S *entrance into DEHLIE.* SAADIT KHAN *destroys himself.* *Massacre of* DEHLIE. NADIR'S *conduct after the massacre.* 173
- XXIII. *Male-administration of* RIZA KOULI MYRZA, *regent of PERSIA.* *Rebellion of the ARABS against the PERSIAN government.* *Conduct of the PERSIAN ambassador at* CONSTANTINOPLE. 180
- XXIV. NADIR *gives his soldiers a gratuity.* *Contribution of* AUDIH *brought to* DEHLIE. SIRBULLIND KHAN *appointed chief collector of the contribution.* *His declaration to* NIZAM AL MULUCK. *Barbarous treatment of the INDIANS in collecting the contributions.* *The value of the treasure collected.* 183
- XXV. NADIR *marries his second son to the niece of* MAHOMMED SHAH. *The presents he makes to that prince and the INDIAN lords.* *The great MOGHOL'S cession of all the country on the west of the* INDUS. NADIR'S *advice to that prince.* *He begins his march from* DEHLIE, *and musters his army.* *Value of the damage done the* INDIANS. 188
- XXVI. NADIR *continues his march from the gardens of* SHALIMAR. *An instance of his vanity and avarice.* *His cruelty towards numbers of the peasants.* *Contribution of* LAHOR. *His passage over the* CHANTRON *obstructed.* *He returns back towards* LAHOR. *Confederacy of the* AFGHANS *and INDIANS to oppose his passage through the defiles.* *He seizes the plunder belonging to his own soldiers.* *His march to* PEISHOR. KHUDAYAR KHAN *refuses to acknowledge the sovereignty of* NADIR, *and is reduced.* NADIR *pursues his march to* KANDAHAR. *He sends his treasures to* KÆLAT, *and conquers* KHIEVA *and* BOCKHARA. 198
- XXVII. NADIR *returns to* PERSIA. RIZA KOULI MYRZA *murders* SHAH TÆHMAS *and makes an attempt against his father's life.* *Conduct of* NADIR *towards his son.* *He arrives in the neighbourhood of* ISFAHAN. 208.

## P A R T V.

From the return of NADIR SHAH to ISFAHAN from his INDIAN expedition in 1746, till he was assassinated in 1747.

Chap XXVIII. *Reflections on the vanity of military exploits. NADIR sends a pompous embassy to RUSSIA, and another to TURKEY. Circumstances of the TURKS. NADIR's demands on them. His war with the ARABIANS. His conduct towards the ARMENIAN patriarch. His project of introducing a new religion into PERSIA. He orders a translation of the evangelists. Comparison of his character, and that of AKBAR formerly emperor of INDIA.* page 212

XXIX. *Revolt of the MUNTISICKS from the TURKISH government. Short description of them and their country. The city of BASSORA under alarm from the ARABS. Conduct of ACHMED BASHA. BASSORA threatened with a siege from the PERSIANS. NADIR marches against the LESGEEES; and meets with several repulses in DAGISTAN. The RUSSIANS alarmed at his approach. The LESGEEES desire the protection of RUSSIA. The PERSIANS make war with the ARABIANS, and are repulsed. Distress of PERSIA. Dangerous situation of the TURKS. They reduce the ARABIAN rebels. Great preparations in PERSIA for a war.* 221

XXX. *NADIR's projects to distress the TURKS. Critical circumstance of ACHMED BASHA of BAGDAT. NADIR leaves DAGISTAN. Intrigues of the OTTOMAN court. NADIR sends ambassadors to BAGDAT. The GRAND SIGNIOR declares war against the PERSIANS. NADIR's plan of operations for the campaign.* 233

XXXI. *The TURKS put themselves in a state of defence. The BACTIARIS and BALOUCHES revolt. The TURKS send a pretender into PERSIA, who is joined by a great body of LESGEEES and PERSIANS in SHIRVAN. They are defeated by the PERSIAN forces under the command of NEZR ALI MYRZA. Rebellion of TAGHI KHAN in SHIRASS suppressed.* 239

XXXII. *Rebellion of ASTRABAD. ENGLISH merchants plundered. NADIR returns from TURKEY into PERSIA. Report concerning his abdication. Distress of PERSIA. The TURKS make great preparations for war. NADIR marches into the TURKISH dominions. Battle fought near ERIVAN. The TURKS defeated.* 244



C O N T E N T S.

xv

Chap. XXXIII. NADIR *makes a peace with the TURKS. The RUSSIANS send an embassador to NADIR. Revolt of the GEORGIANS. NADIR'S barbarities at ISFAHAN and KHERMAN. Revolt of THAMARAS KHAN and ALI KOULI KHAN.* page 254

XXXIV. NADIR *marches to MESCHED ; and from thence to the plains of SULTAN MEYDAN. He intends to massacre part of his own army, but is himself assassinated. Dispersion of the PERSIAN army. Motives of NADIR'S supposed intention of a massacre. Reflection on his death.* 260

P A R T VI.

The character of NADIR SHAH.

XXXV. *Reflections on the death and general character of NADIR SHAH. An account of his person, voice, strength, arms, valour, memory, diet, dress, love of women, cruelty, avarice, distrust, artfulness, clemency, liberality, generalship, politics, &c.* 265

P A R T VII.

The short and unfortunate reign of ADIL SHAH.

XXXVI. ALI KOULI KHAN *elected king of PERSIA at MESCHED. He sends his brother IBRAHIM MYRZA to ISFAHAN ; and commits several cruelties. He solicits the friendship of RUSSIA. The revolt of AMUR ASLAN KHAN ; also of IBRAHIM MYRZA. The death of ZORAB KHAN. The defeat of ADIL SHAH, and his brother IBRAHIM MYRZA, &c.* 284

ERRATA

## ERRATA to the THIRD VOLUME.

Page 2. line 9. for country, read, country and. p. ditto. l. 25. TYGRIS, r. EUPHRATES. p. 7. l. 20. which, r. who.  
p. 14. l. 2. MAHOMMED, r. MAGHMUD. p. ditto, note, dele ALBANIA NOW SHIRVAN. pages 15. 18. and 20.  
BABYLON, r. BAGDAT. p. 20. l. 15. import, r. important. p. 29. l. 20. the, r. this. p. 32. l. 5. dele no. p. 46.  
l. 26. in town, r. in the town. p. 52. note, PERSIANS, r. GERMANS. p. 64. l. 11. excursions, r. incurfions. p. 115.  
l. 12. took occafion, r. were compelled. p. 127. l. 21. this, r. his. p. 249. l. 30. PERSIAN army, r. AFGHAN army.

## ERRATA to the FOURTH VOLUME.

Page 16. line 28. dele good. p. 17. l. 30. for fo much awed that he, read, was awed and. p. 26. l. 14. folders, r. foldiers.  
p. 88. l. 19. Trumpet. He has, r. trumpet, has. p. 101. l. 1. twenty-five, r. thirty-five. p. 119. l. 26. 55,0000, r.  
55,000. p. 140. l. 10. return court, r. return to court. p. 147. l. 19. of the arms, r. of arms. p. 155. note, <sup>i</sup>, r. <sup>h</sup>.  
<sup>h</sup>, r. <sup>i</sup>. p. 180. l. 20. injurous, r. injurious. p. 184. l. 29. a heavier weight to the, r. more. p. 257. note, CASPIAN,  
r. ARCHIFELAGO. p. 265. l. 6. dele poor.



---

V O L. IV. P A R T I.  
 T H E  
 B I R T H A N D L I F E  
 O F  
 N A D I R K O U L I,  
 F R O M 1687,  
 T I L L H I S P U T T I N G T Æ H M A S S H A H  
 I N P O S S E S S I O N O F M E S C H E D I N 1727.

## C H A P. I.

*The name of the PERSIAN usurper, his birth, captivity, robberies, and employment in the service of a BEG, whom he murders; he marries the daughter of the deceased, and retires into the mountains: his engagement in the service of the governor of KHORASAN: he commands an expedition against the OUSBEGS, acquires great honour, and is afterwards disgraced.*

**T**HE Sovereign of the universe, who fixes the periods of empires, and restrains the wild ambition of princes, had now prepared an instrument of his vengeance to chastise the AFGHANS, whose cruelties had filled PERSIA with blood. Their triumphs drew near an end: the hour approached, in which the PERSIANS were to take ample satisfaction for all the ravages committed by those usurpers, from the death

1727. of GURGHIN KHAN <sup>a</sup>, to their invasion of PERSIA <sup>b</sup>, and for all the dreadful calamities they had occasioned during that period <sup>c</sup>.

About this time appeared, with a more distinguished eclat, NADIR KOULI, the history of whose life and actions will ever seem wonderful, because they are really so, and not the fictions of romance, or the flattery of panegyrists: characters like his, will excite the curiosity, and command the attention of posterity, so long as the lives of great men, and accounts of great actions, continue the object of historical enquiry. We shall here find a man, whose birth and beginning were so obscure, as with difficulty to be traced out; conducting to an issue, with amazing resolution and steadiness, opportunities he had worked out for himself; planning with deliberation and foresight, the fabrick of his future fortune; and carrying his designs into execution, with an unwearied application, till, like other mighty conquerors before him, he became terrible to ASIA, and the undoubted arbiter of the east. He changed his name, as he changed the situations of his fortune, which has occasioned some perplexity: his real name was NADIR KOUL, or NADIR KOULI <sup>d</sup>. NADIR, both in the TURKISH and PERSIAN languages, signifies wonderful; which epithet is used by the MAHOMMEDANS to design the particular attribute of the deity, as we ordinarily say the Almighty; tho' the use and custom of PERSIA gives it to people of the lowest rank of life. When SHAH TÆHMAS made him a khan <sup>e</sup>, as we shall have occasion to relate, he honoured him with the addition of his own name; and this last is one of the highest dignities that can be bestowed by the monarchs of PERSIA. He was then TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN <sup>f</sup>; and tho' KOUL signifies a slave, in this sense it is the highest badge of honour in the east. Afterwards, when he became the sovereign of PERSIA, he reassumed his name NADIR, with the addition of SHAH <sup>g</sup>; tho' as he must be ever considered as an usurper, the name by which he has been most known, and probably will

<sup>a</sup> In 1709.

<sup>b</sup> In 1722.

<sup>c</sup> Till 1727.

<sup>d</sup> KOUL, in TURKISH, is a slave; and NADIR KOULI, signifies the slave of the wonderful: for the idiom of the language fixes the genitive on the antecedent noun; so that instead of NADIRI KOUL, they say NADIR KOULI.

<sup>e</sup> Noble or chieftain.

<sup>f</sup> Which signifies the lord, who is a slave of TÆHMAS.

<sup>g</sup> NADIR SHAH,

or NADIR the king.



will continue to be known, to posterity in EUROPE, is TÆHMAS<sup>h</sup> KOULI KHAN.

Though authors seem at length agreed about his original name, their accounts differ in some particulars with regard to his birth, his family, and first appearance in life. As to himself, he sometimes boasted of the meanness of his extraction; at others, policy or caprice induced him to claim a relation to GINGHIZ KHAN, the great TURKUMAN conqueror, and also to TAMERLANE. I have not yet seen any account so satisfactory and consistent, as what I received in PERSIA; and I am the more inclined to acquiesce in it, because, tho' there are very few reports of things, in which the PERSIANS agree<sup>i</sup>, yet in the circumstances I am now about to relate, people of the most understanding, and of the best intelligence, unanimously concurred.

According to these accounts, NADIR was born in the year 1687, at a village, or more probably in a tent, a few days journey<sup>k</sup> to the south-east of MESCHED, not far from KÆLAT<sup>l</sup>. He was descended from the AF-SHARS, who are a tribe of TARTARS, and subjects of PERSIA: they live for the most part by husbandry, and supply the PERSIANS with horses and cattle. The name of NADIR's father was IMAM KOULI, whose situation of life was such, that he earned his bread by making caps and sheep-skin coats, which is the apparel of the lowest of the common people in PERSIA. NADIR himself was bred up to no other employment than that of a shepherd, and being only thirteen years of age when IMAM KOULI died, he was left in so poor a condition, that he was obliged to gather sticks in the woods, for the support of himself and his mother, and carry them to market on an afs and a camel<sup>m</sup>, which were his only patrimony.

It

<sup>h</sup> This orthography seems most agreeable to the PERSIAN pronunciation: but this, as well as other ORIENTAL words, are variously wrote by different authors, as TAMAS, TAHMAS, &c.

<sup>i</sup> Whether it has been from this cause, or that few people have travelled in PERSIA, I find the several accounts which have been written of TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN, are, for the most part, very erroneous; so that in the prosecution of this work, I shall chuse rather not to say all that I have heard, than to advance any thing, of the truth of which I am in the least diffident. <sup>k</sup> A day's journey is commonly reckoned 24 miles.

<sup>l</sup> I do not find this place in the maps; but I shall have frequent occasion to mention it as a strong hold, and the repository of the treasure taken from the MOGHOLS.

<sup>m</sup> In proof of this I was told an anecdote pretty remarkable, and much to his honour. After he was exalted to the throne and sovereignty of PERSIA, a person named SAIDAR, who had been his

It is recorded of him, that when he was returning in triumph from his conquest of INDIA, he happened to pass near the place of his nativity, where he made a set speech to his chief captains, in which he related in what manner he had passed the early part of his life; and, in particular, mentioned the feeding his father's camel, concluding to this effect: "You now see, to what a height it has pleased the Almighty to exalt me; from hence learn not to despise men of low estate."

1704. About the year 1704, when he was 17 or 18 years of age, the OUSBEG TARTARS made an irruption into KHORASAN, where they put many of the inhabitants to the sword, and carried others into slavery; among the last were NADIR KOULI and his mother: she died in captivity, but he
1708. made his escape in 1708, and returned to KHORASAN. From this time we hear no more of him, till with some of his companions he robbed a flock of sheep<sup>n</sup>; the money which this produced, enabled him to retire into the mountains: however, we do not find that he continued the profession of a robber for any length of time, but entered into the service of
1712. a BEG, by whom he was employed as a courier. He was once charged with dispatches of importance to the PERSIAN court at ISFAHAN, and sent in company with another courier, as is frequently practised in PERSIA. Whether NADIR was ambitious of being the sole carrier of these dispatches; or whether his fellow-courier did not travel fast enough; or for some other secret reason, he killed him. After his arrival at ISFAHAN, he told his story so well, that he procured admittance to the ministers

companion and fellow-labourer in ranging the woods, was created a khan, and granted the privilege of wearing the black heron's feathers on the left side: this is one of the highest marks of favour in PERSIA, for their kings wear these plumes upon the right, as a badge of their sovereignty. This man died at KISLAR, on an embassy to RUSSIA. NADIR, upon conferring those honours upon him, spoke these words, "Do not grow proud, but remember the ass, and the picking of sticks." And so late as 1745, KELEK BEG, a yurbashi or captain, declared, that NADIR KOULI, having formerly borrowed of him 50 batmans of wheat, which is about the value of thirty shillings of our money, he had often importuned both NADIR KOULI and his brother, who was afterwards IBRAHIM KHAN, for payment of it; and that at length they did repay him thirty batmans of the fifty. What is still more remarkable, and more convincing of the truth; after he ascended the throne of PERSIA, he took notice of this incident in a public manner, and reproached KELEK BEG for his unmerciful importunity, but did not pay the ballance of this debt of poverty, nor take any further notice of the man.

<sup>n</sup> Not of his father's, as some writers mention, for he was already dead; nor do we find (tho' his uncle might be in better circumstances) that his father was ever master of a flock of sheep.



ministers of SHAH SULTAN HUSSEIN, to whom he assigned such plausible reasons for his conduct on the road, that he was not only acquitted, but received presents, and was sent back with answers to the letters he had brought. His master, however, received him with such a countenance, as gave reason to suspect that he meditated his destruction. NADIR perceiving this, resolved to kill his master; to which he was the more induced, from a violent passion he had conceived for his daughter, whom he had demanded in marriage, but was refused. After the murder was perpetrated, he took the lady away, and retired into the mountains. One effect of this enterprize was the birth of RIZA KOULI MYRZA, whose genius and disposition had so great a resemblance with his father's. This desperate action having acquired him a reputation for courage, some of the domestics of his late master, the BEG, joined him, and they became robbers: in this station they continued for some time, as favourable opportunities occurred. NADIR at length offered his service to BABULU KHAN governor of KHORASAN°, by whom he was accepted in the capacity of a gentleman usher P.

1712.

It may seem strange, that a chief of a gang of free-booters, should be received into the family of a governor of a province, and have an honourable office bestowed on him. But this will not appear such a matter of surprize, if we consider the great extent of country, and that NADIR's robberies were for the most part in MAZANDERAN, which is three or four hundred miles distant from MESCHED; add to this, that a man of personal strength and bravery generally meets with a favourable reception in PERSIA, without being much questioned concerning his manner of life. Besides, the revolt of MIRVAIS had alarmed the eastern provinces, as it gave occasion for the TARTARS to make frequent inroads; so that men of a promising figure,

1714.

or

• He had also the title of BEGLER BEG, or lord of lords. These I have had occasion to explain; there are not above three or four in the empire; of whom one is always fixed in KHORASAN: this province has been generally considered as a kingdom, and the government given to the king's son, or nearest relation: some ages are past since a wall was built along this frontier, to prevent the incursion of the TARTARS, of which there are still some remains; but SHAH ABAS the GREAT removed several thousand families from other provinces, and brought them hither, alledging that a wall of flesh was the most effectual barrier against an enemy; and NADIR after this example fixed several families of JEWS and CHRISTIANS, as well as MAHOMMEDANS, in MESCHED, to some of whom he lent money to trade, to others lands were assigned to cultivate.

P ESİK AGASSI.

1714. or remarkable for their gallant behaviour, were sure of being acceptable; and thus we may reconcile the conduct of the governor of KHORASAN.

The PERSIANS are all supposed to be soldiers upon occasion; and it may be presumed, that NADIR's reputation for courage and great personal strength, were recommendations more prevalent than virtue, or any polite accomplishment. But without being bred at court, from the strength of his own genius and discernment, he was a master of the arts of address, and having a mind unrestrained by any moral consideration, he insinuated himself into the affections of those, whom he afterwards made no scruple to destroy. He behaved so well in this new service, that he won the heart of his master; and, under the specious pretence of desiring to please, he concealed his ambition. The satisfaction he expressed in his present situation, induced his companions to believe, that to be faithful in the cause he espoused, was the virtue he aspired at most; however, he affected a particular zeal for some, whilst he shewed a coldness for others, as they seemed more or less inclined to please him.

1717. The distresses<sup>a</sup> of PERSIA increasing, he had not been long in the service of BABULU KHAN, before a command in the army was given him, in which he behaved with great intrepidity, in several skirmishes with the TARTARS of KHIEVA and BOKHARA, who frequently made inroads on the frontiers of KHORASAN. EZADALLAH being already master of HERAT, and the KOURDS in the west making incursions into IRAC AGEMI; these TARTARS<sup>r</sup>, who are generally called OUSBEGS<sup>s</sup>, came this year in a body of above 10,000 men, and began to lay waste the most fertile plains of KHORASAN, plundering the inhabitants, and carrying many thousands into captivity. In this emergency BABULU KHAN collected all his forces, which did not exceed 6000 men, and of these part were infantry. His officers shewed a reluctance to try their fortune with so unequal a force, against a people of such known bravery as the TARTARS. NADIR KOULI, however, had different sentiments of the matter, and from his experience of the valour of the KHAN's troops, he offered his service to march at their head against these ravagers; declaring at the same time, that he would en-

gage

<sup>a</sup> See Vol. III. page 62, 63, &c.

<sup>r</sup> Of independant TARTARY.

<sup>s</sup> This word we

have mentioned to signify free and independant.



gage his life upon the event. NADIR's military virtues were evidently superior to those of the officers about the KHAN, though he was not then above 33 years of age. The KHAN was so sensible of this, that he had already given him the command of 1000<sup>s</sup>; and not having the least doubt of his fidelity, he accepted the offer, and conferred upon him the command of his troops, during the intended expedition, whilst himself remained in the city, to keep good order, and prevent the inhabitants from following the example of those of HERAT, who had revolted three years before. Several of the officers refused to act under this new general, but their place was soon supplied by others, whom NADIR approved of.

The OUSBEGS were already advanced to the banks of the river TEDJEN, within a few days march of MESCHED. NADIR having with great application provided what was necessary for the expedition, marched at the head of his troops in search of the enemy, who were pillaging at large; however, the news of the approach of a PERSIAN army brought them together, and they prepared for battle; their numbers being almost double to those under NADIR's command. We have no particular account of this action, but in general terms, that the TARTARS, according to their ordinary custom, charged with great fury. NADIR having selected a proper ground, and encouraged his men, stood the shock; and when the TARTARS by their own impetuosity were in some disorder, the PERSIAN troops made a general discharge of their fire-arms, then falling on with their sabres and battle-axes, put them to flight, destroying near 3000, and retaking all their plunder and captives, which were very considerable.

NADIR, elated with this his first victory, returned in triumph to MESCHED, where he was received with great expressions of joy. The fire of his ambition now began to blaze, nor could he suppress the consciousness of his services, but demanded to be confirmed in his office of general, under the command of BABULU KHAN: this governor assured him that he would write to court in his favour, and that nothing should be wanting

on

<sup>s</sup> Commanders of 1000 are called MIM BASHIS. As few readers can retain a remembrance of the explanation of PERSIAN words, I shall avoid them as much as possible; but when they necessarily occur, I shall occasionally mention their signification, tho' the same words should have been already explained in other parts of this work.

on his part, to reward his merit. Whether it was that BABULU KHAN did not act ingenuously and agreeable to his promise; or that the weak administration of SHAH SULTAN HUSSEIN evaded the promotion of NADIR, is uncertain; he was however much incensed at his disappointment. What added to his resentment, was to see a person much younger than himself, and a relation of BABULU KHAN, without either experience or abilities, placed in his command. Under these circumstances, NADIR demanded of the KHAN the reasons of so unjust a conduct; and with a ferocity peculiar to him, made no scruple to declare his opinion, that the KHAN had not acted as a man of honour. This insolent behaviour obliged the governor to alter his conduct; so that from the highest commendations of NADIR's valour, he condemned him to be beaten, in the severest manner, on the soles of his feet<sup>t</sup>. What contributed to this disgrace, was the envy of NADIR's abilities as a soldier, among several officers of distinction in the PERSIAN troops. It is easy to imagine that a man of so imperious a spirit, could but ill brook such indignities; he therefore retired from MESCHED to seek some new adventure.

---

## C H A P. II.

*NADIR retires to KÆLAT, and is well received by his uncle. From thence he retreats to the mountains, where he forms a strong party, and robs for several years. The AFGHANS take ISFAHAN. SEF O DIN BEG deserts SHAH TÆHMAS. NADIR's uncle obtains a pardon for his nephew of the SHAH. NADIR's treacherous conduct in seizing KÆLAT; he beats a strong party of the AFGHANS, takes NICHABUR, and reinforces his army with 1000 men.*

1719. **N**ADIR being thus turned loose into the world, applied his thoughts immediately how to retrieve his fortunes, and do himself that justice, which he could not obtain of BABULU KHAN. His uncle<sup>u</sup>, a chief

<sup>t</sup> This is common to persons of the highest rank in PERSIA. See Vol. I. page 256. <sup>u</sup> It may perhaps seem strange, that NADIR's father should have been a cap-maker, and his uncle chief of



chief of one of the tribes of the AFSHARS, commanded at KÆLAT, a strong hold, about ten days journey from MESCHED: to him he applied, and complained of the hard treatment he had met with in the king's service. His uncle entertained him for some time, till by his intrigues he began to discover ambitious designs; and NADIR thus becoming an object of jealousy, was obliged to retire. 1719.

NADIR was now determined to seek a support by the arts of violence, in which he was a thorough proficient; experience having taught him, that he could not procure a subsistence in a manner suitable to his vast desires, by any other means. It is probable, he had already planned a design of getting possession of KÆLAT; however, he retired, for the third time, into the mountains, where he returned to his old trade of robbery.

MAGHMUD having invaded PERSIA, and compelled the unfortunate HUSSEIN to yield up his capital, together with his diadem, the provinces were involved in great confusion and distress: this afforded the better opportunity to NADIR, to collect a body of men of desperate fortunes, many of whom had already served under him as soldiers. After robbing several caravans, he soon acquired riches enough to bring together the number of seven or eight hundred men of approved resolution; and having fixed a rendezvous in the mountains, they made incursions into KHORASAN, and the adjacent provinces, laying the country under such contributions as they pleased to impose. 1722.

The AFGHANS, though in possession of ISFAHAN, were not sufficiently numerous to make a rapid conquest of the whole empire; several provinces and cities in the heart of it, as well as the frontiers, refused to submit; and thereby cut them out work for some time. As to TÆHMAS, the fourth son of HUSSEIN<sup>w</sup>, who made his escape from ISFAHAN, and was

now

a tribe, and governor of KÆLAT; but not so strange as NADIR's own fortune. When, and by what means, the uncle became chief of a tribe, I know not; but it is not so difficult to comprehend, how one brother may be in easy circumstances, and the other poor; whilst we see so many revolutions in human affairs in EUROPE, and many more in ASIA.

<sup>w</sup> His first son was SEFFIE MYRZA, whom the ministers of SHAH HUSSEIN had once caused to be confined, from an apprehension that he had too much courage and sagacity to suffer that infamous administration, for which they were so distinguished; and it is presumed that this prince was afterwards put to death by the AFGHANS.

1722. now considered as the lawful heir of the PERSIAN monarchy, he was rather a fugitive himself, than in a capacity of supporting order and government in those provinces not yet subjected to the AFGHANS; and was
1724. now content with an obscure life, in the province of MAZANDERAN. In the interim, the TURKS seized upon the provinces in the west and south west; and the RUSSIANS conquered the western coast of the CASPIAN, including great part of GHILAN. However, as soon as TÆHMAS was informed that the king his father had abdicated his right to the sovereignty; he, in quality of successor, took the title of SHAH, by which name we shall call him, tho' he can hardly be said to have been more than a nominal king.
1726. Whilst he was negotiating secret treaties with the provinces that professed any fidelity to him, or sending embassies to implore the assistance of the neighbouring states, NADIR extended his lawless sovereignty in the eastern frontiers, living on spoil, and exacting what he thought necessary for the support of himself and his followers.
1727. About five years passed under these circumstances; when, at length, TÆHMAS collected a little army; but his father's fortune still pursued him. One of his principal generals, SEF O DIN BEG, a chief of the BAYOTS<sup>z</sup>, having given some offence, and being apprehensive of punishment, fled from TÆHMAS's camp with the troops under his command, which were no less than 1500 men, and joined NADIR KOULI, who was then in the same province of KHORASAN. The union of their forces composed a body of 2 or 3000 men, which the adjacent country was compelled to support: this formidable body was within 30 leagues of KÆLAT, so that NADIR's uncle began to be much alarmed, lest his nephew should attempt to dislodge him from his strong hold: in order, therefore, to support a good understanding, he wrote to him in very obliging terms, intimating that he had now a fair opportunity of making his fortune, by engaging in the service of his lawful sovereign SHAH TÆHMAS; who, he was sure would pardon him, and all his followers. NADIR seemed to relish the proposal, and desired his uncle to procure the king's pardon, which he  
would

<sup>z</sup> These are the inhabitants of DEST BAYAD, a district in KOUHESTAN.



would gladly accept: accordingly the uncle represented the case to the 1727. SHAH, who, tho' he knew NADIR to be a most notorious offender, yet as he was in great need of so brave and experienced an officer, with so considerable a body of men, immediately signed his pardon, and sent it to KÆLAT.

The uncle no sooner received this writing, than he dispatched it to his nephew; upon the receipt of which, NADIR KOULI set out for KÆLAT, in company with SEF O DIN BEG, under an escort of 100 men of his best troops. He had now a convenient opportunity of exercising his genius in the art of treachery. His uncle received him with great kindness, and entertained him and his followers as persons to whom he had done a signal service, and from whom consequently he apprehended no harm; at the same time he shewed them all the honour and regard due to persons of rank and condition. NADIR, on the other hand, had not forgot the indignities offered him five years before; neither was he ignorant of the motives of his uncle in procuring the pardon, nor of the king's views in granting it: but whatever moral considerations ought to have influenced his conduct, his thirst of power silenced the dictates of conscience: so that he determined to embrace the opportunity of an hospitable reception, and the specious pretence of an obliged guest, to make a sacrifice of his benefactor. For this purpose he had left orders that 500 more of his best men should follow him the next day, and conceal themselves near the fortrefs of KÆLAT, and there be ready at a signal appointed.

Having thus concerted his measures, the second night after his arrival he ordered his 100 men within the castle to kill the centries, and shut up the rest of the garrison, to the number of 200 men, in their barracks, whilst he went himself into his uncle's chamber and murdered him. As soon as he made the signal, his 500 men were let in at the gates, and he became absolute master of the fortrefs without shedding much blood. Those of the garrison, who did not chuse to share his fortune, he set at liberty. The next day he dispatched messengers with the news of his success, ordering the remainder of his men to join him; and now instead of changing his residence continually, as the apprehensions

1727. of an enemy, or other reasons of convenience might render necessary, he established his head-quarters in this fortress. KÆLAT includes a considerable spot of ground, the natural situation of which, with the assistance of some art, has rendered it almost inaccessible. He continued there for several months, levying contributions. The success of this enterprize was the more grateful to him, as this place was not far distant from that of his birth: his poor relations and friends in the neighbourhood were relieved by his bounty, and the humanity with which he treated most of the inhabitants of the adjacent country, induced numbers to enlist themselves in his troops; so that from this time he in some measure appeared as an independent sovereign, especially as SHAH TÆHMAS's authority was not acknowledged at MESCHED, MELUCK MAGHMUD, an ABDOLLEE chief, having got possession of that city.

NADIR being thus become formidable, carried his views beyond the plunder of defenceless peasants: he aspired at the delivery of his country from her foreign enemies, particularly the AFGHANS, who had lorded it over the PERSIANS with the utmost barbarity for five years: but altho' he appeared as a sovereign, he did not pretend to wage war against the AFGHANS in any other name than that of SHAH TÆHMAS. As he was conscious that the SHAH must have greatly repented his killing his uncle, under pretence of accepting the royal pardon, he resolved to do some signal action in behalf of the king, that might obliterate the remembrance of his conduct at KÆLAT.

With this view he prepared for an expedition against the AFGHANS, who were masters of the neighbouring city NICHABUR<sup>y</sup>, where they had a garrison of above 3000 men. NADIR's forces exceeded this number, but being unaccustomed to sieges, and desirous of action in the field, he determined to make use of a stratagem to draw the enemy out of their garrison: the AFGHANS, who considered NADIR rather as a free-booter, than the general of a formidable body of forces, apprehended no great danger from his neighbourhood. Their troops, to the number of 600, were securely marauding, when NADIR detached about that number of

<sup>y</sup> NICHABUR, sometimes called IRAN, was formerly the capital of KHORASAN, till ABAS the GREAT established the tomb of IMAM KOULI RIZA at MESCHED.



of his cavalry, who attacked them unexpectedly, and cut them to pieces: upon this, the governor with his whole garrison issued forth to fall upon the PERSIANS, who immediately retreated towards BANRAHAD, a defile in the mountains, which separates the provinces of KHORASAN and ASTRABAD; this was the rendezvous appointed. The AFGHANS pursued them for several leagues<sup>z</sup>, till they came to this defile: NADIR, in the interim, marched with 1500 of his men, and under the favour of a wood, which covers these mountains, he concealed his men at the entrance of the pass. The AFGHANS, not suspecting any other enemy to be near, followed the 600 men with an impatience of resenting the loss they had just sustained at NICHABUR. As soon as they had well entered the defile, which is very narrow, the 600 PERSIANS faced about, whilst NADIR with his body of 1500 men, fell upon them in rear, with such impetuosity, that the astonished AFGHANS incapable of acting with their cavalry, and suspecting themselves surrounded by a great army, became an easy prey, and few of them escaped the slaughter.

After dividing the spoil taken upon this occasion, NADIR returned to NICHABUR, the gates of which were opened to him: he took possession of it in the name of SHAH TÄHMÄS, charging his troops not to injure any of the inhabitants, declaring that his intentions were to deliver them from the tyranny and usurpation of the AFGHANS, and to support them in their fidelity to their true sovereign; as he knew that necessity only had induced them to submit to their late masters. The effects belonging to the AFGHANS he divided among his soldiers; and the humanity with which he treated the inhabitants, was so remarkable, that without forcing a single person to join him, he obtained a reinforcement of near 1000 men.

<sup>z</sup> The entrance of this defile is about eight or ten leagues distance from NICHABUR.

## C H A P. III.

NADIR KOULI bears of the distress of SHAH TÆHMAS at FARABAD; desires his pardon, and obtains it. He joins his forces with those under the command of FATEY ALI KHAN, whom he afterwards kills, and acquires the sole command of the army. He conducts SHAH TÆHMAS to NICHABUR, and from thence to MESCHED. SHAH TÆHMAS's devotion in that city.

1727.

WHILST NADIR was preparing at NICHABUR for new expeditions, he received intelligence that SHAH TÆHMAS was reduced to great extremities. This prince had been pent up in MAZANDERAN, as a kind of dependant on FATEY ALI KHAN KHAJAR<sup>a</sup>, who had during the troubles taken possession of that province, which being fortified by the mountains that surround it, the inhabitants refused to submit to the dominion of the AFGHANS. TÆHMAS in the mean while treated with the TURKS and the RUSSIANS, but he was so far from receiving succours from either, that they had divided great part of his dominions, as already mentioned: he was therefore obliged to take up his quarters at FARABAD<sup>b</sup>; from whence, in case of danger to his person, he could embark on the CASPIAN SEA. These circumstances were favourable to NADIR, who made no doubt of procuring a full pardon for all his offences: this he had the more reason to expect, as his last action against the AFGHANS had increased his military reputation, and made him considered, in some measure, as the instrument of providence for the delivery of his country. Having therefore caused his forces to advance to the confines of MAZANDERAN, he sent to acquaint the SHAH of the affair at NICHABUR, and that himself and his troops were entirely at his majesty's service; adding, that he desired to have the honour of waiting upon the king, to whom he would give an account of the reasons of his conduct at the fortress of KÆLAT, which he held at the king's orders. Tho' TÆHMAS had received impressions much to the disadvantage of NADIR, proposals of this nature seemed to  
promise

<sup>a</sup> This KHAN was a native of ASTRABAD, whose inhabitants, as I have explained in Vol. I. page 302, are distinguished by the name of KHAJARS.      <sup>b</sup> This is the place mentioned in Vol. I. page 209.



promise some happy event, and were highly satisfactory; he therefore made answer, that NADIR might come with all security, and should be received as his faithful servant. Accordingly NADIR, leaving his troops at some distance, set out with an escort of 100 cavalry for FARABAD. 1727.

FATEY ALI KHAN KHAJAR<sup>c</sup> having, as already mentioned, taken possession of the province of MAZANDERAN, as also of ASTRABAD, headed a strong party of KHAJARS, who are a very warlike people. TÆHMAS sent a body of forces against him, whom the KHAJARS repulsed: but upon the king's taking a solemn oath to pardon them all, and that he would never, upon any consideration, touch the life of FATEY ALI KHAN KHAJAR, but always treat him as a faithful servant; the KHAN on his part swore allegiance, and the KHAJARS, who were naturally attached to the SEFFIE family, became the only safe-guard of the king: they even engaged, that as soon as a favourable opportunity should offer, they would recover MESCHED out of the hands of the rebel MELUCK MAGHMUD. For this purpose FATEY ALI KHAN had recommended NADIR to the king, as a very gallant officer, and one whose assistance was much to be desired; he therefore received NADIR with open arms, and offered his service to introduce him to his majesty. NADIR's escort made but a contemptible figure with regard to their apparel and accoutrements, their merit consisting only in their strength and valour. He saw that the KHAN was treated with the respect of a sovereign prince, whilst TÆHMAS had only the name of such; and tho' he naturally considered his own merit as much superior to that of the KHAN, yet, not to appear his rival, he affected great humility, and would not even sit in the KHAN's presence without great importunity.

NADIR being introduced to SHAH TÆHMAS, acknowledged the great obligations he was under to his majesty for the free pardon which had been granted him; that however strange his conduct might appear, the death of his uncle was so far from being a contempt of the royal clemency, that it ought to be considered as an expression of his gratitude to the king; for that the castle of KÆLAT was now at his majesty's command, which  
he

<sup>c</sup> This is the father of MAHOMMED HASSAN, by whom I was robbed in 1744, of whose conduct there is an ample account in Vol. I. Page 301.

1727. he had very good reason to believe it would not have been, had his uncle remained in possession of it. He then related the affair of NICHABUR, in which he made it evident, that he had given such a shock to the power of the AFGHANS in those parts, that it would very much facilitate the conquest of HERAT; and that he did not doubt but in a short time FATEY ALI KHAN KHAJAR and himself should restore the kingdom to their majesties, the true descendants of the SEFFIES, whom those savage invaders the AFGHANS had so highly injured.

This discourse was uttered in so respectful manner, mixed with so noble a boldness, that the SHAH could not but express his satisfaction, and told him, he hoped the hour would come, when he should be able to reward his services in a manner suitable to his great merit. NADIR then obtained a pardon for SEF O DIN BEG and all his followers, telling his majesty, that tho' he could not commend the appearance of his troops, he would answer for their experience, valour, and fidelity to their true sovereign.

Matters being thus adjusted to the mutual satisfaction of the SHAH and his new general NADIR, his troops, which now consisted of 4 or 5000 men, were ordered to enter the province of MAZANDERAN, and to join those of FATEY ALI KHAN KHAJAR, so that the whole constituted an army of above 8000 men. NADIR made it his study to cultivate a good correspondence with the KHAN, and by his humble deportment insinuated himself so much, that there seemed to be no jealousy entertained of him; whilst the superior genius which he demonstrated, gave him an apparent ascendancy in the esteem of the SHAH.

In the interim NADIR, whose ambition could not bear an equal, much less a superior, had secretly instigated his creatures to complain of the conduct of the KHAN, with respect to the good order and payment of the troops, and the extravagant price of their cloathing. He also watched the KHAN very closely, and finding the king had already received impressions to the disadvantage of this general, he took a favourable opportunity of acquainting his majesty, that he had discovered a treacherous correspondence between the KHAN, and MELUCK MAGHMUD the rebel-  
governor



governor of MESCHED ; and that, under pretence of conducting the SHAH to the conquest of that city, as had been concerted, his intentions were to deliver him to MELUCK MAGHMUD, on condition, that whilst the latter was to continue master of that city, together with the whole province, which their joint forces were to subdue, the KHAN should remain in possession of the southern coast of the CASPIAN sea ; and as a proof of what he advanced, he produced letters of the KHAN, which he pretended to have intercepted. 1727.

It seemed improbable that the KHAN should really have held such a correspondency, after having had TÆHMAS in his hands for some time ; nor is it believed, that any change of circumstances induced him to take such desperate measures : however, it was not the fortune of TÆHMAS to be much wiser than his father HUSSEIN ; and he gave the easier credit to the report, as he recollected that the KHAN had been in arms against him not long before ; and that NADIR, who had given such repeated proofs of his fidelity, could have no interest in deceiving him, to the ruin of that very man, who had so lately made a point of recommending him to his favour. NADIR affected a great concern, representing to the SHAH, that his duty to his sovereign was prior to all other considerations ; and moreover, that it was impossible his majesty could, with any consistency, entertain hopes of recovering his dominions, whilst he cherished a serpent in his bosom, and trusted himself in the hands of men devoid of fidelity.

TÆHMAS, at length, believing the fact, was much perplexed with regard to the oath he had taken, never to hurt, much less to touch the life of, FATEY ALI KHAN. To which NADIR replied ; “ If your majesty has taken an oath, I have not ;” and thus, by a tacit consent, the ruin of the KHAN was resolved. This general, not suspecting such an intrigue against his life, came to court as usual ; when NADIR ordered a colonel<sup>d</sup>, who was one of his creatures, to take an opportunity of killing him : but so great was the reputation of the KHAN, and his presence so majestic, that the colonel was so much awed, that he put this business

on

<sup>d</sup> This was the person whom I have mentioned in Vol. I. page 308.

1727. on his servant. NADIR having thus executed this pretended service to his master, carried out the head on a spear, and presented it to the soldiers, declaring the reason of the KHAN'S death, and that those who meant to be faithful to their sovereign, could not disapprove of the death of a traitor: that for his own part, he was resolved to sacrifice all the considerations of friendship and private interest, to the good of his country, and the restoration of his majesty to his dominions. These declarations, in some measure, satisfied those who were most attached to the deceased; some who affected to murmur, as if there had been foul play, and that the KHAN had been cut off through the intrigues of NADIR and his creatures, were seized and confined.

1728. NADIR having thus removed the bar to his ambition, as a reward for this signal service was constituted a KHAN<sup>e</sup>, and had the command of the whole army given him: he now began to display all the talents of an able minister and a great general, so that TÆHMAS trusted entirely to his conduct. He was a master of the art of improving advantages, and knew that his security, as well as the future advancement of his fortune, depended on that army, of which he was now the chief. As one of his peculiar characteristics was a piercing knowledge of men; he soon resolved which officers to discharge, and whom to put in their place: he gained the affections of the common soldiers by an unwearied attention to every circumstance that could tend to the promotion of their interest, particularly with regard to their being paid punctually, and buying their cloaths at an easy price. His first care was to engage his master to march his army into KHORASAN, where he assured him the inhabitants were ready to take up arms against the common enemy.

The proper measures being taken to secure the pass of BANRAHAD, the army marched towards NICHABUR, the king himself commanding in person. TÆHMAS made his entrance there the 15th of MAY; on which occasion the inhabitants proclaimed their joy in the sincerest manner. Their wishes seemed to presage his restoration, which they were the more inclined to believe, from the pleasure they received in being the first city that was relieved

<sup>e</sup> This made him NADIR KOULI KHAN, but we do not find him called by that name, because he soon afterwards was honoured with the name of the SHAH, and was called TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN.



lieved from the yoke of the AFGHANS, at a time when they least expected so happy an event. It was an accession to their joy, that this revolution was brought about by a person whom they had considered only as a robber, and whose power as such they dreaded equally with that of the AFGHANS; but who was now verifying the assurances he had given them a few months before, that he meant to restore the PERSIAN diadem to the true heir of SHAH SULTAN HUSSEIN. The AFGHANS in those parts, disheartened by the great loss they had suffered in the affair of BANRAHAD, and unable to recruit, retired from the neighbourhood of NICHABUR, without attempting to succour their ally MELUCK MAGHMUD, governor of MESCHED.

Under these circumstances, NADIR found no difficulty to augment the SHAH's army; the anxious wishes of the people, to see themselves free from the yoke of the AFGHANS, and their desire of establishing their lawful sovereign, soon brought a strong reinforcement, so that this general was now at the head of near 18,000 men, a larger army than had for a long time appeared in those parts.

NADIR was impatient under every unnecessary delay, and prepared immediately to march with all his forces against the ABDOLLEES, who under the command of MELUCK MAGHMUD, had taken possession of MESCHED: they no sooner heard of the defeat of the AFGHANS in the defile of BANRAHAD, and that SHAH TÆHMAS had entered KHORASAN with a numerous army, than they began to prepare for a defence. But MESCHED being a place of little or no strength, and the inhabitants intirely averse to the rebel government, they retired from that city; so that when NADIR arrived there with his troops, the SHAH made a triumphant entrance, without effusion of blood. The citizens, delivered from oppression, received TÆHMAS with the highest demonstrations of joy; and NADIR, who was personally known in that city, where BABULU KHAN had some years before treated him with great indignity, was now loaded with honours. The present situation of TÆHMAS's affairs, rendered him incapable of making his acknowledgments to NADIR in a pecuniary way; yet he was in the highest degree prodigal of his authority, as if he already meant to constitute him his sovereign, rather than his general. And as the



1728. highest mark of dignity which he could confer on him, according to the custom of the PERSIAN kings, was to give him his own name, from hence forward he ordered him to be called TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN<sup>f</sup>; by which name we shall distinguish him, till he wrested the diadem from his master.

TÆHMAS thus lavish of his favours, may be supposed to have acted upon principles of gratitude, as men of probity are generally inclined to think this a duty; but where the expression of this virtue is also an honour conferred on him who receives it, nothing can be more reasonable, than to expect a suitable return. However, he seemed to be ignorant, that when princes have nothing left to bestow, they seldom receive any return for those favours they have already conferred; nor is it strange that it should so happen with regard to princes, when we find it so almost every day in common life.

This prince, who partook much of the genius of his father, with regard to the religious turn of his mind, rejoiced at so favourable an opportunity of paying his devotion at the tomb of IMAM<sup>g</sup> RIZA; for it had been long observed as a duty of the kings of PERSIA<sup>h</sup>, to make a pilgrimage once in their life-time to this tomb, as the TURKS do to MECCA and MEDINA. And the perils which he had gone through since the battle of GULNABAD, with his providential restoration, by means of his general TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN, naturally inspired his mind with a deeper sense of gratitude to heaven.

## P A R T

<sup>f</sup> Some authors mention this event after the battle of DAMGOON the next year; but it is probable that he might now have a double motive besides that of gratitude, as generosity, or policy, to make his name known in that of the general; which, if we judge from the event, was however a very false policy.

<sup>g</sup> One of their prophets or chief expounders of their religion. <sup>h</sup> SHAH ABAS the GREAT, who was an able politician, as well as a great soldier, observing that the PERSIANS carried great wealth out of his country every year in their pilgrimages to MAHOMMED's tomb, employed all his art to restore the reputation of IMAM RIZA; and not only discredited the notion of going out of their own country upon so long a journey, which in some measure was interdicting these pilgrimages, but knowing that his people had, as is indeed common among christians, a fond inclination to ascribe a more peculiar sanctity to some particular place; in order to shew them an example, he caused a very magnificent mosque to be built on the tomb of this prophet at MESCHED, and made the pilgrimage himself with all his court. By thus shewing an example, MESCHED became a place of great resort, and journeys to ARABIA were out of fashion. The kings his successors made it a law to themselves, to begin their reign by a pilgrimage to this tomb; and in process of time, it was very rare for any PERSIAN of the sect of ALI to make the pilgrimage of MECCA or MEDINA.



## P A R T II.

FROM THE

RECOVERY OF THE WHOLE PROVINCE OF  
KHORASAN IN 1728,

TO THE

EXPULSION OF SULTAN ASHREFF OUT OF  
ISFAHAN IN 1729.

## C H A P. IV.

TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN *reduces* KHORASAN and HERAT. *He returns in triumph* to MESCHED, *with the head of the governor of* HERAT. SHAH TÆHMAS *sends an embassador to the* OTTOMAN court. *The* TURKS *send* SULIMAN EFFENDI *into* PERSIA. ASHREFF *destroys* SAÏD ACHMED KHAN *governor of* KHERMAN, *and prepares to attack* TÆHMAS SHAH. ASHREFF *marches to* DAMGOON, *and is defeated; he retreats to* ISFAHAN, *and encamps his troops at* MOÛRTCHAKHOR.

WHILST TÆHMAS SHAH was offering up his prayers to the deity, TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN presented incense to his idols of ambition and military glory, the only deities he seemed to reverence. Reasons of policy might justly induce TÆHMAS SHAH to remain in MESCHED, till his army should be in a condition to march towards ISFAHAN: and it was natural for his general TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN, to recommend this step, as it left him at liberty to act with the more boundless authority in the army. The country of KHORASAN was well known to him in every part, in consequence of the many excursions he had made, as an officer in the army, as well as the chief of a band of robbers. The  
beginning

1728.

1728. beginning of this year he marched at the head of a considerable body of forces, to reduce the other cities and towns of the province, which had revolted, and established an independent government, or submitted to the AFGHANS.

The news of SHAH TÆHMAS having entered MESCHED in triumph, where he now took up his residence, facilitated the enterprizes of TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN; so that the greatest part of the towns and villages sent deputations, and professed themselves entirely devoted to the interest of their lawful sovereign. Before this year was ended, we find all the vast country of KHORASAN subjected, and the AFGHANS obliged to retire, without daring to give battle. NADIR returned to MESCHED, not so much out of inclination, as to make an appearance of respect for his master, and to consult about the future operations of the war.

It was about ten years since the inhabitants of HERAT, which is near the frontiers of KHORASAN, had in consequence of the victory obtained by the young EZADALLAH, shaken off the PERSIAN yoke, and erected themselves into a kind of republic<sup>i</sup>, together with the whole province of that name. It does not appear, that this young usurper yet remained in that government, which he had been the great instrument of forming, tho' he had for some time maintained the chief office in it. It is certain, however, that this republic became formidable to the neighbouring country, and was at this very time meditating the invasion of KHORASAN: but the success which TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN had against the AFGHANS at NICHABÛR, and afterwards through the whole province of KHORASAN, put a bar to the execution of their project.

TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN having represented to the SHAH, the facility with which he could reduce HERAT, obtained a permission to march to that province, with about 12000 men: he no sooner encamped under the walls of the city, than the inhabitants naturally inconstant, and diffident of their ability to oppose the fortune and valour of TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN, submitted to him, and delivered up their chief, together with the garrison.

<sup>i</sup> It is presumed, as they were in alliance with the AFGHANS, whose seat of empire was ISFAHAN, and that the ABDOLLEES of HERAT were in some measure tributary to them.



garrison<sup>k</sup>. The PERSIAN general having caused the former to be beheaded, left a garrison in HERAT; he treated the inhabitants with so judicious a mixture of mildness and severity, according to their different circumstances, that he seemed to have secured their allegiance; he then prepared to march back to MESCHED, agreeably to the orders he had received from the SHAH. Being returned victorious, with the head of the late governor of HERAT, he began to form a more important enterprize, than that of marching southward through the deserts of SEGESTAN, as the AFGHANS had done five years before. 1728.

In order to detach the TURKS from the interest of ASHREFF, whom they had with great reluctance acknowledged as sovereign of PERSIA; TÆHMAS had in the mean time sent an embassador to the OTTOMAN court. This minister was received with more regard than he expected; for the news of TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN's exploits having reached CONSTANTINOPLE, gave the TURKS a good impression of the state of the affairs of SHAH TÆHMAS. Tho' their interest was concerned to see PERSIA humbled, yet they did not much incline to support an usurper, whose imperious spirit had carried him so far as to pretend to an equality with the grand seignior. But in order to be informed more minutely of circumstances so interesting to them, they sent SULIMAN EFFENDI, an officer of trust, into PERSIA; of whom they soon learnt, that TÆHMAS already master of KHORASAN and HERAT, with a considerable army of choice troops, and a general of great reputation at their head, seemed to promise an approaching change in the PERSIAN empire.

In the mean time ASHREFF, after giving a check to a TURKISH army, tho' it was the effect of accident rather than military strength, dreaded no evil from the fugitive TÆHMAS: he often mentioned him in terms so contemptuous, that to appearance he had persuaded himself of the impossibility of being molested by him. 1729.

After a tedious siege, he had at length made himself master of YEZD, which at different times had cost the AFGHANS much blood; KHERMANIA

<sup>k</sup> This action has been represented as a battle, in which the ABBOLLEES had 30,000 men; but I could never find any authority for that report, as a fourth part of that number in such a province would be considered a great army, under such distressed circumstances as the empire was then in.

1729. NIA had also submitted to him. SAID ACHMED KHAN, who was a near relation of the royal blood of the SHEFFIES, during the troubles had established an independant sovereignty in KHERMANIA, of which ASHREFF had not leisure to dispossess him by force of arms; but SAID being in want of money to pay an army, and the impoverished state of the province making it impossible to raise sufficient contributions for that purpose, his forces at length deserted him. He then submitted to ASHREFF, who was not only the nearest potentate, but the only one who seemed to have any regal authority: desiring him, however, to remember that he had only acted upon the same principles as ASHREFF himself, and therefore hoped to be received with the respect due to his quality, and with all security to his person; upon condition of which he professed an entire devotion to the service of this AFGHAN prince.

ASHREFF promised the KHAN his protection, under the sanction of sacred oaths, and let him know that he might repair to SHIRASS, with the people under his command, in all possible security: but no sooner was he arrived there, than the governor sent him prisoner to ISFAHAN, where he was beheaded. The province of KHERMANIA, and the country on the sea coast quite to BENDER ABASSI, thus becoming subject to ASHREFF, his dominions were extended farther than he had forces to guard them; for the cruelties and depredations committed from the AFGHAN invasion till this time, having impoverished the inhabitants to an extreme degree, he was in no capacity to maintain an army sufficiently numerous to support his authority over so vast a tract of country. As to the PERSIAN soldiers, they were as reluctant to enter into the service of the AFGHANS, as the AFGHANS were diffident of their fidelity; and from KANDAHAR recruits could hardly be expected in great numbers; for HUSSEIN KHAN, the governor of that province, since the murder of his brother MIR MAGHMUD in ISFAHAN, considered ASHREFF rather as an enemy than a friend; and presuming that he might shortly be driven out of PERSIA, he would hardly send him recruits, lest by that means he might retire into KANDAHAR, and with the same authority that he put MAGHMUD to death, claim the sovereignty of that province.



Spiritual and temporal power being interwoven in the closest manner by the MAHOMMEDAN law, the grand signior is supposed to reign over the TURKS in quality of IMAM<sup>1</sup>, and successor of the Caliphs. From hence he claims an authority over all MAHOMMEDANS of the sect of the SUNNIS, so that ASHREFF, who was of that sect, could not with any consistency refuse to acknowledge him as such, without affecting an independent power. However, he artfully contrived to make his submission procure him what was more essential; for he obtained from the TURKS the acknowledgement of his being sovereign of PERSIA, and of his holding that dignity and power according to law: and having thus made a puissant protector of a formidable enemy, he lulled himself into a security, as if his dominion was built on the most solid basis. He had given RECHID BASHA, the TURKISH ambassador, the kindest reception, and shewed him many marks of honour, during his residence at ISFAHAN.

Not to be wanting in a suitable return, the TURKS made great preparations for the reception of the ambassador of ASHREFF, who arrived at CONSTANTINOPLE in JULY this year. Greater rejoicings could not have been made for the reception of a sovereign prince returning in triumph. It is however very remarkable, that this AFGHAN affected a contempt of all the grand appearances, the military shews, and the roaring of cannon; for without looking on one side or the other, as he entered CONSTANTINOPLE, he continued to read his khoran. It is natural to presume from this incident, that he endeavoured to raise the reputation of his countrymen for great sanctity, and a divine zeal for the MAHOMMEDAN law, as practised by the TURKS: this sort of conduct had been the chief cause, a short time before, of saving his master ASHREFF, together with the AFGHAN army, from destruction; but the ambassador now over-acted his part, and gave the TURKS impressions to the disadvantage of his nation.

ASHREFF in the mean while enjoyed the sweets of peace. The love of pleasure is natural to mankind, and freedom from toil is generally supposed the best means to arrive at it. This prince was certainly a man of

<sup>1</sup> Chief of religion.

1729. of parts, very circumspect, and an intrepid foldier: but like most other ORIENTAL warriors of diftinction, he had no fenfe of any moral obligation. He feemed now to be arrived at the higheft point that the nature of his affairs would admit; and therefore it was natural to give fome indulgence to his favourite paffions. However he kept part of his troops in the field, whilft he followed the exercifes of hunting, and gratified his inclination in building. As to the pleasures of women, they are but an ordinary confequence of MAHOMMEDAN voluptuousnefs, efpecially when it is fupported by an unlimited authority.

This prince, who had hitherto confidered NADIR KOULI in no other light than as a robber, began now to look upon him as a formidable enemy. SHAH TÆHMAS had been fo much the ridicule of the court of ISFAHAN, that the news of his fucceffes in the eastern parts of the empire did not feem to give the leaft alarm to the foldiers, nor even to the officers of the army. They gave him the name of SEK ZADE, in allufion to the word CHEIK<sup>m</sup> ZADE, the latter being fon of the king, and the former fon of a bitch: at the fame time they expreffed great fatisfaction, that they fhould at length have an opportunity of getting him into their hands. However proper it might be to encourage the common foldiers to think thus contemptibly of their enemy; ASHREFF, who had certain intelligence of his force, and the valour of his troops, thought it high time to provide for the ftorm that threatened him: he therefore caufed all the forces, as well thofe on the frontiers, as in the heart of his dominions, to be joined to the garrifon of ISFAHAN. And in order to prevent any infurrection in favour of TÆHMAS at CASHAN, KOOM, CASBIN, TÆHIRAN, YEZD, and other great cities and towns in his jurifdiction, he ordered all the PERSIAN inhabitants, who were capable of bearing arms, to leave their habitations and retire, under pain of death: he did the fame at ISFAHAN.

Having made this difpofition, his whole force did not exceed 30,000 men, fome of which were DARGUZZIS<sup>a</sup> and HASSARAI<sup>o</sup>; a force, however, not much inferior to that by which his predeceffor had obtained the

PERSIAN

<sup>m</sup> CHEIK EIDAR was the firft founder of the SEFFIE dynasty.  
of DERGHESIN in the neighbourhood of HAMADAN.  
from the eastern parts of CABUL.

<sup>a</sup> I perfume, the inhabitants  
<sup>o</sup> Thefe people are fupposed to come



PERSIAN diadem. About the beginning of SEPTEMBER, he encamped his army without the walls of ISFAHAN; in which city he left 200 of his men in garrison, thinking that small number sufficient to keep this once vast capital in awe: for so miserably was this unhappy city reduced, by the incessant massacres committed by MAGHMUD and himself, that few of its inhabitants were left, except old men, women, and children. In a few days he began his march, with the ordinary pomp of a PERSIAN king. He directed his course by CASHAN and KOOM, to the plains of DAMGOON, in the province of COUMAS; where he arrived towards the close of the month, after having marched about 400 miles°. His intention was to have proceeded towards KHORASAN, and by attacking TÆHMAS in his new-established empire, prevent his accumulating more strength.

TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN had employed the greatest part of this year in augmenting and disciplining his troops. In the former he met with some difficulties, for the people not having yet worn off the impressions, which the valour of the AFGHANS had made on them, and knowing that they were to come to action immediately, joined him but slowly. He had, however, collected an army of near 25000<sup>P</sup> men; in the compleating, as well as disciplining of which, he had given such proofs of his abilities, as inspired his master with the greatest assurance of success. The measures which ASHREFF had taken, to prevent any revolt in favour of TÆHMAS, had occasioned many to offer their service to this prince; for as they had been turned out of their habitations, resentment as well as necessity, carried them where they were sure of being received.

The SHAH, thus upon the point of being restored to the throne of his ancestors, and urged by an impatient desire to revenge the disgrace of his father, and the blood of so many thousands of his subjects, had proposed to march to ISFAHAN, and compel ASHREFF to give him battle; but this design was laid aside. His sagacious general represented to him, the inconveniencies that would attend the length of the march; and moreover, that the measures which ASHREFF had taken at ISFAHAN, were certain

D 2

indications

° When I write miles without distinction, I mean ENGLISH miles.  
them much under this number, and some much above it.

<sup>P</sup> Some writers make

1729. indications that he meant to seek his majesty; and consequently, that the AFGHANS would be more hurt by the fatigue of their march, than benefited by the junction of fresh forces, seeing that ASHREFF had already collected all in whom he thought it safe to confide; he observed likewise, that the further he came from ISFAHAN, the more difficult and the more dangerous would be his retreat. However, not to bring the war into KHORASAN, nor lose any advantages which his majesty's faithful subjects the KHAJARS, BAYOTS, or any of the neighbouring countries might afford, it was determined to make some advance to meet ASHREFF. After slow marches, he accordingly arrived with the king, and the whole army, near the city of DAMGOON, before ASHREFF had entered those plains. This situation was not far from that vast ridge of mountains, which run eastward along the south coast of the CASPIAN SEA, which being well known to KOULI KHAN, in case of an extremity he could make a safe retreat. Having leisure to chuse his ground, he had already encamped his forces, and refreshed his men for some days, when ASHREFF approached with his whole army.

The AFGHANS had been accustomed for some time to slaughter the PERSIANS, rather than to engage with them; and to put them to flight by their shouts, and the fierceness of their attack, rather than by their superior strength and knowledge of arms. As they were now equally confident of victory, they urged their general to begin the attack. ASHREFF however soon discovered from the advantageous situation of the PERSIAN army, that he had to do with a general of experience, and against whom he must proceed with great caution, especially as his fate seemed to depend on the issue of the battle. Whilst he was thus unresolved, his officers represented to him, that upon the first report which should be spread of their being afraid to attack the PERSIANS, the peasants would no longer bring provisions to their camp, and that they should be compelled to fight hereafter at a greater disadvantage.

ASHREFF having therefore made a proper disposition of his forces, on the 2d of OCTOBER attacked the PERSIAN army with that impetuosity, which the AFGHANS had generally found successful. The PERSIAN  
troops



troops stood the shock, without giving way in the least, returning their fire with perfect order, so that the AFGHANS could make no impression on them. ASHREFF surprized, tho' not disconcerted, at the discipline and silence of the PERSIAN troops, brought off his squadrons from the charge, and had recourse to the expedient which he found of great use in his late action against the TURKS. He detached two bodies, each of 3000 men, commanded by the most experienced officers in his army, and ordered them to take a circuit, and charge the enemy in rear and flank, whilst he attacked them in front. TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN, watchful in every quarter, prepared to receive the enemy; and repulsed them with such valour, as flung them into great confusion. After a general discharge of his artillery, it was his turn to attack; and falling furiously upon the AFGHANS, he obtained an easy victory.

What loss was sustained on each side is uncertain. It may be presumed that of the AFGHANS was very considerable<sup>P</sup>: their camels, harquebusses, with all their tents and baggage, fell into the hands of the conqueror. The AFGHANS fled to TÆHIRAN, which they reached in about two days, tho' the distance is near 200 miles; from whence, after pillaging the inhabitants, and refreshing themselves, they made forced marches to ISFAHAN.

The day after the arrival of the AFGHAN army, ASHREFF commanded all the people of his nation, inhabiting that city, to retire with their effects into the citadel<sup>Q</sup>: these orders were executed in such a tumultuous manner, that it appeared as if the city had been taken by assault: the AFGHANS drove the other inhabitants from their houses, destroying most of their effects which were not portable, and pillaging the shops of every thing that was valuable. After which, ASHREFF retired with his troops to MOURTCHAKHOR<sup>R</sup>, where he encamped in an advantageous situation.

<sup>P</sup> As they carried off only 12,000 men from ISFAHAN, their loss here must have been near 10,000.

<sup>Q</sup> An inclosed building, which had been made since the invasion of the AFGHANS.

<sup>R</sup> This place is about 25 miles eastward of ISFAHAN, according to report; but DELISLE does not mention it in his map.

## C H A P. V.

TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN engages the SHAH to remain at TEHIRAN. The battle of MOURTCHAKHOR. ASHREFF murders SHAH HUSSEIN, and flies from ISFAHAN. The city taken by the PERSIAN army. The PERSIANS revenge themselves on the AFGHANS. SHAH TÆHMAS enters ISFAHAN, and gives his general TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN, the power of raising money.

1729. **T**ÆHMAS KOULI KHAN, now jealous of his glory, proceeded with the utmost care, to prevent a reverse of his fortune. The SHAH, thinking himself secure of victory over the fugitive AFGHANS, impatiently desired to see ISFAHAN. TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN, on the other hand, seemed to act as if he was apprehensive, that his sovereign would come in for too great a share in the reputation of his victories, and that his soldiers would consider themselves as acting rather under their king, than under their general. This neither consisted with his desire of independency in the command of the army; nor with his ambition and thirst of applause. He therefore took occasion to represent to the SHAH, that his majesty's presence was no longer necessary to encourage his troops, since it was evident from their superiority at DAMGOON, that the enemy was rather to be despised than feared; and he did not make the least doubt, that he should soon exterminate them; that so much depended on the precious life of their sovereign, that should any misfortune happen to him, his subjects could have no security of being relieved from the tyrannic yoke of the AFGHANS; that the courage which his majesty demonstrated, at the same time that it engaged the love and admiration of his subjects, made them more anxious for the preservation of a life, of such inestimable value; that this was the sense of the army in general, which humbly intreated him to remain at TÆHIRAN, with a guard of six or eight thousand men.

These reasons made an impression upon the SHAH; he had an entire confidence in his general, and therefore suffered him to gather those laurels, which



which he might indeed have justly claimed as deliverer of his country, had he acted upon honest principles. He accordingly marched without obstruction, proclaiming his victory in the name of SHAH TÆHMAS, and was every where received with acclamations of joy. He soon found his troops considerably augmented by crowds, who now voluntarily offered their service, to give a finishing stroke to the ruin of the AFGHANS. 1729.

In the mean time, ASHREFF, expecting to be attacked, had made every preparation necessary to receive the enemy: not only his sovereignty, but his life depended on the event. In the flattering hopes of repairing his loss at DAMGOON, he exerted all his skill in the choice of a proper situation for his camp; in erecting batteries for his cannon; in covering them by intrenchments; and making the most advantageous disposition of his troops.

The 13th of NOVEMBER, early in the morning, TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN appeared with his army in order of battle: the PERSIANS marched up to the AFGHANS, and sustained the whole force of their musquetry, and part of their cannon, without disorder. Being come close to the enemy, they, in their turn, gave a general discharge. So regular and intrepid an attack, might have disconcerted troops enured to the severest discipline. The astonished AFGHANS seeing such numbers fall, that hardly a single bullet failed of execution<sup>s</sup>, thought only of saving their lives by flying precipitately from the field of battle. The loss they sustained on this occasion, was not less than 4000 men. The greatest part of the AFGHANS who fled, reached ISFAHAN by three in the afternoon, and ASHREFF himself, with a small number, returned at night. They pretended to have obtained a victory, but the cries and lamentations of their women and children in the citadel, soon discovered the contrary. There was also great confusion in other parts of the city, infomuch that the miserable inhabitants, remembering the threats of the AFGHANS, in case a misfortune should at any time befall them, expected nothing less than a general massacre. But the panic which had seized the

<sup>s</sup> The PERSIANS are excellent marksmen, and when they keep good order, they take aim, and must necessarily do great execution.

1729. the AFGHANS, diverted them from any such cruel purpose, if they ever intended it.

ASHREFF, however, found time to glut his revenge, by imbruing his hands in the blood of SHAH HUSSEIN. This unfortunate prince, whom MIR MAGHMUD with all his horrid barbarity had spared, at length fell a sacrifice to the disappointment and rage of this cruel AFGHAN. Others of the royal blood are supposed to have fallen also on this occasion; as to the daughters and female relations of HUSSEIN, he took them from the harram, determining to carry them off with him.

The AFGHANS, having now no other expedient, prepared for flight, and were busied in collecting their spoil. Besides the number of beasts of burthen, to accommodate their women and baggage, they loaded several mules, and near 300 camels, mostly with the treasures and rich effects of the royal palace. As soon as night came on they left the city, in number about 12000, after having reigned as conquerors of PERSIA, seven years and twenty one days. ASHREFF perhaps startled with the groans of the dying HUSSEIN, or having his whole mind employed in collecting his treasure, or providing for his own security, had forgotten that the inactivity of the PERSIAN general, afforded an opportunity of glutting his revenge by some more signal cruelty; but he had not marched two leagues, when he sent back his ATHEMAT DOULET, with a chosen party, it was supposed with orders to fire the city, and massacre all those who might come in their way. This party was advanced to the royal gardens, within a mile of ISFAHAN, when some among the common people, concluding they were not come for any good purpose, collected several drums, which they beat in such a manner, that the AFGHANS, apprehensive that the PERSIAN troops had already entered the town, fled back without doing any mischief, and continued their rout towards SHIRASS.

This precipitate retreat having left the capital unguarded, the peasants of the neighbouring country, as well as the inhabitants, began not only to pillage the houses which were abandoned; but also to rob one another: which unbridled licentiousness created an infinite confusion. Two days past under these melancholy circumstances, in which the weak were obliged



to yield to the strong, without any recourse to either civil or military authority. 1729.

The 16th of NOVEMBER, TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN detached a body of 1500 men, to disperse the mob, and take possession of the royal palace, and gates of the city, in order to his own entrance. It may seem difficult to account for his not following the AFGHANS, after the battle of MOURTCHAKOR, which might have prevented their carrying off the riches of ISFAHAN: but we are to consider TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN, as unbiaffed by any particular affection for the PERSIANS; that his glory was not arrived to maturity; and that, besides the duty of a general to act cautiously with so artful an enemy as the AFGHANS, if we may judge from his conduct after he arrived at ISFAHAN, it is reasonable to conclude, his design was to husband the war, that his office as generalissimo might not become unnecessary.

As soon as the KHAN entered the city, he took the proper measures for quieting the tumults of the people, occasioned by the pillage already mentioned; and ordered a diligent search for all the AFGHANS, whom necessity or choice had induced to remain there. Of these, numbers had concealed themselves in the houses of their relations or friends, in hopes to elude the search. Many of them were brought into the public places and executed: these were a kind of victims to the souls of thousands, who had been starved to death by the ambitious policy of MAGHMUD, or for the same reasons butchered in cold blood, during the reign of the AFGHANS. It is remarkable however, that TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN pardoned all those, of whom the inhabitants of the city made a fair report, with regard to the humane manner in which they had executed their respective offices. In the interim, he received a deputation from the AFGHANS of CASBIN: these not only offered their allegiance to SHAH TÆHMAS, but also their service as soldiers, and to engage immediately in his army. Such a reinforcement could not but prove agreeable to the PERSIAN general, so that in the name of his master he promised them a kind reception.

1729. The spirit of revenge did not stop with the slaughter of the AFGHANS of ISFAHAN: the people were furious at the sight of every object that could raise in their minds the least remembrance of their past sufferings. MAGHMUD, when he was near his natural death, was taken off by violence as related; yet, as he was the founder of the dominion of the AFGHANS in PERSIA, they had at a considerable expence erected a magnificent mausoleum to his memory. This edifice, according to the custom of the east, was built in a grove, and inclosed with a wall. Tho' this prince had been so inhuman a murderer, yet the superstition of the partners in his victories, induced them to offer their prayers at his tomb. This increased the indignation of the inhabitants of ISFAHAN, and added to their desire of destroying it. Having obtained the permission of the KHAN for this purpose, they levell'd this edifice to the ground, with the fury of an enraged mob; they would not even suffer the repose of his bones; and, to add yet a greater mark of contempt and abhorrence, in the very place on which this mausoleum had been erected, they built a public jakes.

SHAH TÆHMAS, who was still at TÆHIRAN, having received notice of what had passed at ISFAHAN, prepared to take possession of his capital. He marched at the head of the greatest part of the forces which were left with him, and arrived the 9th of DECEMBER following at GAZE, a village about six miles distance from ISFAHAN. Here he was met by his general TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN; whom the SHAH no sooner saw, than he alighted from his horse, as if he meant to pay him homage: the general dismounted also, and ran to him in a respectful manner, to prevent this great mark of condescension; but the SHAH insisted upon walking a few paces with him, declaring that he could not shew too great a distinction to the person who had delivered his country, and driven his enemies from ISFAHAN. After a short conversation he mounted again, preceded by his running footmen<sup>t</sup>; the KHAN following just behind him at the head of his troops.

TÆHMAS now made his entry into ISFAHAN, and was received with all those demonstrations of joy which the sudden change, from the execrable

<sup>t</sup> Shatirs.



crable tyranny of the usurper ASHREFF, to the gentle deportment of their legal sovereign could inspire. The remembrance of his misfortunes added all the tenderness of affectionate subjects, to the religious respect for the person of him who now appeared as the only survivor of the SEFFIE family. But the transports of his joy were in a great measure suppressed, when he heard of the fate of the king his father, and saw the palace, which eight years before contained all the splendor of a court, exhibiting only naked walls; the remembrance that he was restored to the throne of his ancestors, was not sufficient to silence the dictates of humanity, in a breast formed to gentle impressions; and tho' a king, he was not ashamed to weep. As soon as he entered the harram, an old woman threw her arms about his neck in great transports of joy; as he knew that ASHREFF had carried away his sisters and other relations, he was the more surprized to find this person to be his mother. This lady had, ever since the invasion of the AFGHANS, disguised herself in the habit of a slave, and submitted to all the offices of drudgery, which are ordinarily imposed on persons in that situation.

The king, after enjoying the satisfaction to find one of his parents alive, prepared himself for the duties of a sovereign prince. He received all those who appeared before him in so affable and obliging a manner, that he won them entirely to his interest; and though their poverty was very great, they contributed as liberally as possible to the support of the army, which was increased to near 40,000 men. TÆHMAS, whose tenderness of nature became his crime, instead of commanding his general to pursue and extirpate his enemies, gave way to a melancholy turn of thought. TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN took occasion from hence, to represent to him in a respectful manner, that his present situation ought to efface all remembrance of past disgraces; the SHAH replied to this effect: "How  
 " is it possible that my heart should be open to joy; are my own  
 " misfortunes, and those of my people to be forgotten, so long as the  
 " murderers of my father and brothers are yet at SHIRASS, where my  
 " sisters, and other female relations, are held in slavery by the vile AF-  
 " GHANS?" This was, in fact, to reproach TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN for his inactivity; for it was in his breast to have pursued them, without

1729. giving them the least time to form any future project; but this general, true to his own principles, foresaw that the remembrance of his services would wear out of the minds of the people, unless to the office of generalissimo, he could add that of a prime minister, or at least possess a power adequate to it. He therefore took this occasion to represent to the SHAH, that he was very ready to march against the enemy, and finish the business of restoring to his majesty all his dominions; but that he knew an army was not to be kept together without pay; and moreover, he had learnt from the experience of LUTF ALI KHAN, towards the close of the unfortunate reign of his father, that the intrigues of a court often baffle the most glorious military operations; therefore, if his majesty meant to compleat the work which was so happily begun, a power must be granted him to levy money for the payment of the army.

The king, who already designed to give his aunt in marriage to this general, and had actually made him BEGLER BEG of KHORASAN, was startled at his demand of this extraordinary power of levying money; being sensible that such a step was in some measure to yield up the sovereignty. He consulted however with some of the principal officers, if there was any proper person to whom he could give the command of the army. Whether these officers were in the interest of the general or not, they declared their opinion, that the soldiers would not willingly serve under any other person than TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN; and consequently, that it would be best to comply with his demand for the present, and resent his insolence hereafter, when there should not be any such pressing occasion for his services. The KHAN, thus obtaining his point in so important an article, professed an entire devotion to his master's service: as a proof of which, he offered to take the field immediately, and go in search of the AFGHANS. Accordingly before the end of DECEMBER this year, the PERSIAN army began their march towards SHIRASS.



## P A R T III.

FROM THE

TOTAL DEFEAT OF THE AFGHANS IN  
JANUARY 1730,

TILL

TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN IS CHOSEN KING  
IN MARCH 1736.

## C H A P. VI.

ASHREFF *stops at SHIRASS.* TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN *marches and defeats the AFGHANS the 15th of JANUARY 1730. Flight, distress, and death of ASHREFF.* TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN *marches against the TURKS, and takes HAMADAN and TAVRIS; he makes a truce, returns to HERAT, reduces that province, and marches into KHORASAN.* The SHAH *marches to ERIVAN, obtains some advantages over the TURKS, and is afterwards defeated near the ARAS, and again at HAMADAN.*

**A**SHREFF did not entertain the least thoughts, that the active 1729.  
TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN would remain long at ISFAHAN; on the contrary, he expected to be closely pursued. He had, besides his army, a numerous caravan, of which part consisted in camels loaded with the plunder of ISFAHAN; yet the first day he marched sixty miles. His intentions were to have taken the rout of KHERMAN, but hearing that the BALOUCHES were in arms, and concluding they would have no regard to him as a fugitive prince, possessed of great riches, he determined to march to SHIRASS. When he was informed that the PERSIAN army was loitering

1729. loitering in ISFAHAN, he had leisure to plunder and ravage the province, as well as the city; and gave a loose to all that barbarity, which the complicated motives of revenge and avarice can suggest to a mind naturally cruel. To this he was the more induced, by the conduct of the PERSIANS in ISFAHAN towards the AFGHANS.

TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN having supported the rigor of the season with great constancy, after a march of twenty days arrived near ASTAKHAR<sup>u</sup>. His troops had suffered very much by the severity of the season, and want of provisions, the AFGHANS having laid the country waste; so that the PERSIAN general found his army considerably diminished, by mortality and desertion. The AFGHANS having fixed their camp in an advantageous situation, determined to try the fortune of another battle. The PERSIAN troops, on their part, were impatient to give a finishing stroke to the AFGHANS. The 15th of JANUARY, TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN attacked the AFGHANS with all his troops, with the same vigor as he had done at MOURTCHAKOR, and put them instantly to flight; insomuch that he was apprehensive, lest by so feeble a resistance they meant only to draw him into an ambuscade. He had adopted it as a maxim, not to separate his troops; being sensible that when a detachment is routed, their flight often throws a whole army into confusion; and that the speed with which the vanquished fly, is but a precarious security to them, since the conqueror must overtake them at last.

An excess of caution, may bring on the same consequences as rashness: the KHAN's great circumspection, upon this occasion, gave the AFGHANS an opportunity to concert measures for their secure retreat, with all their valuable effects. The houses, gardens, and narrow passages about the city of SHIRASS, were such as rendered the approach difficult; and the KHAN resolved to put nothing to an unnecessary hazard, since it was plain that the pride of the AFGHANS was humbled to the dust.

These people had however taken a resolution, to defend a passage in the north side of the mountains, which leads to the city; and dividing their  
men

<sup>u</sup> This city is near the ruins of the antient PERSEPOLIS.



men into platoons, made several discharges on the PERSIAN army: finding this did not hinder the PERSIANS from marching on in regular order, they fled to SHIRASS. ASHREFF being now reduced to the last extremity, sent two of his principal officers to TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN, with offers of delivering up the princesses, also the treasure and other effects belonging to the crown, on condition that he and his troops should retire out of PERSIA unmolested, and carry with them their families, arms, and baggage. To this the KHAN replied, that he would not comply with such proposals; on the contrary, that if they did not deliver up ASHREFF, he would put all the AFGHANS to the sword. These officers then pretended, that if the KHAN would grant them quarter, they would deliver up their chief: to this no definitive answer was given, but the deputies were permitted to retire.

In the interim ASHREFF, who was not ignorant that he had nothing to expect but a cruel death, if he fell into the hands of the PERSIANS, marched off in the night, and was got to some distance before the KHAN was informed of it. It may be presumed, that it did not give him any great concern that he had missed the recovery of the princesses of the royal blood, however he might be affected with regard to the treasure. In order to facilitate their retreat, the AFGHANS separated into different bodies; it therefore became the more difficult to prevent their flight. The KHAN was not perhaps so much concerned about this, as his army imagined; since every circumstance of his conduct proved that he was in his heart a TARTAR, and more disposed to favour that nation than the natives of PERSIA; and thus we may, in some measure, reconcile a conduct seemingly so contrary to the natural activity of his genius. However, on his arrival at SHIRASS, he caused several of the AFGHANS, whom he found there, to be put to death: those of any distinction he sent prisoners to ISFAHAN with the news of his victory.

Altho' ASHREFF had made a sudden and secret flight, some of the parties, which the KHAN detached after him, overtook the AFGHANS, and a skirmish ensued, but the PERSIANS were obliged to retreat. It is not easy to

1730. figure the difficulties which ASHREFF encountered; his riches serving only to increase his danger: besides the great distress he was in for provision and forage, in the dead of winter, he was perpetually attacked on every side by the peasants, till at length he was obliged to abandon his baggage, and after that to drop all the PERSIAN women and children, whom he was carrying into captivity. Some of his followers, transported with rage and jealousy, killed their women, to prevent their falling into the hands of their enemies.

Under these circumstances, it was impossible for them to keep together in any considerable body: their division gave an opportunity to most of their captives to escape; and among these were the aunt and sister of SHAH TÆHMAS. As soon as these ladies returned to SHIRASS, they were conducted honourably to the court at ISFAHAN, and the former was given to TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN in marriage. Hunger and thirst, cold and fatigue, with incessant skirmishes, having dispersed the AFGHANS; ASHREFF had with him only 200 men, when he was attacked by a body of the BALOUCHES<sup>w</sup>: he made a very gallant defence, but at length he and his people were cut to pieces.

Thus ended the usurpation of the AFGHANS, but not the calamities of PERSIA. The death of ASHREFF was but a prelude to those mischiefs, which NADIR, that scourge of heaven, was to bring on this unhappy country. The weakness of HUSSEIN's reign, had been the first apparent cause, which by a chain of effects could hardly fail to plunge this miserable nation into further misfortunes, not inferior to those it had felt under the cruel AFGHANS.

TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN remained about two months in SHIRASS, and refreshed his army. As soon as the spring approached, he directed his course towards HAMADAN: his name was already so formidable to the  
TURKS,

<sup>w</sup> There are different accounts given concerning the place where this AFGHAN chief ended his life, but as the desert of SEGESTAN was his rout to KANDAHAR, it may be presumed that he was not very far advanced in that country when this event happened.



TURKS, that from his valour and experience, they dreaded the loss of those dominions, which they had conquered during the late troubles in PERSIA. If he was an object of terror to them, his conduct also gave umbrage at the court of ISFAHAN; the ascendancy he had obtained by means of the army under his command, rendered him already too great for a subject.

SHAH TÆHMAS had no sooner made a disposition of his interior government, than he sent an ambassador to the port, to acquaint the grand signior of his re-establishment in the government of the PERSIAN empire; and that he desired to live in perfect amity with the TURKS; demanding, however, the restitution of his dominions, which they had taken during the troubles, and also all the PERSIAN prisoners. The ambassador had hardly opened his commission, when news arrived at CONSTANTINOPLE, that the PERSIAN army had already taken HAMADAN. The TURKISH ministry enraged at this proceeding, declined any further conference. The ambassador declared, that he believed the news was not true, or that those hostilities had been committed contrary to his master's intention, by some rebellious subjects: however, the TURKS resolved immediately to declare war against the PERSIANS, and accordingly made great preparations to carry it on with vigor.

In the mean while, TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN had by his arbitrary proceedings, and the abuse of his authority, rendered his security absolutely inconsistent with peaceable measures; or, indeed, with any other situation than that of being at the head of an army. He had, in fact, beaten ABDALLAH BASHA, and taken HAMADAN, and following the TURKS to KERMANS SHAH, completed the defeat of that army. After putting garrisons in these places, he marched for TAVRIS and ARDEVILLE<sup>f</sup>, which the BASHA KOUPROLI was ordered to defend with 40,000 men; however, the KHAN having out-marched him, took these places. The TURKS being thus terrified at the progress of the PERSIANS, demanded a truce, to which TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN consented the more readily, as

<sup>f</sup> This city had been famous for the sepulchres of the PERSIAN kings, for colleges richly endowed, and mosques with costly ornaments in silver; but the TURKS during the troubles alienated the lands, and plunder'd the riches.

1730. the ABDOLLEES of HERAT had revolted, and formed a considerable army. Upon this he returned back with a large body of his troops, and by a laborious march entered the country of ESFERAIN, and defeated the ABDOLLEES in a pitched battle. He then blockaded HERAT, which being unprovided for a siege, was obliged to submit. He put the governor and all the principal persons concerned in the rebellion to death, and leaving a garrison of his own men, he marched to MESCHED.

TÆHMAS SHAH concluded that the truce with the port would not terminate in any accommodation: the TURKS took advantage of the absence of KOULI KHAN, and great preparations were made for the march of the OTTOMAN armies. The SHAH therefore left ISFAHAN in OCTOBER, with an army of about 20,000 men, directing his course towards TAVRIS, where he joined the troops left by his general TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN. From thence he marched over the mountains of ARMENIA, in the height of  
 1731. winter, by which he lost a considerable number of his men: and about the end of FEBRUARY he reached ERIVAN. ALI BASHA, SERASKIER of that province, had taken care to supply the city, not only for a siege, but also to act offensively against the PERSIANS when a favourable opportunity should offer: accordingly he caused 6000 of his men to march out of the garrison to attack the PERSIANS, with instructions to retreat at the first fire. This order was executed so well, that the PERSIANS having the appearance of a victory, followed the TURKS, and fell into the snare; for a masked battery of cannon was played on them so furiously, that they lost a great number of men. The BASHA at the same time marched out of his camp, and attacked the PERSIANS in flank, so that the battle became very bloody on both sides; however, the PERSIAN valour was superior to that of the TURKS, who were driven back to their entrenchments. The SHAH then laid siege to the castle, but the TURKS having laid the country waste, he soon found his army in distress for provisions, and was obliged to raise the siege. The PERSIAN army then directed their course towards TAVRIS. ALI BASHA followed them, and soon met and joined the forces of BASHA KOUPROLI. The union of the TURKISH troops having rendered them superior to the PERSIANS, they attacked the PERSIAN army near the city ASTABAT, and defeated them, pushing some of their troops into the river



ZENGUI<sup>y</sup>; many of them were drowned, and a great number taken prisoners. Among the latter was SEFFIE KOULI KHAN, a general of distinction, who had been formerly the ATHEMAT DOULET of SHAH HUSSEIN. This person, now about 60 years of age, was remarkable for his knowledge and bravery. When he was brought prisoner to CONSTANTINOPLE, the grand signior demanded of him, why at the late siege of TAVRIS he had suffered the chief MULLAH and his family to be massacred? He answered in an undaunted tone, "There are rascals in PERSIA as well as in  
" TURKEY, and when a place is taken by assault, it is impossible for  
" commanders to prevent disorders." Whatever might be the reasons which induced the OTTOMAN court to behave thus cruelly to this gallant officer; he was conducted richly cloathed, with his hands tied behind him, to a place near the seraglio, where the grand signior glutted his resentment in seeing his head cut off. In the mean time, the PERSIAN embassadors had been very ill treated, and even plundered on the road, so that the TURKS seemed to observe no terms with their enemies, but determined to lay waste the borders of PERSIA with fire and sword.

TÆHMAS SHAH had, before his defeat near ASTABAT, resolved to abandon TAVRIS, in order to provide for the security of HAMADAN, to which ACHMED BASHA was preparing to lay siege. The PERSIAN army reached the plains of HAMADAN in SEPTEMBER, being reduced from 50<sup>z</sup> to less than 30,000 men. With these were joined the garrison of the city; and a bloody battle ensued between the two armies, in which the TURKS were victorious. The SHAH returned with his scattered forces to CASBIN; and HAMADAN fell again into the hands of the TURKS. Thus the OTTOMAN army gained this year, what they lost the year before.

During these transactions in the field, the situation of affairs in TURKEY was changed by intestine commotions. As they had moreover much to lose, without a prospect of making any further acquisition, peace was become very desirable. ACHMED, BASHA of BAGDAT, in consequence of the success of the PERSIANS the preceding year, had received orders to make a peace with them on the best terms he could. IBRAHIM BASHA, the grand

F 2

vizir,

<sup>y</sup> This river falls into the ARAS, a little below ASTABAT.

<sup>z</sup> It may be presumed that he collected a great number of forces in his march through PERSIA into the TURKISH dominions, besides the forces he found at TAVRIS.



1731. vizir, was apprehensive that if success attended the arms of the PERSIANS in reconquering the provinces wrested from that monarchy, during the invasion of the AFGHANS, such an event would necessarily render his safety the more precarious, as he was already odious to the people.

The end of SEPTEMBER the preceding year, a great revolution happened at CONSTANTINOPLE; and as this event was attended with remarkable circumstances, it will not be foreign to our subject, to give a succinct account of it.

### C H A P. VII.

*An account of the revolution in TURKEY. The grand vizir, and several other great officers put to death. ACHMED the III<sup>d</sup> dethroned. MAHOMMED advanced to the government. The extraordinary adventures of PATRONA KALIL, chief of the rebels.*

1730. **I**T often pleases the wisdom of providence to accomplish the greatest ends by ignoble instruments. PATRONA KALIL, a native of ALBANIA, who had been a common sailor, and was now only a simple Janissary, became the instrument of dethroning ACHMED the III. the grand signior, in resentment of the evil administration of the government, and the rapacious avarice of IBRAHIM BASHA the grand vizir.

PATRONA appeared in arms the 28th of SEPTEMBER, at the head of a few desperate fellows. It was agreed this small body should divide itself into three companies, and taking different routs they were to meet at ATMEIDAN<sup>a</sup>, which was appointed their general rendezvous. This disposition being made, PATRONA began his march, displaying a small standard; his companions, with sabres in their hands, cried out, that all shopkeepers and mechanicks should shut up their shops, and every good mussulman should follow their ensigns to ATMEIDAN, where they would communicate the just cause of their appearing in arms against the present government. The two other companies having done the same, the whole city was in an alarm, and

<sup>a</sup> A plain just without the city.



and the shops were shut up. The TURKS who did not join them, confined themselves to their houses. The grand signior, and his vizir IBRAHIM, were at their country palaces at SCUTARI; and the REYS EFFENDI <sup>b</sup> was also at one of his country houses on the canal which extends to the BLACK SEA. This minister, being given up to his natural indolence, treated the account which was sent of the tumult as a matter below his attention; so that there was no person of authority to quash this commotion in the city, except the AGA of the Janissaries, and the KIAYA <sup>c</sup> of the grand vizir. The last, apprehensive of danger, retired; whilst the AGA put himself at the head of his guards, designing to disperse the mob. He soon found that his very guards were corrupted; and instead of being disposed to act offensively against the promoters of the sedition, they began to complain of his not joining with them to obtain justice of the grand vizir.

Things being thus circumstanced, he was intirely at a loss what measures to take, till news was brought him that a party of the rebels were gone to plunder his palace; upon which he retired to provide for his own security. The mob increased every moment: they obliged all the TURKS they met to join them, threatening to kill those who refused; and some unhappy persons, who had no inclination to embark in so desperate an enterprize, actually fell a sacrifice to their fury. They now broke open all the prisons, and made slaves and malefactors the companions of their fortune. As their number augmented, those whom fear rather than inclination had hitherto restrained, became the partners of their rebellion. Thus the fire of sedition had already made a great progress, before the grand vizir had received any exact information of it; so that it was not till four in the afternoon that the MUFTI <sup>d</sup>, the KAIMAKHAN <sup>e</sup>, and the KIAYA, with several other principal officers of state, came to inform him to what a height the insurrection was arrived. Immediately a council was held, which lasted till night without any resolution, but that they should hold another council at the palace of the grand signior.

Here

<sup>b</sup> Secretary of state.  
grand signior has one.

<sup>c</sup> This is the great usher of the household, the vizir as well as the

<sup>d</sup> The first ecclesiastic, or chief of the law.

<sup>e</sup> The deputy of

the grand vizir, who acts as governor of CONSTANTINOPLE.

1730. Here it was resolved that the court should immediately go to CONSTANTINOPLE; and they accordingly embarked in a yacht. They were no sooner arrived, than the grand vizir, with the other ministers, began to deliberate what measures to take under such pressing circumstances, which were of such a nature, as seemed already to baffle the utmost of their skill and authority. They resolved however unanimously, that the only effectual method was the force of arms, and therefore a body of troops should be collected. This indeed seemed to be the only expedient; but the grand signior being informed of their resolution, was unwilling to try such desperate means. As soon as it was day, his highness sent one of the principal officers of the BOSTANGIS<sup>s</sup> to ATMEIDAN, to command the rebels in the grand signior's name to retire; and to acquaint them that if they did not shew a ready obedience, his highness would be obliged to have recourse to arms. They made reply with great unconcern, that they were assembled for the honour and welfare of the state, and would not lay down their arms, till the sultan redressed their grievances.

The grand signior highly incensed at so insolent an answer, gratified his resentment in reproaching his vizir IBRHAIM as the cause of the disorder. The vizir laid the fault on the KAIMAKHAN, loading him with the most heavy reproaches in the presence of the sultan; turning towards whom he said, "Will your highness suffer that a wretch so vile and despicable as this shall longer enjoy the light." The sultan struck with the manner in which his vizir accused the KAIMAKHAN, caused him immediately to be arrested: and then assuming a composed air, discoursed with the vizir upon the situation of their affairs. IBRAHIM who was an able, tho' not an honest minister, found the advice his master gave was impracticable; therefore, without amusing him with vain projects, he recommended force as the only expedient to reduce the rebellion. "I see," continued he, "in this crisis of the empire, only two expedients; either that your highness put yourself at the head of your household troops, and fall upon the rebels, or that you permit me to go in your place. I flatter myself that I am sufficiently beloved by the soldiers to form a considerable party, as soon as I shall appear."

The

<sup>s</sup> These are a species of militia in TURKEY, but they also serve as guards of the seraglio.



The timorous sultan relished neither of these proposals, but still vainly endeavoured to avail himself of the right he derived as sovereign of the people. He therefore caused the standard of MAHOMMED to be forthwith displayed at the gates of the seraglio, and ordered a proclamation to be made from the ramparts, that every soldier who would come under this banner, to assist him in reducing the rebels, should receive a gratification of 30 crowns<sup>h</sup>; and, moreover, that their pay should be augmented two aspers. He soon found that these fair promises were ineffectual, and therefore gave orders that the BOSTANGIS should be assembled; but neither were these orders practicable, for those who were capable of bearing arms concealed themselves, having no inclination to fight in behalf of a ministry, which had been long odious to them. His next application was to the marine; but before any number of men could be collected, PATRONA KALIL, at the head of a body of rebels, fell upon the arsenal, drove the captain BASHA from it, and threatened the soldiers of the marine, if they persisted in defending the court, he would grant them no quarter, but would burn their houses, together with all the ships and gallies belonging to the sultan. By this means, he dispersed a great number who had already received money for enlisting, and brought off others to join his party; at the same time, he augmented his forces with all the TURKISH malefactors and slaves, who were in the gallies and baths.

At length the grand signior sent a deputation to the rebels, demanding what their intentions were; they answered, that they desired the MUFTI, the grand vizir IBRAHIM BASHA, the KAIMAKHAN, MUSTAPHA BASHA, and MAHOMMED the KIAYA, might be delivered to them: with regard to his highness, they were satisfied with his reign, and wished him prosperity. Upon this answer, the sultan immediately caused the two last to be arrested, and sent to acquaint the rebels that they should be put to death; but that, in consideration of his compliance so far, they ought to be contented with the banishment of the MUFTI and VIZIR. The rebels consented to spare the MUFTI, but still persisted in their first demand in regard to the VIZIR; insomuch, that the sultan found his own security would be endangered by his refusal.

In

<sup>h</sup> I suppose dollars of 4s.

1730. In the mean while PATRONA conducted himself with all the dignity and good order of a commander in chief, exacting an oath from his companions, that they should commit no kind of excess. For the better support of their discipline, some, who had committed thefts and disorders, were actually punished with death by a consent of the leaders of the rebellion: by which means the city was supplied with provisions as usual. The Janissaries, who had revolted long before in their hearts, joined the rebels at ATMEIDAN, where they formed a regular camp. This step seemed to render the affairs of the court desperate; however, the sultan made another effort to obtain the life of IBRAHIM BASHA: to which the rebels made no other reply, than that they had already done enough in pardoning the MUFTI. The grand vizir, and other great officers already mentioned, were accordingly condemned to die, and the 30th of SEPTEMBER the delinquents were conducted to KAPU ORASI<sup>k</sup>. The approach of death so terrified the KIAYA, that he rendered up his soul without the hand of the executioner. The KAIMAKHAN performed the offices of devotion, and received the absolution which is usual on such important occasions, in a very composed and regular manner. The vizir did not express less fortitude and composure, but he neither said his prayers, nor received absolution; observing, that as his life was so near an end, he would not give himself that trouble.

How far the grand vizir had misbehaved, during the long administration of twelve years, may be judged from the immense riches which he left behind him. One of the gentlemen of his bed-chamber<sup>l</sup>, who had been in his secrets, now confessed that in a vault under the pigeon-house, which this minister had caused to be built in one of the courts of the seraglio, his riches were deposited. From hence were taken four iron chests, of which three contained 18 long leather bags, with 60,000 sequins<sup>m</sup> funduklis in each, and the fourth contained a great quantity of precious stones. The KIAYA of IBRAHIM's harram, who had a perfect knowledge of his affairs, confessed that a great part of these riches was the price of injustice; and  
that

<sup>k</sup> The apartment in the seraglio, where prisoners of state are put to death.

<sup>l</sup> ANACTAR

OGLAR.

<sup>m</sup> At 9 s. 4 d. the sequin is 1,512,000 l. which seems to be much too large a sum to be amassed by any minister in any country, without very great corruption indeed.



that he had himself been employed in the most secret manner, at different times, in conveying money into these chests. 1730.

The next day in the morning, the bodies of these three great officers, without any funeral rites, and almost naked, were conveyed in a cart to ATMEIDAN, followed by a crowd, who expressed great contempt and resentment of the conduct of these ministers by insulting their remains, and declaring with loud acclamations, that they hoped all the enemies of their religion and country would meet with the same fate. When the bodies were brought into the camp; the rebels were loud in their expressions of resentment, that the grand signior had not delivered the traitors alive, as he had promised. It was urged, on the other hand, that the sultans had never been accustomed to deliver their ministers alive into the hands of their enemies; and that they ought to be satisfied with the great condescension which his highness had shewn upon this occasion.

The rebels having carried their point thus far, were intoxicated with their own success; and began to declare without reserve, that they would depose the SULTAN ACHMED III. and set his nephew MAHOMMED on the throne. They considered that ACHMED was naturally cruel, and had caused all those to be put to death who had dethroned his brother MUSTAPHA II. in 1703; and consequently, they could expect very little quarter from him, should his power be again established, as they had been the authors of the death of his near relation IBRAHIM: on the contrary, should they chuse MAHOMMED, who had been confined for seven and twenty years, there was great reason to believe he would acknowledge their services. ACHMED, in reality, had given them no remarkable cause of complaint, except his great favour to IBRAHIM BASHA; so that it was in some measure difficult to find a specious motive for this last act of violence on the state. They pretended, that the body of the vizir IBRAHIM was not among those of the delinquents; however, after hanging the bodies of the KAIMAKHAN and KIAYA, each upon a tree, as spectacles to the people, they dragged the third, which was really IBRAHIM's, at a horse's tail to the gates of the seraglio.

1730.

Here they demanded with the most clamorous insolence, that the real vizir with all his creatures should be delivered to them alive, as also the REYS EFFENDI; adding, that as they could not depend on the promises of ACHMED, who contrary to all laws, persisted in protecting a villain, whose avarice had plunged the state into the greatest distress, he was no longer worthy to reign: at the same time they proclaimed MAHOMMED. ACHMED tried every expedient to quiet them, offering them considerable rewards, and to deliver up all those whom they demanded; but they were inflexibly bent on dethroning him. On their return to ATMEIDAN, they threw the carcass of IBRAHIM into the common road, near a fountain, where this minister had erected an elegant structure about two years before, as an embellishment to the city, and for the use of the people.

The rebels having plunged themselves so deep, began to find the necessity of some person, skilled and experienced in politics, to conduct them in the completion of their work. ISPIRI ZADE, one of the sultan's chaplains, though he had often received the highest marks of the royal bounty, had the ingratitude to abandon his master, and join in the conspiracy. This man had concealed his ambition under the cloak of piety and mortification, and was now secretly become their chief adviser. The 1st of OCTOBER he entered the seraglio, where he found the ministers of ACHMED under a great consternation, not knowing what would be the issue of the rebellion. As soon as this treacherous priest entered the apartment, the ministers inquired impatiently what was passing in the city. He answered with the air of a man depressed with sorrow: "The rebels  
 " will not upon any account submit that ACHMED shall reign over them  
 " any longer; all my endeavours in favour of the sultan are rendered  
 " abortive, by the fierceness of their animosity. It is in vain to flatter  
 " ourselves any longer, that we shall be able to alter their resolution."

At these words, the whole assembly became motionless, and unable to utter a word. The perfidious ISPIRI ZADE, observing that there was no body who dared to acquaint the sultan with this news, went himself. As soon as he entered the royal presence, ACHMED said, "Are the rebels  
 " yet



“ yet at ATMEIDAN? why do they not retire? I have shewn them more  
 “ favour than I ought: I have offered to do them justice on those of 1730.  
 “ whom they complain; and I have promised them large presents; what  
 “ would they have more?” ISPIRI ZADE replied, in a bold but com-  
 posed tone, “ Thy reign is finished; thy revolted subjects will no longer  
 “ submit to thy dominion.” ACHMED, starting up, replied, “ Whence  
 “ comes it that you have delayed to give me this information?” Then  
 running immediately to the apartment<sup>n</sup> of MAHOMMED his nephew, he  
 took him by the hand, and conducting him to the throne, placed him  
 there himself, and was the first who saluted him as emperor. Among  
 many tender things, he spoke to this effect: “ Remember that your fa-  
 “ ther lost the place in which you are now seated, by his blind com-  
 “ plaissance for his musti FEIZOULLAH EFFENDI; and that I lose it my-  
 “ self, by having trusted too much to my vizir IBRAHIM BASHA. Learn  
 “ from our examples not to confide in your ministers without due cir-  
 “ cumpection. If I had always followed my old maxims, I should  
 “ never have left mine so long in place, or omitted to have demanded  
 “ frequent and regular accounts of the affairs of the empire. Perhaps I  
 “ might have then finished my reign as gloriously as I began it. Farewel;  
 “ I wish that yours may be more happy; and I hope that you will have  
 “ a proper regard for me and my children, whom I recommend to your  
 “ care.” Immediately the unfortunate ACHMED retired to those apart-  
 ments which his nephew had just quitted.

After the ceremony of the inauguration of the new sultan was per-  
 formed with the usual pomp, and he had received the honours due to  
 this high dignity; his curiosity excited him to see PATRONA KALIL,  
 who had been the instrument of his exaltation to the throne. This man  
 appeared before the grand signior in the habit of a common Janissary,  
 with his naked knees. He advanced with a bold air to the sultan's throne,  
 and kissed his hand. His highness said, “ What can I do for thee?  
 “ Thou hast a right to demand of me any favour.” This artful wicked  
 fellow, now gave marks of more noble and generous sentiments, than  
 could be expected from his birth and past life, and answered the sultan



1730. to this purpose : “ As to the present time, I am arrived at the highest point  
 “ of my wishes, in seeing your highness on the throne of the OTTOMAN  
 “ empire. With regard to the future, I know I have nothing to expect  
 “ from you but an ignominious death.” The grand signior replied, “ I  
 “ swear I will never do you any harm ; tell me only what recompence I  
 “ can make you, and I grant it before you ask.” “ Since your royal  
 “ goodness is without bounds,” replied PATRONA, “ I desire that you  
 “ will suppress all the new imposts with which your subjects have been  
 “ loaded under the late administration.”

This was a dangerous request, as it seemed to increase the popularity of this fellow ; however the grand signior did not hesitate to comply, and orders were immediately given to suspend the collection of those taxes. In the interim the rebels, far from disbanding, committed many outrages, particularly in pillaging several houses of persons proscribed, which had been sealed up with the royal seal. The new sultan could not but have a quick resentment of so great a mark of disrespect, as well as violation of the laws ; however, as he was not yet secure on his throne, he desired that they would refrain from such kind of executions ; representing at the same time, that as they had placed him on the throne, they ought to leave the power and authority of punishing to him, in the manner which he should think most convenient. These gentle remonstrances, though founded in the highest reason, did not prevail on the base and undisciplined minds of the rebels ; on the contrary, they renewed their instances that the REYS EFFENDI should be delivered up to them. Tho’ this minister had not been so guilty as the other officers of state, yet he thought proper to retire and conceal himself. But had he been present, the new sultan seemed in no disposition to comply with their extravagance, the gratification of which might have only served to increase their tumultuous fury.

The rebels proceeded in rifling the houses of those who were most obnoxious to them : the plunder of the grandees, together with the riches of the vizir, enabled PATRONA to make a plentiful distribution of money to gratify all his followers, among whom even children and old



old men were admitted, as by this means he increased his popularity. 1730. The lieutenant-general of the Janissaries, tho' chosen by the rebels, was confirmed by the sultan; he therefore took the liberty to represent, that so profuse a liberality to persons so little intitled to it, ill suited with just government, in the cause of which they had taken up arms: but this unhappy officer, for his indiscreet zeal, was cut to pieces on the spot.

The grand signior, observing that it would be impossible to establish peace whilst PATRONA appeared in arms, proposed to give him a rich government, or a sum of money to retire. PATRONA knew well that he could have no security but in arms; however he continued to chastise those who committed any outrage without his permission. All the new officers of state, out of fear of his lawless power, paid him the greatest respect.

PATRONA at length reflecting, that the character of a disinterested patriot, in which he had hitherto appeared, would not support him, when the lives of the inhabitants of CONSTANTINOPLE, together with their wealth should cease to be in his power; began to accept bribes, and to sell his favours for money. His companions being informed of it, expressed their resentment with some bitterness, as he thus violated those principles, in defence of which they had taken up arms. The matter was but too apparent, and tended much to weaken his interest; however, he still pretended that all his passions and desires centered in the public good.

Their plundering and proscriptions still continuing, the sultan convoked a council, composed of his new mufti and principal officers of state. In consequence of this, the mufti prepared his religious artillery, by sending his FETFA to the rebel camp at ATMEIDAN, by the ISTAMBOUL EFFENDI°. This was a humorous whimsical fellow, who having from the beginning taken the part of the rebels, was in great esteem amongst them, and played his part so well, that the most sensible among the Janissaries consented to retire to their quarters, and to submit to the sultan's pleasure. At the same time the rebels were threatened, that if they did not retire,

the

• Lieutenant of the police in CONSTANTINOPLE.

1730. the standard of MAHOMMED would not be hung out in vain, seeing that there were thousands in CONSTANTINOPLE ready to shed their blood in defence of it. Upon this they submitted, on condition that none of them should be put to death, and that they should have three standards displayed, by which means they might unite in their own defence in case of need. Extraordinary as this proposal may appear, the court thought proper to submit to it, for the present, for fear of worse consequences.

The blaze of this rebellious fire seemed thus to be extinguished. The court thought it unsafe to proceed to the execution of any of the chiefs, though it could hardly be expected that the Janissaries, after so licentious a life for fourteen days, would submit to the proper discipline of that body, in whose chambers it is not permitted to drink wine, nor commit any sort of debauch. During their seditious practices, PATRONA KALIL had possessed himself of money sufficient to maintain him in a genteel manner; but his greatest distinction in his own esteem, was derived from being the chief author of the revolution.

He now took a house contiguous to the chambers of the Janissaries, and 400 of his followers well armed continued about his person. They spent their time in debauches, and several murders were committed in broad day. Grown hardy in their imaginary security, they made no scruple to visit the new grand vizir, as if they considered him as their creature. They demanded the banishment of several persons of distinction; that others should have their employments taken from them; and they named, at the same time, those whom they would have preferred. Among the latter, PATRONA carried his insolence so far, as to demand that a certain GREEK butcher called YANAKI, to whom he had been much obliged for trusting him with a great quantity of provisions, should be made prince of MOLDAVIA. The ceremonies of the investiture of this butcher prince were actually performed; but as he was not able to raise the funds necessary on this occasion, and his friend PATRONA, conscious of the wild absurdity



absurdity of his conduct, had deserted him; the imaginary principality of this vain GREEK was changed into a prison. 1730.

This, and other such extravagancies, began to make the Janissaries ashamed of espousing the cause of so despicable a wretch. PATRONA's pride was then a little humbled; he therefore went to pay his court to the KADILESKIER<sup>p</sup>, a man of singular probity. He received him with great coldness; however, PATRONA with an air of dignity, addressed him as follows: "You know, great EFFENDI<sup>q</sup>, that GOD has been pleased to  
 " make use of this feeble arm, to deliver his people from the oppression  
 " of the late ministry. You, who are wise, and can see into the hearts  
 " of men, know that my designs are good; however, I find that some  
 " ill-intentioned persons misinterpret my actions, and endeavour to repre-  
 " sent them as criminal to our master the sultan; for whom I have so  
 " often exposed my life. If these calumnies continue, I beg you will be  
 " my advocate with his highness." The KADILESKIER answered, "That  
 " he held falsehood in the highest contempt, and should never be ashamed  
 " to tell the truth, and that he might be assured if his opinion was asked,  
 " he should declare what he thought." PATRONA was willing to interpret this ambiguous answer in his own favour, and kissing the hand of the KADILESKIER, he retired, and gave a handful of sequins to his domestics; which the KADILESKIER ordered to be thrown into the sea before PATRONA's face, as a mark of his contempt and indignation.

PATRONA was yet at the head of a party sufficient to screen him from the resentment of the court, which now meditated a fair occasion to cut him off. The 6th of NOVEMBER, as deputy of the Janissaries, he convoked a grand council, at which the KHAN of the CRIM TARTARS, the grand vizir, the mufti, and other great officers of state were present. He opened the assembly himself, and addressing himself to the KHAN, spoke to this effect: "The present situation of the empire has occasioned the  
 " convocation of this council; I know that our affairs in PERSIA are every  
 " day falling to decay. The RUSSIANS are continually sending succours  
 " to the PERSIANS; therefore my opinion is, that we ought to declare  
 " war;

<sup>p</sup> Chief justice.

<sup>q</sup> The name common to those versed in the law.



1730. “ war, to prevent greater evils, and to revenge ourselves on them for the  
 “ blood of mussulmen, which they have been the cause of spilling. Let  
 “ us immediately send a great army against them, whilst the TARTARS  
 “ invade the country of these infidels on the other side, and bring the  
 “ inhabitants into slavery. I think also that there is an absolute necessity  
 “ to curb the bashas on the frontiers, in their evil practices; so far from  
 “ taking care of the troops, and regarding the Janissaries as the sure sup-  
 “ port of this monarchy, they treat them ill, and retain their pay for  
 “ their private use, and to gratify their own creatures.”

He made several other remarks in as wild and indigested a manner, whilst the whole assembly, with hearts full of indignation, deplored the wretched situation of the state, that obliged the great council of the OTTOMAN empire to hear this despicable wretch presume to give laws. At length the KHAN of the TARTARS, tired of hearing his impertinent discourse, said, “ You, who speak so much of war, do you know what it is?  
 “ What reasons are there that his highness should declare war against the  
 “ RUSSIANS? Do you not know that the court is at peace with them;  
 “ and that without just cause we ought not to break that peace? Before  
 “ we proceed to such extremities, we ought to know the truth of the  
 “ extraordinary reports which you make. After this, upon mature de-  
 “ liberation, we might resolve whether peace or war is most for the ho-  
 “ nour and advantage of the empire. These are not such light matters  
 “ as you seem to imagine: tell me by what rout you would penetrate  
 “ into RUSSIA?” “ By what rout,” replied PATRONA, “ that is a plea-  
 “ sant question indeed; why can’t we go the same way as we did before,  
 “ you on one side, and we on the other?” The TARTAR prince, with an air that plainly shewed he thought it below his dignity to make any answer, otherwise than as the circumstances of the state rendered it necessary to temporize, spoke to this effect: “ Formerly we passed through  
 “ POLAND, because we were then at war with the POLANDERS, but  
 “ at present we are at peace with them. Is it just to spread desola-  
 “ tion among people, against whom we have no cause of complaint?  
 “ Do you know that an army of an hundred thousand TARTARS, can-



“ not march into a country without ruining it? It is true that war is the  
 “ proper occupation, and the real source of the riches of my subjects: 1730.  
 “ shut up in the plains of the CRIM, as we have no trade, we decline  
 “ into poverty; but we had rather sacrifice our particular interest, than  
 “ justice, equity, and the laws of nations. We know that wars are the  
 “ chastisements of heaven; and we ought to reflect maturely before  
 “ we take up arms, that we may not repent when we are obliged to  
 “ lay them down again. These are not affairs to be resolved on in  
 “ a hurry.” PATRONA replied, “ I see no harm in carrying desola-  
 “ tion into the country of infidels; and as to our deliberations, I did  
 “ not expect this council should have been composed of more than you,  
 “ MOUSLOUK AGA<sup>r</sup>, the grand vizir, a few other persons, and my-  
 “ self; and for the future, if you please, it shall be so, that we may  
 “ conduct our business with more secrecy; otherwise the infidels, being  
 “ informed of our resolutions, will disconcert our measures.” “ When  
 “ the business of a council,” replied the KHAN, “ is to consult of war  
 “ or peace, it is a maxim established among us, to have numerous as-  
 “ semblies, that we may know the different sentiments of men upon so  
 “ weighty a concern. You see that IBRAHIM BASHA, ambitious of go-  
 “ vernal alone, not only perished himself by an ignominious death, but  
 “ was near drawing on the ruin of the empire. It is astonishing, that so  
 “ recent and terrible an example does not instruct you to avoid the danger  
 “ of directing solely; but I declare, if that continues, I will supplicate  
 “ his highness to send me into the remotest banishment, rather than be a  
 “ witness to the violation of his honour, and the ruin of the state.”

So bold a declaration as this, could not but silence the formidable PA-  
 TRONA. The council broke up, and nothing was determined. Many  
 entertained

<sup>r</sup> This was another Janissary of the same stamp as PATRONA himself, who had forfeited his life on several occasions. This fellow, during the transactions of the late revolution, went with an imperious air into some of the tribunals in CONSTANTINOPLE, and without reserve dispatched his emissaries who attended him, with orders to kill such and such persons; letting those who were present know at the same time who he was, and that he had the gift of discovering the hearts of men; that he loved honest men and hated rascals; bidding them look to themselves. Such was the power of the Janissaries at that time, and the terror which they spread through the city.

1730. entertained the most ardent wishes to see the destruction of the rebels; who, on their part, concerted measures to put their own creatures in possession of the principal offices of the government, as the only means of securing themselves.

Two days afterwards, the grand signior invited PATRONA, MOUSLOUK, and the AGA of the Janissaries, to court, desiring to be informed of the effect of their conference, and to consult with them what measures to pursue in regard to the affairs of PERSIA, as well as the interior government of the empire. At 11 o'clock they attended, with a retinue of six and twenty persons, whom they left in the first court, and were themselves conducted to the chamber, where the OTTOMAN princes are circumcised\*. Here they found the KHAN of the TARTARS, the mufti, the grand vizir, with other great officers of the crown, seated according to their rank: there were also many officers of the BOSTANGIS, and other persons, standing. The rebels took their seats, without seeming to suspect any danger, as the BOSTANGIS are considered as domestics of the seraglio.

The grand vizir opened the assembly, and addressing himself to PATRONA, said, "The grand signior has made you BEGLERBEG of ROMANIA†, and gives you the command of 30,000 men, with which you are to join ACHMED, BASHA of BAGDAT, and to act in concert with him against the PERSIANS." He next spoke to MOUSLOUK AGA in these terms: "His highness has appointed you BEGLERBEG of NATOLIA, with a body of troops under your command." And then turning to the AGA of the Janissaries, he acquainted him, "That he was appointed BASHA of three tails." Thus he was going on, when MUSTAPHA AGA‡ cried out aloud, "Let all the enemies of the state be exterminated;" and immediately thirty of the officers of the BOSTANGIS

fell

\* They call this the SUNNET ODASSI.

† The antient THRACE. This is one of the richest governments in the neighbourhood of CONSTANTINOPLE; it is a fruitful country, bounded on the south by the ARCHIPELAGO, near 300 miles long, and more than half as broad, covered with high mountains, which are natural bulwarks against an enemy.

‡ This person had in his youthful age been a creature of the KHAN of the TARTARS, and was a captain of the 17th company of the Janissaries when the sedition broke out; but being devoted to his old master, he now took the side of the court, and behaved with the most approved fidelity.



fell with their sabres upon PATRONA KALIL, MOUSLOUK, and the AGA 1730. of the Janissaries. The first was drawing his dagger from under his surr to defend himself, when MUSTAPHA AGA cut his arm with a stroke of his sabre: MOUSLOUK threw his robe over his face, and resigned himself to his destiny like a CÆSAR.

It may appear extraordinary, that these traitors left their guard in the outward court; however, the difficulty is reconciled, when we consider that the business they were to treat of, was of an important nature, and that they had, in the fond presumption of their imaginations, flattered themselves into a belief that the grand signior had adopted their sentiments; not only with regard to the affairs of the empire, but also in respect to the secret manner in which they proposed to hold their councils, agreeably to what PATRONA had recommended in the last assembly.

As soon as these rebel chiefs were put to death, their bodies were thrown into the court before the apartment where the catastrophe happened. A messenger was immediately sent to acquaint their guard, that as the grand signior had been pleased to present their chiefs with a coat of honour, his highness intended also to give them each a CAFTAN<sup>w</sup>; and for this purpose they were to enter three or four at a time, that the ceremony might be performed with decency. These deluded wretches were no sooner arrived in the interior part of the second court, than they underwent the same fate as their masters: some of them in the outer court at length began to suspect, as none of their companions returned, that they were ensnared, and attempted to save themselves: but the gates were shut upon them, and they were slaughtered in the same manner as the others.

The report now prevailed in the city, that PATRONA, MOUSLOUK, and the AGA of the Janissaries, had been a long time in the seraglio, all the gates of which were shut. This brought several of the party thither, who began to murmur, and threaten violence; but as soon as they saw the gates opened, and several carts brought forth loaded with the bodies of their chiefs reeking with blood; they were seized with dismay and fled. All these mangled carcases were exposed in the street for two

H. 2

hours;

<sup>w</sup> This is the term for those vestments which are presented as marks of favour.



1730. hours; after which, the court, apprehensive that so hideous a spectacle might conjure up some new frenzy among the people, caused them to be thrown into the sea.

A numerous body of guards were now ordered to patrol the streets, to keep good order, and prevent any desperate attempt to fire the city; for PATRONA had often declared, that this would be the consequence of taking away his life. At the same time, several of the rebels were seized and put to death; and the butcher YANIKA survived his patron but one day. Public thanks were then ordered to be given to the Almighty, for his singular mercy in delivering the state from such imminent danger. A general pardon was published to all the rebels, except certain persons who were deemed the chief conductors of the confederacy; but their punishment also was changed into banishment. Beside these acts of clemency, large donatives were presented to the Janissaries, Spahis<sup>x</sup>, and other orders of the soldiery who had been concerned in the revolt. Such marks of a generous disposition in their sovereign, converted their resentment into wishes for his prosperity and happiness; so that by the end of NOVEMBER, the city was, to all appearance, restored to its former tranquillity.

1731. The flames of sedition were not however extinguished. The blood of PATRONA KALIL, MOUSLOUK, and their other companions, like that of the HYDRA, nourished new monsters, which in less than four months grew to a formidable size. The great dissipation of treasure which this revolution had caused, together with the want of conduct in the new ministers, not only occasioned the Janissaries to be in arrears for their pay, but also created a scarcity of provisions in CONSTANTINOPLE. Towards the end of FEBRUARY this year, people began to murmur aloud, and predict another revolution.

The number of loose and abandoned fellows, whom the late rebellion had brought together, was great. These from their natural disposition, and from their idle manner of living, were ripe for any desperate enterprise. The partizans of ACHMED, the dethroned sultan, submitted with  
reluctancy

<sup>x</sup> These are cavalry of the ASIATIC dominions of TURKEY.



reluctancy to the destiny of their late master; so that the spirit of rebellion was secretly fomented. The court seemed, however, to have no suspicion of it, when news was brought the 25th of MARCH, that a body of people had assembled at ATMEIDAN, the ordinary rendezvous of malecontents, who, after pillaging several shops, had collected a number of arms. These being joined by a party of the Janissaries, broke open and plundered the house of the AGA of the Janissaries, who with difficulty escaped with his life. 1731.

The AGA immediately acquainted the grand signior; and his highness ordered the grand vizir, the mufti, and other great officers to be assembled. The experience of SEPTEMBER last had taught them, that such lawless force can hardly be suppressed but by military justice: accordingly they instantly collected what forces were at hand, during the night; and lest necessity should oblige them to call for assistance, they carried out the standard of MAHOMMED. The TURKS imagine that those who die in defence of this standard, are entitled to the crown of martyrdom. As soon as day broke, the AGA of the Janissaries at the head of one party, and the grand vizir with another, fell on the rebels at ATMEIDAN. A smart skirmish ensued: the standard-bearer was dismounted, and in danger of losing his standard, which might have had fatal consequences.

The rebels being at length put to flight, retired to the chambers of the Janissaries, who, though they had not taken arms in any considerable numbers, were ripe for rebellion. The grand vizir therefore prudently declined following the rebels, lest the violation of that azylum, which the quarters of these soldiers are esteemed, should furnish a reason for a revolt, and plunge the city into the same disorder, as it had been exposed to four months before. They contented themselves with killing about 200 in the flight, and taking 60 prisoners. As soon as these last had made confession of their accomplices, they were strangled, and their bodies thrown into the sea.

The coffee-houses and taverns were immediately ordered to be shut; and the GREEKS who sell wine had their vessels staved, that no fuel might be

1731. be afforded to heat the brains of a desperate mob. A constant patrol was kept in the streets, and the least suspicion rendered the party criminal, so that numbers of innocent persons suffered death. This severe method of curing so dangerous a disorder in the body politic had its effect, and prevented the flames of rebellion from spreading.

There were several parties of the rebels dispersed in different quarters of the city. Some thousands were determined to have joined the camp at ATMEIDAN: had the grand vizir therefore been in any degree less active, it is probable another revolution would have succeeded, with circumstances more bloody and fatal than the former. It was imagined that FATIMA, daughter of ACHMED the III, and widow of the late grand vizir IBRAHIM BASHA, who was strangled, had corrupted the Janissaries, in hopes of revenging the death of her husband. Whether this lady was guilty or not, is a question which has remained unresolved. In order to quash this spirit of sedition as much as possible, a considerable number of BOSNIANS, ALBANIANS, and LATs<sup>y</sup>, were banished out of the city. The grand vizir also omitted no means of humbling the rebels. All those who were strangled or beheaded, were thrown into the sea; and floating about with the waves as spectacles of terror, became a prey to birds, and fish, insomuch that people of any delicacy, would not eat fish for some time.

It was reckoned, that in these different rebellions more than 10,000 men perished by the sword or the bow-string. Above 30,000 were driven out of CONSTANTINOPLE; and the Janissaries were quartered in different parts to prevent their cabals. Those of a seditious spirit were obliged to leave the city; so that the public tranquillity was at length in a great measure restored. The TURKS however suffered very great inconveniences from these disorders, not only by unhinging their government, and giving occasion to a continual change of ministers; but also by the dissipation of their treasure, which rendered them less capable of supporting a war against the PERSIANS.

C H A P.

<sup>y</sup> These are a people who inhabit the coast of the BLACK SEA, who are robbers and murderers by profession.



## C H A P. VIII.

ACHMED, BASHA of BAGDAT, negotiates a peace with the PERSIANS in JANUARY 1732. TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN augments his army in KHORASAN. He disapproves of the peace with the TURKS, and enters into intrigues with his officers. He makes his son governor of KHORASAN; arrives at ISFAHAN in AUGUST 1732, and endeavours to vindicate his conduct to the SHAH.

**D**URING these intestine commotions in CONSTANTINOPLE, ACHMED, BASHA OF BAGDAT, received full orders to treat with the PERSIANS for a peace, from an apprehension that a defeat of any of their armies in ASIA would unavoidably bring on further revolutions. The loss which TÆHMAS SHAH lately sustained, in a great measure facilitated this undertaking. This prince had also many private reasons, with regard to his interior government, which rendered peace as desirable to him as it was to the TURKS. ACHMED BASHA was too able a minister, to be ignorant of any material circumstance relating to PERSIA, the interest and power of which he perfectly understood; and particularly, that the return of TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN might render the success of another campaign very different from the last. The grand signior had trusted him without reserve, to make the best terms he could. He therefore sent to the PERSIAN king to acquaint him, that notwithstanding the great success of the OTTOMAN arms, his master the grand signior was ready to establish a firm and lasting friendship with him. 1731.

The SHAH, who was at CASBIN, received the news with the more satisfaction, as he was under some apprehensions, that if the TURKS had resolved to march to ISFAHAN, that city must have fallen a prey to them; for there was no army between HAMADAN and his metropolis, which could make head against them. The alarm in that city was so great, that when a detachment of the PERSIAN troops arrived there to maintain tranquillity and order, numbers of the inhabitants were preparing for flight.

1731. ACHMED BASHA being apprehensive that his court might rise in her demands, in consequence of the late victory, was desirous to bring on an accommodation with the PERSIANS as soon as possible. Experience, and the light of his own genius had instructed him, that a war with PERSIA could hardly be attended with any good consequences to his country; and that it must certainly hurt his own particular interest; BAGDAT, the capital of his province, having long been an object on which the PERSIAN kings had cast their eyes with earnest wishes.

1732. Towards the close of the last year, the plenipotentiaries on the part of the PERSIANS arrived at the TURKISH camp near HAMADAN. The conferences being opened the 16th of JANUARY following, the preliminary articles were signed. The river ARAS was appointed as the boundary of the PERSIAN dominions; so that the SHAH yielded his right to ARMENIA, ERIVAN, and GEORGIA. The TURKS thus remained possessed of a country near two hundred leagues in extent, which formerly belonged to PERSIA. It was however stipulated, that their joint forces should be united in case of need, to compel the RUSSIANS to evacuate GHILAN, SHIRVAN, and DERBEND, with the rest of the western coast of the CASPIAN sea.

During these transactions, TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN, being possessed of the royal authority to raise money, established already a kind of independency; for the support of which he engaged in his service a considerable number of ABDOLLEES, AFGHANS, OUSBEGS, and TURKUMANS. If we may judge from consequences, and the general tenor of his conduct, he foresaw from the beginning, that the only method by which he could awe the PERSIANS, and arrive at the object in view, would be to form a large army, composed chiefly of TARTARS. For these not having any prejudices concerning the hereditary right of princes, were most likely to be at his devotion, so long as he paid them well, which the power he was invested with, enabled him to do. He employed his time in KHORASAN in putting MESCHED in a situation of defence, and took other measures to prevent the incursions of the TARTARS.

As soon as he heard that the SHAH had lost two battles against the TURKS, and was entering into pacific measures with them, he wrote im-

mediately



mediately to his majesty in the strongest terms, desiring that he would 1732.  
persist in demanding the restitution of all the conquered provinces; adding, that he should join him soon with an army of victorious troops, before whom the TURKS would fly, as the AFGHANS had lately done; that in the mean while, he need only keep on the defensive.

The SHAH, who in a great measure inherited the peaceable disposition of his father, found more joy in repose than in conquest. It is probable, however, that he was actuated by motives of policy; for having now no enemy to contend with, his numerous standing army would become unnecessary; and he might have a fair opportunity of reducing the enormous power of his general, by either totally disbanding his forces, or reducing them to a small number. To this might be added, that PERSIA having groaned several years under the servitude of the AFGHANS, the people were very much impoverished, and required some respite to cultivate the earth, and rebuild their ruined houses.

After the conclusion of the peace, TÆHMAS marched with his forces from CASBIN to ISFAHAN; where he ratified the treaty, disbanded some of his troops, and sent others into their respective quarters. He then wrote to his general TÆMAS KOULI KHAN, acquainting him, that he had thought proper to put an end to a war so chargeable to his people; and as he had no enemies foreign or domestic, that disturbed the repose of the state, he ordered him to disband the army under his command, and to repair to ISFAHAN, to consult with him concerning the domestic œconomy of the government, and the welfare of his people.

These pacific measures were by no means consistent with the ambitious projects of the PERSIAN general. He, who in a lower rank of life had been accustomed to follow the dictates of his own passions, unrestrained by any law human or divine, could hardly be expected to shew a passive conduct at the head of a victorious army, intirely devoted to his service. He had already acquainted his chief officers of the king's ill fortune against the TURKS, and the peace which had been made in consequence of it: he represented this conduct as inglorious, impolitic and pusillanimous; and as that which would draw on the misfortunes of the preceding reign, and

1732. plunge the empire into the same distress as it had been in under the *AFGHANS*. He further made them sensible, how much superior their valour and knowledge in the art of war was to that of the *TURKS*; but that pacific measures, after thus rousing themselves to a martial spirit, were the sure way to enervate their minds, and disqualify them for the duties of a soldier; and consequently prepare them to become slaves again: that the *TURKS*, in the mean while, being suffered to possess so fine and extensive a tract of country, would increase in power, and *PERSIA* would be exposed to the greater ruin hereafter: moreover, that such measures must certainly have a more direct aim at himself and them, whose military virtues rendered them objects of jealousy at court; and the experience of *HUSSEIN*'s reign had proved it to be dangerous for *PERSIANS* to distinguish themselves in the service of their country.

Discourses like these carried with them the appearance of honour and integrity; and many who meant well to the royal family, had their loyalty shaken under the specious pretence of the public good. But not to throw all the odium on the king, *NADIR* artfully insinuated to these, that the ministers, whom their sovereign had employed to negotiate this peace, had been false to their trust; or *PERSIA*, supported by their victorious arms, would certainly have obtained terms less dishonourable. As to the common soldiers, what offended them most, was the consideration that no particular gratuity was promised them on their dismissal, after their great and signal services.

Under these circumstances, a man of less art and resolution than *NADIR*, might have tainted their minds with rebellious sentiments; however, it was necessary to conduct his designs to an issue with great circumspection, since there could not be wanting numbers in his army, who were much more inclined to displace their general than their king. Things were not yet arrived to maturity; nor could any certain judgment be formed of the state of affairs at so great a distance. The court was diffident of the general, and the general jealous of the court, so that neither knew exactly what the other intended.



NADIR was not at a loss to find pretences for delaying his return to court, and some time was necessary to plan his scheme for the increase of his power. It is hard to say, if the strong impulse of self-preservation had not almost as great a share as ambition. The easy credulous nature of TÆHMAS might have forgiven all that was past, with regard to the insolence of his general, in demanding so extraordinary a power as that of raising money, and his imperious conduct in the use of it. But several of the great men about the king's person, some from a knowledge of NADIR's boundless ambition, and others from private resentment, were so desirous of seeing him humbled, that they could not keep their own council. They discovered their opinion and designs to those, who were secretly in the interest of the general. Of all these intrigues and private commotions, the general was made acquainted; also of the conduct of some, who spoke disrespectfully of the king himself. He was therefore the better qualified how to act his part, when he should return to court.

He had employed the end of the last year, and the beginning of this, chiefly in levying men, and disciplining his army; which now amounted to near 70,000 men, the greatest part of them TARTARS. The particular regard he had for the province of KHORASAN, engaged his attention in every instance that could promote the welfare and security of it; and as a natural effect of his power, as well as to strengthen his interest in that country, he gave the government of the province to his son RIZA KOULI. And tho' this step was presumed to be with the king's approbation, yet as this province had generally been given to one of the royal blood, his conduct in this instance seemed to demonstrate a despotic authority.

Having made this disposition, he set out about the month of JUNE, making slow marches towards ISFAHAN, where he arrived in AUGUST. The people, as well as the king and his court, seemed to dread his approach. All persons of discernment saw that he could mount no higher, without seizing the diadem. The king himself hardly dared to name any persons to fill up the first employments of the empire, without the consent of his general. TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN ever took occasion to

1732. represent the necessity of supporting a great army, and that the national revenues ought to be appropriated to that purpose, prior to any of those large salaries, which he pretended were unnecessarily annexed to the great offices of the crown. Indeed he was the spirit that animated the whole army; he entered so intirely into the business of it, that hardly the meanest common soldier committed any offence, deserted, or died, but he was immediately acquainted; and the great strength of his memory enabled him to act in every circumstance of the military œconomy.

TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN was now to shew a master-piece of policy. Directed by those principles which had been instrumental to his advancement to his present height of power, he was if possible to make the SHAH subscribe to his own ruin. As soon as he arrived near ISFAHAN, and encamped his army, he waited on the king to inform him in what manner he had been employed, and how much he had his majesty's interest at heart. He represented at the same time, that his majesty had been very ill advised with regard to the peace he had lately concluded with the TURKS, since he was morally certain, that the army under his command, if they might be permitted, would soon drive the TURKS to their antient confines, and perhaps make the grand signior tremble in his capital; so that those ministers, who had advised his majesty to this step, were certainly no friends to their country, and could not have the glory of their sovereign at heart; adding, he had too much reason to believe, that such men were his own enemies also; and that he was informed some of them had gone so far, as to advise his majesty to imbrue his hands in the blood of that man, whom he had been pleased so highly to honour; whose services he had so often acknowledged; and whose only happiness it was to devote his life to his service.

The SHAH, who had for some time dissembled his resentment, was now inclined to believe that his general had been misrepresented to him. The KHAN, who watched every motion of his heart, found it a proper season to regain his master's good opinion. The SHAH denied that any person had recommended to him to deprive his general of his life. KOULI KHAN, in very tender passionate terms then represented to him, how much  
his



his majesty was a prey to evil counsellors; and as the treacherous courtiers of his father, by their intrigues would have cut off LUTF ALI KHAN, at the very time that the army under his command might have saved the empire; so they were now playing off the same diabolical engines to ruin his majesty. He then produced the letters already mentioned, which he had received from several persons at court, whilst he was in KHORASAN; and begged his majesty would be pleased to read them, and judge from thence of the fidelity of his ministers. After this, assuring the king of his own readiness to devote his life to his service, he retired.

TÆHMAS SHAH having read the letters, of which it is probable some were real, was astonished to see the perfidy of several of those in whom he had placed a confidence. But as this treasonable correspondence seemed rather to argue a contempt of his person, than a design against his life or crown; the gentleness of his mind naturally disposed him to forgiveness, at least to dissemble his resentment for the present.

## C H A P. IX.

KOULI KHAN *seizes* SHAH TÆHMAS. *The infant* ABAS *elects* king. *Intrigues of* KOULI KHAN. TÆHMAS SHAH *removed to* SEBSAWAR. *The two sons of* KOULI KHAN *nominated to the principal governments.* *His manifesto disclaiming the peace with the* TURKS. TOPAL OSMAN BASHA *appointed* SERASKIER *of the* TURKISH *army.* KOULI KHAN *marches to* BAGDAT.

THE distractions of the preceding years seemed to have banished all sentiments of virtue from the hearts of the PERSIANS; insomuch, that the unfortunate SHAH TÆHMAS had really no friends, or none who were men of abilities. The only persons who had been about him since his restoration, remarkable for their honour and capacity, were MYRZA DAUDAM, a GEORGIAN prince, who had been married to one of his sisters in his father's time; and SEFFIE KOULI KHAN; the first of these was killed in the late action at ERIVAN, and the latter being taken pri-

1723. soner, fell a sacrifice to the resentment of the TURKS, as already related. It is probable, that the general aimed at the destruction of those, whom he apprehended would be the greatest bar to his ambition. Whether he meant to procure their removal, or only to gain the confidence of his master, that he might the more easily get him into his possession, is not material; this conclusion we may draw from the SHAH's passive conduct, that it probably encouraged KOULI KHAN to proceed farther than he at first intended.

It is certain, however, when he discovered that the letters produced no effect with regard to the persons whom he desired to destroy, he naturally concluded that he was himself marked out for destruction; for he could not be ignorant in what degree his conduct had rendered him obnoxious. He acquainted the chiefs of his army with his apprehensions, and possessed them with an opinion, that their interest and safety were inseparably connected with his own. The sentiments which they had previously entertained of the king and his court, together with the late peace concluded with the TURKS, confirmed them in an opinion, that the king had resolved to disband the army, and to call the general and his adherents to a severe account. TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN artfully insinuated, that there was an expedient by which they could not only preserve themselves, but also save their country from the consequences of this ruinous peace.

He then communicated the project he had formed, of deposing TÆHMAS, and putting that prince's son, ABAS MYRZA, an infant of six months, in his place; and since there was no other method, he would, with their approbation, enter immediately on this important business, the conduct of which they might leave to him. The matter being thus agreed, under an engagement of the most inviolable secrecy; the next step was how to prevail on the SHAH to leave the city, and afford him a fair opportunity of securing his person.

Whatever designs the SHAH might have, he dissembled them for the present, without seeming to be suspicious; and tho' he had destroyed the treasonable letters, yet they made such an impression on him, that he



thought the general at least as faithful as his other courtiers; and therefore made no scruple to accept an invitation to see his army in review. The evolutions and appearance of his soldiers gave him great satisfaction, and might have afforded him a fair opportunity of removing the general. The sight of their prince naturally drew the attention of the subalterns and common soldiers: as he rode through the ranks, many of them declared aloud, "That if he had any particular command they were ready  
" to execute it." The boldest traitor, whilst a plot is ripening for execution, must feel some tremors, when there is any ground to think his treason is discovered. The general, in whose hearing this declaration was made, was at first surprized; but recovering himself, he desired the SHAH to tell them, "That as the command of the army was given to him, the  
" proof of their obedience to their sovereign was to obey their general."

After the review was over, the KHAN invited the SHAH to a repast. This crafty AFSHAR, as if he had learnt from that master of treachery MIR VAIS, how to carry his treason into execution<sup>2</sup>, though his purpose was not bloody; had prepared this snare to entangle his sovereign. Whether fatigue or the infusion of a drug helped to overpower the king; a small quantity of wine intoxicated him. Under these circumstances, this unhappy prince was an object of the derision of the general's creatures; and in this condition he ordered him to be removed to an apartment in the gardens of HAZARJERIB, there to be kept under a strong guard. The king's attendants, who insisted on the right of taking charge of his majesty's person, were seized by the guards, and put under confinement.

TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN having corrupted the great officers of state, as well as his own generals, called an assembly the next day, which he harangued to this effect: "All the world knows how much I have the  
" interest of my country at heart, and how prodigal I have been of my  
" life to advance the welfare of it. We have seen, by the late reign, the  
" fatal consequences which attend a weak and pusillanimous conduct: and  
" shall we be idle spectators of our own ruin? SHAH TÆHMAS has al-  
" ready

<sup>2</sup> See Vol. III. page 47.

1732. “ ready given us a proof of his incapacity to govern. Could a prince, “ inspired with a common resolution, or in any degree sensible of the interest of his subjects, have made so scandalous a peace with the TURKS: “ a people, who have adopted it as a principle of their politics, as well “ as religion, to pillage and lay waste this country? There is no king “ but he, who being worthy of a crown wears it with dignity; let us “ hasten to dethrone a prince, whose weakness and cowardice will soon “ plunge us into those misfortunes, out of which we are but just recovered. We have in his son an heir of the true line, who under “ the conduct of wise tutors will learn the art of government. In the “ mean while the kingdom may be ruled by a regency, who have the “ honour and interest of their country at heart.”

This discourse met with all the applause from those who were intirely his creatures, which his most sanguine expectations could suggest: he then demanded of the assembly, what should be done further with the king; this question alarmed them a little, fearing a design of putting him to death, which they would hardly have been wicked enough to consent to. They made answer, that nothing more was necessary to be done; however, upon maturer deliberation, to prevent the disorders which might arise from his being near ISFAHAN; it was agreed, that he should be removed to some remote part in the eastern provinces of the empire; and he was accordingly sent to SEBSAWAR<sup>a</sup>, under a strong convoy of OUSBEGS and AFGHANS of the SUNNI religion.

The next debate turned upon his successor. As they set out on pretended principles of equity, and the general himself had declared, he meant to preserve the diadem to the royal line in the person of the young ABAS, it could hardly be expected, even in this corrupt assembly, there should be a single person who dared to propose any other than the infant prince. Some of the most abandoned however, declared there was none so proper as the general himself, as the circumstances of the state required a prince who was capable of conducting an army. The KHAN rebuked them with an air of indignation; alledging, that the hereditary

<sup>a</sup> A city in KHORASAN.



hereditary rights of princes were sacred, so long as they took no step to injure the people whom they govern. He was indeed already possessed of an unlimited power, and might have embraced so favourable a conjuncture to grasp at the crown; but he could not be ignorant, that such an attempt would be attended with some danger. There must have been great numbers in his army, who were not yet entirely devoted to his service; nor could the reputation of his exploits have so firmly established his character, as to countenance so daring an attempt. We cannot say that his ambition yielded to his policy, but that he seasoned both with patience, till his army should be more accustomed to his authority, and receive more demonstrative proofs of his abilities.

The apprehensions of an insurrection had induced the general to cause a proclamation to be made in the city, that no persons should stir out of their houses; but as soon as he discovered that the neighbourhood of the army kept the people in sufficient awe, and that the unfortunate TÆHMAS had no adherents who dared to oppose his pleasure, he revoked those orders, and business went on as usual. Preparations were now made for the inauguration of the young prince ABAS. TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN entered ISFAHAN with great pomp, and going directly to the palace, caused public notice to be given, that the KHAN and the great officers of the crown had declared SHAH TÆHMAS incapable of holding the reins of government; and therefore they had chosen his son ABAS, the third of that name, emperor of PERSIA.

The young infant was accordingly brought out in his cradle, and the diadem fixed to the right side of his head, as a mark of his sovereignty; the general himself first took the oath of allegiance on the khoran, and prostrated himself in homage to the new king; all the other great officers followed his example.

KOULI KHAN and his creatures now gave the law, not so much in form of a regency, as in consequence of their offices. He had acquired the ascendancy, and was in fact the sovereign. Orders were sent to all the provinces, to notify the accession of ABAS III. to the throne;

1732. and such officers were appointed for the respective governments, as suited the pleasure and interest of the general. He then celebrated his nuptials with the aunt of the dethroned SHAH. His eldest son, RIZA KOULI, we have observed, was appointed governor of KHORASAN; and his second son, NEZR ALI, was now made governor of HERAT. His elder brother IBRAHIM, one of the followers of his fortunes, was made a KHAN, and the government of TAVRIS was assigned him. KHERMAN was conferred on his next brother. Besides these, many other dispositions of the like nature were made, and the several offices of most importance were given to persons devoted to his interest. He then consulted for the further advancement of his own fortune, and the gratification of his passion for military glory. All these events passed in the month of AUGUST.

Thus did this great wicked man, under the specious pretence of promoting the honour and interest of his country, prepare the way to ascend the giddy heights of his ambition. He seemed already to look down on these instruments of his pride, as wretches who were assiduous in forging their own chains.

The activity of his genius suffered not a moment to be lost. In order to give the greater sanction to his conduct, upon the principles of national love, he published a manifesto, disclaiming the peace which had been lately made with the TURKS. It was in a more particular manner addressed to the BASHA of BAGDAT, and conceived in these terms:  
 “ Be it known to you, the BASHA of BAGDAT, that we claim an indu-  
 “ bitable right of visiting the tombs of the IMAMS, ALI, GHERBELLAI,  
 “ MAHALLADE, MOUZA, and HUSSEIN<sup>b</sup>. We demand the delivery of  
 “ all the PERSIANS who have been taken prisoners in the late war: and  
 “ as the blood of our countrymen yet smokes, and calls upon their sove-  
 “ reign for vengeance, there ought to be so much shed of the subjects  
 “ of the grand signior, as these have spilt of the subjects of the king of  
 “ PERSIA. We make these our sentiments known, that you may not  
 “ accuse us of the dishonour of taking you by surprize. We are going  
 “ soon

<sup>b</sup> These are prophets who are held in veneration by the PERSIANS, and whose tombs are near BAGDAT.



“ soon at the head of our victorious army to breathe the sweet air of the  
 “ plains of BAGDAT, and to take our repose under the shadow of its  
 “ walls.”

1732.

ACHMED, BASHA of BAGDAT, immediately acquainted the OTTOMAN court of the extraordinary menace which had been sent him. The TURKS being thus alarmed, the grand vizir and the mufti were disgraced, as having been the chief advisers in making a peace with the PERSIANS, at a time when the OTTOMAN armies were victorious. On the 6th of OCTOBER, the horse's tail, which is the signal of war, was hung out at the seraglio at CONSTANTINOPLE; and the divan declared war against the PERSIANS with the ordinary solemnities. Orders were also sent to equip a fleet of ships on the BLACK SEA, to transport a large body of Janissaries and Spahis to TREBISONDE, together with all kind of ammunition for the security of the strong places in GEORGIA. The BASHAS of NATOLIA and EGYPT were ordered to send their quotas of men to the succour of BAGDAT. At the same time, ACHMED BASHA put himself in a condition of holding out a long siege.

In the beginning of MARCH this year, TOPAL OSMAN, late vizir, and now BASHA of TREBISONDE, was appointed generalissimo of the OTTOMAN army, which consisted of near 80,000 men. Tho' the caprice of the TURKS had rendered it necessary to deprive him of his office of vizir, his great valour and integrity, joined to a large experience, gave him the highest place in the esteem of his master the grand signior: and the great share he had in recommending the late pacific treaty with the PERSIANS, created in him a quicker resentment of their violation of that treaty.

1733.

The grand signior acquainted the EUROPEAN courts of the cause of his military preparations, in consequence of the usurpation of TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN, under pretence of electing the infant-king ABAS. The PERSIAN general affected great unconcern at the menaces and preparations of the TURKS; for tho' he knew they could send large armies into the field, yet he scrupled not to declare, that the fortune of war did not so



1733. much depend on numbers, as on the valour and experience of soldiers. He thought it his interest however to cultivate a good understanding with the RUSSIANS, and sent an embassador to acquaint them of the accession of ABAS the III. to the throne of the PERSIAN empire. The court of ST. PETERSBURG received this embassador with all the honour due to ministers of his rank ; and tho' the deposing of SHAH TÆHMAS was in itself a circumstance ungrateful to them, yet the natural interest of RUSSIA could not but render it agreeable, to find that the TURKS were threatened to be humbled by the victorious troops of TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN.

In the mean time, the PERSIAN general having collected all his forces from the eastern provinces, and engaged also a body of ARABIANS, the plains of HAMADAN were appointed for a general rendezvous. The army consisted of near 80,000 fighting men ; and as the fortune of KOULI KHAN, and the bravery of his men promised some remarkable success, the provinces sent in their respective quotas of troops with great alacrity. Of the grandees of the court of ISFAHAN, some through hope of promotion, and others through fear of the resentment of KOULI KHAN, were induced to accompany him in this war ; which answered a double purpose to him, as it prevented their caballing in his absence, and by means of their influence in their respective provinces, put him in a better capacity of carrying on the war with vigour.

TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN at the head of this formidable army, began his march from ISFAHAN in the month of FEBRUARY, directing his course towards HAMADAN. As soon as he arrived on the plains near that city, he made a general review of his forces, and encouraged his men by assuring them, that he did not doubt before it was long, he should fix his standards on the ramparts of CONSTANTINOPLE.

The first operation of the campaign was the siege of KERMANSHA<sup>c</sup>. SHAH TÆHMAS had certainly erred in his politics, in yielding up this place to the TURKS, as its vicinity to PERSIA must necessarily have occasioned great jealousies between the subjects, as well as the governments of both

<sup>c</sup> This is a great city, which DE LISLE's map includes in IRAK AGAMI, but it is generally understood to be in KOURDESTAN.



both countries. A great part of the inhabitants were PERSIANS; so that 1733. TÆMAS KOULI KHAN was hardly arrived there with his whole army, when the inhabitants opened their gates to him. The unfortunate governor was put to death, in return for the violence on SEFFIE KOULI KHAN at CONSTANTINOPLE; this execution was performed in the sight of the whole army. Several other TURKS had the same fate<sup>d</sup>. After appointing ABDAL BAKI KHAN as governor, and leaving a garrison of his own people in this city, TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN began his march towards BAGDAT. This was the favourite object he had in view: he knew that ACHMED, BASHA of that city and its dependencies, had made the necessary preparations for its defence; but he flattered himself, that by taking the field so much earlier than the TURKS could collect an army to oppose him, he should bring the BASHA to a submission.

The TURKS had the precaution to send detachments of their forces to guard the defiles on the PERSIAN side, which cover the plains towards the frontiers of BAGDAT. These however were easily forced; the TURKS having neither skill, courage, nor numbers to stop the progress of the PERSIAN army. Traversing the great forest between the cities MENDELI and NEZERETH, he passed the river SYNNEE, on the banks of which the TURKS had in vain erected several batteries. Then coming into the plains of BAGDAT, he crossed the river KENTOUL, which is a branch of the TIGRIS, and after a march of twenty days, he arrived the 10th of APRIL under the walls of BAGDAT.

<sup>d</sup> I cannot help remarking, how fond some writers of historical accounts of PERSIA are of shedding blood: if any number of persons are put to death, they make whole cities massacred. Again, if an army consists of 50,000 men, they mention them as 100,000; but this last error seems to arise from the numerous followers of the camp.



## C H A P. X.

*Description of BAGDAT. This city is besieged. The conduct of KOULI KHAN. The vigilance of ACHMED BASHA. Stratagem of TOPAL OSMAN. The PERSIAN army defeated with great slaughter. Letter of ACHMED BASHA to the grand signior. Great rejoicings at the OTTOMAN court for the victory over the PERSIANS. TOPAL OSMAN sends his army into quarters.*

1733. **B**EFORE we enter upon any circumstance relating to the siege of BAGDAT, it may afford some light to the subject, to give a short account of this famous city, in the neighbourhood of which formerly stood the metropolis <sup>e</sup> of one of the most antient and most potent monarchies in the world. The place is generally called BAGDAT or BAGDAD, tho' some writers preserve the antient name of BABYLON. The reason of thus confounding these two cities is, that the TIGRIS and EUPHRATES forming one common stream before they disembogue into the PERSIAN gulph, are not unfrequently mentioned as one and the same river. It is certain that the present BAGDAT is situated on the TIGRIS <sup>f</sup>, but the antient BABYLON, according to all historians sacred and prophane, was on the EUPHRATES. The ruins of the latter, which geographical writers place about fifteen leagues to the south of BAGDAT, are now so much effaced, that there are hardly any vestiges of them to point out the situation. In the time of the emperor THEODOSIUS there was only a great park remaining, in which the kings of PERSIA bred wild beasts for the amusement of hunting.

BAGDAT,

<sup>e</sup> BABYLON, the seat of the kings of ASSYRIA.

<sup>f</sup> The waters of this river, which is called DIDGELIE by the TURKS and PERSIANS, are reckoned extremely wholesome, and not less agreeable to the taste. This river issues with a great noise from a cavern to the north of the city DIARBEKIR, near which there is a very good stone bridge over it. Before it reaches this place it takes in several other rivers, and running to the eastward is augmented by the WEINI, FERDGIL, BICHERI, and others which come from the east. After passing BAGDAT it receives a great increase from the DIALA, and meets the EUPHRATES not far from DGENASIR. Near VASIT it divides into many branches, and forms several islands, called the islands of the ARABIAN river. At CORNA it again joins the EUPHRATES, and disembogues itself into the PERSIAN gulph below BASSORA, its whole course being computed 400 leagues.



BAGDAT, formerly the seat of the ABBASSINEAN CALIPHS, is the capital of IRAC-ARABI. This country is reckoned 120 leagues long and 80 broad, though great part of it is very poorly inhabited. It includes several districts, and is one of the most important governments in the OTTOMAN empire. The city is situated on the east side of the TIGRIS, on the banks of which it extends about two miles. It was built on the ruins of the antient SELEUCIA, near the year 760. The government of the CALIPHS being extinct, the city was united to the kingdom of PERSIA about the year 1250, but was taken by AMURATH the IVth in 1638, and has remained under the dominion of the OTTOMAN empire, notwithstanding the repeated efforts of the PERSIAN monarchs to recover it. 1733.

The fortification is composed of lofty thick walls of brick, covered with earth, strengthened by great towers in form of bastions placed at certain distances, and protected by a deep ditch, which can be filled at any time by the waters of the TIGRIS. The citadel is on the north side, and commands the river. The whole fortification is furnished with near 200 pieces of cannon<sup>§</sup>. The garrison generally consists of a body of ten thousand men, and in time of war more than twice that number, besides the ordinary militia, which is 12,000 men. From hence it is easy to conceive, that under an experienced commander this place could hardly be taken by an eastern army, any otherwise than by famine. Its happy situation on the TIGRIS is an advantage which enables it, upon the apprehension of an enemy, to lay in a large supply of provisions.

The suburbs being very extensive, and raised on both sides of the TIGRIS, there is a communication by a bridge of boats, the only one which that river will admit of, as it is broad and deep, and in its ordinary course very rapid. At certain seasons it swells to a prodigious height, and overflowing the country, occasions many morasses on the side opposite to the city. Among these are several towns and villages, whose inhabitants are said to be the antient CALDEANS. These people are of a particular religion,

<sup>§</sup> These were formerly only six pounders, but of late some of them have been exchanged for heavier.



1733. gion, which they pretend is that of SETH: there are also a great number of ARABS in this neighbourhood, who render travelling dangerous. The advantage of the TIGRIS is so considerable with regard to commerce, that altho' the climate is excessive hot, and in other respects far from being agreeable, yet there are a great number of inhabitants in this city. The greatest part of these are PERSIANS, ARMENIANS, and JEWS. The two last occupy near half the city, and drive a considerable trade with BAS-SORA<sup>h</sup>, and the inland parts. The JEWS are the more engaged to live here, from a reverence to the sepulchre of the prophet EZEKIEL, which it is pretended is a day's journey from the city.

TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN having found means to corrupt some of the inhabitants of this important city, made his advances with great confidence. However, he was in want of artillery, and of course in no capacity to make regular approaches, had he possessed the skill of an EUROPEAN general. His great business was to invest the city, and force the inhabitants to a submission by famine, or subdue them by stratagem. MYRZA KHAN, an officer of great valour and experience, who had been an early follower of the fortunes of KOULI KHAN, was sent with 10,000 men a league up the TIGRIS, and passed the river near the suburbs of KOUCH KALESSI<sup>i</sup>. This detachment executed their business without any considerable loss: after pillaging the town, they fixed their camp in that neighbourhood<sup>k</sup>. Here they found a piece of cannon of a very great size, which the BASHA, notwithstanding his great circumspection, had neglected to bring away, or render useless. But this was the only battering cannon in the PERSIAN army, and was by no means sufficient to make a breach, tho' it was used with some success, and helped to intimidate the inhabitants.

BAGDAT,

<sup>h</sup> They have cover'd vessels called TEKNES, in which they bring the produce of INDIA and other countries up the TIGRIS. There are also others call'd DANES and GURABS.

<sup>i</sup> Signifies in ARABIC the bird tower. <sup>k</sup> It is reported that the waters of the TIGRIS soon after swell'd to a great degree, and cut off all communication from the main body of the PERSIAN army: that the TURKS took the opportunity to attack this officer, who maintained his ground very gallantly; but being over-power'd by numbers was obliged to retreat after a considerable loss. And that this circumstance, in a great measure, contributed to the defeat of the PERSIAN general some time after. But what TURKS these were who defeated him is not said, unless it was after the battle of KERKOU; and as TOPAL OSMAN, as well as ACHMED BASHA, are silent on this head, I must leave MYRZA KHAN to be disposed of as the reader pleases.



BAGDAT was now closely blocked up on both sides the TIGRIS, by an army of 80,000 men, so that neither troops, ammunition, nor provisions could be thrown into the town. The TURKISH garrison within the walls consisted of about 20,000 men, besides the militia. They laboured however under the great inconveniency of having a number of PERSIAN inhabitants, some of whom might be supposed in the interest of the PERSIAN general; so that ACHMED had his attention divided both within and without the walls. But in order to prevent any evil consequence from hence, tho' the majority were much more disposed to live under the TURKISH government than the PERSIAN; he caused some of the principal among them to take up their lodging in the citadel, as hostages for the good behaviour of their countrymen. TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN having thus cantoned his army, and blockaded the city, expected to oblige ACHMED BASHA to a surrender by famine: nor could he well have failed, if his vanity had not got the better of his prudence.

TOPAL OSMAN BASHA, though an able and experienced officer, and zealous in the last degree for the glory of his master, and the welfare of his country; would hardly have been able to relieve BAGDAT, and prevent its being dismembered from the OTTOMAN empire, had the PERSIAN general been less confident of his success. When this BASHA was appointed SERASKIER<sup>1</sup> of the OTTOMAN army, his credit at the port was very great; yet the succours and reinforcements of money, troops, and ammunition, which were promised him, were sent only in small proportions, and in a very irregular manner, so that he was unavoidably obliged to remain several months in a state of inaction.

During this interval, TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN, already anticipating his triumphs in imagination, wrote to the BASHA of MOSUL, summoning him to surrender, adding words to this effect<sup>m</sup>: “ I am informed that a certain  
“ TURKISH general, whose slow advances give me no great idea of his  
“ courage,

<sup>1</sup> General in chief                      <sup>m</sup> Messages of defiance have been long disused among EUROPEAN generals; nor would I have inserted these, but to give some idea of the character of TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN.

1733. “ courage, has been a long time in march, intending to oppose my conquest. Let him know, that I desire he will make more speed; and, in order to shorten his way, I will meet him with part of my forces, which are sufficient to make him repent of his rashness. I will not only take his little army, but himself also as a child in his BECHIK <sup>a</sup>.”

TOPAL OSMAN being informed of this message, replied: “ The grand signior my master has armies as numerous as the sands of the seas, and many chiefs to conduct his forces; but he has chosen my feeble arm, with only a small army, to confound thy pride. It is true, I am lame <sup>o</sup>, old, and sickly, but I hope by the assistance of the Almighty, that thou wilt meet the fate of NIMROD <sup>p</sup>.”

In order to facilitate the junction of his troops, as well as to advance nearer BAGDAT, TOPAL OSMAN decamped from DIARBEKIR, and marched along the banks of the TIGRIS; he passed this river at MOSUL, and continued his march towards CHERCHESENE. This province is subject to the OTTOMAN empire, and had been laid waste by the PERSIANS. He then directed his course to KERKOUND <sup>q</sup>, a city forty leagues distant from MOSUL, where the BASHA of the province resides. He had several considerable branches of the TIGRIS to pass, besides the rivers HAZIR, JARB, and ALTUN; over some of these he was obliged to transport his troops on floats, which retarded his march; whilst this army was forming, by the several detachments and small parties which joined him from different parts. In this situation, if KOULI KHAN had put himself at the head of a body of his best troops, and at the same time left a sufficient number, which he could have done, to stop the communications to BAGDAT, in all probability he might have rendered the utmost efforts of the SERASKIER ineffectual. But his vanity betrayed him; elate with his successes, which

hitherto

<sup>a</sup> This word signifies cradle and litter; TOPAL OSMAN on account of his infirmities being obliged to use the latter.

<sup>o</sup> TOPAL in the TURKISH language signifies lame, and was an appellation given to OSMAN, according to the custom in TURKEY, in consequence of a wound he received, which really lamed him, the circumstances of which I shall relate hereafter.

<sup>p</sup> The TURKS have a fabulous tradition, that the pride of NIMROD, who equalled himself with GOD, was chastised by a singular providence, in a fly creeping up his nose to his brain, with which he died in excessive pain; and the BASHA here expresses himself with humility, by way of contrast to the insolence of KOULI KHAN.

<sup>q</sup> This place is also called CHERAZOUR, and is generally esteemed the capital of KOURDISTAN.



hitherto had met with no interruption, he affected to treat the TURKS 1733. as enemies not in the least formidable.

While the TURKISH army was forming, KOULI KHAN erected two forts about two leagues from BAGDAT, one on each side of the TYGRIS, which communicated by a bridge of boats. He then caused a great number of houses to be built upon the banks of the river: in some of these the principal officers resided, and lodged their wives and household: others were occupied by part of the soldiery, or used by sutlers and artificers, with shops well supplied. The same abundance seemed to reign here, as in the richest city in the heart of PERSIA.

It is probable, that KOULI KHAN was actuated by motives of policy, in building these houses; for on the one hand, this was likely to excite his troops to the greater bravery, in order to save their effects from being plundered, and their wives and children from captivity; and, on the other, the TURKISH garrison might be driven to despair, by seeing the enemy build a city under their walls. However, it is certain, by such methods, and by his threatening summons, the inhabitants were intimidated to a very great degree. He let them know continually, that they should have quarter and good usage, if they surrendered; adding, that TOPAL OSMAN was absolutely unable to relieve them; and, if they obliged him to give an assault, he would make a general massacre, or sell into slavery all who should escape the sword. The extreme necessity the town laboured under occasioned such murmurings, that it required all the address of ACHMED BASHA to prevent an insurrection. He was therefore obliged to punish some, and to soothe others; feigning false expresses from TOPAL OSMAN, that he was in full march, and just on the point of relieving them.

The inhabitants were likewise intimidated by the stratagems of KOULI KHAN, who often sent from his camp in the night detached parties of several thousands, both horse and foot, with orders to make a long round, and enter the camp another way, with colours flying, as if they were fresh reinforcements. To insult the misery of the inhabitants, as if he

1733. knew their distress, he sent ACHMED BASHA a present of some carts load of water melons, desiring him to divert his hunger. ACHMED returned his compliments, and sent a handsome present of the best bread; observing, that with such he made a shift to gratify his own hunger, and that of the citizens. Indeed the BASHA played his part so well, that KOULI KHAN was really ignorant to what an extremity the city was reduced. The vigilance and abilities of the governor, had hitherto defeated the arts of the PERSIAN general; but matters were at last brought to such an extremity, after being blocked up three months, that no kind of necessaries could have been procured for four days longer; so that the town must have inevitably fallen into the hands of a cruel and enraged enemy.

TOPAL OSMAN, having now increased his army to near 80,000, in his march to KERKOUND had taken two PERSIAN prisoners. He ordered them to be brought before him, treated them civilly, and enquired if they were well acquainted with the by-roads and private ways to BAGDAT. Upon their answering in the affirmative, he told them, that as upon that account they were much fitter for his purpose than any of his own people, who would certainly be taken; if they would undertake so bold an action, and deliver a letter into the hands of ACHMED BASHA, the governor of BAGDAT, he would give each of them a thousand sequins before they set out; and that they might expect greater rewards if they proved faithful, as the letter was of the greatest consequence. However he demanded of them to swear fidelity to him, to which they consented. The letter was to this effect: “As I have not yet been joined by all the troops I  
 “ expect, I am obliged to march very slowly, in order to give the rest  
 “ time to come up, before I am too near to TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN,  
 “ against whom I am not yet able to make head; therefore I desire you  
 “ will have still some farther patience: keep yourself close within your  
 “ walls, and husband, to the best advantage, what provisions and neces-  
 “ saries are yet left.”

The two PERSIANS were no honestier than he expected: they received their sequins, and hastened to the camp of KOULI KHAN, in hopes of a further reward from their own general. The letter produced all the effects  
 the



the SERASKIER could desire. The expectations of TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN swelled to the highest degree; and in the triumph of his imagination he looked upon the SERASKIER as already vanquished. 1733.

By the first motions of TOPAL OSMAN'S army towards KERKOUND, it seemed as if he had intended to go directly to BAGDAT; but as he must have been obliged to pass thro' a barren desert, where the troops would have suffered greatly, he returned to the ALLAN, where that river discharges itself into the TIGRIS: the army then marched by the mountain of GEOBAR along the TIGRIS, till they came to DULJEILUCK<sup>r</sup>; about twelve leagues from BAGDAT.

TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN having advice of the march of the TURKS, detached thirty thousand men, mostly cavalry, hoping that the enemy, by the favour of the night, as they were pitching their tents, or decamping, might be surprized. The general of the detachment having taken two TURKISH prisoners, who reported that TOPAL OSMAN had an army of above 100,000 men; this determined him to acquaint KOULI KHAN of his information; and that not being willing to venture against a force said to be so powerful, he waited his orders. KOULI KHAN, upon this, immediately marched at the head of his forces, which were near 70,000, leaving a considerable body of his men<sup>s</sup> before BAGDAT.

The TURKISH army decamped the evening of the 18th of JULY, and marched towards KERKOUND, near which the SERASKIER proposed to encamp. About sun-rising, the advanced guard of the TURKISH army, commanded by BOULAD ACHMED, BASHA of ADENE, met a detachment of the PERSIANS, and a skirmish ensued. Had the SERASKIER been disposed to act on the defensive, the antient bed of the TIGRIS was before him, which formed a deep fosse; but he chose to favour the spirit of his troops: and tho' it was attended with some difficulty, he passed this ditch with his army and artillery. Having reached the plain, he ranged his forces in battalia, in the form of a crescent, dividing them into five different

<sup>r</sup> Called also DUCKURU. <sup>s</sup> This body is said to have been 10,000, and we accordingly find they were put to flight immediately when the TURKS fallied out.



1733. different bodies. He himself commanded the troops of ROMANIA<sup>c</sup> in the center; ABDALLAH AGA was at the head of the right wing with the Janissaries; the KOURDS, and other different troops, under IBRAHIM, late BASHA of CONIE, forming the left wing. MAHOMMED BASHA commanded in the rear.

TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN had hardly time to make a disposition of his forces; and his ground was full of hillocks of sand: however, he divided his men into ten different columns. As he had intended to make the attack, he was a little disconcerted in seeing the BASHA of ADENE, with the TURKISH cavalry that composed their van-guard, advance upon him with great fury; yet his presence of mind was not wanting: he animated his men, and exposed himself so greatly to danger in the heat of the action, that he had two horses killed under him.

At length the TURKISH cavalry gave way, and were pushed as far as their infantry; but these made so good a countenance, that the fury of the PERSIANS was stopped. The PERSIANS thus appearing superior, some of the TURKISH officers counselled the SERASKIER to make a retreat to his camp; to which he declared, that he would rather perish than do any thing that had the appearance of flight. He then ordered the troops of ROMANIA in the center, and the Janissaries in the right wing, to be led up against the center of the PERSIAN army, consisting of 15,000 foot, which soon gave way.

The KOURDS, and other different people, who composed the left wing of the TURKISH army, and whose chief attention was to wait an opportunity of pillage, were now induced to fall on the right wing of the PERSIANS: these maintained their ground very gallantly for some time. NADIR had taken the precaution not only to break up the ways towards MOSUL<sup>d</sup>, but also to send a detachment of 3000

ARABS,

<sup>c</sup> These EUROPEAN TURKS are esteemed the bravest.

<sup>d</sup> Near this place is a very remarkable ruin, in which is an arch, that appears to have been the frontispiece of a great temple, which the inhabitants, who deal in the marvellous, imagine to be part of NINIVĒH, and that it was built by NINUS the son of BALOS, or BELUS; they shew in the neighbourhood the place where the prophet JONAS inhabited, in honour of whom they have built a little chapel, which they visit with devotion:



ARABS<sup>w</sup>, supported by as many PERSIANS, to guard the passes on that side, against the BASHA of that place, in case he should attempt to assist TOPAL OSMAN: but the BASHA advanced, and having found means to corrupt the ARABS, these not only abandoned the pass, but joining the TURKS, obliged the PERSIANS to retire; and then advancing with him, fell upon the main body of the PERSIANS in flank, whilst the whole TURKISH army were already engaged. The PERSIANS could not support the shock: TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN did all that was possible to rally them, but in vain. The standard-bearer<sup>x</sup>, either through fear, or being closely pressed, rode off the field; and a total rout ensued.

The scene of this action being a sandy plain, and the duration of it not less than eight hours, the PERSIANS were so much fatigued, that their flight was rendered the more difficult. Clouds of dust, with the scorching heat of the weather, without a possibility of getting water, added to their distress, and exposed them the more to be slaughtered by their pursuers. Their loss upon this occasion, was not less than 30,000 men, cavalry and infantry; with all their baggage, their camels, and harquebusses. The latter did very little execution, in comparison to the TURKISH artillery.

The number of prisoners taken by the TURKS amounted to about 3000: their victory however cost them dear, for they lost near as many men as the PERSIANS. TOPAL OSMAN ascribed the glory of this day to the bravery of ABDALLAH, the KIAYA, and the Janissaries, whom he led on to action. ABDALLAH being quite spent with fatigue, fainted in the field; the good TOPAL OSMAN supported him in his arms, and when he recovered, assured him that the grand signior should be informed of his merit, and how much the victory, under God, had been owing to him, and to the bravery of the soldiers he commanded. The SERASKIER then dispatched messengers to DIARBEKIR, BAGDAT, and other govern-  
ments,

devotion: their tradition concerning the prophet differs not much from that of the scripture.

<sup>w</sup> This circumstance is not mentioned by those who are of the TURKISH interest, but is not, I believe, without foundation; because, we do not find that NADIR ever afterwards chose their perfidious alliance.

<sup>x</sup> See Vol. I. page 248.

1733. ments, as well as to CONSTANTINOPLE, with an account of the success of the OTTOMAN arms.

In the mean while, ACHMED BASHA, with his garrison at BAGDAT, sallied out, and attacked the PERSIANS, whom KOULI KHAN had left in their entrenchments: they made a gallant defence, but were at length obliged to yield to numbers. Here the besieged found a supply of corn and other provisions, which was in the highest degree welcome to them after so much distress.

ACHMED no sooner received the joyful news of TOPAL OSMAN's signal victory, than he also dispatched a messenger to CONSTANTINOPLE, to inform his master the grand signior of the state of affairs in that great city. As this letter appears to be genuine, and gives an idea not only of the circumstances in which the TURKS were, but likewise of the ORIENTAL manner of writing, it may perhaps be acceptable.

“ May GOD be ever praised and blessed ; for, by his grace, the com-  
 “ mander of the sultan's armies, the ever invincible TOPAL OSMAN  
 “ BASHA, on whom may the most high ever shed his bounties ; and  
 “ may he find mercy before the throne of GOD, at the sounding of the  
 “ trumpet. He has delivered us from the afflictions we have suffered,  
 “ since we were besieged by the PERSIAN armies. The distress of the  
 “ garrison and inhabitants of this city was incredible ; and is beyond de-  
 “ scription. We were surrounded ; we were blocked up ; we were en-  
 “ compassed for the space of a whole league. During three long months,  
 “ TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN, with a body of his troops, pitched his tents  
 “ at IMAN AZEM, on the side of the TIGRIS towards PERSIA, about half  
 “ a league from the city, where he fortified himself with strong lines and  
 “ redoubts ; and used all means to frighten us to a surrender.

“ Sometimes he detached part of his troops, without our being able  
 “ to perceive it ; and ordered them to enter another quarter of his camp,  
 “ with drums beating, and colours flying, and with the sound of trum-  
 “ pets, as if they were fresh forces coming from all quarters to his as-  
 “ sistance.



“ sistance. He built forts on each side the TIGRIS, well mounted with  
 “ artillery; so that all communication was cut off. He was continually  
 “ summoning us to surrender; offering good terms if we would capitulate,  
 “ late, and threatening us with the sword and captivity if we delayed;  
 “ endeavouring to excite the people to mutiny. Your slave took every  
 “ method to keep up their spirits; I held assemblies of the people of  
 “ war; I told them from time to time that I had advice from the invincible  
 “ TOPAL OSMAN BASHA, on whom may the blessings of GOD descend, that he was  
 “ at such a place, and would soon come and pour upon the enemy the  
 “ irresistible force of the OTTOMAN arms, ever victorious, and we should  
 “ soon be delivered. 1733.

“ On the first day of the moon SEFER<sup>z</sup>, the vizir TOPAL OSMAN  
 “ BASHA sent me an express from KERKOUND, by which I received his  
 “ high commands, letting me know that he was arrived at that place.  
 “ I immediately read his letter publicly, that all the people and inhabitants  
 “ might be acquainted with the news; they would hardly believe the letter  
 “ to be genuine; I was obliged to shew it to every one, that they might  
 “ with their own eyes view the seal and hand-writing of the great commander,  
 “ and prevent their despair.

“ On the fourth of<sup>a</sup> SEFER in the morning, TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN ranged  
 “ his army in battle array, and marched towards VUGIUM, leaving a large  
 “ body of his troops behind him to block us up. As soon as our garrison  
 “ and the inhabitants of the city were informed of this, their anxiety  
 “ was renewed. Sometimes they were clamorous to have the gates opened,  
 “ that they might sally forth: sometimes they were determined to wait  
 “ for further news: every one, men and women, young and old, continued  
 “ without intermission, their hands clasped, and their eyes turned to  
 “ heaven, beseeching GOD and his prophet to grant success to our arms.

“ On the ninth<sup>b</sup> of SEFER, just at break of day, as we were lying in  
 “ the dust, offering our prayers to GOD, we perceived on the side of the  
 “ desert,

<sup>z</sup> The 13th of JULY.

<sup>a</sup> The 16th of JULY.

<sup>b</sup> The 21st of JULY.

1733. “ defart, and towards the gate KARANI CAPSI, an officer with twenty-  
 “ five horse-men, with their sabres in their hands. They cried with a  
 “ loud voice, and said, open to us the gates, for we bring good tidings  
 “ to ACHMED BASHA. At first your slave believing them to be spies,  
 “ doubted to give them entrance. But as the AGA who commanded them  
 “ was known to several people from the walls, I caused the gate to be  
 “ opened. As soon as he was entered, they began to call aloud, O in-  
 “ habitants of BAGDAT forget your sorrows and rejoice, for the great and  
 “ mighty commander TOPAL OSMAN BASHA, has entirely vanquished the  
 “ army of the PERSIANS; he has cut in pieces 60,000 of the enemy: <sup>c</sup>  
 “ TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN is fled undistinguished among those whom our  
 “ sabres could not reach.

“ The officer then delivered to me the letter which the invincible vizir  
 “ had wrote, imparting to me the news of his victory. No sooner was  
 “ this spread abroad, than the whole city seemed as people risen from  
 “ the dead: they said with one common voice, let us fall upon the re-  
 “ mains of the PERSIANS before they have time to fly. The garrison  
 “ assembled with the principal inhabitants of the city, and your slave at  
 “ their head, fell upon the PERSIANS; we poured in upon them like  
 “ the mighty torrents, like the thunder of the waters of the Almighty;  
 “ they resisted for some time, but at length gave way to our victorious  
 “ arms, and fell under the edge of our sabres. All their artillery, am-  
 “ munition and provisions, which were in great abundance, by the fa-  
 “ vour of the prophet came into our possession.

“ A great number of people who had no horses, and others who were  
 “ too old to bear arms, bowing their heads, and crossing their arms,  
 “ and covering themselves with the dress of the grave, having in a most  
 “ supplicant manner cried for mercy; my bowels were moved with com-  
 “ passion towards them, I pitied their condition, and ordered that quar-  
 “ ter should be given them, with liberty to retire. As for those who  
 “ fled over the plains, it was no longer a fight, it was a hunting in the  
 “ forest,

<sup>c</sup> We may allow people to magnify their success extremely on such an occasion as this; and this happens to be double the number which the PERSIANS really lost.



“ forest, a chace of the beasts of the desert. Our victorious troops cutting  
 “ down every thing before them, pursued the enemy with the sword. 1733.

“ The next day we returned thanks to God and his prophet: we  
 “ planted on the walls the standards of the vanquished enemy, with all  
 “ the other trophies of our victory. After the public rejoicings and  
 “ thanksgivings were over, we buried in their tombs such of our people  
 “ as had the glory to receive the crown of martyrdom. We then cut  
 “ off the heads of all the enemy who were slain; we piled them in  
 “ heaps on the field of battle; and threw the bodies into the TIGRIS.  
 “ The day after, the great and mighty conqueror, TOPAL OSMAN BASHA,  
 “ arrived with his victorious army at IMAM AZEM, the suburbs of BAG-  
 “ DAT, whither the people of all ranks, young and old, ran to lick the  
 “ dust of his feet.

“ The day following, I, your slave, accompanied by the BASHAS and  
 “ great officers here, with my whole retinue, and all the principal in-  
 “ habitants of BAGDAT, went with the great SERASKIER, and returned  
 “ thanks in the mosque of IMAM AZEM, for the victories obtained, and  
 “ for the end of our great afflictions. I send you this account, under the  
 “ providence of GOD, by CHASSOUCAR-AGA, whom may the Almighty  
 “ safely conduct.”

TOPAL OSMAN remained with the TURKISH army two days on the field of battle burying the dead: this victory cost very dear, not only by the death of so many common soldiers, but also by the loss of many persons of great distinction. The wounded, who were in great numbers, he sent to MOSUL. Among these he found the father-in-law and nephew of KOULI KHAN, whom he treated with great generosity; and after their wounds were dressed, he sent them to the PERSIAN general, with some propositions concerning a peace<sup>s</sup>. To the latter no reply was made; but he acknowledged his obligations to the SERASKIER for the humane treatment of his relations, and that he hoped 'ere long to return the obligation after the same manner.

M 2

The

<sup>s</sup> Others mention their having been sent to CONSTANTINOPLE; but I believe TOPAL OSMAN sought to appease rather than to enrage KOULI KHAN.

1733.

The TURKISH general no sooner received a report of the circumstances of his own army after the battle, than he sent one of his favourite<sup>d</sup> officers to CONSTANTINOPLE with the news of his victory, which was received with all possible demonstrations of joy, and magnified beyond the truth. The spirit of the court however was a little damp'd, when a second messenger from the general arrived eight days afterwards, to acquaint the grand signior, that the army was in great distress for want of provisions, the country round BAGDAT having been ruined by the PERSIANS; and moreover, that tho' he had been victorious, yet his losses were so great, that he requested an immediate and large supply of recruits; that as for himself, his age and infirmities were such, that he begged his highness would give the command of the army to one more able to serve him, as the duty required all the strength of youth, as well as the experience of old age; for he foresaw that KOULI KHAN would soon return with a numerous army, when he should not be in so good a condition to receive him as before.

This news was however supposed to be in a great measure owing to the modesty of the BASHA; so that instead of making such provision as had been represented as necessary, they loaded him with new honours which he did not desire. His son-in-law was made BEGLERBEG of ROMANIA, and his son a BASHA of three tails: he had also leave to dispose of all military employments, and to distribute rewards according to the merit of his officers; and if he should think it most for the honour and safety of the empire, he might also negotiate a peace. To these great honours and signal instances of the confidence reposed in him, were added the highest commendations of his valour and conduct.

In the mean time, the court would not be persuaded, that after so signal victory there could be such a necessity of succours as the BASHA represented: the sight of the three thousand PERSIAN prisoners filled their mind so much with the idea of conquest, and a fond persuasion of the distressed condition of the PERSIAN army, that a sufficient care was not taken to answer the demands of the SERASKIER. The great distance  
of

<sup>d</sup> On these occasions the TURKISH generals give their messengers a golden ornament, in form of a plume, with three points, by which means the people where he passes are to understand he is the messenger of victory or good news.



of the army, and the poverty of the state, was a farther reason why the court was so remiss, whilst their general seemed to be the only man who knew how much the strength and valour of the enemy was to be dreaded. He had accordingly made such a disposition of his troops in the neighbouring country, as was necessary to their support, with orders to assemble in the plains near BAGDAT the end of AUGUST, himself, with 30,000 men, remaining at KERKOUND. 1733.

## C H A P. XI.

*TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN prepares for another action : his stratagem. TOPAL OSMAN obliged to continue in his command. POULAK BASHA abandons the post of TAKAJAK. TOPAL OSMAN collects his forces, and meets the PERSIANS. Battle of LEILAM the 22d of OCTOBER. Second battle of LEILAM. TOPAL OSMAN killed, and the TURKISH army routed. ABDALLAH KOUPROLI, BASHA of CARIO, appointed generalissimo.*

**T**ÆHMAS KOULI KHAN retired with the remains of his army to HAMADAN: having been always accustomed to victory, he was the more sensibly affected by his defeat, especially as there was reason to fear that his glory was nipped, at the very time when to appearance it was ripening to its full maturity. However, as no reverse of fortune could subdue his mind, he seemed yet to triumph in the assurance of future success; and the perfect knowledge he had, how dear the enemy had purchased their victory, and that the treacherous conduct of his ARABIAN allies had been the chief cause of the disaster which befel him; he encouraged his soldiers, applauded their conduct, and commended their valour, in the same flattering terms, as if he had been himself the victor. He acknowledged the mistakes he had committed in terms the most engaging; being convinced that past misfortunes can be retrieved only by future conduct. He made his own and that of the army one common cause; and by reminding them of their valour upon so many occasions, he assured them they should have such an opportunity of revenging themselves, as should intirely

1733. intirely efface the remembrance of an accident, for which they were no way to blame. Thus he ingratiated himself with the common soldiers, as well as the officers, in such a manner, that he kept the army in good spirits, and without the least reluctance to try their fortune in another battle.

As a proof of what he had advanced, he was hardly arrived at HAMADAN, when he wrote to ACHMED BASHA, the governor of BAGDAT, that notwithstanding his misfortunes in the last campaign, he did not in the least hold himself as vanquished; that he was sensible of the faults he had committed, and intended to mend them: and as he was determined to make war like a generous enemy, therefore he acquainted him, that he might be prepared; for that early next year he would take the field with a more numerous and powerful army than the former, and meet him once more at BAGDAT.

How ostentatious soever such a message might seem, it not only served to keep his soldiers in spirits, but also as a stratagem to deceive the TURKS; for tho' they might deem such menaces not entirely as an effect of his vanity, with regard to his intentions of returning into TURKEY, yet they did not dream that his real design was to fall on them before the winter came on. For this purpose he sent to ISFAHAN for recruits, and commanded his second son NESR ALI, the governor of HERAT, to join him with all the forces under his command. Thus he soon completed an army, very near equal to that with which he had made his late expedition into TURKEY.

ACHMED, BASHA of BAGDAT, had too much penetration to be ignorant of the genius of the PERSIAN general, and too good intelligence to doubt of his intentions of returning into TURKEY; but whether that should happen sooner or later, he took all possible care to put the city in a state of defence, and to bring a supply of provisions by means of the TIGRIS, which he could not collect near his own district, the province for many leagues round BAGDAT having been laid waste.

TOPAL OSMAN on his part was still in want of ammunition and other necessaries for his army, and in no condition to act offensively against



PERSIA : he therefore contented himself with sending POULAK BASHA, with six thousand men, to take possession of the pass of TAKAJAK, which is the entrance into TURKEY on the side of HAMADAN. 1733.

Affairs were in this situation, when advice arrived at KERKOUND, that the son of TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN was upon his march to the assistance of his father, with a large body of AFGHANS and ABDOLLEES. The SERASKIER dispatched a courier to the port with this intelligence, representing to the ministers, as he had often done before, the necessity there was of sending large supplies of men, money, and ammunition to the army intended to act against KOULI KHAN. He earnestly requested at the same time, that in consideration of his age and infirmities, they would allow him to resign the command of the army in favour of ACHMED BASHA, who in all respects was fitter than himself to discharge the duties of such an important trust.

The grand signior, in consideration of his request, and his great services, had actually determined to comply with his desire, and appointed him BASHA of CUTAYA<sup>e</sup>, and BEGLERBEG of NATOLIA. The disposition for these changes was already made, when a fresh courier arrived at the seraglio from TOPAL OSMAN, with advice that the PERSIANS had forced the pass of TAKAJAK, and that their general was in full march at the head of a mighty army; requesting that they would immediately order the succours, which he had so often and so warmly solicited.

An extraordinary divan was held upon this subject; the disposition of those changes just mentioned was suspended, and TOPAL OSMAN ordered to continue in his command of the army.

POULAK BASHA had been sent by the SERASKIER with 6000 men, to post himself at TAKAJAK, which is the pass on the frontiers of TURKEY. Accordingly he took possession of it with his troops. On the 12th of OCTOBER, KOULI KHAN'S AFGHANS advanced towards him: the BASHA having neglected to fortify his post, or struck with a panic, retired with his men, and abandoned this important pass to the enemy. The SERASKEIER was filled with such indignation and resentment, that he would have ordered

his

<sup>e</sup> This is a district about three days journey from CONSTANTINOPLE.

1733. his head to be struck off in the field, notwithstanding he had behaved gallantly in the battle of KERKOUND, if several of the most distinguished officers, who were in great esteem with him, had not begged his life.

TOPAL OSMAN now found himself in a very dangerous situation; a fierce and formidable enemy was advancing on him, whilst the succours he had solicited from the port, he knew by experience, were not to be depended on: the BASHA of SYRIA was his particular friend, and exerted himself in collecting all the forces possible; but these were not sufficient. SYRIA was once a powerful kingdom, and could of itself send large armies into the field; but since it has been under the dominion of the TURKS, it is so far ruined, that the BASHA could hardly collect 12000 infantry, with a small body of horse; neither of which had any reputation as soldiers. The SERASKIER had also collected several bodies of forces from MOSUL<sup>f</sup>; tho' the inhabitants had been so terrified at the approach of a PERSIAN army, that numbers were disposed to flight, till they found themselves surrounded by roving ARABS, and other enemies; they resolved therefore to assist in the common cause of their country, and endeavour to withstand the torrent of the PERSIAN arms. In the mean while, the garrison of DIARBEEKIR was also sent to join TOPAL OSMAN, and some tribes of the ARABIANS, who had been of such service in the affair of KERKOUND.

The SERASKIER, in order to facilitate the junction of his forces, marched to the plains of ARONIA, near the city MENDELI, where he mustered near 100,000 men; happy for the TURKS if they had been all equal in discipline and valour to the PERSIAN troops. Here the prudent TOPAL OSMAN entrenched his army in an advantageous situation, to prevent a surprize, and enable him to act as circumstances might require.

TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN being informed of the situation of the TURKS, marched directly towards them, and arrived within sight of their army  
the

<sup>f</sup> This is a great city sixty leagues above BAGDAT, and forty below DIARBEEKIR, on the western banks of the TIGRIS, it is near the antient NINEVEH, which at present is but a heap of undistinguished ruins.



the 21<sup>st</sup> of OCTOBER. In the mean while, he ordered a detachment to make a circuit by the forest of NEZERETH, and by passing the TIGRIS intercept a rich caravan going for SMYRNA and ALEPPO, and then to join him near the plains of ARONIA, which they performed <sup>1733.</sup> <sup>g</sup>.

On the 22<sup>d</sup> of OCTOBER, TOPAL OSMAN BASHA acquainted his officers, that he proposed to keep in his trenches on the defensive; but at the same time let his troops know, that such as were disposed, might skirmish with the enemy.

The Janissaries of CAIRO, and some troops of ROMANIA, who had not been in the battle of KERKOUND, thought their honour concerned to perform some signal action; and being joined by some other of the troops, and by the ARABS, whom the SERASKIER had taken into his pay, they sallied from the entrenchments, and attacked the PERSIANS. The soil was dry and dusty to a great degree; the wind favoured the TURKS, and they took the proper advantage of it. They came to an engagement, or rather a skirmish, which lasted about four hours. The SERASKIER perceiving his men had the superiority, gave orders for others to join them; this determined the fortune of the day; so that the PERSIANS retreated towards LEILAM, about five leagues from KERKOUND, leaving upon the spot near 4000 <sup>h</sup> men.

We are left a little in the dark, with regard to that engagement which went by the name of the battle of LEILAM; tho' this place, reported to be within five leagues of KERKOUND, must consequently have been twenty or thirty leagues from the plains of ARONIA <sup>i</sup>. The PERSIAN general now prepared for a decisive stroke: he had fought the first battle in his own name

<sup>g</sup> This was not the caravan which had been locked up in BAGDAT during the siege, as some accounts pretend.

<sup>h</sup> Some make the loss here much greater. It was represented at CONSTANTINOPLE as a second victory, tho' the court was too prudent to rejoice. It seems to me to be little more than a skirmish previous to the fate of the OTTOMAN army; however, it is certain, that KOULI KHAN's army suffered on this occasion.

<sup>i</sup> We may reconcile the different accounts, by supposing it to be between both places, for the plains of ARONIA extend near LEILAM. The description of battles properly belongs to soldiers, and few of these give us a good account of what passes at our very doors, so that we must suppose a great deal with regard to these remoter scenes more than is related.

1733. name as general; the second was in the name of the young king SHAH ABAS III. Both these being unsuccessful, the army began to be superstitious. KOULI KHAN therefore resolved to make his decisive blow in the name of SHAH TÆHMAS<sup>k</sup>. He chose an advantageous situation to the east, intending to make the attack early the next morning; and the sun shining in the face of the enemy, he might receive from thence the advantage which the TURKS enjoyed four days before, with regard to the wind. At day break, the 26th of OCTOBER, he advanced at the head of 20,000 of his best troops, and fell upon the van-guard of the TURKISH army, which had made some approaches towards him: this attack was so well conducted, that in a short time he pierced through this body of the TURKS. The battle then became general on both sides. The TURKS began soon to give way, which put their army in some confusion. TOPAL OSMAN was not wanting in the duties of a brave and experienced general; he brought his men up to the charge more than once, but the PERSIANS had the ascendancy, and repulsed them with great slaughter. The SERASKIER was fatigued with rallying his people, and perceiving the disorder of his army, put himself at the head of the Janissaries, and disputed the victory with as much bravery, as the importance of the occasion could inspire; till at length, two musquet-balls pierced his body, and he dropt dead from his horse.

Thus fell the brave TOPAL OSMAN, one of the greatest statesmen and generals, and a man of the most integrity, of any in the OTTOMAN empire. His fall determined the fate of the TURKISH army; those who were near him were disheartened, and no longer fought with the same spirit: most of these fell by the sword, others fled, and the defeat became general. The PERSIANS pursued the vanquished enemy, and made a great slaughter. KOULI KHAN immediately sent his AFGHANS to intercept the flight of the ARABS, who had fought under TOPAL OSMAN; and, in remembrance of their perfidious conduct at the battle of KERKOUND, he caused great numbers of them to be put to the sword.

The

<sup>k</sup> However extraordinary this may appear, the superstition of the soldiers might render it necessary; not so much out of love to SHAH TÆHMAS, as to try their fortune under a name which had been always lucky to TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN.



The TURKS lost upon this occasion all their baggage, artillery, with their military chest, and not less than 40,000 men, among whom were many BASHAS and persons of distinction. A great number were taken prisoners, among these was the intendant<sup>1</sup> of the army, who informed TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN of the fate of TOPAL OSMAN. Curiosity, as well as veneration for the character of this great man, induced the PERSIAN general to order that the body should be brought to him: he stood some time in silence, and surveyed it with an awful reverence. TOPAL OSMAN was indeed the conqueror; tho' vanquished, he triumphed. Being arrived to the age of seventy, he had finished his course with glory, which it was hardly possible his enemy should ever attain to; since the principles on which he set out, were diametrically opposite to those of this good man. The PERSIAN general ordered the body to be sent to BAGDAD with proper honour, that the remains of so brave an officer might receive the funeral-rites due to his rank, and the last homage of his countrymen, whose cause he had ever espoused, with a true patriot zeal.

The news of the death of TOPAL OSMAN, with the intire defeat of the OTTOMAN army, astonished the court, and the whole city of CONSTANTINOPLE. The success at KERKOUND in JULY before, served only to add to their sensibility of this misfortune: and from the opinion which had been entertained of the great loss of the PERSIANS on that occasion, they imagined KOULI KHAN to be a devil or enchanter, who could with so rapid a course reverse his fortune.

The grand vizir, apprehensive of some commotion in the city, caused guards to be placed at certain posts to prevent an insurrection. The divan assembled immediately. The grand signior and the musti recommended a peace with PERSIA almost at any price, as the war seemed to tend to the ruin of the empire. The vizir on the other hand represented the PERSIANS as vincible, of which the battle of KERKOUND was a standing memorial; and that to lose the conquered provinces by the force of arms, would be less inglorious than tamely to yield them up to the PERSIANS.

1733. This opinion being at length agreed to, preparations were made to send cannon and ammunition to ALEXANDRIA, also money for the payment of the army; and 8000 Janissaries were commanded to march the 15th of DECEMBER. ABDALLAH KOUPROLI, BASHA of CAIRO, was nominated as generalissimo, in the place of TOPAL OSMAN; and the several BASHAS in the TURKISH dominions in ASIA, had orders to march with all the forces they could collect.

## C H A P. XII.

*The education, and most remarkable incidents of the life of TOPAL OSMAN BASHA; with a particular account of his gratitude and great generosity to his benefactor, who ransomed him in his youth from slavery.*

THE mention I have already made of a brave TURK, will sufficiently countenance the following story. It is an anecdote by no means below the dignity of an historian, nor foreign to my subject. The design of it is to instruct us by example, which is confessedly the great use of history: and I am persuaded this relation will give pleasure to every one who does not think gratitude a pious frenzy, or that it is a virtue fit only for little minds, whose weakness betrays them into a passion, which clashes with self-love, so much the idol of mankind.

TOPAL OSMAN was educated in the chambers of the seraglio<sup>m</sup>; a method which was formerly used only with the children of the tribute, and who were all of christian parents. In the year 1698, being then about the

<sup>m</sup> There are different chambers of the seraglio through which those children passed, who were formerly sent up from the CHRISTIAN provinces subjected to the OTTOMAN empire. They went from the last chamber into the service of the sultan, and were employed in the different offices of the court and ministry. According to their conduct or fortune, they rose to the several posts and offices of the empire. The policy of this was, that not knowing their parents and relations, and oftentimes ignorant of the very country they came from, they might be the more absolutely dependant and devoted to the service of the grand signior. But now the TURKS have found means to have their own children educated in the seraglio; and the chambers in which those designed for employments are bred, and from which they are taken, do mostly consist of native TURKS.



the age of twenty-five, he was sent with the sultan's orders to the BASHA of CAIRO. He travelled by land to SAID<sup>n</sup>, and being afraid of the ARABS who rove about the adjacent countries, plundering passengers and caravans, he embarked on board a TURKISH vessel bound to DAMIETTA, a city on the eastermost channel of the NILE. In this short passage they met with a SPANISH privateer: their ship was no match for her, but the whole crew resolved to fight, and try to preserve their effects, and defend themselves from slavery; upon which a bloody action ensued. There it was this great man gave the first proofs of that intrepidity, by which he so often signalized himself afterwards. The crew, animated by his example, fought with great bravery; but superior numbers at last prevailed, and OSMAN was taken prisoner, after being dangerously wounded in his arm and thigh.

When the vessel had surrendered, the instances of bravery which OSMAN had shewn, induced the SPANISH captain to pay him a particular regard, especially when it was known that he was charged with the grand signior's orders; and that consequently a large ransom might be expected for him. Notwithstanding the good treatment he received, his wounds were still in a dangerous way, when he arrived at MALTA, whither the privateer went to refit: the wound in his thigh was the most dangerous, and he was lame of it ever afterwards; from which he had the name of TOPAL or cripple, as already mentioned.

At that time, VINCENT ARNAUD, a native of MARSEILLES, was commander of the port at MALTA; and, as his business required, went on board the privateer as soon as she came to anchor. OSMAN no sooner saw ARNAUD, than he said to him; "Can you do a generous and gallant action? Ransom me, and take my word you shall lose nothing by it." Such a request from a slave in chains was not common; but the manner in which it was delivered, struck the FRENCHMAN so much, that he immediately turned to the captain of the privateer, and asked what he demanded for the ransom. He answered, a thousand sequins<sup>o</sup>. ARNAUD upon this turning round to the TURK, said: "I know nothing of you,"  
"and

<sup>n</sup> The antient SIDON in SYRIA.

<sup>o</sup> Near 500 l.

1733. “and would you have me risque a thousand sequins on your bare word?”  
 “Each of us act in this,” replied the TURK, “with consistency. I am  
 “in chains, and therefore try every method to recover my liberty; and  
 “you may act right in not trusting to the word of a stranger; I have  
 “nothing at present but my word and honour to give you, nor do I  
 “pretend to assign any reason why you should trust to it; however, I  
 “tell you once more, if you do trust to it, you shall have no occasion to  
 “repent.” The commander upon this went to make his report to the  
 grand master, DON PERELLOS. The air with which OSMAN delivered  
 himself, and the seeming ingenuoufness, together with the singularity of  
 the circumstances, wrought such an effect upon ARNAUD, that he re-  
 turned immediately on board the SPANISH vessel, and agreed with the  
 captain for six hundred sequins, which he paid as the price of OSMAN’s  
 liberty. After this, he put him on board a vessel of his own, where he  
 provided him with a surgeon, and every thing necessary for his entertain-  
 ment and cure. In a short time he was out of danger.

OSMAN had mentioned to his benefactor, that he might write to CON-  
 STANTINOPLE for the money he had advanced; but finding himself in  
 the hands of a man who had trusted so much to his honour, he was em-  
 boldened to ask him another favour, which was to leave the payment of  
 the ransom entirely to him. ARNAUD distinguished that in such a case  
 things were not to be done by halves; he therefore not only agreed to the  
 proposal, with a good grace, but entrusted him with the ship, in which  
 he had been lodged, and shewed him every other mark of generosity and  
 friendship. Accordingly OSMAN, as soon as he was in a condition, set  
 out again upon his voyage in this vessel.

The FRENCH colours now protected him from the privateers. In a  
 short time he reached DAMIETTA, and sailed up the NILE to CAIRO. No  
 sooner was he arrived there, than he delivered a thousand sequins to the  
 master of the vessel, to be paid his benefactor ARNAUD, together with  
 some rich furr<sup>s</sup>, and five hundred crowns as a present for himself. He  
 executed the orders of the sultan his master with the BASHA of CAIRO;

and



and setting out for CONSTANTINOPLE, was himself the first who brought 1733. the news of his slavery.

His sense of the favour that had been done to him, and the generous circumstances of it, was not confined to the first emotions of gratitude: during the whole course of his life, he did not cease, by letters and other acknowledgments, to testify the deep impresson it had made upon him.

In 1715 war was declared between the VENETIANS and TURKS. The grand vizir, who had projected the invasion of the MOREA, assembled the OTTOMAN army, near the isthmus of CORINTH, the only pass by which this peninsula can be attacked by land. TOPAL OSMAN was charged with the command to force the pass, which he not only executed with great success, but afterwards took the city of CORINTH by assault. For this service he was rewarded, by being made a BASHA of two tails. The next year he served as lieutenant-general under the grand vizir at the siege of CORFU, which the TURKS were obliged to abandon. OSMAN staid three days before the place to secure and conduct the retreat of the OTTOMAN troops, which he effected with great success.

In 1722 he was appointed SERASKIER <sup>9</sup>; and had the command of the army in the MOREA. When the consuls of the different nations came to pay their respects to him in this quality, he distinguished the FRENCH by particular marks of kindness and protection, and gave them a strict charge to write to MALTA to VINCENT ARNAUD, and acquaint him of his new dignity, and to beg of him to send his son, that as it was now in his power, he would charge himself with making his fortune. Accordingly ARNAUD's son went into the MOREA, and the SERASKIER not only made him presents, but granted him privileges and advantages in point of trade, which soon put him in a way of acquiring an estate <sup>r</sup>.

TOPAL OSMAN's parts and abilities were such, that from this command he was soon raised to a greater. He was made a BASHA of three tails, and BEGLERBEG of ROMANIA, one of the greatest governments in

<sup>9</sup> General in chief.

<sup>r</sup> It may be observed in general, that when men of eminent rank in the east mean to do a distinguished service, they are not behind the christians.

1733. in the empire, and which the vicinity to the DANUBIAN provinces, and the frontiers of HUNGARY, renders still more important.

His residence, during his government, was at NYSSA. In the year 1727, VINCENT ARNAUD and his son waited upon him there, and were received with the utmost tenderness and affection. Laying aside the pomp of the BASHA and governor, he embraced them, caused them to be served with sherbet and perfume, and to sit upon the sofa with himself; an honour but rarely bestowed by a BASHA of the first order, and hardly ever to a christian. After these marks of distinction, he sent them away loaded with presents. As the father and son were taking their leave of him, ARNAUD said, he hoped he should live to pay his duty to him, as grand vizir, at CONSTANTINOPLE. This, which was then only a compliment, proved prophetic.

I have already given an account of the great revolution of 1730 in CONSTANTINOPLE, in which the grand vizir IBRAHIM perished. This office was become so perilous, that three had been preferred to it in less than a year's time. In SEPTEMBER 1731, TOPAL OSMAN was called from his government, to fill a place, which though by far the highest in the OTTOMAN empire, and perhaps the highest that any subject in the world enjoys, is always dangerous, and was then so in a particular degree. He no sooner arrived at CONSTANTINOPLE to take possession of his new dignity, than he sent for the FRENCH ambassador, and desired him to write to MALTA, and let his old benefactor know of his advancement; and that he should hasten to CONSTANTINOPLE, while things remained in the present situation; adding, that a grand vizir seldom kept long in his station.

In the month of JANUARY 1732, ARNAUD with his son arrived at CONSTANTINOPLE from MALTA, bringing with him variety of presents, and twelve TURKS whom he had ransomed from slavery. These, by command of the vizir, were ranged in order before him. VINCENT ARNAUD, now seventy-two years of age, with his son, were brought before TOPAL OSMAN, grand vizir of the OTTOMAN empire. He received them in the presence of the great officers of state, with the utmost marks



of affection. Then turning to those about him, and pointing to the ransomed TURKS, “ Behold,” says he, “ these your brethren now enjoying  
 “ the sweets of liberty, after having groaned in slavery : this FRENCH-  
 “ MAN is their deliverer. I was myself a slave, loaded with chains,  
 “ streaming in blood, and covered with wounds : this is the man who  
 “ redeemed and saved me ; this is my master and benefactor : to him I  
 “ am indebted for life, liberty, fortune, and every thing I enjoy. With-  
 “ out knowing me, he paid for me a large ransom ; sent me away upon  
 “ my bare word, and gave me a ship to carry me where I pleased.  
 “ Where is even a mussulman capable of an action of such generosity ?”

While OSMAN was speaking, every one present had their eyes fixed upon old ARNAUD, who held the grand vizir’s hands closely locked between his own. The vizir then asked both father and son many questions concerning their situation and fortune, heard their answers with kindness and attention, and then ended with an ARABIC sentence, ALLAH-KE-RIM<sup>s</sup>. He made before them the distribution of the presents they had brought, the greatest part of which he sent to the sultan, the sultana mother, and the KISLAR AGA<sup>t</sup>. Upon which the two FRENCHMEN made their obeisance, and retired.

After this ceremony was over, the son of the grand vizir took them to his apartments, where he treated them with great kindness. Some time before they left CONSTANTINOPLE, they had a conference in private with the vizir, who divested himself of all state and ceremony. He let them understand, that the nature of his situation would not permit him to do as he desired, since a minister ever appears in the eyes of many to do nothing without a view to his own particular interest ; adding, that a BASHA was lord and master in his own province, but that the grand vizir at CONSTANTINOPLE had a master greater than himself.

He caused them to be amply paid for the ransom of the TURKS, and likewise procured the restitution of a debt, which they had looked on as desperate : he also made them presents in money, and gave them an order,

<sup>s</sup> The providence of God is great.

<sup>t</sup> Chief of the black eunuchs.



1733. order, in virtue of which they took a loading of corn at SALONICA, which was likely to be very profitable, as the exportation of corn from that port had been for a long time prohibited.

As his gratitude was without bounds, he seemed desirous to convince his benefactor, that his liberality was the same; his behaviour, upon this occasion, must appear great and noble, since every action of his life demonstrates a mind superior to affectation. His conduct appears the more generous, when it is considered, what contempt and aversion the prejudices of education often create in the mind of a TURK against the christians: and if we reflect further, that this confession was made before his whole court, the action will appear in its full lustre.

By the vigilance and steadiness of his ministry, this great man restored government and a regular discipline, with plenty to CONSTANTINOPLE, where a licentious confusion had so lately reigned, and where the inhabitants had been in such distress, that the necessaries of life were not to be had but at an excessive price. He has indeed been blamed for his too great severity; but it is certain, that he never condemned to death the most culpable, even of the lowest class of the people, without the decision of the mufti. And though his severity should have been extended to what might be deemed an excess, reasons of state, and the security of the general tranquillity of the empire, might make a strict execution of the laws not only expedient, but absolutely necessary. Nor can it be supposed, that a man, whose honour and goodness of heart was so conspicuously displayed, could be cruel. The greatest proof that can be given to clear him of such an imputation, is the universal regret that people of all ranks shewed when he was removed from his office<sup>u</sup>.

He received his orders of dismissal with all the calmness imaginable; for he was too wise to expect that virtue alone could support a man in an office under a distracted government, and where change was adopted as necessary. When he came out of the seraglio, after delivering up the seal of the empire, he found his friends and domestics very pensive and disconsolate. "What is the reason," says he, "of your affliction; have

" I

<sup>u</sup> IN MARCH 1732.



“ I not always said, that the office of vizir is of all others the most likely  
 “ to be short? All my concern was, how I should get out of it with ho  
 “ nour; and thanks to God, I have done nothing with which I reproach  
 “ myself. My master, the grand signior, approves my services, and I resign  
 “ with perfect satisfaction.” He then gave orders for rendering his thanks  
 to heaven, as if it had been one of the most happy events of his life <sup>w</sup>.

After this, he immediately set out for TREBISONDE, where he was appointed BASHA. His removal could not be called a disgrace, for the grand signior never ceased to treat him with all possible marks of distinction. His highness acquainted him, that he must leave his son at CONSTANTINOPLE, and that himself would take care of his fortune. About four days after TOPAL OSMAN'S departure, this young man had the honour of delivering to the sultan, the present <sup>x</sup> which his father was to have made him on the feast of BAYRAM <sup>y</sup>. Presents at the OTTOMAN court, as well as all over the east, are not considered as the effects of generosity and friendship, or marks of respect, but as a tribute which must be paid by inferiors of all ranks to their superiors, especially from certain officers to their sovereign. This present might however have been dispensed with, as the father was out of the office of grand vizir; but he gave his son express orders at his departure, not to fail to make it; and by that means, he shewed with what entire satisfaction he had resigned his high employment.

The grand signior received the present, in a manner that convinced him and all the world, that he had not in the least forfeited his esteem. He had been gone but a few days, when orders were sent to him to repair to the frontiers of PERSIA, and take upon him the command of the OTTOMAN armies. This was an honourable and important station, but full of danger and difficulty. He filled it with all the abilities of a wise statesman and experienced officer. Though he sunk at last before the fortune of TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN, yet he fell worthy of himself; worthy

O 2

of

<sup>w</sup> A rare instance this of virtue. I hope it is strictly true. I am sorry to say it is not more credible of a christian than of a MAHOMMEDAN. See Vol. I. page 198.

set with jewels, value 50,000 crowns.

<sup>x</sup> A horse-furniture

<sup>y</sup> This is a high festival among the TURKS, at which time it is usual to make presents to one another.



1733. of that character he had so deservedly acquired, and maintained through the course of a life, not distinguished so much by his high employments, as that he never deviated from the paths of honour and virtue.

The grand signior preserved such an esteem for his memory, that tho' his son ACHMED was but young, he promoted him to the high post of BASHA and BEGLERBEG of ROMANIA, which his father enjoyed when he was called to the office of grand vizir. It gives us the strongest idea of arbitrary power, to consider the policy of the OTTOMAN government. The same grand signior, who promoted the son to one of the first dignities of the empire, in honour to the father's memory and great services, sent an order to seize all the father's effects<sup>2</sup>. It may be presumed the state was poor, which in such governments was a sufficient reason. Thus the son succeeded to no great part of the vast riches his father died possessed of.

TOPAL OSMAN was one of those few, who through the course of a long life, gave the highest demonstrations of a mind superior to vulgar applause. His greatness was the effect of his virtue, his understanding and intrepidity; but his ambition was to act like a man, who believes there is a GOD, and a state of rewards and punishments. If this generous TURK said of VINCENT ARNAUD, "Where is even a mussulman who is capable of an action of such generosity?" We may say, "Where shall we find even a christian, requiting a generous action in a more noble manner than TOPAL OSMAN?" Instances of this kind among either christians or MAHOMMEDANS, are indeed but rare; and therefore when they happen, ought the more to be recorded.

<sup>2</sup> This is meant of his moveable or personal estate. As to landed estates, it is a custom for persons in the service of the grand signior, to assign them in heritage to the church, in case of the failure of heirs, by which means they cannot be seized by the crown, without a degree of sacrilege.



## C H A P. XIII.

TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN *acquaints the RUSSIAN court of his success.* ACHMED BASHA *prepares to stand another siege.* MAHOMMED KHAN BALOUCHE *declares for TÆHMAS SHAH at SHIRASS; is defeated by KOULI KHAN, and hangs himself.* The TURKS *prepare to take the field.* KOULI KHAN *marches into GEORGIA the beginning of 1734, and takes TEFLIS.* *Description of that country.* SELIM BASHA *retires out of GEORGIA.* KOULI KHAN *takes GANJA and SHAMAKIE.*

TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN having obtained this memorable victory 1733. over the TURKS, and given orders for the burial of his dead, dispatched an exprefs to acquaint the RUSSIAN emprefs of the signal advantage he had obtained. This news was not ungrateful to the court of ST. PETERSBURG: the port was divided into factions upon the subject of a war with RUSSIA; but it was apprehended, if KOULI KHAN had not kept them fully employed, they would have soon determined upon it: and preparations were accordingly making in RUSSIA.

It is presumed, that KOULI KHAN requested that the emprefs would not permit the CRIM TARTARS to pass near her dominions, should they attempt to join the LESGEES, who waited only a favourable occasion of making a powerful diversion in SHIRVAN and other places, near the coast of the CASPIAN SEA. The RUSSIANS, yet possessed of DERBEND, and the conquest they had made on that coast; were not interested to countenance the projects of KOULI KHAN, any otherwise than to reduce the TURKS, which was a much greater object than the preservation of that conquest.

So signal an advantage gained over the TURKS, within fifty leagues of BAGDAT, could not but alarm ACHMED BASHA. We have already observed, that this sagacious governor had put his city in a condition of defence, and preserved a kind of independent sovereignty. After the battle of KERKOUND, several detachments of TOPAL OSMAN'S forces demanded entrance into the city. The BASHA absolutely refused, alledging, that they

1733. they were sent to protect the city, but not to come into it: that he had a sufficient garrison of his own, and therefore would not admit them. He was now in a better condition of defence than he had been in APRIL before, and had made a larger collection of provision. Besides his own artillery, he was also master of that which the PERSIANS had left behind them. Under these circumstances, tho' he had but ill grounds to expect any relief from the TURKISH armies for a considerable time, he determined to make a gallant defence.

Winter was now approaching, and it might be expected that the banks of the TIGRIS would swell as is usual in that season, so as to render the approaches to BAGDAT difficult, if not impracticable. However, KOULI KHAN advanced towards the city, to try if he could obtain the submission of ACHMED BASHA, for whom he professed a particular friendship, as a man of excellent understanding, and a good soldier. The testimony which he ever gave of the BASHA was, "That he was much a greater man than himself, or the grand signior; because," says he, "ACHMED BASHA has supported himself in BAGDAT, without giving up the place either to me or his master."

Whilst the PERSIAN general was thus meditating in what manner he should conduct himself, news arrived from SHIRASS, that MAHOMMED KHAN BALOUCHE<sup>a</sup>, one of his generals, whom he had sent to raise recruits in that quarter of the empire, had joined SEFFIE MAHOMMED KHAN, governor of the province: that they in conjunction with each other had collected an army of 30,000 men, and proclaimed SHAH TÆHMAS as their lawful king. TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN no sooner received this notice, than he marched back into PERSIA. He took with him about 30,000 of his best troops, and proceeded with the utmost expedition by the rout of ISFAHAN towards SHIRASS. Those of his men, whose horses failed, or by any accident could not keep pace in his continued forced marches, he left upon the road; so that he arrived at SHIRASS at a time, when his enemies had hardly received news of his leaving TURKEY.

Upon

<sup>a</sup> This KHAN is distinguished as a native of the country of the BALOUCHEs.



Upon the first report of the advance of the troops of KOULI KHAN, 1733. MAHOMMED KHAN BALOUCHE, who imagined it was only a small detachment under the command of one of the officers of this general, marched out to attack them. In a short time he fell in with the van-guard of KOULI KHAN, consisting of 12,000 men, himself at their head. MAHOMMED KHAN BALOUCHE now expressed great satisfaction, as if fortune had delivered the tyrant-general into his hands. He imagined the greatest part of his forces were not yet come up; but he soon found his mistake. When KOULI KHAN began to give his orders for the attack, the thunder of his voice, which was remarkably strong, struck a panic into MAHOMMED'S men, and they hardly stood the first fire.

MAHOMMED KHAN BALOUCHE had often given proofs of his valour, and was distinguished for many other good qualities. Enraged at the cowardice of his soldiers, he grew desperate; and, attended by a few followers, singled out KOULI KHAN, and rode towards him, to try if the fortune of his lance could reach the heart of a man, whom he knew to be false, an enemy to his lawful sovereign, and a slave to his ambition.

This attempt, if we may judge from the character of the man, was directed more by principles of generosity and national honour, than by envy or ambition. It did not succeed: however, he made his part so good, that he fought his way back again; and retiring near BENDER DELEM, he embarked in an ARABIAN vessel, intending to make his escape. The treacherous ARABS, who navigated the vessel, discovering who he was, in expectation of a reward, brought him to SHIRASS, and delivered him to his enemy. TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN sent him to prison, designing to extort a confession of his accomplices, and also of his riches, which were supposed to be very considerable. Suicide can in no instance be deemed warrantable, otherwise we might call it intrepidity to baffle the designs of such an enemy as KOULI KHAN. The unfortunate captive general was no sooner left alone, than he hanged himself.

TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN having chastised the inhabitants of SHIRASS, 1734. and put those to death who attempted to restore SHAH TÆHMAS, he en-

1734. riched himself with their sequestered estates, and returned to ISFAHAN. Here he remained till the next spring, employing himself in recruiting his army in hopes of finishing the great work in which he had so well succeeded the last year, and of compelling the TURKS to yield up all the conquered provinces.

In the mean while, the OTTOMAN court made all the preparations possible, to defend themselves against an enemy, whom they had now sufficient reason to believe very formidable. They had made an attempt to engage the KHAN of the CRIM TARTARS in their quarrel, and if these could have been joined with the LESGEEES, they might make a powerful diversion in SHIRVAN; but it is hardly practicable to penetrate into PERSIA through the passes of mount CAUCASUS, or the country to the north-west of DAGISTAN.

The LESGEEES, however disposed to take all advantages of the PERSIANS, were but ill-inclined to favour the entrance of the CRIM TARTARS on the north-side of their mountainous residences. The GEORGIANS were as little disposed to receive them into their country; and the RUSSIANS least of all. The CABARDINIAN TARTARS, who are subject to RUSSIA, were ordered to appear in arms, if those of the CRIM should attempt to force a passage; and as a war was expected to break out with the RUSSIANS, the CRIM TARTARS would by this means be left exposed; so that the TURKS had but little reason to expect any succours in the PERSIAN war from those TARTARS. The LESGEEES, however, appeared in arms, designing to make a diversion in favour of the TURKS.

KOULI KHAN having recruited his army to near 100,000 fighting men, opened the campaign this year by marching directly to TAVRIS, from whence he sent his son NESR ALI, with a body of forces to the banks of the KURA, to drive the LESGEEES back again into their mountains. These TARTARS made incursions into SHIRVAN, but finding a numerous body of PERSIAN forces which they did not expect, they retired with great precipitation. He left his son on the banks of the KURA, with orders to march to GANJA, whilst he himself penetrated into GEORGIA as far as TEFLIS.



This city is supposed to be the ACROPOLIS of the antients; it is large and well peopled, and the houses built with brick. In the center is an eminence with a citadel, very difficult of access: at the foot of it runs the KURA, which contributes much to its natural strength. 1734.

The GEORGIANS are the descendants of the antient IBERIANS, who inhabited the countries on both sides the CYRUS<sup>b</sup>. The GREEKS call them GEORGI, from whence we may presume they derived their present name; the oriental nations call this country GUERGESTAN.

The bravery of these people is very remarkable; their situation seems to exact it of them. In these latter times we have had several proofs, particularly of those commanded by GURGHIN KHAN, the governor of KANDAHAR, as mentioned in the preceding volume. The VALI of GEORGIA, we have also seen, might, to all human appearance, have saved the PERSIAN monarchy, had he not adhered to a rash vow. These people are as dextrous with the bow and arrow, as with fire-arms; and the PERSIANS were wont to esteem them the best troops in their army. They were now tributary to the TURKS, and consequently few if any of them amongst NADIR's forces. That they were always very warlike, appears from antient historians; they neither submitted to the MEDES nor PERSIANS, nor even to ALEXANDER the GREAT: they could not indeed resist the ROMAN arms; POMPEY took their capital ACROPOLIS, and reduced the kingdom of IBERIA to a ROMAN province.

The KHAN of TEFLIS has the title of VALI, and all the other chiefs of the respective provinces are denominated princes. These last are independent of each other, as well as of the VALI; but in case of danger they unite in one common interest. Hemmed in by two powerful nations, they have necessarily paid tribute either to the TURKS or PERSIANS for some ages. Their governments are hereditary, and seldom any accidents have happened to divest their families of their respective sovereignties; which are in number about a dozen, who are divided and subdivided. They generally

<sup>b</sup> Present name KURA.

1734: generally support from 200 to 1000 men each, and two or three of them can bring 6000 into the field. For the support of these soldiers, the peasants pay a tenth of the produce of the land; besides furnishing, in time of war, a certain number of men equipped.

The climate of this country is soft, not very different from that of ITALY, and extends from about the latitude of 41 to 44. The capital TEFLIS is near the center of the lower GEORGIA; the upper GEORGIA stretches towards the BLACK SEA. It is surrounded with mountains almost on every side, and abounds in woods, but there are also very fertile plains. They till their land with buffaloes and oxen; they plow deep, and their crops are abundant. They are christians of the GREEK religion, and consequently not forbidden the use of wine, which they have very good, and in great plenty. The men are remarkably tall, comely, robust, and well made, ostentatious, and fond of a splendid appearance; the women<sup>c</sup> are celebrated for their beauty over all ASIA.

The GEORGIANS have generally been most disposed to submit to the PERSIANS, and in order to support their fidelity, the sovereigns of that monarchy have shewn them great indulgence. Those of their princes, who are disposed to change their religion, have ever met with a kind reception at the PERSIAN court, and been entrusted with some of the first employments in that government. PERSIA by this means has had a constant resource of troops, whose valour and fidelity might be safely relied on<sup>d</sup>.

The GEORGIANS now saw their sovereign the grand signior oppressed on every side; disheartened by the defeat of TOPAL OSMAN, and in no capacity to make head against the victorious armies of KOULI KHAN. TEFLIS having submitted to him, he thought it his interest to treat the people with tenderness. The TURKS retired, not being in any condition to oppose him.

KOULI

<sup>c</sup> These are often spoken of in EUROPE under the name of CIRCASSIANS, though CIRCASSIA is much farther to the north-west.

<sup>d</sup> I never heard, from any good authority, that KOULI KHAN had any number of GEORGIANS in his army, probably esteeming it impolitic to entertain people of so different principles in religion.



KOULI KHAN, in the exultation of his heart, declared that he would carry his victorious arms to the HELLESPONT, with a more formidable power than that of XERXES. All the dominions of the grand signior did indeed tremble at his name. The TURKS confessed, that they were never more embarrassed since the establishment of their monarchy. Their treasures were exhausted; and their army of veterans hardly amounted to one third part of that of the PERSIANS. Count BONNEVAL recommended the EUROPEAN discipline; but the TURKS had a superstitious reverence for their antient military customs; neither could they derive any advantage from a change of discipline, but by long practice. They raised about 15000 men in BOSNIA, which were ordered to join the OTTOMAN army near BAGDAT, under the command of the SERASKIER ABDALLAH KOUPROLI, who was esteemed one of the best officers in their service. The court also sent 4000 men to him by the way of TREBISONDE; but this reinforcement was very insufficient to stop the progress of the PERSIANS.

In the mean while, SELIM BASHA being in no condition to oppose the PERSIANS, had retired out of GEORGIA towards ALEPPO, leaving that country, as well as ARMENIA, a prey to the victorious KOULI KHAN; upon which all the GEORGIAN princes, who were before tributary to the OTTOMAN empire, submitted to him. Towards the end of OCTOBER, he came before GANJA, where the TURKS had thrown in a garrison of 5000 men; these maintained themselves so well, that NESR ALI with his forces had not been able to reduce them: KOULI KHAN therefore erected three batteries of ten cannon each, and before the month was expired, this place also submitted at discretion.

From thence he directed his course to SHAMAKIE. The TURKS had detached a body of 8000 men, mostly LESGEES, to guard the bridge of boats over the KURA at JAVAT; but they were soon put to flight. The countenance which this city had given to the LESGEES, had so much offended him, that he resolved to raze it to the ground, and slaughter a great part of the inhabitants. Those who had offended most, being either LESGEES, or closely connected with them, fled into the mountains. After a short warning, he commanded the inhabitants, who escaped the



1734. fury of his resentment, to retire to AGHSON, on the western side of the mountains<sup>e</sup>, where they might build a new city; and he then destroyed the place. SHAMAKIE had been for many ages esteemed one of the most flourishing cities in this part of the world, well peopled, and abounding in all the necessaries of life. Its situation was agreeable, and its trade extensive. Here the merchants from PERSIA and TURKEY, ARMENIA, GEORGIA and RUSSIA had their rendezvous; so that it was a staple for all the commodities of these countries, together with those of EUROPE. It was also a place of defence.

These however were not sufficient reasons with the ambitious KOULI KHAN to preserve this city. Indeed, it is hard to say, if he made a sacrifice of it to his pride or resentment, more than to reasons of policy. The conquest of the LESGEEES was an object he had very much at heart; and experience had proved, that it was an asylum to them of late years; or at least, that it was the seat of rebellion, from whence SHIRVAN was invaded.

#### C H A P. XIV.

*The TURKS desire a peace. KOULI KHAN sends an ambassador to the RUSSIAN court. ABDALLAH KOUPROLI gives battle to KOULI KHAN in the valley of ARPAKAVI, and is slain, together with 20,000 TURKS. ABDALLAH BASHA retreats to CARS. CARA ACHMED appointed SERASKIER of the TURKISH army. ERIVAN taken. The TURKS declare war against the RUSSIANS. KOULI KHAN's conduct towards that nation.*

**T**HE rapid progress of the PERSIAN arms, made the divan of CONSTANTINOPLE in the highest degree desirous of peace with PERSIA: but TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN, ambitious of new triumphs, proudly despised any accommodation, but what was judged to be very injurious to the honour of the grand signior. The inclination of the port was to commence a war with the christian powers; and great magazines were forming

<sup>e</sup> This place stood in 1746, as described in the map and account of the tract of the RUSSIAN embassy, Vol. I. page 376 and 386.



forming in BOSNIA, in expectation of a favourable opportunity to enter thro' VALACHIA into the UKRAIN. The OTTOMAN court was also very jealous of the good understanding between the RUSSIANS and the PERSIANS, and apprehended a treaty of alliance, by which the former were to make a diversion in favour of PERSIA on the side of ASOPH; whilst there was not less reason to apprehend, that with such assistance TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN might carry his arms into NATOLIA, and make the grand signior tremble on his throne. 1734.

What favoured the former opinion, was the arrival, at the beginning of this year, of HUSSEIN KOULI KHAN as ambassador from ABAS, the infant SHAH of PERSIA, to the court of ST. PETERSBURG; his credential letters were signed with the seal of the general TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN. This minister informed her imperial majesty, that TÆHMAS SHAH being a weak prince, whose conduct threatened the ruin of the PERSIAN empire, the khans, and all the great lords of the state, had determined to depose him, and set up his son ABAS in his place: that they meant not to do the dethroned prince any harm, but to indulge him in all the pleasures to which he was inclined, without submitting to his pacific disposition, with regard to their common enemy the TURK: that TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN, whose valour and fortune was equal to that of ALEXANDER, and whose prudence and generosity were unrivalled, was determined to prosecute the war with vigour: that her imperial majesty might be assured he would never lay down his arms, whilst the grand signior was in any condition to make war against her; the PERSIANS being intirely disposed to support a perfect amity with the dominions of her imperial majesty, whose interest they considered in common with their own. 1735.

This ambassador was also charged with a commission, to require the delivery of DERBEND, BAKU, RESHD, and all the places in the provinces of SHIRVAN and GHILAN, with the other districts situated on the coast of the CASPIAN SEA, which had been conquered by PETER the GREAT; also that those TARTARS in the mountains of DAGISTAN<sup>f</sup>, who had submitted

<sup>f</sup> I have already given some account of these people in my first volume, and I have only to observe further, that from this country the ALANS in the fifth century are said to have spread themselves like a flood over EUROPE, extending their conquest as far as SPAIN.

1735. submitted to the RUSSIAN arms, should be again restored to the dominion of PERSIA.

It was said, that KOULI KHAN had in the vanity of his heart declared, that if the RUSSIANS did not retire, he would take a broom, and sweep them out. The RUSSIANS, apprehensive of a war with the TURKS, did not think those countries worth a contest: they had never received any benefit from them, but quite the reverse, for they only proved a grave to their armies. As to the revenues of those provinces since the year 1722, which were also demanded by the embassador, the RUSSIAN ministry alledged, that so far from drawing any advantage from thence, the government had been at a great expence in the support of them.

In consequence of this treaty now made with TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN, her imperial majesty appointed a general officer to accompany the PERSIAN commissaries, in order to see the evacuation of the countries already mentioned, and to fix the boundaries of the two states; which was accordingly done soon after. The embassador having received all the honours due to his character, took his leave of the empress the 13th of MARCH; and the court bore the expence of his journey to the frontiers, according to custom. The empress intended to send an embassador to ISFAHAN, to compliment the young SHAH<sup>s</sup>; and from thence to proceed to the army, in order to finish the negotiations with TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN, which the PERSIAN minister had already begun.

The TURKS had not yet recovered the shock occasioned by the defeat of TOPAL OSMAN; and the rapid progress of the PERSIAN arms the last year had disheartened the court to an extreme degree, insomuch that they would hardly have opposed the enemy, had there been no other object to preserve than the conquered provinces. At the same time, the good intelligence between the RUSSIANS and the PERSIANS, gave great umbrage to the port. The grand signior comforted himself however in hopes of an accommodation with the PERSIANS, and that the loss of GEORGIA would be repaired by his conquests in christendom; the situation of the EUROPEAN

<sup>s</sup> We find afterwards, that the RUSSIAN ministers were too sensible of the changes to which PERSIA was subject, to carry this design into execution.



PEAN powers at that time seeming to facilitate the success of the OTTOMAN arms. The PERSIAN army was now increased to 120,000 men, and KOULI KHAN absolutely refused to enter into terms of accommodation, unless the TURKS would not only yield up all the conquered provinces, but also pay him the charge of the war.

The OTTOMAN court was continually sending troops, ammunition, and money to ALEPPO and TREBISONDE, from whence the army under ABDALLAH KOUPROLI, BASHA of CAIRO, was supplied; this general had also succours from CAIRO, but as yet he kept close in his intrenchments in ARMENIA. The TURKS esteeming this as a holy war, were yet in spirits to try the fortune of another campaign. The grand signior therefore gave orders to the SERASKIER KOUPROLI, to give battle to TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN, as soon as he should find himself sufficiently reinforced.

The PERSIAN general had spent the beginning of this year in reducing GEORGIA, and was now on his march to ERIVAN. Designing to bring the TURKS to an engagement, he sent a detachment of 15000 men towards their camp. The SERASKIER immediately concluded, that this motion could be made with no other design than to reconnoitre his situation; he therefore sent a body of his best cavalry to meet them, and after a short skirmish the PERSIANS retreated in confusion. The SERASKIER unwilling to lose so apparent an advantage, dispatched more troops after them, and followed himself at the head of his army, making forced marches, in hopes to intercept their junction with the main body of the PERSIANS.

On the 10th of JUNE, TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN appeared with 40,000 men in the valley of ARPAKAVI, so that the whole force with him did not exceed 55,0000. The SERASKIER, on the other hand, had an army of 80,000. At the approach of the TURKS, the PERSIAN general broke up his camp with a seeming precipitation, and retired towards ERIVAN. After several forced marches, being arrived at the streight previously designed for the action, he concealed a body of his men in a wood, whilst another strong party was covered in a valley. In this situation he prepared to receive the TURKS.

1735. The van of the TURKISH army saw themselves at once attacked in flank and rear by the PERSIANS, who came out of the defiles. The action was very bloody, and lasted five hours; the SERASKIER had two horses killed under him, and after fighting very bravely, met with the same fate as his predecessor TOPAL OSMAN; besides him, fell DEMIR BASHA, and MUSTAPHA BASHA, generals of the first rank, the last was a kinsman of the grand signior; they lost also four other BASHAS, with 20,000 men, the greatest part of whom were killed, the rest taken prisoners; the PERSIANS likewise made themselves masters of thirty-two pieces of cannon, with the military chest and baggage.

This victory was obtained the cheaper, as the rear of the TURKS could not come up, and consequently had no share in the action: these retired as soon as they found their van totally defeated: they were followed however by the PERSIANS for near three leagues; some fled to the neighbouring cities, and others into the mountains. ABDALLAH BASHA carried off 8000 TURKS to CARS, a city in the UPPER ARMENIA.

The news of this defeat flung the whole city of CONSTANTINOPLE into the utmost consternation, as they concluded from hence, that not only the conquered countries must submit, but that it would be dangerous to the whole empire to continue the war any longer. Fresh orders were therefore sent to ACHMED, BASHA of BAGDAT, with full powers to negotiate a peace with TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN. The friendship which the PERSIAN general had professed for this BASHA, was a circumstance which served to support the drooping spirits of the OTTOMAN court; the BASHA had also acquired so great a reputation, that his enemies as well as his partizans, often stiled him ACHMED PADISHA<sup>§</sup>. The mufti and all the court appeared however with very sorrowful countenances. CARA ACHMED, who had been for some time lieutenant to the governor of BAGDAT, a good soldier, and well versed in the liberal arts, was now sent to supply the place of the SERASKIER KOUPROLI.

TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN was no sooner master of the field, than he dispatched an officer to the RUSSIAN court, to inform them of his victory.

The

§ The emperor ACHMED.



The designs which he had now formed, required a peace with the TURKS; but he still promised to do nothing without the consent of the empress of RUSSIA. However, if we may judge from the event, he was desirous of engaging the RUSSIANS in a war with the TURKS, as the most effectual means of promoting his own schemes. 1735.

This second important victory favoured his designs. He immediately laid siege to ERIVAN the capital of ARMENIA; the garrison having no expectation of succours, soon demanded to capitulate, and were permitted to retire to CARS; but part of the inhabitants were removed into KHORASAN. From thence he sent a strong detachment to ERZEROUM<sup>h</sup>; and by the end of this year's campaign he recovered all the conquered provinces.

If we consider to what a wretched state PERSIA had been reduced six years before, when TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN appeared at the head of her forces, we must impute this rapid success to his military genius and fortune. What a prodigious change was it for a country devoured by rapine, whose subjects were despised abroad, and plunged into miseries at home, to give laws to a powerful monarchy in so short a time! It is natural to think, that in the height of his triumphs, ASIA would not have bounded his conquests, had his passion been only for military glory; but every circumstance of his conduct proved that he aspired at more than triumphs; and that his ambition of sovereignty was equal to that of conquest; neither of which could be long supported without vast funds, and these hardly were to be obtained by pursuing the war against the TURKS.

Before we enter upon the relation of any new event, we must go back to the situation of the OTTOMAN court. The defeat of the SERASKIER KOUPROLI was attended with a further change of ministry at CONSTANTINOPLE. ISMAEL BASHA, the grand vizir, who had been the chief adviser to prosecute the war with PERSIA, was deposed the 12th of JULY, and though a relation of the grand signior, was banished to the isle of CANDIA:

<sup>h</sup> At ERZEROUM the peace was concluded by the PERSIAN and TURKISH ministers.

1735. CANDIA : MAHOMMED BASHA succeeded him ; the last was also appointed SERASKIER of the army intended to be sent against the RUSSIANS. This minister accordingly marched out of CONSTANTINOPLE in great pomp and ceremony, with the standard of MAHOMMED carried before him. The RUSSIANS, who naturally expected this event, were very vigilant in marching an army early into the field ; infomuch, that ASOPHE was besieged before the TURKS had taken care to provide a sufficient gar- rison. This place being at the mouth of the river DON on the PALUS- MÆOTIS, and communicating with the BLACK SEA, the laying siege to it created great alarms at CONSTANTINOPLE.

The ministers of the several christian potentates interposed their media- tion, to prevent the great effusion of blood, which the RUSSIAN war must necessarily occasion ; but the TURKS were inexorably bent to pursue it. KOULI KHAN pretended to make it an article in the peace he was negotiating with the TURKS, to include the RUSSIANS. This was a mi- nisterial stroke, which answered a double purpose. He knew the TURKS were entirely averse to it, and consequently their refusal gave him the better plea to make his own terms ; and, at the same time, he secretly wished to involve his new friend, as well as his old one, in a war that should keep them well employed for some time, whilst he pursued the favourite projects which he had planned : for this purpose, it was also necessary to start all the difficulties imaginable, in order to protract the issue of the conferences at ERZEROUM. ABDIL BAKI KHAN, the PER- SIAN embassador, met ACHMED, BASHA of BAGDAT, but nothing could be concluded this year. The TURKS made no difficulty to yield up or restore all the countries conquered from PERSIA since the time of SHAH HUSSEIN, with those which had been separated from that empire during that reign ; but KOULI KHAN, not satisfied with this, made pretensions on BAGDAT, and demanded to be paid the expences of the war.

The issue however made it appear, that it was not his intentions to exact such rigorous conditions, but to gain time, and dispose of the go- vernments of all the conquered countries in a satisfactory manner, and to endeavour to persuade the RUSSIAN court, that he meant to prosecute the war, notwithstanding the treaty already commenced.



## P A R T IV.

FROM THE

ELECTING OF TÆHMAS KOULI  
KHAN KING OF PERSIA IN 1736,

TILL HIS

RETURN FROM HIS MEMORABLE EXPEDITION INTO  
INDIA IN 1740.

## C H A P. XV.

*The young SHAH ABAS dies. The RUSSIANS evacuate DERBEND, and yield up their conquests in PERSIA. TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN declared king. Conditions of accepting the diadem. The MULLAH BASHI put to death. NADIR coins money, and seizes the lands of the church. Edict concerning the sect of the SUNNIS and SCHIAS.*

**T**HE beginning of this year ripened the plot. PERSIA, trembling at the effects of her own conquests, saw herself in the hands of an usurper, whose military abilities rendered him the idol of his army. The young prince ABAS, who was of a complexion extremely delicate, died. Whether his death was intirely according to the course of nature, is not declared: it is probable, however precarious the life of this infant-king might have been, that some art was used, in order, that so feeble an impediment should not obstruct the designs of TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN. 1736.

The 10th of MARCH, as I have more than once observed, is the PERSIANS new-year's-day, when it is the custom of their princes to assemble

1736. the governors of the provinces, and demand an account of their administration. This was a favourable occasion to convoke all the governors, elders, and great officers, together with the generals of his army, in order to communicate the success of his arms, and to consult what further measures were necessary to be taken for the common good. The rendezvous was appointed in the plains of MOGAN, near the banks of the ARAS, where he had assembled the greatest part of his forces, consisting of near 100,000 men. He acquainted the nobles and governors, that the reason of calling them together was, that they might know from him how GOD had been pleased to bless his arms with success, and to restore all the dominions which had been torn from the late family of the SEFFIES. That he had delivered PERSIA from the yoke of the AFGHANS, and was in treaty with the TURKS, with whom he hoped soon to make such a peace as would be agreeable, since the grand signior must be obliged to accept of the conditions which he should prescribe: that he had also concluded a peace with the RUSSIANS, who had restored all those dominions belonging to the PERSIAN empire, which they had conquered fourteen years before: in short, that he had left nothing to be done except the conquest of KANDAHAR. But as it was necessary for the support and continuation of the glory of the monarchy, that they should have a person at the head of their armies, who might prevent such fatal consequences as they experienced in the preceding reign; and as it was his intention to enjoy the remainder of his life in repose, he desired to resign his office; for which reason they must make choice of a new general. Moreover, as it had pleased GOD to deprive them of the young ABAS, they must elect a king also: if they thought SHAH TÆHMAS could govern them with valour and wisdom, that they had only to recall him; but if he was not capable, they must fix their choice upon some other: that so important a business required mature consideration; he therefore recommended it to them, and desired their answer in three days.

There was hardly a sensible man in the assembly, but saw through the thin disguise of these propositions; and many saw it with indignation, who had not virtue enough to declare their real sentiments. KOULI



KHAN retired to his tent, and left the deputies to their own contemplations: he ordered that they should be entertained at the public expence, and treated with all the respect imaginable. It is reasonable to presume, that he had already made his sentiments known to the principal officers, whilst it was obvious to every common soldier, that military glory, and a despotic authority, were his ruling passions. The great care and tenderness which he had upon all occasions shewn them, necessarily engaged their wishes to see him their sovereign, as well as their general. Under these circumstances, what voice could the deputies of the people have, but such as was agreeable to the army?

The three days being expired, the deputies waited on the general with a petition, representing, “ That as GOD had been pleased to make use  
“ of his arm to restore the glory of the PERSIAN monarchy, none was  
“ so worthy of the diadem as himself; that their lives and fortunes were  
“ redeemed by him, and to him therefore they ought to be devoted.”

TÆHMAS KOULI KHAN then replied: “ It is true, that since I led the  
“ people to battle, divine Providence has been pleased to favour my de-  
“ signs. You have yourselves been witnesses of the amazing success of  
“ the PERSIAN arms. It was not my intention however in calling you  
“ together, to receive this mark of your gratitude; but since heaven has  
“ decreed that my feeble arm should be the instrument of that almighty  
“ power which governs all things, I will consent to your proposal, under  
“ certain conditions. It will rest on yourselves to support your own  
“ choice, and assist me to exalt the nation to as high a pitch of glory  
“ as the greatest kings of the former ages have done. But if you will  
“ make me your king, you must remember to comply with the condi-  
“ tions which I now require. First, You must make the diadem here-  
“ ditary in my family. Secondly, You shall not entertain in your houses  
“ any of the family of your old kings, much less mention any thing  
“ tending to rebellion. And lastly, You shall not curse OMAR, OSMAN,  
“ and ABUBEKER, nor observe the tumultuous meetings at the commem-  
“ oration of HUSSEIN’s death; and as a great effusion of blood has  
“ been occasioned by the religious differences of the sects of the

“ SCHIAS



1736. "SCHIAS and SUNNIS<sup>i</sup>, which, in my opinion, are not in themselves  
 "essential, an assembly of the priests shall be called to regulate these  
 "differences."

It may, I think, be presumed, that NADIR SHAH, for that is the name by which we must now call him, elate with his great victories over the TURKS, had flattered himself that he might one day unite the PERSIAN and OTTOMAN dominions under the same head; but though this dazzling object floated in his imagination, he could scarcely hope to make a speedy conquest of the minds of the people, or that he could reign over both nations, whilst they remained of different sects. It is true, he was bred a SUNNI, and from thence might seem somewhat inclined that way; though, in reality, the tenets of both parties were equally indifferent to him.

The KHANS and deputies of all the provinces came readily into the two first articles, which seemed more particularly to regard their allegiance to their new sovereign. As to the commemoration of the death of HUSSEIN, the son of ALI, we have already explained, that this festival<sup>k</sup> regarded the ecclesiastical government; but since it might be made an occasion of tumultuous assemblies, NADIR wisely guarded against it, as injurious to his interest. In regard to the last article, they desired the high priest<sup>l</sup> might be heard; he was accordingly brought into the presence of the new sovereign, where he spoke to this effect: "It is not for earthly prin-  
 "ces to direct in what manner the God of heaven and earth ought to  
 "be worshiped: we have our law, as delivered down by divine autho-  
 "rity, through the mediation of the prophet<sup>m</sup>; that is our guide; and as  
 "all changes in religious matters are subject to very dangerous conse-  
 "quences, I hope no means will be taken to sully the lustre of your vic-  
 "tories, by a step so derogatory to the welfare of the true believers." Such a speech as this, might have easily fired the hearts of a people naturally inclined to enthusiasm; but perhaps this honest priest was the only  
 man

<sup>i</sup> See Vol. I. page 338. also Vol. III. page 33. To this we may add, that as the SUNNIS, who are the sect of the TURKS, acknowledge the khoran as expounded by the doctors, MALEK, SHAFI, HANBAL, and ABUL HANIFA; so the PERSIANS or SCHIAS adhere to ALI, and are guided by their own IMAMS, who have expounded their ecclesiastical law.

<sup>k</sup> See Vol. III. page 32.

<sup>l</sup>MULLAH BASHI.

<sup>m</sup> MAHOMMED.



man who dared to speak his mind; the only one, at least, of any eminent authority, who had courage to check that imperious spirit, which already shewed itself in NADIR, though he had not yet received the ensigns of royalty: but as if heaven had marked him out for deliverance from the cruel bondage of NADIR'S government, he was soon silenced with a bow-string. This well-meaning priest might, however, have checked his zeal; for as the matter was to be referred to priests of the different sects, the consequence was very natural, that it would remain as they found it: nor did the people give their tacit consent to these proposals, so as to produce any particular effect, with regard to the uniformity of religion.

The next day, being the 11th of MARCH, the general was proclaimed king, under the name of NADIR SHAH<sup>n</sup>, and the people paid him homage as such, which he accepted with an air of dignity mixed with arrogance. The ARMENIAN patriarch, who was in the camp, performed part of the ceremony, by buckling on his sabre; but as to the plume<sup>o</sup> and diadem, which, as already observed, is the more essential mark of royalty, he changed it himself from the left-side to his right, as if he meant to shew, that to his own arm only he was indebted for his exaltation.

Thus did the aspiring genius of this instrument of divine wrath accomplish his end: thus did he reach that point which CÆSAR could not attain; tho' in valour, generosity, and strength of mind, this celebrated ROMAN was not inferior to the PERSIAN usurper; whilst he excelled him in learning, politeness, and humanity, to which NADIR indeed had no pretensions. CROMWELL also was baffled in his aim at the crown of ENGLAND; neither his skill nor cunning, nor his valour nor resolution, could acquire him the name of king. ROME, tho' corrupt to an extreme, and ripe for a change of that form of government, by which her people had arrived at so high a pitch of glory, had yet some honest and gallant spirits, who thought the killing of a tyrant warrantable, at least not so great an evil as slavery. In

<sup>n</sup> The PERSIANS generally put the title after the name, tho' EUROPEANS use it before and after indifferently. <sup>o</sup> These are of the feathers of black herons stuck into a tube, supported by a stud of precious stones.

1736. ENGLAND, there were numbers whose principles were untainted, and who saw the error which had been committed, in attempting to change the monarchy into a republican government: but in PERSIA, ignorance and want of foresight, with universal corruption of manners, prepared the necks of the people for the yoke to which they now submitted; and it was but a few years after, that they saw pyramids of human heads erected on that spot, where they chose their king<sup>p</sup>.

NADIR being arrived at the summit of his ambition, began to exert that boundless authority with which he was invested; however, he tempered his natural fierceness and cruelty with some tokens of munificence: he entertained all the deputies of the people for three days, and treated them with great civility; among other shews and amusements in the camp, was that of shooting an arrow at a gold plate, which was fixed on a lofty pole; those who shot down the mark were to receive it as a reward of their skill, together with a coat of honour.

The motto, which he chose upon this occasion for his seal, was this:

“As the jewel was fallen out of the ring of fame and glory, so God  
“has restored it in the name of NADIR.”

The coins which he caused to be struck had these inscriptions:

“NADIR king of kings, and glory of the age.”

Another was:

“Coins proclaim through the earth, the reign of NADIR, the king  
“who conquers the world.”

The assembly were at length dismissed, to appearance very well satisfied; the priests only resented the death of their chief, the MULLAH BASHI, and the little regard which the new sovereign shewed to the national religious tenets: however, as he did nothing by halves, he was determined to pull off the mask. As soon as he arrived at CASBIN, whither he next directed his march, he convoked all the ecclesiastics of the city and neighbouring countries, and demanded of them in what  
manner

<sup>p</sup> See Vol. I. page 338.



manner the revenues of the church were employed; they answered, in the support of priests, colleges and mosques, in the last of which incessant prayers were offered to heaven for the success of the arms of their sovereigns: to which he replied to this effect: “It is certain that you have  
 “ been very remiss in your duty, and that the Almighty is not pleased  
 “ with the prayers of such men as you are. It is now near fifty years  
 “ since the empire has been on the decline, and was at length plunged  
 “ into the deepest misery, till the victorious instruments <sup>q</sup> of the most  
 “ wonderful, by exposing their lives for its defence and glory, have at  
 “ length restored it. These are the priests to whose services we are in-  
 “ debted; therefore the revenues and lands of the church shall be appro-  
 “ priated to their support <sup>r</sup>.”

It is easy to imagine, what impressions the priests would receive from being plundered of all their revenues; but as much the greatest part of the army, particularly all the TARTARS, were of the sect of the SUNNIS, they treated their complaints with derision; whilst the people in general, apprehending that they should be relieved from their taxes, in proportion as the church revenues were applied to the support of the army, felt no great reluctance in submitting. Religion, indeed, seemed to be almost at the same low ebb as morality, or they never would have chosen NADIR KOULI for their king. He left the people however at their liberty, with regard to the support of priests at their own expence, but continued to exact a conformity to the SUNNIS, agreeably to what he had mentioned in the plains of MOGAN; and for this purpose he published the following edict:

*The decree to unite the two sects of the SCHIAS and the SUNNIS, which divide the PERSIANS and the TURKS.*

“ All in high stations, the SEDR <sup>s</sup> of great power, the governor, ministers of the law, and learned men of the royal residence of ISFAHAN,  
 “ being

<sup>q</sup> His army. <sup>r</sup> What these revenues amounted to, my authorities do not tell me. If it was one million sterling, it bears one fifth proportion to the whole revenue, according to the calculation in Vol II. page 27.

<sup>s</sup> The SEDR is a person of authority in the empire, who has the management of church lands, and of the revenues, for the maintenance of public schools, salaries to learned men, and other pious uses.

1736. “ being exalted through the king’s favour, shall know, that while the  
 “ abode of our ensigns, on which victory attends, was at MOGAN<sup>t</sup>, it  
 “ was agreed, that according to the antient custom transmitted down to  
 “ us by our predecessors in the religion, as explained by HANIFA<sup>u</sup> and  
 “ JAFFER<sup>w</sup>, from henceforth we do acknowledge the directing Caliphs<sup>x</sup>,  
 “ in whom the most high is well pleased, as the successors of the chief  
 “ of messengers<sup>y</sup>; and that, whenever there is occasion for it, the peo-  
 “ ple shall mention the names of the four with great respect.

“ But, whereas, in some places of these kingdoms, at the time of  
 “ calling to prayers, and standing up to pray, the people mention these  
 “ words, ALI, the friend of GOD<sup>z</sup>, according to the usual practice of the  
 “ SCHIAS<sup>a</sup>, but contrary to those who are of orthodox faith. This we  
 “ declare to be repugnant to the true religion, and contrary to the agree-  
 “ ment and covenant entered into. Besides, it is apparent to the world,  
 “ that as the prince of the faithful, the lion of GOD, the victorious<sup>b</sup>, is  
 “ elect, praised, and acceptable to the Lord of glory; his rank and inte-  
 “ rest at the court of unity, will not be increased by vulgar testimony,  
 “ nor the full moon of his power diminished by the omission of these  
 “ words. But the ill consequence of this form is, that both sects<sup>c</sup>, who  
 “ equally acknowledge the chief and prophet<sup>d</sup> of both worlds, are pro-  
 “ voked to animosities, which are offensive to the prophet, and to the  
 “ prince of the faithful<sup>e</sup>. Therefore, as soon as this high edict is pro-  
 “ mulged, let all mussulmen, high and low, the callers to prayer in the  
 “ cities, their dependencies, and adjacent countries, know, that from  
 “ this day henceforth, these words<sup>f</sup>, which differ from the orthodox  
 “ custom, shall not be mentioned. It is also usual with governors in  
 “ their assemblies, after their prefatory prayer<sup>g</sup>, to say, may the king,  
 “ from

<sup>t</sup> The plains where he was chosen king.  
 famous for expounding the MAHOMMEDAN law.  
 phets, whose opinion the SUNNIS pay the greatest regard to.  
 and ALI.

<sup>y</sup> MAHOMMED.

KELMAH, viz. there is but one GOD, MAHOMMED is his prophet, and ALI his friend.

<sup>d</sup> MAHOMMED.

<sup>e</sup> MORTISA ALI.

<sup>u</sup> HANIFA, one of the four TURKISH doctors,

<sup>w</sup> JAFFER, one of the IMAMS or pro-

<sup>x</sup> ABUBEKER, OMAR, OSMAN,

<sup>z</sup> Is always annexed by the SCHIAS to the

<sup>a</sup> The

sect of the PERSIANS.

<sup>b</sup> MORTISA, ALI’S titles.

<sup>c</sup> The SUNNIS and SCHIAS.

<sup>f</sup> ALI, the friend of GOD.

<sup>g</sup> FATTAHA  
 and



“ from whom all our fortune flows, live for ever. As a prayer for 1736.  
 “ perpetuating a mortal man is vain, and of no effect, we command that  
 “ every KHAN<sup>i</sup>, who is master of a drum<sup>k</sup> and ensign, say it in this  
 “ manner, thanks to the true king for all benefits. From henceforward  
 “ let all persons observe these settled regulations and written orders: for,  
 “ whosoever deviates from them, will incur the displeasure of the king  
 “ of kings. Written in the month SAFER, 1149<sup>l</sup>.”

Whatever policy might induce NADIR to make a difference in the form of prayer, it seems to have betrayed him into an absurdity. He might apprehend his interest to be concerned in being acknowledged the “ true king;” yet his observation on perpetuating a mortal man, seems to be more vain, than the thing itself, which he calls so; since “ living for ever,” can only allude to immortality after death; or, according to the eastern manner, the longest period of life.

## C H A P. XVI.

NADIR SHAH *marches to CASBIN, and sends an ambassador to TURKEY. The grand signior's orders to ACHMED BASHA concerning peace. All the conquered provinces yielded up to PERSIA. NADIR SHAH marches to ISFAHAN. Great preparations for an expedition against KANDAHAR.*

**T**H O' it was impossible this edict could meet with universal approbation, we do not find that any remonstrances were made against it. However, it was a very politic step upon the whole, as it was not only contrived to avoid expensive and bloody wars with the TURKS, but also calculated to continue the diadem in his own family, who were well known to be SUNNIS; and according to the former constitution of

R 2

the

and TOKBIR, is a prefatory prayer, which is generally the first chapter of the khoran. TOKBIR is repeating three times, these words, ALLAH, AKBAH, God is greatest, before the KELMAH above mentioned.

<sup>l</sup> I presume that the order extended to all persons to use this form.

<sup>k</sup> TABAL, or small drum, which general officers ordinarily wear fixed to their saddles.

<sup>l</sup> JUNE, 1736.

1736. the empire, would otherwise find it as difficult to establish a lineal succession, as a roman-catholic prince in a protestant country.

NADIR, during his stay at CASBIN, took the usual oath, " To govern  
 " the people according to the laws of GOD, as revealed by his prophet  
 " MAHOMMED ; and to protect and defend the PERSIANS against all their  
 " enemies." From hence he dispatched a minister to the OTTOMAN  
 court, to acquaint them of his accession to the throne ; he also ordered  
 another to the court of ST. PETERSBURG for the same purpose. The  
 empress of RUSSIA in return, ordered her resident in PERSIA to present  
 her congratulations ; and presuming that he had already made peace with  
 the TURKS, she demanded what the conditions of it were, that she might  
 see if there was any thing contrary to the treaty which she had lately  
 concluded with the PERSIAN empire. NADIR still persisted, that he  
 would enter into no accommodations with the TURKS injurious to the  
 interest of her imperial majesty : that if his ministers had done any thing,  
 it was without his orders ; though, at the same time, the ambassador ap-  
 pointed for TURKEY was one of his prime counsellors and favourites.

On the other hand, the TURKISH ministry endeavoured to persuade  
 the people, that in consideration of their yielding up all the conquered  
 provinces, the PERSIANS would make a diversion in their favour against  
 the RUSSIANS, who, during this interval, had made themselves masters  
 of AZOPH. The grand signior, who feared NADIR when he was only  
 general of the forces of PERSIA, was the more desirous of cultivating a  
 good understanding with him, now that he was exalted to the throne of  
 that empire.

It was already expected, that NADIR would turn his arms towards  
 INDIA : but in the present situation of his affairs, it was by no means  
 convenient to give either the RUSSIANS or the TURKS any cause to be-  
 lieve, that he meditated an enterprize against a country at so great a di-  
 stance. The former had reason to complain of his conduct, in regard  
 to his treaty with the TURKS ; whilst these were compelled only by the  
 necessity of their affairs, to submit to terms which they thought highly  
 injurious



injurious to their honour and interest. Hence he judged it necessary to practise all his arts to prevent those resentments, which might have obstructed his favourite design. 1736.

The grand signior no sooner received notice of NADIR's being advanced to the throne of PERSIA, than he repeated his orders to ACHMED, BASHA of BAGDAT, to conclude the treaty at ERZEROUM: on his part he sent GHENTCH ALI BASHA to that city; and the SHAH appointed ABDUL BAKI KHAN as his embassador to CONSTANTINOPLE. The orders which ACHMED BASHA received from the OTTOMAN court were couched in the following terms:

“ The most honoured and respected minister of the empire, most renowned, wise, and trusty counsellor, the most happy ACHMED BASHA, our SERASKIER and VIZIR in ASIA, whose fame and felicity is everlasting, shall know, That certain differences have happened between our sublime and exalted court, and the kingdom of PERSIA, which have been the cause of immense losses and sufferings to the inhabitants of the frontiers, insomuch, that many districts are intirely ruined. As we are moved with the most tender compassion, and desirous to establish a lasting tranquillity, we have resolved to make these reciprocal losses the occasion of a strict friendship; thus to obey the orders of providence, and preserve the people from misery.

“ We have already informed you of our design to enter into a convention with his renowned majesty the SHAH, who shines as SATURN, and whose vows are heard by the Almighty. The treaty made by our predecessor AMURATH the IVth. is proposed as the foundation of this convention. We have learnt from your letters, that the most famous and happy SHAH is disposed to reform the errors of the religion of PERSIA, and has agreed that several articles concerning the faith shall be inserted in the treaty. As the two courts have proposed to conclude this covenant, the illustrious ABDUL BAKI KHAN, on the part of the SHAH, is invested with the character of embassador for this purpose. We agree to the three following articles:

“ I. That

1736. “ I. That hence forward the PERSIANS shall be at liberty to visit the  
 “ tomb of MECCA, and other religious places, without impediment,  
 “ and shall be free of all duties whatsoever: and in order that  
 “ every article shall be exactly observed, a plenipotentiaary on our  
 “ part shall always reside at the splendid court of ISFAHAN; and  
 “ one on the behalf of the SHAH shall remain at our court.
- “ II. That the SHAH, as a pure effect of the greatness of his soul,  
 “ will cause the differences in religion to cease, by abolishing the  
 “ sect of the SCHIAS, and for the future tolerating only the SUNNIS,  
 “ who acknowledge the four successors of MAHOMMED, ABUBEKER,  
 “ OMAR, OSMAN, and ALI, to the end that there may not be any  
 “ farther disputes about religion.
- “ III. After the SHAH shall have re-established good order in his do-  
 “ minions, and extirpated the SCHIAS, from whence arose eternal  
 “ disorders and disputes concerning the public exercise of religion,  
 “ and shall have acknowledged us, the successor of MAHOMMED,  
 “ we shall on our part acknowledge him as SHAH.

“ And notwithstanding that we have already given you this full power,  
 “ we authorize you again happily to conclude the treaty with the em-  
 “ bassador ABDUL BAKI KHAN, in the place which you shall chuse to  
 “ make the exchange; and afterwards, you are to send the treaty to  
 “ our splendid court by the vizir KORMAN WALEY, who will conduct  
 “ the embassador ABDUL BAKI KHAN, with all his attendants. For  
 “ this purpose we have dispatched CAPIDUSI BASHA to conduct him  
 “ hither, and defray his expences on the road.

“ When you shall have received the present, and comprehended the  
 “ contents of this commission; above all exert yourself to establish a  
 “ good understanding between the two courts. The prayers of the  
 “ faithful will aid you in attaining the extirpation of the sect of the  
 “ SCHIAS, and to exclude from the treaty the unbelieving RUSSIANS.  
 “ By this means you may expect the exalted favour of our majesty, and  
 “ the acknowledgment of all true believers. These are our orders, by  
 “ which



“ which you are to regulate yourself. Given the 8th of the month  
 “ ZILCHILDESI, 1148<sup>m</sup>. I, CASI ASKER MAHOMMED, a servant of the  
 “ true GOD, do attest that this copy is according to the original of the  
 “ fultan.” 1736.

The conferences at ERZEROUM still continued, and tho' the TURKS submitted to every thing which the SHAH seemed inclined to insist upon, yet nothing was finally determined; and ABDUL BAKI KHAN was ordered to proceed to CONSTANTINOPLE, where he continued to practise the arts of evasion, no doubt by the instruction of his master. The OTTOMAN court was extremely offended at this conduct; but as peace was absolutely necessary, near the close of the year the treaty was concluded. NADIR was acknowledged as sovereign of PERSIA; all the conquered provinces were yielded back to that empire; and a full permission was granted for the PERSIANS to visit the tomb of MAHOMMED. The last article was however of very little moment, since the true policy of the PERSIAN state was to prevent their subjects from making that pilgrimage.

In the mean while, NADIR marched with his army from CASBIN to ISFAHAN, with a view to settle the interior government of the empire. This was not the place which he desired most to favour; however, its situation with regard to the TURKS and the RUSSIANS, and some affectation of popularity, with respect to the antient metropolis of the empire, drew his attention. His natural inclination to avarice, turned his thoughts to the encouragement of commerce; in which, however, he had not the least skill, nor patience to see things brought to maturity. The interest of the ARMENIANS began to revive; the distinction of christian and MAHOMMEDAN was weakened, not only as a consequence of the confusion which had long reigned in PERSIA, but also as an effect of blending the two sects of the SUNNIS and SCHIAS. A careless indulgence, as well as a fierce persecution, seem equally destructive of true religion. Moral duties, and mutual confidences, are the natural effects of religion, and as essential to the encouragement of commerce, as to the support of a state  
 in

1736. in general. What prospect then had the PERSIANS of a happy reign, under a man whose whole life had been guided by principles diametrically opposite to these duties ?

The insatiable avarice of the eunuchs and ministers of the weak and unfortunate HUSSEIN, had suffered many of the public buildings in ISFAHAN to fall to decay, and private houses were in no better condition<sup>n</sup>; the AFGHANS had not repaired them, nor was NADIR inclined to recommend any expence of that nature. The same passion of covetousness possessed his breast, as it had done those of the eunuchs in the former reign, though the objects they pursued were very different. However, he caused the walls to be repaired, and put the city in a better state of defence. He also made a distribution of several lands, in order to their cultivation, reserving to himself a considerable part of their produce. To those whom poverty had reduced to the lowest ebb, he caused grain to be given, also such small sums as were necessary to provide the utensils of husbandry. Thus he consulted, in some measure, what was essential to the support of the state; but at the same time, the chief object of his care was the maintenance of his army.

Though the late campaign had been attended with such great success, yet the common accidents of war had lessened the number of his forces; for which reason, he sent into all parts for recruits: this distressed the inhabitants in a double respect, as those fit to bear arms were the most proper for husbandry; and the more his army was augmented, the greater necessity he was under for a large supply of money. Agriculture, manufactures, and commerce in general, had been declining very fast some years before the fatal invasion of the AFGHANS; during their reign, the state was plunged still deeper in misery; and, since their expulsion, scarce any thing had been heard but the din of war. There is something amazingly productive of satisfaction in the notion of conquest: every subject in a military government, is apt to raise himself in his own esteem, in proportion to the achievements and victories of his sovereign; tho' such victories may be the very occasion of their misery. NADIR had indeed

<sup>n</sup> See Vol. I. page 230.



indeed made a rapid progress in his conquest; but this served only to de- 1736.  
 lude the people with an imaginary felicity, no longer durable than the  
 first transport of a tumultuous joy.

The sums which NADIR wanted for the prosecution of his designs were  
 very considerable, and could not be collected without the utmost seve-  
 rity. He therefore sent his officers ° to all the cities and provinces in the  
 empire, where money, provisions, horses, arms, or any of the imple-  
 ments of war could be procured; charging them to execute their com-  
 missions with the utmost dispatch, as the close of the year was ap-  
 pointed for his intended expedition.

It is reasonable to presume, that he had projected the conquest of the  
 MOGHOL'S empire. What encouragement he had to expect success, we  
 shall have occasion to relate. In the height of his victories over the  
 TURKS, he would scarce have directed his arms a different way, without  
 good assurance that this enterprize was practicable. He made, indeed,  
 no other profession than that of subduing the AFGHANS of KANDAHAR;  
 an undertaking by no means below his character as a great captain. PER-  
 SIA was delivered from the yoke of those people, but not revenged.  
 Their invasion was considered as a rebellion, and as such ought to be  
 chastised; nor were these people in themselves a contemptible enemy,  
 either with regard to their numbers, their situation, or their bravery.  
 HUSSEIN KHAN, the brother of MAGHMUD, who enjoyed the sovereignty  
 of KANDAHAR, had refused to come into PERSIA at the summons which  
 NADIR sent to him; and as he had put himself in a condition of de-  
 fence, it was very plain he meant to support the independency of the  
 AFGHANS.

After the conclusion of the peace with the TURKS, NADIR sent another  
 embassador to the grand signior, with several magnificent presents, among  
 which was an elephant of a very extraordinary size. Having therefore  
 nothing to apprehend from any of his neighbours; the end of this year  
 he prepared to set out on his eastern expedition.

° MUHASSILS, or collectors of taxes, and other such kind of duty.



## C H A P. XVII.

*A succinēt account of the incursion of the MAHARRATTAS, and the enmity between NIZAM AL MULUCK, governor of DECCAN, and DEVRAN KHAN, the first minister of MAHOMMED SHAH, emperor of HINDOSTAN, with the general state of his court from 1720 to 1736, preparatory to the expedition of NADIR SHAH into INDIA.*

1736.

**B**EFORE we enter upon a relation of the famous march of NADIR SHAH into INDIA, it may be proper to give a short account of the situation of affairs at that time in the MOGHOL'S empire.

In 1720, SULTAN IBRAHIM having rebelled against MAHOMMED SHAH, his general ABDALLAH KHAN took occasion to pillage the rich throne of the MOGHOL<sup>p</sup> of its diamonds, and raised a great army. This general was soon defeated, and taken prisoner<sup>q</sup>; the young sultan was confined, and the government seemed to be again established. Some time after, NIZAM AL MULUCK<sup>r</sup>, governor of DECCAN<sup>s</sup>, grown too powerful for a subject, could not be contained within the bounds of duty, but appropriated the revenues of his province towards the maintenance of an army, which he employed in subjecting the adjacent countries.

He

<sup>p</sup> This throne was made by SHAH JEHAN, and reported to have cost eleven millions sterling.

<sup>q</sup> This general died some months afterwards of his wounds, and it is remarkable that forty-five women of his wives, concubines, relations, and domestics, burnt themselves in one room, the day after his death. Formerly, none but the wives of the BRAHMINS or INDIAN priests had this barbarous privilege; but since the government has devolved upon the RAJAS, it has been often practised for some of the wives of princes and others to burn themselves when their husbands die. Some of these princes are independent of the MOGHOL, and govern distinct tribes, called RAIJPOUTS, who are esteemed the best soldiers in INDIA. This custom of burning is strictly forbid by the MAHOMMEDAN, which is the established religion; but some of the SEYD and PATTAN families, through the mere force of pride fall into this custom; and, to evade the laws, set their apartments on flames, and thus destroy themselves. There is no compulsion to this sacrifice in any part of INDIA; but the minds of the people are so strongly tainted with an opinion of its being honourable to the surviving relations of the party, that money has been often given to obtain the consent of a governor for the liberty of destroying themselves.

<sup>r</sup> This word signifies him who puts the empire in order.

<sup>s</sup> It is sometimes wrote DEKJEN.



He pretended to keep the MAHARRATTAS<sup>t</sup> from making inroads into the dominions of the MOGHOL. These people had imposed a heavy tribute on their neighbours, and taken possession of several places of consequence. They made incursions as far as the province of MALVA, killed the governor, and seized all his treasures. From thence they directed their course to GUZURAT, the inhabitants of which they treated as a conquered people; after which they returned eastward as far as GUALIAR, laying the country under contribution: the peasants implored the protection of the emperor, and the whole court was under great alarms.

The GREAT MOGHOL therefore ordered an army to be provided; and DEVRAN KHAN<sup>u</sup>, his first minister and also his vizir with several other OMRAS<sup>w</sup>, were appointed to command it. Instead of giving battle to the MAHARRATTAS, whose numbers were much inferior to the emperor's troops, they made a composition to pay a fourth part<sup>x</sup> of the revenues of DEHLIE, on condition that they would retire, and lay down their arms. These lords then returned home in pursuit of their pleasures. The whole court was devoted to amusement, and appeared in some measure in the circumstances in which that of SHAH HUSSEIN had lately been, in PERSIA.

The pusillanimous conduct of these generals, was the occasion that BAJEERAU, at the head of his MAHARRATTAS, took up arms again the next year, notwithstanding the contribution agreed for had been punctually paid. They plundered many places, and intended to march as far as AKBAR ABAD<sup>y</sup>. Upon this, DEVRAN KHAN and the vizir marched against them a second time, and got up with them a little after they passed the river JUMNA, intending to penetrate the province<sup>z</sup> of SAADIT KHAN. But this general having notice of their design, marched against them

S 2

them

<sup>t</sup> These people are sometimes called GANIMS; they inhabit the hither INDIA.

<sup>u</sup> He was the paymaster-general of the empire, whom they call BUKHSI.

<sup>w</sup> OMRA is the plural of EMIR, signifying prince or great, a title given to persons of the first rank in INDIA, as already explained; this word is also wrote UMERAS.

<sup>x</sup> This they call CHOT, a tribute which has been often attempted to be imposed on the more peaceable INDIANS.

<sup>y</sup> AGRA, this was formerly the capital.

<sup>z</sup> Mr. FRASER and Mr. OTTER mention this as the province of AUDIH, which the former places beyond PENJAB: this must be a mistake, or the MAHARRATTAS must have travelled over a vast tract of country.



1736. them with a great force, and defeated them: DEVRAN KHAN and the vizir having joined SAADIT KHAN, pursued the MAHARRATTAS, who were intercepted by a strong body of MOGHOLS, and put to flight. The offence which SAADIT KHAN took at the compromise made by DEVRAN KHAN with these free-booters, together with the great opinion he had conceived of his own merit, were the chief occasion of his retiring to his province discontented.

In the mean time, MAHOMMED SHAH was not ignorant that NIZAM AL MULUCK was the real author of these disorders; which it would hardly be possible to prevent, unless he returned court. The emperor therefore sent him an invitation under the strongest assurances, not only of security to his person, but also that nothing should be wanting to give him pleasure. This man was the most distinguished for his abilities of any of the INDIAN lords: their cabals were the chief occasion of plunging the state into difficulties: he had often recommended the administration of justice as practised in the reigns of the former emperors, particularly that of his old master AURINGZEBE<sup>a</sup>; but the unhappy situation of the court rendered his advice ineffectual, so that he retired to his government very much disgusted. He was irritated against DEVRAN KHAN and other OMRAS, who had acquired an ascendancy over the emperor, and crossed all the measures which he had proposed, whilst he saw the court abandoned to buffoons and loose women.

NIZAM AL MULUCK having been solicited to return to court, at length resolved to comply: but he left his son GHAZI O'DIN KHAN to command in his province. He did not acknowledge that he had favoured the incursions of the MAHARRATTAS; on the contrary, he declared that he had supported himself when the SEYDS<sup>b</sup> would have taken his government from him; adding to this effect: "It pleased the Almighty that I  
" baffled all their designs, in consequence of which I was misrepresented  
" at court. Your majesty also, induced by their intrigues, intended to  
" come against me with a mighty army, but heaven diverted the design,  
" and

<sup>a</sup> This prince died in 1707, after a happy reign of fifty lunar years.

<sup>b</sup> HOSSAN ALI KHAN and ABDALLAH KHAN, who favoured the young SULTAN IBRAHIM already mentioned.



“ and you did me the justice to believe me a faithful servant.” The credulous emperor persuaded of his integrity, would have made him his vizir, but he pleaded that he was a DERVEISH, and therefore not inclined to accept of so high a station; that there were many persons about the court more capable of executing so high an office, and consequently he desired to be excused. 1736.

This lord however met a very gracious reception, and was honoured with the title of ASOF JAH<sup>c</sup>. He soon discovered that things were not mended, that DEVRAN KHAN had his master's ear, and took pains to render him ridiculous: even in the emperor's presence he mentioned him with the highest mark of contempt, giving him the name of a cheat<sup>d</sup>. Such insolencies as this could not be relished by a man of his spirit: he at length declined coming to court, and secretly meditated revenge.

A true sense of humanity, and a right knowledge of mankind, can alone support us under such circumstances. If either of these is wanting, the corruption of the heart is apt to lead us to destroy those, who are the occasion of our humiliation. When the imagination is set at work, pride suggests a thousand expedients; and where power is added, what mischiefs will it not effect? But whilst the shaft is aimed at one, they forget that millions may feel the wound.

The vizir had made a double inter-marriage of his son and daughter, to the son and daughter of NIZAM AL MULUCK, from whence the latter hoped to establish an interest with him, in opposition to the other lords; and what he could not rectify by his counsels, to confound by his intrigues. The vizir however took the opposite party, and declined all violent measures, except such as gratified his own avarice. This enraged the haughty INDIAN so much the more; that rather than not gratify his private resentment, he resolved to use the arm of a foreign enemy. He knew that SAADIT KHAN, governor of AUDIH, was become a male-content

<sup>c</sup> ASOF JAH signifies in rank as ASOF, the name of him who is pretended to have been vizir to SOLOMON.

<sup>d</sup> MAIMOUNDGI. This word signifies a quack doctor or cheat; but here applicable to his cajoling address.

1736. tent as well as himself; he therefore entered into a secret correspondence with him, and it is said they both joined to inform NADIR SHAH of the state of affairs at the MOGHOL'S court.

Tho' it is granted, that NIZAM AL MULUCK might be actuated by a spirit of revenge, it seems to me highly probable that NADIR did not stand in need of such instruments, for the execution of his ambitious designs. It can hardly be imagined, that he was ignorant of the general state of affairs in that empire, or of the immense riches possessed by the MOGHOL. He knew also the valour of his own troops, and the effeminacy of the INDIANS: how easy is it then to believe, that a project of this nature might be formed by so ambitious a man, whose necessities for the support of his army would tempt him to a desperate enterprize?

But it is not my business as an historian to enter very deep into the more secret springs of his conduct, which can be determined only by consequences, and of these every reader ought to be permitted to judge; where the causes of events cannot be clearly traced out, the mind may exercise its faculty, in passing that judgment which seems most consistent.

It appears to me, that tho' NADIR had the wisdom to keep his own counsel, he had taken the resolution of marching into INDIA, in that exultation of heart, which arose from his great success against the TURKS. The war, in which they were already engaged with the RUSSIANS, was certainly an additional reason of his carrying this design into execution.

Having resolved upon this expedition, he nominated his son RIZA KOULI MYRZA<sup>e</sup> regent of PERSIA. This young man had already given several marks of a genius very like his father's, so that from a similarity of disposition NADIR added the affection of a friend to paternal love, and flattered himself into a belief, that the government would be secure in his son's hands.

<sup>e</sup> His father being now declared king, the title of MYRZA or prince of course belongs to the son, and by this name we shall hereafter call him.



## C H A P. XVIII.

*Reflexions on the different character of ALEXANDER the GREAT and NADIR SHAH. Moral considerations on false glory. Motives to ALEXANDER and NADIR's invading INDIA. NADIR leaves ISFAHAN in DECEMBER 1736. Conduct of HUSSEIN KHAN, governor of KANDAHAR, and of the AFGHANS. RIZA KOULI MYRZA subdues the OUSBEGS of BALKH and BOKHARA. His indiscreet conduct in PERSIA. INDIAN lords correspond with NADIR.*

**I**N reviewing the expedition of NADIR SHAH into INDIA, the detail of 1736: which contains the most memorable part of this history, the reader will indulge the inclination, to which the subject naturally leads me, of making some comparison between this enterprize, and that of the celebrated MACEDONIAN hero. It evidently appears, that these ravagers of the eastern world, ALEXANDER and NADIR, were actuated by the same predominant passion; an unbounded desire of conquest: ALEXANDER indeed had the strongest desire of fame and glory; NADIR added to his delight in military achievements, an insatiable thirst of accumulating riches. The one reigned by right of birth; the other by an usurped power; a power which could not be supported without a great military force, nor that force without great treasures.

As an ordinary effect of their intrepidity and rapid conquests, both were the idols of their soldiers; till NADIR became cruel and avaricious. ALEXANDER was most beloved; NADIR most feared. The one affected a love to mankind; the other did not so much as pretend to act upon principles of humanity. Both appear to us as objects of terror and astonishment; but whilst some mixture of love or compassion is due to ALEXANDER's memory; NADIR can only excite our hatred. The one had a real generosity in his nature, and a nobleness of sentiment, cultivated by a liberal education; the other, tho' superior in natural parts, was cunning, deceitful, and illiterate.

1736. Had ALEXANDER been born to an humble fortune, perhaps he might have given greater proofs of true heroism, than as a mighty prince and conqueror; his heart was formed to a love of virtue, but not in a degree equal to his power. Though he was not cruel, he killed his intimate friend <sup>f</sup>; though continent <sup>g</sup>, he burnt a city <sup>h</sup> to please a strumpet. Is it a virtue to distress mankind! A conduct so injurious as his, may entitle him to the fame of a conqueror, but not of a hero. NADIR himself had qualities, which are sometimes called virtues; yet we are sure that no prince, without renouncing humanity, can be in love with such a character; nor can future ages produce an imitator, without exhibiting a picture shaded with gloom and horror.

Human nature in all ages and countries is the same; but the secret causes by which one man differs so much from another, are not so apparent as the effects of different educations. There are few countries which have not had their ALEXANDERS or their NADIRS; men actuated by a certain heroic spirit of military enthusiasm; confounding all the rules of morality and religion; exerting a boundless power of doing mischief; committing actions as much superior to the comprehension of vulgar minds, as contradictory to all the precepts of true philosophy; and, in short, proving by one constant pursuit, that the corruption of human nature may carry mankind much farther to do evil, by the subserviency of others as wicked, tho' not so brave as themselves, than all the principles of virtue can lead us to do good, for want of virtuous instruments.

If we look back to past ages, we find the world distressed by men of this stamp, under the specious name of conquest. How intoxicating is the love of fame in the breast of a prince, turned to war! whose genius is peculiarly military. The vain boast of triumphs seems to divert them from all thoughts of mortality, and tempts them to deify themselves in their own esteem. Amidst the din of war, a true sense of humanity is confounded, and heaven itself appears amiable only in its thunder.

3

The

<sup>f</sup> CLITUS.<sup>g</sup> With respect to the wife of DARIUS.<sup>h</sup> PERSEPOLIS.



The natural greatness of the mind in men born to empire, seems to find no object adequate to it, except in conquest and power. Men of understanding indeed discover the delusion; age and experience opens their eyes, and brings them down to the level of other mortals; it convinces them that the exercise of reason, in whatever station heaven has placed us, is the only solid glory: this passion for conquest will then appear in its true garb of distress and horror. Religion steps in to unveil this pretender; and by shewing us what the rule of the divine administration is, opens a scene of real and transcendent joys, which carries up the mind to the true source of greatness.

What just reason can be assigned for the invasion of INDIA by ALEXANDER? Tho' his conquest of DARIUS may be censured by historians as rash and extravagant, as unguided by experience, and unsupported by wisdom; yet if we consider the events previous to it, we shall find his conduct correspondent with the rule of princes in later ages. The expedition of XERXES, and other attempts made by the PERSIANS to enslave the GRECIAN republics, could not be easily forgotten. To prevent any future design of the same nature, was to take the first favourable opportunity of humbling the PERSIANS. There was no other way to silence their scruples, to gratify their jealousy, nor to appease their resentment.

The PERSIAN monarchy in the reign of DARIUS began to sink, in some measure, under its own weight. Wealth had created luxury; luxury, corruption; both these contributed to the disunion and effeminacy of the people, and rendered them an easy conquest. If the unhappy circumstances of PERSIA at that time, were a concomitant motive to ALEXANDER'S invasion, it did not invalidate the stronger reasons of self-preservation.

NADIR had been less criminal, if the same motives had carried him into INDIA; but his expedition was certainly founded as much in avarice as ambition, or a fond notion of glory.

It is now two thousand and eighty-six years since ALEXANDER made his expedition into INDIA. Will the fame of NADIR last so long? The

1736. arts and learning of GREECE, afforded the means of transmitting down the feats of the MACEDONIAN hero in a clearer manner, than the lights we receive from PERSIA under her present circumstances, even in regard to what happened but as yesterday. Some events however may be traced out, and afford that sort of pleasure, which the mind feels in the contemplation of objects of terror, whilst we enjoy, in a calm repose, all the transporting charms of liberty, and all the happy effects of a well regulated government.

About the end of DECEMBER 1736, NADIR SHAH began his march with eighty thousand men, of which the greatest part were cavalry. In a short time he was followed by a body of near thirty thousand men, under the command of TÆHMAS KHAN, his lieutenant<sup>i</sup>. The shortest rout to KANDAHAR would have been by KHERMAN; but it was hardly possible that so vast an army could be supported in a barren and desolate country: he therefore marched towards CASBIN<sup>k</sup>, from whence he directed his course through KHORASAN; but we have no particular mention of him afterwards, till his arrival near KANDAHAR.

We have already given a short account<sup>l</sup> of this province, the source of those numerous calamities in which PERSIA was involved. What reputation the inhabitants had acquired as warriors, has also appeared in the course of this narrative. HUSSEIN KHAN, the brother of MAGHMUD, who was murdered by ASHREFF, commanded in this place; he was a soldier of approved resolution, and actuated not only by the ambition of remaining independent, but also by the hopes of revenging himself of the PERSIANS for the slaughter of his countrymen. He strengthened his alliance with the TARTARS of BALKH and SAMARCAND, and also with the several princes of the mountains, who were in hopes of screening themselves from the tyranny of the PERSIAN yoke. The force he had collected is said to have been above thirty thousand men; and the quantity of provisions laid into the city of KANDAHAR was sufficient for a very long siege.

<sup>i</sup> VEKIL OF VEKEEL. <sup>k</sup> Some accounts mention his going by the way of KHERMAN, which is very natural to suppose, had that rout been practicable to a great army. <sup>l</sup> Vol. III. Chap. III. The



The KHAN, however, did not chuse to shut himself up immediately within walls, but determined to try if he could not stop the progress of so mighty an army, conducted by so experienced a general. The great reputation of NADIR did not intimidate those brave mountaineers the AFGHANS, who had so often triumphed over the PERSIANS. HUSSEIN KHAN therefore marched a large body of his men to the banks of a river, which is a branch of the HINDMEND, there to dispute the passage. They supported themselves for some time, but at length were obliged to retire, after the loss of near two thousand men. NADIR then advanced, in order to invest KANDAHAR. As he had no heavy artillery with him, it was impossible he should reduce a fortification so advantageously situated, by any other means than by famine; he determined therefore only to blockade it.

HUSSEIN KHAN was not insensible of his danger; he offered to acknowledge NADIR's sovereignty, and as a tributary prince to pay him homage, on condition he would retire to HERAT without committing any further hostilities. This was too mean an object for NADIR's ambition: their terms not being accepted, the besieged resolved to try the fortune of the arms. This extraordinary siege lasted till the close of the year. In the interim, the garrison made many sallies, which cost much blood on both sides: one in particular, about the beginning of AUGUST, with the greatest part of the AFGHAN troops, who attacked the PERSIANS with such impetuosity, that it was with the utmost difficulty they stood the shock.

NADIR caused a number of houses to be built here, as he had done before at BAGDAT; assuring HUSSEIN KHAN, that he would not decamp till he had taken the place. The communication with PERSIA was supported, by means of the numerous detachments which were sent to scour the country. In the interim, TÆHMAS KHAN, his lieutenant, arrived with a reinforcement of thirty thousand men, so that he was in a condition to disperse all the flying parties which had incommoded his camp.

It is remarkable, that in the several sallies made by the AFGHANS, they took a great number of horses belonging to the PERSIANS, and carried



1737. them into the city: these being food familiar to them, contributed in a great degree to draw out the siege to an extraordinary length. NADIR being mortified with such delays, entered at length into a treaty with HUSSEIN KHAN, and confirmed him in his government, upon condition that he would surrender the town, and that his army might be recruited with those soldiers who had behaved so gallantly in the defence of the place.

During the siege of KANDAHAR, NADIR SHAH knowing the difficulties he should encounter, sent orders to RIZA KOULI MYRZA, whom he left at MESGHED, to march with a body of troops and attack the OUSBEG TARTARS of BALKH<sup>m</sup>, in order to make a diversion, or at least to prevent any succours coming to the AFGHANS from that quarter. RIZA KOULI MYRZA succeeded in this enterprize; and from thence marched against the OUSBEGS of BOKHARA, who, in the interim, had made incursions into KHORASAN. Having brought these TARTARS also into subjection, he returned victorious to MESCHED.

This young prince was in nothing inferior to his father, except the article of experience and judgment, as he plainly shewed, now that he was at liberty to act as the sovereign of PERSIA. NADIR had appointed his brother IBRAHIM, governor of ADERBEITZAN, and made him independent of his son. He also charged the prince to undertake nothing of moment, as far as the distance of their situation, and the circumstances of affairs would admit, without the advice of his uncle IBRAHIM. The LESGEES, taking the advantage of NADIR's absence, had invaded SHIRVAN. IBRAHIM KHAN, who resided at TAVRIS, put himself at the head of a body of forces to oppose their progress, and coming to an engagement with them, he was killed in the field.

The

<sup>m</sup> This is the place where TAMERLANE received the ensigns of sovereignty in 1370. This great conqueror was born at KEISH, a day's journey from SAMARCAND, in 1336, and spread his conquests over the neighbouring countries into INDIA, as far as DEHLIE. ASIA MINOR, SYRIA, and EGYPT, also submitted to him, and he was victorious over BADJAZET the emperor of the TURKS. He fell sick at ATRAR, upon his march against the TARTARS on the borders of CHINA, and died in FEBRUARY 1405. SAMARCAND in his time was a city of great note; but the incessant wars of that country, have reduced it to mean condition.



The prince being now free of all bars to his authority, displaced HATEM BEG from his government of ISFAHAN, tho' he was reputed a man of skill and integrity; and what added to this imprudence, he placed in his room a man of a low birth and cruel disposition<sup>a</sup>. This action was followed by many others of a more oppressive nature, so that whilst NADIR was victorious abroad, the people laboured under a tyrannical yoke at home: this served to foment that fatal spirit of rebellion, to which the PERSIANS were too prone without such provocation.

1737.

To return to NADIR, whom we left in possession of KANDAHAR; during the tedious siege in which he had been engaged, some discontented lords, belonging to the MOGHOL'S court, are said to have held a treasonable correspondence with him; among these were NIZAM AL MULUCK, governor of DECCAN, who was at DEHLIE, and SAADIT KHAN, governor of AUDIH. NADIR, who was a master of intrigue and negotiation, being informed of the state of the MOGHOL'S court, and the feeble condition of that prince's army, flattered the passions of those who were disposed to revolt, or secretly to favour his designs; and amused them with promises of his protection, and other private advantages, which would accrue to them in consequence of the success of his enterprize.

Before NADIR could penetrate into INDIA, he had several difficulties to encounter. He was too good a general to make an absolute declaration of his intentions<sup>o</sup>, tho' they were apparent enough. It was near the middle of this year, before he began his march to CABUL. That he might leave no enemy behind him, some time had been spent in negotiating with the princes<sup>p</sup> of the country bordering on KANDAHAR, who were tributary to the GREAT MOGHOL, particularly those of LANGOR, BOST, and GIARURA. To some of these he made large presents, and  
others

<sup>a</sup> It is remarkable that the PERSIANS are very unskilled in the art of physick, notwithstanding their faith in physicians is very great. This governor happened to labour under a distemper, which after some months had baffled the skill of those who undertook his cure, for which reason he ordered them to be fined, and severely beaten; such was the man whom the regent had preferred to the government of ISFAHAN.

<sup>o</sup> Most accounts make him ostentatious in this instance also, tho' it was by no means consistent with his safety, either in regard to the TURKS, or the enemy against whom he designed to march.

<sup>p</sup> These are called RAJAHS, who are the chiefs of those people who are distinguished by the name of ZEMIDARS, which signifies possessors of land.



1738. others he engaged in his service, so that he had a fair prospect of extending his conquest to the utmost of his wishes; however, he endeavoured to persuade the INDIAN OMRAS, that he considered the enterprize as impracticable.

NIZAM AL MULUCK was informed that NADIR directed his march towards CABUL: in order to intimidate NACIR KHAN, who commanded the province and city of CABUL, and SHERZIH KHAN, who was governor of the castle; he wrote to them, representing the great difficulty of opposing the fortune and valour of NADIR SHAH; and as there was little reason to hope they would be succoured by the imperial troops, they might do well to consider, in what manner to provide for their own security. He wrote also to ZEKARIAH KHAN, the governor of LAHOR, who, as well as NACIR KHAN, was in the interest of DEVRAN KHAN, the great object of hatred to the two discontented lords. It was suggested to NADIR, that if he could secure a passage through CABUL and LAHOR, where the bravest troops of INDIA were stationed, he would find little resistance in penetrating as far as the capital.

The first place in NADIR's rout was GHORBUND<sup>r</sup>, which he garrisoned with his own people: from thence he marched to GHOZNAVI<sup>s</sup>. The PATTANS in their mountainous residences obliged the PERSIANS to keep continually upon their guard, and had frequent skirmishes with them.

The terror which had been spread at the taking of KANDAHAR, facilitated the conquest of places so much inferior in strength. CABUL, esteemed the gates of INDIA on that side, was the next object that

<sup>r</sup> Sometimes wrote GOUR-BEND. This is a defile in the mountains of SABLESTON, and the entrance into the country of GOUR, a district to the north of KHANJAN. Three days journey from thence is MIMEND. The other considerable places in this country are RUSTACK, and the forts of ZAFER and BAGLAM, near which it is pretended are rich mines. Between GHORBUND and ABI-BARAN are several districts of a delightful country.

<sup>s</sup> This is sometimes called GAZNIN or GAZNA. It is said to be a commercial city, the distance of eight days journey from BAMIAN, a mountainous country, where the air and water are remarkably wholesome and agreeable. The TURKISH writers represent, that in this country are no venomous animals, and that the people live to a great age. It was also the residence of the princes of the dynasty of the GAZNEVIDS; though some, I believe, by mistake place this city in KHORASAN. See Vol. III. Note, page 23.



that obstructed his passage. This city <sup>t</sup> is situated on the river MEH-RAN <sup>u</sup>, well fortified, and very difficult of access. It was formerly of great consideration among the INDIANS, and had submitted to that empire, upon condition of the sovereign's being crowned there. NACIR KHAN, governor of the province, retired with his forces to PEISHOR: but SHERZIH KHAN defended the city with the utmost resolution for a whole month; repulsing the attacks of the PERSIANS with his cannon and musketry, and killing a great number of them. 1738.

If this general had been supported, he might have bid fair to oblige NADIR to abandon his enterprize. Before the reduction of KANDAHAR, he dispatched couriers to NACIR KHAN, whose jurisdiction extended over the whole province; also to ZEKARIAH KHAN, governor of LAHOR, representing his dangerous circumstances, and intreating them to send him succours. He also made the court acquainted with the progress of the enemy; but this produced no effect. Fear had seized the minds of these lords, and they determined to follow the advice of NIZAM AL MULUCK, and submit to the fortune and victorious arms of the PERSIAN king.

NADIR carried on the siege of CABUL with great spirit. To convince the INDIANS of his determined resolution to preserve the exactest discipline towards them, as well as to support his own authority, he caused the bellies of eighty of his soldiers to be ripped open, for no other crime than being present when one of their comrades forced an INDIAN woman.

NADIR erected batteries <sup>w</sup> upon the eminences near CABUL, with which he played incessantly upon the town; and, at length, having made a sufficient breach, in the month of JUNE he took the place by storm. Great part of the garrison was put to the sword; among these SHERZIH KHAN and

<sup>t</sup> Here are iron mines, and aromatics.

<sup>u</sup> This river is also called HAZARRE, or a thousand, on account of the great number of towns, which are situated on the banks. It runs from the north to the southward of this city, and then takes its course to the east. After having passed NEKIERHAR, four days journey lower, and PEISHOR, two days journey farther, it goes to DEVAV, a great city, situated on the conflux of the waters of PENTCHIKIURE, which come from the mountains of KIOUBER in the west. Half a league from CABUL is a village and a fort of the same name.

<sup>w</sup> The artillery he had with him, was such as was portable upon camels; of this we shall remark further.

1738. and his son fell a sacrifice, though their valour seemed to have deserved a better fate. The conquest of this place put the PERSIAN king in possession of a considerable treasure, with a great value in jewels, arms, cloathing, and provisions. The former had been shut up in vaults ever since the reign of BAHR SHAH the GREAT MOGHOL; and were now of the greater consequence to NADIR, as they enabled him to pay his army. Besides, this was an earnest of the vast acquisitions his soldiers must certainly make, if they succeeded in the enterprize, which it was now apparent their king had resolved on.

### C H A P. XIX.

*The news of the taking of CABUL arrives at DEHLIE. Measures taken to oppose the PERSIAN army. Jealousy between NIZAM AL MULUCK and DEVRAN KHAN. NADIR sends an embassy and writes to MAHOMMED SHAH. The difficulty which NADIR encounters in going from CABUL to the banks of the INDUS. PEISHOR taken. ZEKARIAH KHAN, governor of LAHOR, acquaints the court of his situation. The INDIAN army marches to KARNAL.*

**W**HEN the news of the taking of CABUL arrived at the court of the GREAT MOGHOL, this prince with all his lords were thoroughly alarmed, and determined that there was no time to lose in assembling an army to oppose the PERSIANS. What added to the terror of the court, were the advices of RAJAH \* TCHI SENGUE, who commanded a body of warlike people † about CASHMIR ‡. This prince being entirely in the interest of DEVRAN KHAN, acquainted him, “ That the enterprize  
“ of NADIR SHAH had for some time appeared to him, as a step con-  
“ certified

\* This is the title given to the feudatory INDIAN princes.  
and are esteemed the best soldiers in INDIA. There are several tribes of them subject to the RA-  
JAHS, of whom some are independent of the MOGHOL.

† These are called RAIPOUTS,

‡ CASHMIR, or as it is wrote  
CISHMIR and KICHEMIR, is bordered by LAHOR, TEBET, and BIDDUKSHAN, and is represented  
as a most delightful and fruitful country. The mountains with which these people are surrounded  
are so strong a fortification, that, according to the TURKISH writers, hardly any of the eastern ravagers  
have penetrated into their country. They never felt any of the calamities which GINGHIZ KHAN,  
the



“certed with some of the lords<sup>a</sup> of the MOGHOL’s court; therefore he  
 “must be on his guard; that SHERZIH KHAN was already fallen a sacri-  
 “fice to his fidelity; and that NACIR KHAN had deserted his province  
 “and fled to PEISHOR: at the same time he offered his service to join  
 “the royal ensigns, and recommended to DEVRAN KHAN to undertake  
 “the command of the imperial army; whilst ZEKARIAH KHAN did  
 “his utmost to oppose the progress of the enemy through LAHOR.” 1738.

DEVRAN KHAN was sensible of the fidelity of this prince, and saw that nothing but military force could save the capital from plunder, or prevent all the fatal consequences of war, against so formidable an enemy as NADIR. He therefore represented to the sultan, the necessity of marching in person at the head of his army, as far as LAHOR, where he might join the KHANS ZEKARIAH and NACIR. This advice was approved by NIZAM AL MULUCK, who pressed the execution of it; and to shew a greater tenderness for the emperor, he added that his majesty ought not to expose his person, but to stop at LAHOR; whilst himself, and the other chiefs, advanced with the army towards CABUL, to give the enemy battle.

The royal tents<sup>b</sup>, with all the parade of an INDIAN monarch, were ordered to the gardens of SHALIMAR, a small distance from DEHLIE. The GREAT MOGHOL himself was upon his departure, when DEVRAN KHAN, to the surprize of the whole court, gave orders to suspend the intended expedition. This to all appearance arose either from his jealousy that NIZAM AL MULUCK was in correspondency with the enemy, or from his contempt of the counsels of a man whom he abhorred. But such

was the great TURKUMAN conqueror, spread over the east. Their capital is called SERINEKIER, and the river which passes through their country, is very considerable, and communicates with the TCHENHAV above MULTAN. The inhabitants of this country are also remarkable for their vivacity, and the beauty of their persons. The delicacy of their climate might naturally incline them to voluptuousness, but they live much according to nature, their pleasures being for the most part innocent and simple; they love dancing and musick, and drink wine in moderation; they are idolaters of the religion of the MAGI, and many of them given to devotion and mortification. They are remarkable for the manufacture of the fine shahes, in so great use all over the east.

<sup>a</sup> There are several of these MOGHOL OMRAS, who are TARTARS and PERSIANS by extraction, and who seemed now to be the greatest objects of the jealousy of the RAJAH. <sup>b</sup> PEISH-KHANNA is the term given to the royal tents and their appendages in INDIA.



1738. was the disunion of that court, on whom the unhappy INDIANS depended at this time for their safety.

NIZAM AL MULUCK being informed of so unexpected a change of counsels, returned to court, and renewed his intreaties, that the army might march to LAHOR : but the discord which reigned among the chiefs, confounded all their measures. The officers, who knew that DEVRAN KHAN was devoted to the interest of their master the GREAT MOGHOL, paid an implicit obedience to him, in all the expedients he tried to obstruct the expedition. Thus it was difficult to determine, whether DEVRAN KHAN did not act more like an open traitor, than NIZAM AL MULUCK as a secret one.

NADIR having made himself master of CABUL, disguised his future designs under the cloak of friendship. For this purpose, he sent an ambassador with a letter to MAHOMMED SHAH the INDIAN emperor. The contents are as follows :

“ Be it clear to the enlightened mind of your high majesty, that my  
 “ taking CABUL is entirely out of zeal for religion <sup>e</sup>, and friendship for  
 “ you. I never imagined that a king of mussulmen would be tribu-  
 “ tary to the wretches of DECCAN <sup>d</sup>. My stay on this side the INDUS <sup>e</sup>,  
 “ is with a design, that when these infidels shall move again towards  
 “ HINDOSTAN <sup>f</sup>, I may send a victorious army to drive them to the  
 “ abyfs of hell.

“ History abounds in proofs of the friendship which have subsisted be-  
 “ tween our kings and your majesty's royal predecessors. And now, by  
 “ MORTISA ALI I swear, that I neither had, nor yet have any other  
 “ view, than to express my friendship, and shew my concern for reli-  
 “ gion. I always was, and will be a friend to your illustrious house,  
 “ whatever suspicions you may entertain to the contrary.”

It

<sup>e</sup> This he calls ISLAM, by which is meant safety ; and here the word is meant to denote the MAHOMMEDAN religion.

<sup>d</sup> The MAHARRATTAS, whom I have already mentioned as the chief disturbers of the MOGHOL's empire. These people are idolaters, and were at this time very powerful.

<sup>e</sup> This river is called ATTOK, which is the name given by the ORIENTALS to the upper part of the INDUS.

<sup>f</sup> The empire in general is called HINDOSTAN, but here more peculiarly applicable to the province of DEBLIE.



It is very hard to reconcile the contents of this letter upon any principle of common probity; but this indeed was what NADIR had the least pretensions to. 1738.

Though we have observed that CABUL is the key of the western and northern parts of INDIA, there is a considerable tract of country between that city and the INDUS, which has been generally considered as the barrier. The cheapest and most practicable method for the execution of NADIR'S designs, was to cultivate a good understanding with the people of those quarters. The SAFIS, a tribe of PATTANS, in that country, are remarkable for their valour, and might have given him great trouble. He therefore entered into an alliance with them, making part of the plunder of CABUL the price of their friendship.

His next step was to engage in his interest NACIR KHAN, who was at PEISHOR. Tho' this chief had not the courage to remain in or near CABUL, the frontier town of his district; yet he was not totally intimidated. The court sent him no supply of troops, but assisted him with a remittance of forty lacks<sup>2</sup> of rupees; by means of this sum he might raise forces to join the PATTANS of that province, and oppose the enemy. In expectation therefore of further reinforcements from DEHLIE, he levied men, and prepared to fight the PERSIANS.

NADIR having left a strong garrison in CABUL, sent several messages to NACIR KHAN, to invite him to a submission; and then continued his march towards PEISHOR. Passing the BEHAT<sup>h</sup>, and the COU<sup>i</sup>, he advanced into the narrow defiles, which cover that province. Here several INDIAN princes assembled their troops, cutting down trees, breaking up roads, and using other inventions to obstruct his march. The frequent attacks of these mountaineers, incommoded him for near a whole month, during which space he lost a considerable number of men.

U 2

Those,

<sup>2</sup> A lack is 100,000 rupees of 2s. 6d. consequently this sum makes 500,000 l.

<sup>1</sup> The antient name when ALEXANDER invaded INDIA WAS CAPHANE.

<sup>h</sup> CHOASPE.

The borders of these rivers were then inhabited by the ARASOCI and other nations, mentioned by antient historians.



1738. Those, who are versed in military affairs, know that it is difficult for an army to pass thro' defiles, even when there is no enemy to oppose it; but a long tract of mountainous country, inhabited by people accustomed to arms, must expose the most formidable body of troops to great danger. NADIR was at length obliged to enter into a treaty with their chiefs: he declared that he meant them no harm; and represented to them that they were certainly enemies to their own interest, by appearing in arms against him, when he was ready to receive them under his protection, to make them presents, and even to engage them in his pay, that they might share his fortune in the war.

It was a favourable circumstance to NADIR, that the INDIAN court had kept these mountaineers in arrears for their pay. All the ordinary emoluments<sup>k</sup>, which were wont to be allowed them, the corruption of the MOGHOL's ministers had withheld during four years. The governors of the neighbouring provinces had deserted their posts, or neglected to arm themselves in a manner suitable to the occasion. Under these circumstances, these people listened to NADIR's propositions, and at length not only opened a free passage to him, but numbers of them enlisted themselves in his army, insomuch that it soon became as strong as when he left KANDAHAR. The SAFIS in particular, after they had joined the PERSIANS, conducted NADIR the safest and shortest way to PEISHOR.

It is natural to conclude, that the PERSIAN king expected that such acts of hostility would alarm the INDIAN court, and not only occasion the greater preparations to oppose him, but probably induce them to remove a great part of their riches. Whatever his motive might be, he sent another embassy to the GREAT MOGHOL. MAHOMMED KHAN, TURKUMAN<sup>l</sup>, was chosen for this purpose, and dispatched in the month of AUGUST, with offers of friendship, and to demand the sum

<sup>k</sup> The revenues of this mountainous country being insufficient to maintain a body of troops able to guard the frontiers, a certain sum of money was appointed to be annually remitted them, but of late years it had been neglected.

<sup>l</sup> The same may be observed here of TURKUMAN as before of BALOUCHE, viz. that these officers are distinguished by their countries.



of four crores<sup>1</sup>, and four provinces<sup>m</sup>; as if NADIR by this means intended to enter into a composition, or to render the refusal a more specious pretence for further hostilities. 1738.

PEISHOR not lying directly in the rout, NADIR left the main body of his army, and marched with a detachment of cavalry towards that city. NACIR KHAN had collected a body of troops, but few of them had any experience: the greatest part not suspecting that the PERSIAN army could have passed the defiles with such expedition, deserted upon the approach of the enemy. NACIR was thus left in the neighbourhood of PEISHOR, with seven thousand men only; however, he caused an intrenchment to be thrown up, and with this small body he made a gallant defence for some hours; but the PERSIANS at length forced his lines. Most of those who escaped the sword, were taken prisoners. The neighbouring PATTANS being now disposed to court the friendship of NADIR, delivered up into his hand NACIR KHAN, who fled from PEISHOR. The proof this general had given of bravery and fidelity, under such great disadvantages, engaged the esteem of NADIR. He imprisoned him for some days, but afterwards promised him that protection which he had not received from the MOGHOL'S court; and by threats and fair words he won this brave man to his interest.

The effect of this victory was the taking of PEISHOR, which NADIR soon after entered in triumph. Nothing is said concerning the riches of this city, tho' we must assign some proportion of wealth to it, since it is represented of considerable extent, and the capital of a province.

On the news that PEISHOR was taken, and that NADIR SHAH was preparing to pass the INDUS, the MOGHOL'S court, already in great disorder, was struck with terror. From PEISHOR to DEHLIE is 450 miles<sup>n</sup>. In this distance are several rivers and difficult passes, which it was expected would retard the march of the PERSIAN army. The court was also flattered with hopes that ZEKARIAH KHAN, the governor of LAHOR, would

<sup>1</sup> A crore is 100 lacks, or 1,250,000*l.*; consequently this demand was for five millions sterling.

<sup>m</sup> These the INDIANS call SOUBAHS. SOUBAHDAR is often used as governor or lieutenant of a province.

<sup>n</sup> They reckon it 302 cofs, each cof of 4000 yards, or 2  $\frac{1}{4}$  miles.

1738. would form an army capable of stopping the progress of the enemy. These circumstances however being insufficient to remove their apprehensions, a whole crore of rupees<sup>o</sup> was at once issued out of the treasury for enlisting men; and five hundred carriage-guns of different kinds, with three thousand harquebusses, were appointed for the expedition, besides a great number of barbed elephants, with all other appurtenances of oriental warriors.

DEVUAN KHAN and NIZAM AL MULUCK, had the joint command of the army. This circumstance alone was sufficient to have rendered the best projected design abortive. We need not go so far as INDIA, to see the sad effects of those enterprizes, which are left to the joint management of men at enmity with each other. The third of DECEMBER they pitched their tents in the neighbourhood of DEHLIE. SAADIT KHAN, the governor of AUDIH, was sent for to court to join the other chiefs, or to command the emperor's guards. This prince was already disposed to retreat to CASSI BENARIS<sup>p</sup>, but the chiefs entreated him to continue with them; representing, that his absence would be dangerous to the state, under such critical circumstances.

ZEKARIAH KHAN, in the mean while, acquainted the court of the dangerous situation he was in; that several of the tribes in the mountainous country had joined the PERSIANS; and that if they did not send him an immediate support, he could not make head against the enemy. The merchants and many other persons of the greatest property in LAHOR, in the mean while retired with their effects.

The pomp and ceremony of the imperial army of INDIA, was at length settled. This was one of the most brilliant and numerous, tho' not the most formidable, that had for many ages appeared in the east. It consisted of near two hundred thousand fighting men, of which a great part was cavalry. MAHOMMED SHAH, the GREAT MOGHOL, commanded in person, and nothing essential to the majesty of his throne was wanting, except wisdom, valour, and unanimity.

At

<sup>o</sup> 1,250,000 *l*.  
is paid there.

<sup>p</sup> A city in the province of ALEHABAD, famous for the devotion which



At length, after slow marches, and receiving several reinforcements on the road, they pitched their tents in the plains of KARNAL, fifty-five leagues from the capital. The young prince, SULTAN ACHMED, had an equipage prepared for him with great pomp and splendor, and was appointed commander of the van guard <sup>a</sup>.

The circuit of the camp was very large <sup>r</sup>, fortified with intrenchments, and a great part of it strengthened with artillery. In the center were the emperor's own quarters <sup>s</sup>; those of NIZAM AL MULUCK fronted them; and under him was the particular ordnance of the court, and the train belonging to it. On the right wing was DEVRAN KHAN, the prime minister, with five other lords under his command; KUMMIR O'DIN <sup>t</sup> KHAN, with three OMRAS, commanded on the left; behind these were many general officers, whose names would rather confound than delight the reader, and among them were the JAATS and AHEERS <sup>u</sup>. Though the sovereign commanded in person, yet each lord seemed to be uncontrollable with regard to the respective body under him.

NIZAM AL MULUCK, instead of taking pains to encourage his soldiers, represented the valour and fortune of the PERSIAN king as irresistible. It is probable, that the inexperience of the INDIANS in the art of war, must in any case have rendered them inferior to the veteran soldiers of NADIR SHAH; but if we consider the unhappy situation of this numerous army, it seemed to be collected only for the derision of the PERSIANS.

<sup>a</sup> They call this the HAROL, which signifies either the van-guard, or the title of the officer that commands any body of forces, which advances at the head of an INDIAN army.

<sup>r</sup> Some writers mention it as twelve miles; but we cannot suppose they made intrenchments so far, or that they could defend so vast a circuit.

<sup>s</sup> These are called MOURCHA, which signifies either barricadoes or intrenchments; from whence we may infer he had a particular intrenchment within the main circuit of the camp.

<sup>t</sup> These words signify the moon of religion. This person was the vizir to the GREAT MOGHOL.

<sup>u</sup> These are two different tribes of the RAJPOUTS.

## C H A P. XX.

*NADIR's pomp when he entered the INDIAN territories. His manner of passing rivers. Short account of the INDUS : NADIR passes this river. JEMINABAD and LAHOR taken. NADIR arrives on the plains of KARNAL.*

1738. **V**ICTORY seemed now to court the ambitious NADIR : elate with the hopes of giving laws to this vast empire, he affected a more than common state.

COSSEM KHAN was his ATHEMAT DOULET<sup>w</sup> : he, with the ARRIZ-BEGI<sup>x</sup>, were the persons through whom most of the orders were given, and petitions preferred. NADIR's sentences, as at other times, were very summary, and his business dispatched in a short time. He required information of every thing that passed, and observed a strict administration of justice : he attended business very regularly, sitting in his tent of audience till noon ; and after reposing himself a short time, he returned again, and remained there till the evening. His CHIAUX<sup>y</sup> were kept to their duty more than usual, to proclaim his victories as he passed along ; besides these and his great officers of state, a considerable number of young men with standards of red silk adorned with silver, were ordered to attend upon extraordinary occasions.

The great preparations which were making at the MOGHOL's court to oppose his progress, seemed to give him no sort of concern. On the contrary, he prepared himself to receive the homage of the INDIAN lords, and first of ZEKARIAH KHAN, the governor of LAHOR. After establishing a garrison at PEISHOR, he advanced to the banks of the INDUS, where  
1739. he arrived the beginning of JANUARY. He had already taken his mea-  
fures

<sup>w</sup> See Vol. III. page 41. Signifies supporter of power, or as some construe it, the security of fortune ; this is the same person whom I have mentioned in Vol. I. page 258. This man was also honoured with the title of NAZEM MUNAZEM, or him who sets things in order ; and MOTHIR AL MULUCK, or worthy of a kingdom. <sup>x</sup> The presenter of petitions. <sup>y</sup> The 900 guards mentioned in Vol. I. page 251.



fures for the passage of that river. MAHOMMED BEG <sup>z</sup>, was previously 1739. detached with a considerable body of troops, to build a sufficient number of boats, by means of which he might throw a bridge over the river. NADIR's ordinary method was to use two iron-chains<sup>a</sup>, to which he fixed the skins of beasts blown up; these floating upon the surface, supported the several parts of a small bridge of timber, which he carried with him. This chain being secured on both sides of a river, served also to hold a regular bridge of boats.

The INDUS of the antients, now more generally denominated the SCIND, is one of the most considerable rivers in all ASIA: in INDIA only the GANGES exceeds it. In this place it divides the provinces of LAHOR and PEISHOR, and is commonly called the ATTOK, from a great fort on the eastern side. It is subject, like the NILE, to be overflown, and like that is one great cause of the fertility of its banks; here are also numbers of crocodiles. Its course from north to south is computed to be 900 miles <sup>b</sup>, or forty-two days journey. The several branches of it take different names; the chief of which are the SHOUB or SIELMEQUS <sup>c</sup>, the SHANTROU <sup>d</sup>, the RAVI <sup>e</sup>, and the VIAH <sup>f</sup>; thus forming five streams: the province of LAHOR is for that reason called PENGAB <sup>g</sup>; and is one of the most fertile countries in HINDOSTAN.

ZEKARIAH KHAN did not attempt to oppose the PERSIAN army at their passage of the ATTOK. His real design was to submit, agreeably to the counsel he had received from NIZAM AL MULUCK; however, to save appearances, he made preparations for a defence. NADIR marched directly

<sup>z</sup> This is the same MAHOMMED afterwards made a KRAN, who was admiral of the CASPIAN in 1744, and of whom I received such uncivil treatment. See Vol. I. page 222. <sup>a</sup> Some writers mention that NADIR SHAH carried with him on camels a number of pieces of boats, to be joined upon occasion, this may be easily confounded with the parts of a bridge, which he did carry with him for the passage of small rivers, and which upon an extremity might answer his purpose over greater rivers.

<sup>b</sup> These are sometimes called leagues, but the map by no means allows above 12 or 15 degrees, consequently it cannot exceed 900 miles; but if we take in the course of the several large branches of it, the miles may be easily reckoned leagues.

<sup>c</sup> The antient HYPHAËS.

<sup>d</sup> HYDASPES.

<sup>e</sup> ACESINES.

<sup>f</sup> HYDRAOTES.

<sup>g</sup> Or five waters.

1739. directly to YEMINABAD, a city of some note in the jurisdiction of ZEKARIAH KHAN. Here KULLINDER KHAN commanded with a body of ten thousand men, designing to oppose the PERSIANS. NACIR KHAN, who now had a post in NADIR'S army, was entrusted with the attack of this city, which the PERSIANS took, and killed the INDIAN general. NADIR had sent to ZEKARIAH KHAN to invite him to a submission; the messenger was called before the general divan, and treated with some incivility. This however was but an effect of policy to disguise his resolution to surrender. He then marched out, and advanced above twenty miles from LAHOR, with an army of twenty thousand men. As soon as he heard the fate of YEMINABAD, he retreated back immediately to the capital of the province. Here he made a shew of defence, but after three days capitulated, on condition that the city should be spared.

This is the country of which PORUS was king, when ALEXANDER made his memorable expedition into INDIA. The neighbouring provinces were then ruled by their respective sovereigns, as we now find them divided by the jealousy and corruption of their chiefs. The scene of his first exploits in INDIA was on the banks of the GURÆUS<sup>i</sup>, which he passed. The eastern side of this part of the INDUS was called TAXILA. Here we find that MOPHIS, king of the country, submitted to ALEXANDER, who confirmed this INDIAN prince in his dominion, or in other words, did not commit any violence or injustice towards him. As an effect of the generosity of the GRECIAN hero, MOPHIS received the name of TAXILES. What future ages may think of modern histories, I am no judge; but there are numerous circumstances in antient accounts, even in authors of the highest reputation, which appear as the fumes of superstition or the creatures of fancy: we must not however be ingenious to undeceive ourselves in things of an indifferent nature, so long as they give us pleasure. We know how hard it is to come at the truth of things which happened yesterday.

PORUS, the sovereign of LAHOR, was exceeded by the skill and fortune, rather than by the valour of the MACEDONIAN conqueror; he led on his

<sup>i</sup> This is called at present NILAB, being the upper part of the INDUS.



his chariots of war and embattled elephants, disdainingly to yield. In 1739. this he seems to have judged ill; if he had sacrificed to the pride of the GRECIAN instead of his own, and only paid the tribute of a formal submission, he might probably have saved the lives of twenty-three thousand INDIANS, who are said to have died that day in defence of their liberty. Under the notion of clemency, ALEXANDER then restored to him the kingdom which he could not keep; nor was there one good reason why he conquered it. The only true beneficent action he did, was to reconcile TAXILES and PORUS.

After subduing PERSIA, and all the country as far as this place, his soldiers, happily for the INDIANS, were at length tired of their knight-errantry, and insisted upon returning home; he therefore made this the boundary of his victory in the east, though he had designed to march as far as the GANGES. He returned to BABYLON with the name of a conqueror, tho' with much less treasure than NADIR SHAH. In his way home he subdued all the country on the banks of the INDUS. He sent part of his forces in ships down that river into the INDIAN ocean; from whence they entered the gulph of PERSIA, and directing their course up the TIGRIS, arrived at BABYLON. Those, who marched by land, crossed SABLESTAN and SEGESTAN, not without several encounters with the inhabitants of those countries, in which much blood was spilt. Thence traversing PERSIS<sup>k</sup>, which owned the conqueror, after a perilous and laborious march he arrived at the seat of his empire, having been absent twenty months.

NADIR remained at LAHOR eight days, and refreshed his army in the gardens of SHALIMAR<sup>l</sup>; he then passed the river SHOUL, and traversing SERHIND and TANISEER, he arrived with forty thousand men in the neighbourhood of a village called TILLAUURI, which is not far from the plains of KARNAL. Here he halted to reconnoitre the situation of the INDIAN army, and determine what measures to pursue. After a march of twenty-five months for eighteen hundred and fifty miles<sup>m</sup>, he was al-

X 2

most

<sup>k</sup> Now FARSISTAN.<sup>l</sup> These gardens are of the same name as those of DEHLIE.<sup>m</sup> This computation is from ISFAHAN, viz. from that city to KANDAHAR is reckoned 1040 miles, and from thence to DEHLIE 810.

1739. most arrived at the fruition of the desired object. It was not difficult in a general of common sagacity to foresee, that so vast a multitude of people would not be able to support themselves long in that situation; and they must either disperse, or come to an engagement.

### C H A P. XXI.

*The number of the PERSIAN army. SAADIT KHAN arrives at the INDIAN camp. He and DEVRAN KHAN begin the engagement. NADIR's stratagem to draw the INDIANS to battle. SAADIT KHAN taken prisoner, and DEVRAN KHAN mortally wounded. NADIR's manner of opposing the INDIAN elephants. Loss of the INDIANS in the field. Distress of the INDIAN camp after the battle. Interview between NADIR and NIZAM AL MULUCK; also between the PERSIAN king and the GREAT MOGHOL. Numbers of the INDIANS slain in marauding. MAHOMMED SHAH delivers himself into the hands of NADIR. INDIAN effects sealed up in DEHLIE.*

**N**ADIR was now within ten miles of the INDIAN army. On the 12th of FEBRUARY he dispatched HAHDGEE KHAN with his advanced guard<sup>n</sup>, consisting of six thousand of the best troops of KOURDISTAN. His whole army amounted to near one hundred and sixty thousand men, of which a third part were servants and domestics: these having collected a sufficient number of camels, horses<sup>o</sup>, and mules in their rout, were all mounted, and some of them completely armed. Their women, being not less than six thousand, were dressed with great coats<sup>p</sup> of crimson cloth, after the manner of the men, and not to be distin-

<sup>n</sup> KOURROL, which is the same as the HARROL of the INDIANS.

<sup>o</sup> There are in the highland country of KANDAHAR and CABUL a small kind of horses called YABOUS, which are very serviceable.

<sup>p</sup> These are called BARRANNI; BARRAN signifies rain, from whence the name of this coat is derived.



distinguished at a distance; so that the whole made a very formidable appearance. 1739.

NADIR finding the water at TILLAUVERI insufficient to supply his soldiers, advanced two miles nearer the INDIAN army; and the 14th of FEBRUARY he encamped not far from the rear of DEVRAN KHAN, at a time when SAADIT KHAN was just arrived in the camp of the GREAT MOGHOL, with a reinforcement of twenty thousand men. Whatever the nature of SAADIT'S treason might have been, as soon as he saw his fellow-soldiers in distress for provisions, and ready to be over-whelmed by a powerful and fortunate army, the impulse of his heart carried him instantly to the tent of MAHOMMED SHAH, and with the freedom of a soldier he told his sovereign, that there was no time to be lost in giving battle to the PERSIANS; that if the other generals refused to follow him, he would commence the attack with such part of his troops as were come up; desiring rather to die sword in hand, than fall ingloriously into the power of an enemy through the necessity of hunger.

NIZAM AL MULUCK, who seemed never to have intended to bring things to the extremity of a battle, opposed this counsel; pretending, according to the superstition of the MAHOMMEDANS, that the day was not fortunate; and as there was no necessity, they ought to defer it. SAADIT KHAN, though suspected of being leagued with this treacherous minister, had too much ardour as a soldier to be restrained by any such consideration.

In the mean while, the six thousand KOURDS detached by NADIR SHAH, through the desire of booty, had fallen on a party of the INDIANS, and began to pillage the baggage of DEVRAN KHAN. There was no time to debate: SAADIT KHAN mounted his elephant, led on his forces, and repulsed the KOURDS. DEVRAN KHAN, now roused by a jealousy of the glory of a man, whom he knew wished his disgrace, brought his men also to the charge immediately, with a design to support SAADIT KHAN; so that the engagement grew warm on both sides.

NADIR,

1739. NADIR, being apprised of what was passing, sent a body of troops to assist his van; and jealous of supporting the reputation of his arms in his first encounter, he detached three thousand of his best troops in three different bodies, and placed them in ambush. He also sent a small body of five hundred men against DEVRAN KHAN, and another of the same number against SAADIT KHAN, in order to draw them into the field. Having then made a proper disposition of the main body of his army, he advanced at the head of a thousand AFSHAR horse to direct the battle.

This disposition had the desired effect. The three thousand men in ambuscade falling upon the troops of SAADIT KHAN, put them to flight, and took their general prisoner. DEVRAN KHAN being followed by above twenty OMRAS and general officers, at the head of their respective bodies, supported his ground with great resolution, till the engagement became more general. At length having received a dangerous wound, he fell extended upon his elephant, and was carried off the field. A report that he was dead, spread a dismay through the whole INDIAN camp.

There was a circumstance pretty remarkable, which I find omitted by those who have given us an account of this battle. They mention indeed the elephants, but not what use was made of them. These formidable animals were conducted at the head of the INDIAN army, and armed for battle: they have ever been represented in eastern wars as objects of great terror; their size, the castles upon their backs, and all the apparatus of war, have been described by historians, painters, and poets, in a light which fills the imagination with dread. NADIR was not ignorant in what manner the INDIANS fight, and therefore caused a number of stages to be made, and fixed across two camels. On these stages he laid naptha, and a mixture of combustibles, and ordered them to be set on fire. It is well known with what terror these huge animals behold this element; so that instead of over-turning the PERSIAN army, at the ap-

proach



proach of the camels the elephants turned about, and put a great part of the INDIAN army into confusion. 1739.

In this battle seventeen thousand INDIANS were slain, among whom were a great number of persons of the first distinction. Those who fled from the field, spread terror and confusion through their whole camp. Several took the opportunity of plundering the tents of their own commanders. Numbers, who attended the baggage brought into the field, fled towards DEHLIE, which afforded a favourable opportunity to the PERSIANS to kill and pillage at discretion. In this action not half of the INDIAN army was engaged, and only about fifty thousand of the troops of NADIR SHAH; he lost on his part only two thousand five hundred men, who were interred the same night; but there were near twice as many wounded.

DEVUAN KHAN lost his eldest son, and the wound he himself had received, proved mortal. His great loss of blood occasioned his fainting: when he came to his senses, he had the additional affliction to find all his tents and baggage plundered; they were therefore obliged to carry him to the tents of MAHOMMED SHAH, to whom he had been reported as killed. The sight of this favourite minister, under these melancholy circumstances, gave the emperor the deepest concern. In a short time after this lord died of his wounds, which seemed to give him less pain, than to behold his enemy NIZAM AL MULUCK triumphing in the favour of his master, and planning schemes to gratify his base resentment.

In this confused state of affairs in the INDIAN camp, NADIR SHAH advanced to the quarters of NIZAM AL MULUCK; this general had been joined by several other lords, who drew up their forces in a line of battle, as if they meant to stop the progress of the enemy. Night coming on, prevented the PERSIANS from pursuing their victory. The INDIAN camp was now so very thin, that from the emperor's own quarters to those of NIZAM AL MULUCK, which was near two miles, hardly any people were found. In the night a grand consultation was held, in  
which

1739. which NIZAM AL MULUCK related in the most affecting manner, the deplorable state to which the fortune of that day had already reduced the court; expatiating upon the fatal effects of war, and the danger to which the emperor's person was exposed; that every moment brought news of the death of some person beloved by his majesty, and of great consequence to the state; his opinion therefore was to accommodate matters with NADIR SHAH, since they could no longer depend on the success of their arms.

The INDIAN monarch, though no warrior, was more inclined to trust to the fortune of a second battle, than to consent to an accommodation, which could be bought only at the price of immense treasures, and must upon other accounts be inglorious. But those on whom he most depended had been killed or dangerously wounded; so that no proper person could be found in whom to confide the command of his forces: nor was he less at a loss as to the direction of his councils. Whatever suspicions he might entertain of NIZAM AL MULUCK, the ascendancy which this minister had acquired, in some measure obliged him to trust him implicitly. The death of DEVRAN KHAN, at once removed the bar to the ambition of NIZAM AL MULUCK, as well as the object of his hatred. At length full power was given to this minister, to treat with the PERSIAN monarch. AZIM ALI KHAN was appointed to attend him; of which NADIR SHAH was acquainted. The third day after the battle, the ceremonial being previously adjusted, they pitched their tents between the two camps: and a PERSIAN officer was sent to conduct these INDIAN lords into the presence of NADIR SHAH.

The PERSIAN monarch received them in a gracious manner, causing them to sit in his presence; and then he spoke to this effect: "It is now four months since I sent my ambassador to MAHOMMED SHAH your master, to demand of him the payment of what is due to PERSIA; why has he detained my people, and given me no answer; and at length obliged me to make so long and laborious a march?" NIZAM AL MULUCK excused himself, alledging that he had been in his govern-

ment



ment at DECCAN; that as soon as he came to court he had used his endeavours to bring the affair to a conclusion, but that his demands were greater than the empire could answer<sup>q</sup>. 1739.

NADIR smiled at the excuse, and shewed him the accounts of the MOGHOL's treasure; adding to this effect: "The grand-father of MAHOMMED SHAH and uncle of JEANGUIR, once demanded of PERSIA the succour of ten thousand men. PERSIA sent them, and bore the expence, on condition of being reimbursed; which has never yet been done. By the treaties of alliance subsisting between the two empires, they ought reciprocally to support each other. PERSIA having been long rent with civil wars, the same force has been demanded of you; but no answer was ever made. I have borrowed large sums, for which I pay interest, to retake from the TURKS the provinces which they had possessed themselves of belonging to PERSIA. The neglect of the treaties on your part, has been the cause of the misfortunes which have happened to PERSIA: who is to repair these injuries? I had intended to put your emperor and his troops to the sword, but I will favour them; go and tell him to come to me, and we will make up our quarrel in a convenient manner."

The 18th of FEBRUARY was accordingly appointed for the meeting of the two monarchs. MAHOMMED SHAH, emperor of HINDOSTAN, seated in a royal litter<sup>r</sup>, issued from his camp, attended by AZIM ALI KHAN, GHAZI O'DIN KHAN, several eunuchs, and about two hundred horse: he was met half-way by TÆHMAS KHAN, the lieutenant<sup>t</sup> of the PERSIAN king, who paid him the honours due to his rank. TÆHMAS then required the eunuchs and cavalry to halt; and attended the GREAT MOGHOL

<sup>q</sup> It is said that NIZAM AL MULUCK went so far as to make him the servile compliment, that the desire of seeing a king of such renown, and to kiss the dust of his feet, was so great, that they purposely neglected his request. The ORIENTALS deal much in hyperboles; but such a compliment as this would rather have insulted the common sense of the prince to whom it was paid, than gratified his pride. According to what is related, this INDIAN did actually invite NADIR into INDIA, hardly foreseeing what would happen.

<sup>r</sup> TAKHT RLVAN, which signifies a moving throne.

<sup>t</sup> VAKEEL OR VIKIL.

1739. GHOL with the PERSIAN guard: At the entrance of NADIR's camp he was met by NESR ALI MYRZA, who was sent by the command of his father to conduct the INDIAN king to the royal tent. NADIR came forth to receive him, and having placed him on his left-side, after the ordinary compliments, he addressed him to this effect: " Is it possible  
 " that you should have thus abandoned the care of your own affairs  
 " to oblige me to make you this visit? I sent you two embassa-  
 " dors; one of them contrary to the laws of all nations, and to the  
 " friendship subsisting between us, was murdered at PEISHOR; nor  
 " did your ministers send me any satisfactory answer to my letters which  
 " reached your hands. When I entered your dominions, you never de-  
 " puted any one to ask me who I was, or what my intentions were;  
 " even when I advanced to LAHOR, and sent you a message of salutation,  
 " I received no answer. When the commanders of your forces were  
 " awakened out of their lethargy, instead of negotiating for a reconcilia-  
 " tion, they met in a tumultuous manner to stop my progress. After-  
 " wards you cooped yourselves up in your intrenchments, without con-  
 " sidering, that if your enemy was stronger than you, it was impossible to  
 " remain in that situation without being starved; and if he was weaker,  
 " it was as dishonourable as unnecessary: at length, without any pre-  
 " caution, you put all to the issue of one blow. Tho' I saw how you  
 " were entangled, I made you offers of accommodation<sup>u</sup>; but you was  
 " so ill advised, or puffed up with childish conceits, that you neglected  
 " the terms of my friendship, and abandoned your own interest. Now  
 " you see to what streights you are reduced by the victorious armies of  
 " PERSIA. How little able you have been to govern your own people,  
 " appears by your granting for several years a tax<sup>w</sup> to infidels, by whom  
 " it ought to have been paid; and you have suffered them to over-run  
 " your country.

" However, as the race of TEMUR have never done any remarkable  
 " injury to the sovereigns of PERSIA, I will not take the empire from  
 " you;

<sup>u</sup> I do not find any mention made of such offer after the INDIAN army was assembled on the plains of KARNAL, to which this seems to allude.      <sup>w</sup> This tax, called the JEZIAH, was wont to be paid by those who were not MAHOMMEDANS.



“ you ; I only mean to indemnify myself for the great expence of this 1739.  
 “ war. After I have refreshed my army at DEHLIE, and received the  
 “ subsidy \* which must be paid, I will leave you in possession of your  
 “ dominions.”

MAHOMMED SHAH heard this speech with that silence, which testifies sorrow and confusion ; tho' it was some consolation to receive assurance of his life and empire. Language so foreign to that of a court, could not but touch the heart of a king, whose weakness did not amount to insensibility. It may perhaps appear a little strange, that the captive monarch should be suffered to return to his own camp ; but our surprize will cease, if we reflect that NADIR had nothing to fear from his military force ; and that as riches were his chief object, the more gently he conducted himself towards the INDIANS, till he should arrive at DEHLIE, the less danger there would be of their concealing or destroying their treasures.

MAHOMMED SHAH retired to his camp, in some degree relieved from his inquietude ; tho' he knew not into what difficulties the avarice of the conqueror might plunge him. He ordered the dead bodies, which lay spread for near the space of twelve miles, to be interred ; but those who were wounded and unable to move, were left to expire, there being no one that could afford them any succour. At the same time, the military chest, with all the treasure of MAHOMMED SHAH, was brought to NADIR.

Some of the INDIAN lords, who were forward to ingratiate themselves with the conqueror, represented that there were many thousand horses and camels belonging to the soldiers and followers of the MOGHOL's camp ; and as by his clemency these people had received quarter, they ought not to think it any hardship to deliver such as his officers should think proper to chuse. To this he replied ; that the bread of soldiers depended, in a great measure, on their horses ; and that the loss of these in their present circumstances, might expose them and their families to beggary ; and as he had given them quarter, they should depart unmolested.

Y 2

The

\* This is called a PEISCUSH, or present from an inferior to a superior. The sum agreed for was twenty crores, which we shall have occasion to mention.

1739. The INDIAN camp had been in great distress almost from the very time they assembled in the plains of KARNAL. Representation being now made, that the sutlers<sup>y</sup> by their extortions had raised the price of bread to an exorbitant degree, MAHOMMED SHAH ordered their shops to be broke open. This answered no other purpose, than to waste and disperse the little provision that remained, so that a pound of wheat was not to be had for less than the value of four shillings. What had contributed to render the provisions so excessive dear, was the vigilance of the flying parties of the PERSIAN army, who within forty miles round the camp, had at different times cut off not less than fourteen thousand INDIAN marauders. A body of NADIR'S troops, who at this time were sent to TANISEER, slaughtered a great number of the inhabitants, plundered the town, and returned to their camp with a considerable booty.

The next day, after the bodies of the INDIANS were interred, NADIR sent an officer with a detachment to take possession of the equipage of the GREAT MOGHOL; causing it to be proclaimed in the camp, that every one might retire without fear of being stopped or insulted. He also sent his master of the ordnance<sup>z</sup>, together with the officer who makes seizures<sup>a</sup>, each with five hundred horse, to seize all the ordnance and implements of war belonging to the emperor, and the lords of his court. He required moreover that MAHOMMED SHAH, with his son SULTAN ACHMED, and his empress MALIKA AL ZUMANI<sup>b</sup>, with their domestics, should repair to his camp: accordingly a royal tent was prepared for them in front of his own, and a thousand PERSIAN soldiers were appointed as their guard.

In the mean while, NADIR SHAH dispatched his lieutenant TÆHMAS KHAN to DEHLIE, with four thousand horse, to take possession of the castle. SAADIT KHAN was charged with the care of the city, together with the houses and effects of the inhabitants; strict directions were also given

<sup>y</sup> BANIANs, who are mostly trading people in INDIA. They are of a particular sect, who believe the transmigration of souls, whether of man or beast; from whence they are very harmless in their conduct, lest they should injure one of their own friends or relations, in the appearance of a bird or beast.

<sup>z</sup> TOWPCHI BASHI.

<sup>a</sup> NÆSSACKHCHI BASHI.

<sup>b</sup> This word signifies the queen of the times.



given him that no injury should be done to any of them. This general on his arrival published the SHAH's orders, adding, that none of the citizens should dare to molest the PERSIANS. The governor of the castle being informed of what had passed on the plains of KARNAL, made no scruple to pay an implicit obedience to the summons of NADIR's lieutenant, and admitted him, together with all his troops. The palace was also prepared for the reception of the PERSIAN monarch. All the valuable effects were sealed up, and a list prepared of the OMRAS, and all the wealthy inhabitants of the city. 1739.

NADIR being master of all the jewels and of the military chests of the INDIAN camp at KARNAL, gave a gratuity of three months pay to every soldier in his army. He then made choice of two hundred pieces of cannon, with their carriages, out of the INDIAN ordnance, and sent them with other effects under a strong convoy to CABUL.

---

## C H A P. XXII.

*March of the PERSIAN and INDIAN armies from KARNAL to DEHLIE.*

*NADIR's entrance into DEHLIE. SAADIT KHAN destroys himself. Massacre of DEHLIE. NADIR's conduct after the massacre.*

**T**HIS disposition being made, NADIR began his march towards DEHLIE. His advanced guard<sup>c</sup> consisted of four thousand men, who served to escort his harram; twenty thousand of his best cavalry guarded them at a proper distance. About two miles behind was MAHOMMED SHAH, attended by fifty of his principal courtiers, and escorted by twelve thousand PERSIANS. The INDIAN lords, at the head of their respective troops, marched at the distance of a mile from each other, having great bodies of the PERSIAN army between them. NADIR himself brought up the rear, with the gross of his army; the whole composed a number of near three hundred and fifty thousand men<sup>d</sup>, who covered near twelve miles in length, and three in breadth.

In

<sup>c</sup> KOURUCK. See Vol. I. page 249. <sup>d</sup> Before the late engagement the INDIAN army alone was near this number, including all their attendants; but a great part of these had been dispersed, and numbers of them killed.

1739. In this manner they proceeded five days march, till they came to SONPUT. This place, together with PANIPUT, and several villages, were plundered by the PERSIANS; as they marched along. From SONPUT they advanced to NIRELA, and the next day<sup>c</sup> in the evening they arrived at the gardens of SHALIMAR. NADIR SHAH declined going into the city in the night, as well on account of the safety of his person, as the regard to his state. He ordered MAHOMMED, the GREAT MOGHOL, seated in a royal litter, and preceded by his standards, with two hundred of the servants of his court, to march forward into the city. These were convoyed by four thousand PERSIAN horse, who accompanied the INDIAN monarch to his apartment<sup>f</sup>.

NADIR encamped with his forces without the gates. The next morning he marched with great circumspection thro' the city to the castle<sup>e</sup>, attended by a body of twenty thousand men. MAHOMMED SHAH had already given notice to the inhabitants, when the PERSIAN conqueror was to enter the city<sup>h</sup>; ordering that all the houses and shops should be shut, and according to the awful respect shewn to eastern kings, that no person should presume to appear in the streets. This order was executed with great exactness; for of the vast number of inhabitants, there were no spectators of his triumphant entry: a mournful silence reigned throughout the city, as if it presaged some dreadful calamity.

NADIR having taken possession of the castle, was immediately attended by MAHOMMED SHAH, towards whom he behaved with great civility. He distributed his troops into their quarters, and took all the necessary measures that due obedience should be paid to his orders, till the articles of peace were regulated with NIZAM AL MULUCK. In the mean while, he enjoined his NÆSSAKHCHI<sup>i</sup> in the strictest manner, that whoever presumed to injure any of the natives, should be punished with the severest bastonading, or with the loss of their ears or nose, according to the nature of their offence.

The

<sup>c</sup> The 7th of MARCH.

<sup>f</sup> This they call the AËYSH MAHL, which signifies the place of joy.

<sup>e</sup> Castle is used synonymously for castle, citadel, or palace, viz. place of defence.

<sup>h</sup> This was the 9th of MARCH.

<sup>i</sup> These are the order of soldiers who are charged with the punishment of offences, as already mentioned.



The PERSIANS, however polite in their manners, are but rude in their apparel and customs, compared with the delicacy of the INDIANS. In NADIR's army were also many TARTARS, whose rough and savage aspects made such impressions on the INDIANS, that they avoided as much as possible all communication with them. 1739.

SAADIT KHAN, who seems to have been a man of warm passions, and of an inconstant disposition, was now as forward to recommend himself to his new master NADIR, as he had been ambitious at KARNAL, of exerting himself in the defence of his true sovereign. He went out to the gardens of SHALIMAR to meet NADIR SHAH, and accompanied him till he alighted at the palace of DEHLIE. This lord had flattered himself with hopes of being admitted to a private audience, in which it was presumed he intended to recommend certain measures for the interest of the PERSIAN king. NADIR, who had always distinguished himself for his penetration, spoke with great harshness to him, and demanded why he had not begun collecting the subsidies.

This reproof touched SAADIT KHAN to the heart; his jealousy was fired, and he concluded that NIZAM AL MULUCK had done him some ill office. Under this anxiety of thought, it is probable the remembrance of his infidelity recoiled upon him. He knew that to be suspected by a prince of such a temper as NADIR, was but a remove from ruin. Under these circumstances he retired; and despair drove him to the fatal expedient of taking poison.

Such is oftentimes the fate of men who swerve from the paths of honour, and bewilder themselves in the mazes of iniquity. Those principles which intice them to forsake the interest of their country, in order to gratify a private passion or resentment, hardly ever support them under a change of fortune, or the pressure of calamities.

What had passed on the plains of KARNAL, and the havock created by the sword and famine, was but a prelude to the distress which heaven permitted to fall upon the unfortunate inhabitants of DEHLIE. The next

1739. day<sup>k</sup> after NADIR's arrival, was a feast of sacrifice<sup>l</sup> with the INDIANS, and the new-year's-day of the PERSIANS. NADIR's lieutenant, TÆH-MAS KHAN, sent several PERSIAN horsemen of the NÆSSICKHCHI to the granaries<sup>m</sup>, ordering them to be opened, and the price of corn to be fixed. This not being done to the satisfaction of the proprietors, occasioned the assembling a mob. SAYD NEAZ KHAN, and several other persons of distinction, put themselves at their head, and killed the PERSIAN horsemen.

After this unwarrantable act, a report was soon spread that NADIR SHAH was slain<sup>n</sup>; upon which the tumult increased. All idle persons and men of desperate fortunes joined them, and marched towards the castle. A party of PERSIAN horse, which was posted near the entrance, were forced to retire with some loss. In the mean while, several PERSIANS whom SAYD NEAZ KHAN had taken as a safe-guard to his house, were treacherously shut up in a room, and burnt alive. The soldiers who were lodged in the palace of the deceased DEVRAN KHAN, and other great houses and caravanferais, were obliged to retreat to their quarters, and remain under arms the whole night. The cannon and harquebusses on the ramparts of the castle, as well as those in the houses occupied by the PERSIANS, were discharged at the mob, but without quelling the insurrection.

The next morning NADIR, at the head of a strong party of his troops issued out of the palace, with an intention to suppress the tumult. Whether the discovery of the dead bodies of several of his soldiers, fired him with the desperate resolution of ordering the inhabitants to be massacred, does not clearly appear<sup>o</sup>. If we may judge from his natural cruelty and insatiable avarice, it is not unreasonable to believe, that he at once delivered up the city, without any limitation, to slaughter and pillage. His orders

<sup>k</sup> The 10th of MARCH.

<sup>l</sup> EID ZOHA.

<sup>m</sup> These are called PAHR GUNJH.

<sup>n</sup> These people seem to have been in the same circumstances of delusion as the PERSIANS, in their rebellion five years afterwards at ASTRABAD, who first took arms, and then flattered themselves, and even reported, that NADIR SHAH was dead.

<sup>o</sup> Mr. FRAZER, who has given the authorities for most of the transactions in DEHLIE, says, that the soldiers were at first ordered not to do any harm to the innocent. But soldiers are bad judges in such cases.



orders were in an instant obeyed: a place taken by storm never exhibited a greater scene of horror. The PERSIAN foldiers having spread themselves, broke open houses and palaces, slaughtering with an unbridled fury, with very little distinction of age or sex. This bloody scene extended above six miles <sup>p</sup>.

Many who had fled from the neighbouring country to take refuge in the city, assembled in a body to defend their lives; these were joined by jewellers, money-changers, and rich shop-keepers. The physician of the court put himself at their head, and despair supplied the place of strength and resolution. These unhappy people fought bravely for some time, but being so little accustomed to the use of arms, they had only the satisfaction of dying sword in hand.

LUTF ALI KHAN conducted this bloody business in one quarter of the town: SIRBULLIND KHAN, an INDIAN lord, whose reputation and venerable aspect had charms not to be resisted, rushing from his palace, prostrated himself before the PERSIAN general, and represented that the inhabitants of that part of the city were innocent; and begging for their lives, he offered to pay a large ransom, which was accepted, and the slaughter ceased.

In the mean time NIZAM AL MULUCK was stung with remorse at the sight of so sad a spectacle, and conscious of his guilt, in being in some measure the occasion of it<sup>q</sup>, went and threw himself at NADIR's feet, intreating his mercy, for the unfortunate remains of so flourishing a city. After a torrent of reproaches, NADIR gave orders for the recall of his foldiers.

This carnage lasted from eight in the morning till three in the afternoon; about four hundred of the PERSIANS were killed, but of the citizens not less than one hundred and ten thousand. All the jewellers and goldsmiths shops were plundered, and many of them set on fire. Private houses had no better fortune: and the palaces of the great partook of the  
common

<sup>p</sup> DEHLIE is represented to be a very large city.

<sup>q</sup> Because of his treasonable correspondence, which is supposed to have been a motive to the invasion.

1739. common ruin. Next morning the inhabitants were ordered, under the severest penalties, to bury their dead. These unhappy people had not even time to distinguish the MAHOMMEDANS from the PAGANS: the latter, however abominable to Mussulmen, even after death, were either tumbled into one common grave, or consumed together in funeral piles, after the manner of the PAGANS.

As to those who were shut up in houses, numbers of their bodies were not brought out for burial till after NADIR's departure: what horrid spectacles they were then, the reflection is shocking to humanity. Many who were jealous of their honour killed their wives, and then committed murder on themselves. Numbers were burnt in their houses, especially women and children; nor did the sword spare even the infant at his mother's breast. Horror and despair had plunged the inhabitants into such distress, that near ten thousand women threw themselves into wells; of these, some were afterwards taken out alive<sup>r</sup>.

When the slaughter began, the mob who had been the apparent occasion of it disappeared, and left the innocent to suffer. The leading people of this fatal tumult had been so infatuated, as to think that a mob might effect what the imperial army of INDIA had hardly any chance of executing: several of these were taken prisoners, among whom was SAYD-NEAZ KHAN: NIZAM AL MULUCK and the vizir pleaded hard for him, but in vain; NADIR ordered his belly to be ripped open, and in this deplorable manner he expired.

The prisoners brought before the PERSIAN king amounted to several thousands; of these the greatest part were women, of whom many, contrary to the discipline he had established, and contrary to the sacred rights of humanity, had upon this occasion suffered the most infamous treatment. NADIR ordered them to be conducted to their respective houses, where they retired in circumstances of the deepest distress.

The

<sup>r</sup> One remarkable incident happened of a certain man who burnt twenty women of his family; and then finding that the soldiers had missed his house, went out to acquaint them he had large effects; these the soldiers took, but left him unhurt, upon which he murdered himself.



The amount of the loss in houses, effects and riches, in so rich a city, must have been very considerable: but in such a confusion, it is probable many valuable things were lost. Large sums were brought into NADIR'S treasury; and the booty which the PERSIAN soldiers reserved to themselves, as afterwards appeared, was very important.

Before the massacre at DEHLIE, a party of the PERSIAN forces had been sent to seize the cannon at the palace of an INDIAN lord. These had been also treacherously set upon and murdered, by a body of TARTAR MOGHOLS<sup>s</sup>. NADIR being informed of this accident, sent a large detachment, who fell upon those people and slaughtered near six thousand of them. The PERSIANS brought away the ordnance, together with three hundred persons of the chief rank among them. NADIR caused the heads of these immediately to be struck off, and their bodies to be thrown into the RETEE<sup>t</sup>.

After this, a proclamation was made, that all persons should pursue their employments, and that none of the PERSIAN soldiers should hurt or molest them. To prevent the ordinary consequences of such calamities, NADIR gave orders that the granaries should be sealed up<sup>u</sup>, and guards set over them. He also commanded several parties of cavalry to invest the city, that no person might go out of it without a particular license. Many whom hunger and misery induced to leave this dreadful scene, were arrested by the PERSIAN guards, who cut off their ears or noses.

So severe a conduct was soon followed by the distress of many thousands, who had been plundered of their money and effects; for provisions were become excessive dear. The people who were not the proper inhabitants of the city applied to NADIR SHAH, chusing rather to die by a speedy effect of his anger, than to perish more slowly with hunger. These went to him in a body, and in tears of anguish and distress prostrated themselves, and begged for bread. Even the cruel NADIR was touched with

Z 2

their

<sup>s</sup> These are called MOGHOL POURA.

<sup>t</sup> The river of DEHLIE.

<sup>u</sup> In

PERSIA as well as RUSSIA, the sealing up doors by means of a bit of string with some bees-wax impressed with a seal, is looked upon more sacred than any lock.

1739. their misfortunes, and gave them liberty of retiring to FERID-ABAD, in order to buy provisions.

### C H A P. XXIII.

*Male administration of RIZA KOULI MYRZA, regent of PERSIA. Rebellion of the ARABS against the PERSIAN government. Conduct of the PERSIAN ambassador at CONSTANTINOPLE.*

**D**URING this scene of misery and devastation at DEHLIE, PERSIA still groaned under a tyrannical government. RIZA KOULI MYRZA the regent, by practising all the arts of cruelty and extortion, soon incurred the hatred of the people. In order to cover his rapacious avarice, he took the specious name of a merchant: thus he arbitrarily monopolized the raw silk on his own terms, and obliged the manufacturers to take it of him again at the price he was pleased to impose. In the vanity of his heart he wrote to his father, to acquaint him that he had gained a million five hundred thousand crowns<sup>w</sup>, without doing wrong to any man. NADIR, jealous of such extraordinary abilities in his son, desired him to explain himself. RIZA KOULI answered, that he had turned merchant, and obtained it by commerce, of which he sent him a certificate<sup>x</sup>.

The SHAH, who was not to be easily imposed on, represented to him the injurious consequences of such proceedings; that if he had so great a passion for trade, a fishery<sup>y</sup> should be appointed him, from whence he might draw a considerable profit, without invading any property, or diminishing the advantages which belonged to fair traders, by whom na-  
tions

<sup>w</sup> 750,000.      <sup>x</sup> This certificate of his fair-dealing was indeed testified by the merchants of RESHD, but it was obtained by compulsive means, through the interposition of his principal agent HADGHEE SADDUK.

<sup>y</sup> At a time when the success of the herring-fishery seems to be suspected by many, it may be worth while to reflect on this advice of NADIR SHAH; his notion seems to arise from reason and nature, without discourse or argument; for fish is so small an article of the food of the PERSIANS, that it seems strange that NADIR should stumble on the thought.



tions are enriched. Upon the whole, he was so much displeas'd at his son's administration, that he sent a decree, confirming all governors and magistrates in their posts, till he should return from INDIA. This incident was so contumelious a reproach to the prince, that it laid the foundation of his rebellion, as we shall have occasion to relate. 1739.

The PERSIANS rejoic'd at the success of their king over the INDIAN monarch; and the value of the riches taken from that prince were represented as inestimable. What tended to flatter them into the hopes of HALCYON days, was the arrival of a messenger, who brought a decree<sup>z</sup> from NADIR SHAH, which exempted them from taxes for a whole year, to commence from the tenth of MARCH. The officers, who had begun to collect the money, were ordered to refund; which they performed accordingly.

Amidst all these rapid victories, PERSIA was not free from alarms. Some of her subjects in the south took the advantage of the SHAH's absence, and threw off their yoke. NADIR had ordered seven of his ships to be prepared in the PERSIAN gulph, for some expedition which he had meditated<sup>a</sup>: the PERSIAN commander took this occasion to seize the barks belonging to the HOULES, a tribe of ARABS, and would not permit any of them to cross the streight of ORMUS. This gave occasion for a revolt, in which the PERSIAN ships were taken by these ARABIANS, and several of them burnt.

TAGHI KHAN, the governor of SHIRASS, soon after embarked a great number of men in small vessels<sup>b</sup>, and went to chastise the rebels. In the mean time the MASCATS, another tribe of the ARABS, fitted out several ships, apprehending a visit from the PERSIANS. Their fears were soon removed, for the HOULES were an over-match for their enemies: the PERSIAN forces were repulsed, with the loss of near two thousand of their men. This event however encouraged the IMAN<sup>c</sup> of MASCAT,

<sup>z</sup> This is called a RAGAM. FIRMAN, which is a name given it by some, I imagine to be more proper to INDIA.

<sup>a</sup> It is said they were intended to sail round, and go up the INDUS, to carry troops to join the army, which was on the march to INDIA; how practicable this might be, I cannot determine. We are told ALEXANDER came down the INDUS.

<sup>b</sup> Tarranquins.

<sup>c</sup> The chief of the ARABIANS on the opposite side of the gulph.

1739. MASCAT, to accept the offer of a defensive alliance with the HOULES, in order to support their mutual liberty, against all attempts of the PERSIANS.

But the greatest uneasiness was created by the TURKS. NADIR, notwithstanding his great distance, endeavoured to possess them with the terror of his arms; that they might not take advantage of his absence to make a peace with the RUSSIANS and invade PERSIA. He sent two ambassadors to them from KANDAHAR, of whom the last, MAHOMMED RIZA KHAN, arrived at CONSTANTINOPLE in NOVEMBER last year; and in the beginning of the next month was admitted to an audience of the grand signior. The KHAN assured his highness in the most elegant and exalted terms, "That his master, the SHAH, had the greatest desire to live  
 " in perfect amity with him; but that the means of doing this was to  
 " yield up DIARBEKIR, in the same condition it was in during its subjec-  
 " tion to the PERSIAN empire<sup>d</sup>. He also pretended to the UPPER ARME-  
 " NIA: and further insisted that the grand signior should renounce his alli-  
 " ance with the GREAT MOGHOL; that the new fortifications made at  
 " BAGDAT, since the provisional treaty of peace, concluded three years  
 " before, should be demolished; and that the PERSIAN caravans should  
 " have every where a free passage in the dominions of the OTTOMAN  
 " empire."

These demands appearing capricious as well as insolent, the TURKISH ministers, though they dreaded a war with PERSIA, seemed by no means disposed to comply with them; on the contrary, they declared that the grand signior would make a peace with the emperor of the ROMANS, and the empress of RUSSIA, and engage in a fresh war with PERSIA, rather than submit to such dishonourable conditions. What added to the distress of the port, was the rebellion of SARE BEN OGLOU in NATOLIA. NADIR might flatter himself into a belief of selling his friendship for some very valuable consideration; but his interest was to keep the TURKS deeply engaged in a war with RUSSIA; that so he might find them  
 the

<sup>d</sup> This country was formerly part of MESOPOTAMIA, and the antient boundary of the kingdom of ASSYRIA.



the more weakened, when he should return to fill up the measure of his victories over them.

NADIR also sent an embassador to the court of ST. PETERSBURG, with which he had a more natural interest: that court was also very sensible how little his friendship was to be depended on; however, it was some satisfaction that he was very far from having entered into any close connection with the TURKS, tho' he was not engaged in a war with them.

## C H A P. XXIV.

NADIR gives his soldiers a gratuity. Contribution of AUDIH brought to DEHLIE. SIRBULLIND KHAN appointed chief collector of the contribution. His declaration to NIZAM AL MULUCK. Barbarous treatment of the INDIANS in collecting the contributions. The value of the treasure collected.

WE return now to INDIA, to see how the mighty ravager conducted himself after spilling so much innocent blood: we shall find that his avarice was in no respects inferior to his cruelty. These indeed are vices twin-born from the regions of darkness, and increase in malignity in proportion to the power by which they are supported.

NADIR being now master of vast treasures, paid his army their arrears<sup>e</sup>, and in order to encourage them to bring in their plunder, he added a gratuity also. These payments were made in his own coin, which was struck upon this occasion, with this inscription:

“ NADIR the master of fortune, and the king of kings, is the most  
“ powerful prince of the earth.”

The reverse was:

“ May God perpetuate his reign.”

The

<sup>e</sup> Twelve months pay for 140,000 men, at the ordinary computation is 3,400,000 *l.* but it is probable that the riches he found at CABUL, enabled him to pay his army on the occasion of his taking that place; and consequently he did not disburse near so large a sum on this occasion.

1739. The great business was the collection of those vast sums, which NADIR exacted of the GREAT MOGHOL and his subjects. TÆHMAS KHAN had been charged to watch over the conduct of SAADIT KHAN. This INDIAN general<sup>e</sup> had accepted the commission of compelling his countrymen to deliver up their riches, agreeably to the respective quotas to be levied on them: upon his decease, his nephew, MAHOMMED KHAN, was called upon to deliver in an account of all his uncle's effects, which amounted to a million sterling<sup>f</sup>. Great part of this was brought from his government, under an escort of a thousand PERSIAN horse: but the sum was two hundred and fifty thousand pounds short of what SAADIT KHAN had engaged to pay.

SIRBULLIND KHAN, already mentioned as the person by whose intercession the massacre was stopt in his quarter, though poor, was much respected: the corruptions of the court had not tainted his integrity. NADIR excused him from paying any tax himself, as knowing his inability; but these very reasons rendered him worthy of the greatest trust; hence he was appointed to collect from other people the free gift<sup>g</sup>, and contribution<sup>h</sup>. His age and infirmities in some measure obstructed his vigilance: NADIR therefore acquainted him, that if he meant to avoid the weight of his anger, he would do well to exert himself. Two hundred foldiers were assigned him as a guard in the execution of this office. He was also charged to oblige all persons in public employment<sup>i</sup>, to produce all the horses, camels, and elephants, belonging to the crown, that proper choice might be made of them for the use of the PERSIAN army.

This KHAN saw to what extremities he must reduce the people in the execution of this dangerous commission: it is some consolation however to honest men under such circumstances, that they may alleviate a misfortune, and execute their charge with humanity; when a person of a different character would aggravate the evil, and render it still a heavier weight to the calamitous.

SIR-

<sup>e</sup> I use the terms general and lord as words that are familiar and emphatical, and convey, I think, a stronger idea than the INDIAN names. It may however be proper to remark, that NABOB or NAVOB is the ordinary title given the OMRAS or INDIAN lords who are governors; NAIB signifies a deputy or viceroy, such as SAADIT KHAN we may suppose was in AUDIH.

<sup>f</sup> Eighty lacks of rupees, or one million sterling. The sum promised was a crore or 100 lacks, equal to 1,250,000 £.

<sup>g</sup> This they call the PEISHCUSH.

<sup>h</sup> This is called

the BEAVRA, or forced contribution.

<sup>i</sup> MANSUBDARS.



SIRBULLIND KHAN saw to what extremities he must reduce the inhabitants in the execution of this dangerous commission, but there was no remedy; TÆHMAS KHAN and MUSTAPHA KHAN<sup>k</sup>, pressed him to enter upon the office assigned him. This old man, in the fulness of his heart, addressing himself to NIZAM AL MULUCK, who was then present, spoke to this effect: “ I have long foreseen the misfortune which has overtaken us; I often represented to the emperor the danger of an easy security, and desired him to send a trusty ambassador with large presents into PERSIA, to divert the storm which was breaking out on that side. We might have appeased the resentment of the SHAH, and lived with him in friendship: but the courtiers would not listen to my advice; they imagined that what I said was only with a view to some private interest; and whilst they neglected to second my counsel, they proposed no kind of expedient to avert the impending danger: at length, we see to what a calamitous issue things are reduced. For my own part, had I been possessed of money, I would have sent it all to KANDAHAR, rather than have given any provocation to the SHAH to have made so extraordinary an expedition. However, we have now no remedy; we must raise the immense sum of twenty crores<sup>l</sup>, if the money is to be found, which GOD only can tell whether it be possible to raise under the present distressed condition of the capital.”

NIZAM AL MULUCK made no reply to this speech. In whatever degree he was answerable for the misfortune, he saw too plainly the mistake he had committed, as the sum demanded of himself was no less than one crore and a half<sup>m</sup>. He, together with the vizir and DEVRAN KHAN, had received one crore<sup>n</sup>, which had been issued out of the royal treasury for the military chest, when they marched against the PERSIANS: of the two former NADIR demanded an account of this sum; he also ordered them to send to their respective

<sup>k</sup> This was the man to whom I was under such singular obligations in the camp of NADIR SHAH in MARCH 1744.

<sup>l</sup> Twenty five millions of pounds. This was the sum which NIZAM AL MULUCK after the battle of KARNAL had agreed to pay the SHAH, exclusive of the jewels, gold, plate, and other rich goods belonging to the emperor and the lords of his court. <sup>m</sup> 1,870,000 l.

<sup>n</sup> 1,250,000 l.



1739. respective governments for all the treasure, belonging either to themselves or the crown.

NIZAM AL MULUCK represented, that when he left DECCAN, he established his son as his deputy, giving him possession of all his effects; that all the world knew his son had refused to deliver up his government, and was no longer in his power; that NADIR himself was only capable of reducing him and the rebellious princes of DECCAN.

This answer, which was in some degree true, served to divert the SHAH from pursuing a point in its nature hardly practicable. It was very plain he thought it unsafe to penetrate deeper into the country, lest he should never get out of it again. KUMMIR O'DIN KHAN, the vizir, was treated with greater severity. He endeavoured to elude the payment of the large contribution demanded of him; NADIR therefore caused him to be exposed openly to the sun, which is reckoned a punishment contumelious as well as painful, and in that country dangerous to the health. At length, he extorted from him a whole crore of rupees<sup>o</sup>, besides a great value in precious stones and elephants. His secretary, who was also a man of fortune, was taxed in a large sum, and delivered to SIRBULLIND KHAN, in order to be tortured if he did not pay it; however, he prevented this persecution by a dose of poison.

A sum of money was now issued out of the treasury for the charge of fifty horsemen, who were ordered to march to BENGAL, with directions to the governor to send seven crores of rupees<sup>p</sup>. The VAKEEL<sup>q</sup> of that kingdom, who was then present at DEHLIE, said that so much money would load a string of waggons to reach from thence to the capital. Being severely beaten for his sarcasm, he went home, and revenged himself by taking poison together with his whole family.

The INDIANS of distinction seem to have a great sensibility of such indignities. The gentler treatment to which they had been accustomed, gave

<sup>o</sup> 1,250,000 l.

<sup>p</sup> 8,750,000 l. I never heard that he received any money from thence, tho' the province was a'armed. The riches of DEHLIE seemed to fill up the measure of his avarice, great as it was.

<sup>q</sup> The lieutenant governor.



gave them very different impressions from what the PERSIANS received in the like circumstances. 1739.

It is not easy to conceive with what rigor these contributions were levied; and what numbers destroyed themselves with their own hands, to be delivered from the tortures and punishments with which they were threatened. No barbarities were left unpractised: the tax imposed was strictly exacted, tho' in the computation of the respective abilities of the inhabitants, numerous mistakes were made; besides, as there were no purchasers of their effects, except the PERSIANS, hardly a quarter of their value was paid. The consequence of this was, that many left their effects and their families at the mercy of the PERSIANS; and made their escape to ACBAR ABAD. Here the governor received them, determined to resist any of the flying parties who should appear in his district; for which purpose he appointed six thousand horse to protect those who fled to him for shelter.

Mean while all the inhabitants of any consideration were obliged to declare under their hand-writing, what money and effects they were possessed of; that if it should be afterwards found they had concealed any thing, they might be punished with the utmost severity; and in this process a suspicion was often deemed a proof.

The commissioners appointed for the collection sat every day, from sun-rise till evening, during which time there was very little respect shewn to persons. At length, about the middle of APRIL, the sum of four crores<sup>r</sup> was extorted from the merchants and common people. In the royal treasuries were found three crores<sup>s</sup> of money; but in the inward vaults, which had been shut during many reigns, they discovered a much larger value<sup>t</sup>. Nor must we forget to mention the peacock throne, which was rich in jewels, and valued at a prodigious sum. The whole of the treasure amassed upon this occasion, is estimated as follows:

A a 2

Jewels

<sup>r</sup> 5,000,000 l.<sup>s</sup> 3,750,000 l.

<sup>t</sup> The different relations we have had of this extraordinary rapine, are for the most part upon the marvelous; and several writers have suffered their imaginations to travel much faster than their judgment. The most probable account values these



1739.

	Crores.	l.
Jewels taken from the GREAT MOGHOL and the INDIAN lords ———— }	25 —	31,250,000
The peacock throne, with nine others, also several weapons and utensils all garnished with precious stones — }	9 —	11,250,000
Gold and silver plate, and money, which NADIR melted down into large ingots }	30 —	37,500,000
To these we may add the rich manufac- tures of many kinds ———— }	2 —	2,500,000
Cannon, warlike stores, furniture, and other valuable commodities ——— }	4 —	5,000,000

---

## C H A P. XXV.

NADIR marries his second son to the niece of MAHOMMED SHAH. The presents he makes to that prince and the INDIAN lords. The GREAT MOGHOL's cession of all the country on the west of the INDUS. NADIR's advice to that prince. He begins his march from DEHLIE, and musters his army. Value of the damage done the INDIANS.

WHILST NADIR was thus glutting himself with treasures, he affected to establish a lasting friendship with the GREAT MOGHOL. With this view he demanded CAMBARCHE, the niece of that prince, in marriage for his second son NESR ALI MYRZA. Their nuptials were accordingly consummated on the 27th of MARCH, with some appearances of that satisfaction which such alliances generally create in the

these riches at seventy millions sterling. I could never come to the bottom of the matter in PERSIA. The PERSIANS talked only of heaps of treasure, and thousands of camels, and mules loaded with gold and silver and precious stones. Mr. FRAZER's account, which I adopt, makes it seventy crores, which seems to be the highest calculation that the nature of the thing will warrant; this is equal to eighty seven millions five hundred thousand pounds of our money. Of this sum, thirty seven millions five hundred thousand pounds is computed in gold and silver.



the families of princes. MAHOMMED SHAH was in no circumstances to 1739.  
make his niece presents suitable to his own rank, or her condition; how-  
ever, he sent her fifty thousand rupees in money <sup>u</sup>, and as much in  
jewels. NADIR himself added to these the value of five hundred thou-  
sand rupees in jewels <sup>w</sup>.

It might be presumed that this alliance was calculated for political  
ends, either to preserve his authority over the INDIANS, or to retain some  
part of his conquest by right of dowry to the young princess: but this  
was not the case. NADIR knew that he could not support his sovereignty  
over so vast a country, and govern a people so different in manners, tho'  
of a genius milder and more tractable than the PERSIANS <sup>x</sup>, by any au-  
thority but what was derived from the sword. So far then as such au-  
thority could be extended, he might reasonably hope to support his con-  
quest, and farther than this, alliances by marriage could be of no signifi-  
cation. Besides, the marriages of MAHOMMEDAN princes, who take  
several wives, ought to be considered in a different light from those of  
christian kings; tho' it is a means sometimes used among them, as well  
as christians, to consolidate their friendships.

Perhaps NADIR took this occasion to make the first mention of his  
desire that the province of CABUL, with all the country on the western  
banks of the INDUS, from the fort of ATOK, should be yielded to him.  
And what difficulty could the trembling monarch of HINDOSTAN make,  
to abandon his right to those provinces, whilst he found himself in the  
hands of a conqueror, who considered it as an act of clemency to grant  
him even his life?

During these transactions in DEHLIE, the PERSIANS marauded for thirty  
or forty miles round the capital, plundering the villages, laying waste the  
fields, and killing the inhabitants who resisted. Numbers of these were  
left without any provender for their cattle, which added greatly to their  
distress.

NADIR,

<sup>u</sup> 6,250 l.

<sup>w</sup> Five lacks, or 62,500 l.

<sup>x</sup> The PERSIANS are polite  
and gentle in their deportment, and submissive to their superiors; but their taste for arms, and their  
repugnance to be ruled by a tyrant and usurper, has been proved sufficiently.



1739.

NADIR, who was determined that due obedience should be paid to all his decrees, remembered that which related to the conformity of the SCHIAS and SUNNIS. The fast and repentance, in commemoration of the death of IMAM HASSAN, and IMAM HUSSEIN<sup>y</sup>, falling out in the month of MARCH, he caused it to be proclaimed, that no person whatever, either of his own army, or of the subjects of the GREAT MOGHOL, should presume to mention the words TAZIA<sup>z</sup> or MATIM<sup>a</sup>. This however did not hinder, but that some of his own soldiers, in the camp without the city, beat their breasts, and made lamentations according to their former custom; for which they were severely punished.

The scene was now drawing near a close: the grandeur of a great prince and a conqueror called on NADIR for some acts of generosity. Those INDIAN lords, who had been employed in using their influence and authority to collect the vast treasures he had amassed, were intitled to some regard, tho' it were but a mark of honour.

For these, forty-two presents<sup>b</sup> were provided, consisting each of three, four, or five pieces of gold or silver stuffs, according to their respective ranks. Those appointed for NIZAM AL MULUCK, SIRBULLIND KHAN, the great vizir, KUMMIR O'DIN KHAN<sup>c</sup>, and MAHOMMED KHAN BUN-  
GUSH,

<sup>y</sup> The two sons of ALI often mentioned.

<sup>z</sup> Signifies mourning.

<sup>a</sup> Death.

<sup>b</sup> These are called KHALAET, which properly signifies perfect or accomplished; a robe of honour given by the king. See Vol. III. page 43.

<sup>c</sup> Signifies the moon of religion. They

tell a remarkable story of this person, with relation to his son BEDREDDIN KHAN, who disappeared at KARNAL, and it was reasonable to presume fell in the field of battle. Soon after this time, the RAJAH of PERVER met a young man in the habit of a DERVISH, whom he took to be BEDREDDIN KHAN, whose person was well known to him. The RAJAH having a great friendship for the vizir, sent an express to court, to inform that minister of the joyful news that his son was found. In the mean while, the young man was received by the RAJAH with the utmost politeness and affection, and cloathed in the richest manner, agreeable to his supposed quality. The vizir was transported with joy at the news, and received the compliments of his friends upon this happy occasion. Orders were dispatched immediately to the RAJAH, to send the supposed son to court; a rich palankin was prepared, and mounted on an elephant, and the young man was conveyed with great pomp by five hundred horse as far as ACBARABAD, where he was received with great marks of distinction by the soldiers and domestics, whom the vizir had sent to meet him. From thence he was conducted to the capital. The young man was no sooner arrived there, than the vizir received him with open arms, and shed over him the tears of joy and paternal affection: the resemblance was so great, that the vizir entertained



GUSH, an INDIAN general, who had also been of great service to the PERSIAN monarch, were much more considerable, consisting of three rich vestments, a turbant, with a PERSIAN sabre and knife,<sup>e</sup> the handles of which were mounted with gold, and enameled. This ceremony was performed on the first of MAY, and all the OMRAS were ordered to attend at the general divan, where MAHOMMED SHAH their own sovereign was present: they were also entertained with the morning's repast<sup>d</sup>.

Upon this occasion, the GREAT MOGHOL himself received marks of the friendship of the PERSIAN monarch, viz. a crown, a bracelet<sup>c</sup>, a fillet<sup>f</sup>, and a girdle richly set with jewels. To these were added an enamelled dagger<sup>g</sup>, and two swords, the handles of which were set with jewels: NADIR SHAH with his own hand placed the crown on the GREAT MOGHOL's head, as if he meant to signify, that to his arm the INDIAN monarch was indebted for his dominions. He also declared with an imperious air, which at once argued his contempt of the INDIANS, and the most lofty conceit of his own power, that if the lords of the court were omiffive in their duty, he would call them to severe account; that they ought to consider him always as near, since he could be with them in forty days from KANDAHAR.

## Whether

entertained not the least jealousy, but imagined his supposed son jested, when he declared in the same manner he had done to the RAJAH, that he was not BEDREDDIN KHAN. The delusion was carried so far, that he was introduced to the harran, and presented to his supposed mother. His countenance, his stature, his voice, and air, persuaded this lady also that he was her son; but as he still persisted that he was not, her curiosity induced her to examine his body, as BEDREDDIN KHAN had a mark in a particular place. What pen can describe her sorrow and confusion, when she discovered that he was not her son! The indignity of a stranger being brought to her apartment aggravated the misfortune; whilst the young man complained of their incredulity, by compelling him to submit to such an extremity. Under these circumstances, the vizir offered to adopt him as his son, and by that means at once wipe off the stain, and enjoy some part of the pleasures of a father, in the society of one who so much resembled his real son. But neither was this practicable, for the true father of this young man, who thought he had lost him, was no sooner informed of the adventure, than he reclaimed his son, with the joy that is natural to a tender parent.

<sup>d</sup> This we may call either breakfast or dinner, as their custom is not to eat till about 11 o'clock, after which the PERSIANS only eat once more in the day. See Vol. I. page 229.

<sup>e</sup> Which the INDIANS call BAZOUBUND.

<sup>f</sup> This they call a SIRPEACH, which is wore round the turbant: persons of great distinction generally have them set with precious stones.

<sup>g</sup> Which the INDIANS call CUTTARRI.



1739. Whether any particular ceremony was performed upon the MOGHOL'S yielding up the INDIAN dominions which NADIR claimed, does not appear; but this seems to be the proper place to mention the extraordinary cession made to the PERSIAN king, which was as follows:

“ May GOD perpetuate the reign of NADIR SHAH, who is exalted as  
 “ SATURN<sup>h</sup>, in glory like MARS<sup>i</sup>, in pomp like ALEXANDER<sup>k</sup>, fove-  
 “ reign of the kings of the earth; the shadow of the Almighty, and  
 “ the refuge of ISLAM<sup>l</sup>, whose court is the heavens<sup>m</sup>.

“ The ministers<sup>n</sup> of the sultan, who is merciful, and the emperor,  
 “ who is august, formerly sent embassadors to us to treat of certain de-  
 “ mands, with which it was our purpose to comply. The embassador  
 “ MAHOMMED KHAN TURKUMAN, not long since arrived here from  
 “ KANDAHAR to remind us thereof; but our ministers having delayed  
 “ the embassador, and postponed answering the letters of his sublime  
 “ majesty, it at length produced such a misunderstanding between us,  
 “ that his victorious army came into HINDOSTAN. We encountered in  
 “ the fields of KARNAL, where victory arose in the east of his unde-  
 “ clining fortune.

“ As his sublime majesty is mighty as JUMSHEID<sup>o</sup>, the greatest of the  
 “ TURKUMANS, and the source of goodness as well as valour; relying  
 “ on

<sup>h</sup> SATURN is 87,000 miles distant from the earth; hence, tho' it appears so small, astronomers mention it as twenty times the diameter of the earth. The ring, which surrounds his middle like an arch, contains forty-five diameters of the earth. How does the mind labour to reach the vast expanse; yet is not this more to infinite space than a moment to eternity!

<sup>i</sup> There is also a comparison made with MARS, viz. “ impetuous as the god of war:” but this seems to be dropping the figure with regard to MARS as a planet. Being placed between JUPITER and the SUN, it might imply power and glory. It is true, a more apt meaning might have been cloaked, if the INDIAN or PERSIAN astrologers agreed with those of EUROPE, with regard to the appearance of MARS, with a ruddy troubled light, supposed to be encompassed with a cloudy atmosphere; if they had dared under the notion of a panegyric to tell a bold truth.

<sup>k</sup> Some writers have translated this, “ the second ALEXANDER;” and from thence make many remarks on the supposed model which NADIR followed, though his motives seem to have been very different from that of the GRECIAN hero.

<sup>l</sup> By this is meant the true faith. <sup>m</sup> It is hard to say which of these three compliments is the greatest bombast, or the most ill applied.

<sup>n</sup> As they often use the third person plural; when they speak of princes, they also express an awful respect, not by ascribing their actions to their ministers, but substituting the instrument for the agent.

<sup>o</sup> This was one of the antient kings of PERSIA, remarkable for great power.



“ on his honour, we had the satisfaction of an interview, and enjoyed  
 “ the unmixed delights of his heavenly company. After this we came  
 “ together to SHAJEHANABAD <sup>p</sup>, where all the jewels and treasures of the  
 “ emperors of HINDOSTAN <sup>q</sup> were presented to him: and, in compliance  
 “ with our request, his sublime majesty was graciously pleased to accept  
 “ of some of them. 1739.

“ But in regard to the illustrious family of JURGHIN <sup>r</sup>, and the honour  
 “ he professes for the original tree of TURKAN <sup>s</sup>, out of the greatness of  
 “ his soul, and the overflowings of his humanity, he has been pleased  
 “ to restore to us the crown and gem of HINDOSTAN.

“ In consideration of this act of generosity, which no father has ever  
 “ shewn to a son, nor any brother to a brother, we make over to him  
 “ all the countries to the west of the river ATTOK <sup>t</sup>, and of that of  
 “ SCIND <sup>u</sup>, and NALA SUNKRA <sup>w</sup>, which is a branch of the SCIND. That  
 “ is to say, PEISHOR with its territories; the principality of CABUL and  
 “ GAZNA, HAZARIJAT, the mountainous residences of the AFGHANS,  
 “ with the castles of BUCKHOR, SUNKOR <sup>x</sup>, and KHOUDABAD; the passes,  
 “ territories, and abodes of the TCHOUKIS and BALLOUCHES, with the  
 “ whole province of TATA: also the castle of RAM; the towns of  
 “ CHUN, SUMAWALI, and KETRA, with all the castles, towns, ports,  
 “ villages, and open country, from the first rise of the river ATTOK,  
 “ with all the country comprehended within its branches, till it empties  
 “ itself into the sea at NALA SUNKRA.

“ These we freely give up to the dominion of the powerful sovereign  
 “ of PERSIA, and from hence forward our officers and subjects shall  
 “ evacuate the same, and resign the property and government to the PER-  
 “ SIAN

<sup>p</sup> DEHLIE.      <sup>q</sup> INDIA.      <sup>r</sup> This word is sometimes wrote GOURGAN; but they both equally allude to TEMUR BEG OF TAMERLANE, of whom the INDIAN emperors are descended.

<sup>s</sup> This also I understand to allude to TAMERLANE.      <sup>t</sup> I have already observed that this is part of the INDUS.

<sup>u</sup> Part of the country on the west of the INDUS often goes under this denomination, as well as the INDUS itself.

<sup>w</sup> This is sometimes called NALA SENCURE, which seems to be the island between the INDUS and what DE LISLE calls the river DIMTADE.

<sup>x</sup> This is sometimes wrote SEKIR.

1739. "SIAN king, to be disposed of at his pleasure. We renounce all our  
 "right to command, controul, or collect revenues, in any of those do-  
 "minions. But the castle and town of LOHRE BENDER, with all the  
 "country to the eastward of the river ATOK, and of the waters of the  
 "SCIND, and NALA SUNKRA, shall, as before, belong to the empire of  
 "HINDOSTAN. Dated at SHAJAHANABAD the fourth of MOHIRRIM,  
 "1152<sup>y</sup>."

This acquisition of dominion was an object of no less consequence, than all the treasures of which NADIR robbed the MOGHOL, particularly the province of PEISHOR; if we may judge from the great revenues which he drew from that conquest: nor was there any other danger of his losing it, than what naturally arose from the circumstances of his own government. The seat of the PERSIAN empire, which he had established in KHORASAN, was also calculated for the support of his conquest, had providence permitted him to establish by the arts of peace, what he had thus acquired by the sword. But as the GREAT MOGHOL became a prey to NADIR by the fault of too great gentleness; so NADIR's excess of severity necessarily rendered him odious, and consequently hastened his fall with a more prodigious ruin.

NADIR had now returned the INDIAN diadem to the legal possessor, seemingly with a much greater indifference, than ALEXANDER restored to PORUS, the kingdom which he had conquered from him, with an additional territory. MAHOMMED SHAH was not indeed an object of jealousy, as he seemed no ways inclined to war, or to commence any future contest: whereas PORUS signalized himself in military achievements. ALEXANDER indeed abandoned INDIA entirely; probably because he could not keep it, and therefore can claim the less merit: NADIR retained a considerable share of his conquest, on a presumption that he could keep it. Shall we say that honour or generosity was concerned in either case? Little more than what arises from the virtue which is passive, because there is no temptation or inclination to offend.

NADIR



NADIR being now prepared to march back into his own country, took occasion to give a lesson of advice to the GREAT MOGHOL; and under the cloak of friendship, to recommend such a conduct as tended most to the security of the new conquest, which had been just yielded to him. It is said he spoke to this effect: “ You ought by all means to  
 “ take possession of the lands assigned for the support of your governors <sup>z</sup>,  
 “ and pay each of them their appointments with ready money out of  
 “ your treasuries. Let none of them keep any forces of their own: you  
 “ will then have the less occasion for a numerous standing army; how-  
 “ ever, you ought to support a body of sixty thousand choice cavalry,  
 “ at the annual expence of sixty rupees <sup>a</sup> each. Every ten men ought to  
 “ have one corporal <sup>b</sup>, every ten corporals one captain <sup>c</sup>, and every ten cap-  
 “ tains one commander of a thousand <sup>d</sup>. Acquaint yourself with the coun-  
 “ try, family, and name of all your officers, with their respective merits and  
 “ inclinations. Never suffer either them or the common soldiers to be idle  
 “ or inactive. When occasion requires, detach a sufficient number of your  
 “ troops under the command of a brave, faithful, and experienced offi-  
 “ cer; but when he has executed his business, recall him. By this  
 “ means you will have the less to fear, with regard to the consequences  
 “ of too great a power.

“ As to the great officers of your court, be careful in your choice of  
 “ them, and do not prefer those who are artful, ambitious, or self-  
 “ interested. Were I to chuse them, they would shew you very lit-  
 “ tle respect in my absence; but you may depend, if any of them  
 “ prove rebellious, I will send to chastise them. If necessary, I can be  
 “ with you myself in forty days from KANDAHAR <sup>e</sup>, and never reckon  
 “ me far off.”

This advice seemed to be in some measure agreeable to NADIR'S own maxims of government; tho' the frontiers which he had to guard required

B b 2

fo

<sup>z</sup> These are called JAGUIRS, or lands appointed for payment of the salaries of the respective governors, which naturally gives them a kind of sovereignty, by collecting the taxes, and converting them to their own use. The advice here seems to be very just.

<sup>a</sup> Sixty rupees, or 7 l. 10 s.

is but 30 crowns of PERSIA, whereas NADIR'S soldiers cost him 100 crowns, including officers. But servitude is cheaper in INDIA.

<sup>b</sup> DEH-BASHI.

<sup>c</sup> SUDIVAL.

<sup>d</sup> HAZARRI,

sometimes called MIMBASHI.

<sup>e</sup> The distance is computed between 7 and 800 miles.

1739. so many forces, that he was often obliged to employ such commanders as he had soon reason to distrust. He recommended to SIRBULLIND KHAN, NIZAM AL MULUCK, and other OMRAS belonging to the court of MAHOMMED SHAH, to be faithful to their master ; telling them, that a religious adherence to their duty to their own sovereign, would be their best security against his resentment.

The 4th of MAY he issued out orders for his army to march, and proclamation was made, that no subject of MAHOMMED SHAH should presume, under pain of death, to conceal any one belonging to his army. He also gave orders, that none of his officers or soldiers should carry with them any male or female slaves, except such as had been bought with money, and with the public consent of the parties ; and that, even women lawfully married to them, should not be taken away without their consent. Some of the officers used the most gentle entreaties, but none of the INDIAN women could be entirely prevailed on to leave their country ; NADIR therefore obliged these officers to send back the few women who had accompanied them out of the city. This rigor seemed to arise either from the regard which he always shewed to the freedom of that sex, as far as MAHOMMEDAN principles allow ; or from a fear lest these women should be a means of supporting a correspondence with the INDIANS, not consistent with his system of politics.

As soon as he arrived at the gardens of SHALIMAR, he ordered a muster of his army. Four hundred men being missing, strict search was made after them ; of these, sixty were found and brought to the camp. As a proof of the severity of his discipline, he caused their heads to be cut off instantly upon the field. This induced the INDIANS out of pure mercy to conceal the other deserters.

NADIR carried with him a hundred and thirty writers, among whom were several who understood the finances of the empire, of which he was particularly desirous of acquiring an entire knowledge. He also obliged three hundred masons and builders, two hundred smiths, two hundred carpenters, and one hundred stone-cutters, to engage in his service, in order to go into



PERSIA. His intentions were to build a city after the model of DEHLIE, a draught of which he carried with him. This new city was proposed to be called NADIR ABAD <sup>f</sup>; which at the same time that it transmitted his own name to posterity, might remain a monument of his conquest in INDIA, and of his victory obtained over the GREAT MOGHOL. He allowed these artificers large pay, and provided them with horses and other necessaries for their journey: he also agreed, that after the expiration of three years, they should be at liberty to return home. However this design might flatter his vanity, it was never carried into execution: part of these INDIANS deserted before they reached LAHOR, and the continual wars in which he was afterwards engaged diverted the thought of this project, after his return into PERSIA.

Besides the jewels, gold, silver, and other valuables already mentioned, he took with him near three hundred <sup>g</sup> elephants, ten thousand horses, and as many camels, of which many were loaded with spoil. Most of the gold and silver was melted into large ingots, and flung over the backs of camels, horses and mules. If we reckon one half part of the thirty crores <sup>h</sup> already mentioned to be in gold, and the other in silver, according to the ordinary computation of loads, even for common journies in PERSIA, would require five thousand seven hundred camels, and two thousand and fifty horses and mules <sup>i</sup>. The manufactures, furniture, and war-like weapons, it may be presumed; would require a much greater number.

It is computed that the houses and goods destroyed by fire, and the fields which were laid waste, amounted to near twenty crores <sup>k</sup>; we may therefore reckon upon the whole, that this PERSIAN ravager spoiled the INDIANS of above one hundred and twenty millions of pounds.

As

<sup>f</sup> The city of NADIR. <sup>g</sup> Some accounts say he took a thousand elephants, which seems to be much too great a number to have been collected, or to be of any use. These animals indeed carry large burthens; but except it be for artillery and such like uses, camels, horses, and mules, answer the purpose better. This is a long-lived animal, and yet I could never hear that there were such numbers in PERSIA; the number in the camp did not reach to thirty, and those which NADIR sent into TURKEY and RUSSIA did not exceed twenty.

<sup>h</sup> 37,500,000 *l*.  
<sup>i</sup> This review of the matter would tempt one to believe that the treasure was not of such importance, though we may presume that it was a larger sum than ever was collected in one treasury: nor is it of consequence, since whatever it was, it is dissipated. <sup>k</sup> 25,000,000 *l*.



1739. As to the number of souls who were plunged into eternity upon this unhappy occasion, they are not reckoned less than two hundred thousand; of whom fell between LAHOR and KARNAL, in the battle, and a few days afterwards, forty thousand; in the massacre one hundred and ten thousand; in the villages, and those who died by famine, fifty thousand. We will now leave the INDIANS to repair by industry and commerce, the havock created by their avaricious enemy, and follow NADIR in his march.

## C H A P. XXVI.

NADIR continues his march from the gardens of SHALIMAR. *An instance of his vanity and avarice. His cruelty towards numbers of the peasants. Contribution of LAHOR. His passage over the CHANTROU obstructed. He returns back towards LAHOR. Confederacy of the AFGHANS and INDIANS to oppose his passage through the defiles. He seizes the plunder belonging to his own soldiers. His march to PEISHOR. KHUDAYAR KHAN refuses to acknowledge the sovereignty of NADIR, and is reduced. NADIR pursues his march to KANDAHAR. He sends his treasures to KÆLAT, and conquers KHIEVA and BOKHARA.*

THE necessary dispositions being made, on the sixth of MAY NADIR pursued his march from the gardens of SHALIMAR, directing his course to the plains of KARNAL, where the INDIANS first owned him as their conqueror. According to the ordinary consequence of vast possessions, the precautions he took, seemed to argue a greater inquietude for the preservation, than he had shewn solicitude for the acquisition, of his riches.

When he arrived on the plains of KARNAL, he sent for the chief<sup>1</sup> of the town of that name, and commanded him to build a village on the spot he had incamped, and to call it by the name of FATEH ABAD<sup>m</sup>: for this purpose, it is said, he gave him five thousand rupees. It is not improbable, that an inclination to continue the memory of his victory, might induce

<sup>1</sup> ZEMIDAR.

<sup>m</sup> Signifies the habitation of victory.



induce him to be at this expence; but this sum of 600 l. is so very inconsiderable, that it plainly proves how strong the passion of avarice became in his breast amidst such vast riches.

As the army was marching, the peasants watched their opportunities to plunder or kill the soldiers, who were sent out to provide necessaries; they also pillaged the exterior parts of the camp in the night, insomuch that the PERSIANS lost above a thousand camels, horses, and mules, before they reached TANISEER. The SHAH, enraged at this behaviour, gave orders for plundering that town, and putting the inhabitants to the sword. Other towns and villages suffered the same fate: By this step he intended to terrify the people into compliance, since he could not by any other means engage them to supply his army.

AS ZEKARIAH KHAN, the governor of LAHOR, had made his submissions to NADIR, when he passed through the province of PENJAB in his way to DEHLIE; it was apprehended that the inhabitants had nothing to fear: but as soon as the KHAN heard of the massacre at DEHLIE, and of the severity with which the contributions had been exacted in that city, he foresaw the storm that was gathering. Resolving therefore not to be taken at a disadvantage, he summoned all the merchants, money-changers<sup>n</sup>, and wealthy inhabitants, to bring in their quotas towards raising a crore of rupees<sup>o</sup>. This sum was deemed the utmost which they could pay.

NADIR was no sooner arrived at the gardens of SHALIMAR, than he dispatched ABDUL BAKI KHAN, with a considerable body of troops, to demand a large contribution of LAHOR; and having passed through SERHIND, he was drawing near to the capital of the province, when ZEKARIAH KHAN went out to meet him. The crore of rupees was presented, with the strongest protestation that this sum was the utmost which the city could raise; that if it was his pleasure to pillage or to slaughter the inhabitants, they were unable to resist his forces, and therefore resigned to whatever should be determined. ABDUL BAKI KHAN had orders to demand

1739. demand a larger sum; but this just representation being made to the SHAH, the crore of rupees was accepted, and the PERSIAN army continued their march.

When they arrived on the banks of the CHANTROU, the bridge of boats prepared for their passage had been carried away by a sudden swelling of the waters; NADIR therefore directed his march back, and entered the province of PENJAB. A body of horse was dispatched to LAHOR the capital, to demand provisions. The inhabitants, who had hardly recovered from their dread of fire and sword, at the late approach of the PERSIAN army, and were impoverished by the contributions they had paid, now thought only of saving their lives by flight. ZEKARIAH KHAN was no sooner informed of the panic with which the people were struck, than he went and threw himself at NADIR's feet, and begged that he would not approach nearer the city, engaging at the same time that the bridge should be repaired without delay: it was accordingly performed, and the army passed over.

NADIR then directed his course towards REHNAS, a fortified city on the eastern banks of the INDUS near SUVAT, a branch of that river. Thence advancing to ATOK, he attempted to pass the INDUS, into the dominions which had been lately yielded up to him. Here the want of a sufficient number of boats to form the bridge obliged him to halt: and this delay afforded time to the AFGHANS and the INDIANS, who inhabited the western side of the river, to take up arms. The vast booty which the PERSIANS had amassed, was a temptation not to be resisted; and they seemed resolved to try their fortune, if by uniting their forces they could seize some part of the plunder.

What their efforts would have produced, had they been carried into execution, it is not easy to determine. The PERSIAN king certainly thought himself in danger, and chose rather to negotiate for a free passage, than run a hazard where there was nothing to gain. The consideration of a vast treasure, had rendered the fierce and intrepid NADIR, cautious and circumspect. His mind, ever fertile in expedients, now



suggested to him to write to NACIR KHAN, the late governor of CABUL, whom he had left at PEISHOR, commanding him in the most express terms to use his interest to disperse the tribes, who were assembled in the mountains. The KHAN immediately sent for the chiefs of this confederacy, and persuaded them to decline their enterprize, for which, according to his instructions, he engaged to give them ten lacks of rupees <sup>p</sup>. However large this sum might appear upon another occasion, it was an object of very little consideration compared with the bulk of NADIR's treasure; he therefore remitted this sum without delay, and purchased a free passage <sup>q</sup>.

1739.

In the mean time the bridge was preparing for his passage over the INDUS, when messengers arrived from the court of the GREAT MOGHOL, requesting in behalf of that prince the redemption of two rich feather-jewels, belonging to the head-dress of the sultana. Upon this, orders were given for searching the royal treasury, but no such jewels could be found. It was reasonable to presume that they had been brought away from the INDIAN court, and of course they must be in the possession of some officer or soldier in the army. This suggested to NADIR sufficient reason to challenge all precious stones as his property; accordingly he ordered strict search to be made, and that all should be brought into the treasury under penalty of death. Numbers of the soldiers, whose passion for gain was not perhaps inferior to that of their general, enraged to see the fruits of so long and perilous a march ravished from them, threw them into the INDUS; and others concealed them in the earth: infomuch, that altho' great quantities were collected, this extraordinary resolution it is believed cost some millions of crowns value to PERSIA. The jewels, plundered both by the private men and officers, must have been very considerable: the presents and bribes which they received, amounted to a great sum, particularly on the unhappy occasion of the massacre of DEHLIE, when many of the INDIAN lords and persons of distinction saved their lives by the mere force of their great riches. A great part of this, especially jewels which

<sup>p</sup> 125,000 l.

<sup>q</sup> It is said that other inhabitants of the mountains afterwards made the same demand, which he refused to comply with.

1739. which could be easily concealed, was not till then brought into the royal treasury <sup>r</sup>. The quantity of precious stones, delivered up to NADIR upon this occasion, amounted to a great value; but neither of the jewels in question appeared till a considerable time after, when one of them was found among the sequestered effects of a general officer, who was put to death; the other never appeared.

It is amazing to consider the ascendancy which NADIR had acquired over his army, and that such a step as this did not produce a revolt <sup>s</sup>; but his address in sowing the seeds of jealousy and distrust among them was such, that they were afraid of each other; and this ever proved his best security. Numbers of them might now be more inclined to desert, than to give up their valuable plunder; yet the circumstances they were in, with regard to an enemy's country, was an insuperable obstacle to their taking such a step.

After passing the INDUS, he directed his march to PEISHOR, where he halted for some days: he left a PERSIAN general, with a considerable body of forces, but confirmed NACIR KHAN in the government of that province, and conferred several honours on him, in acknowledgment of his great services. From thence, continuing his rout towards CABUL, he detached ABDUL BAKI KHAN, with five thousand horse, to receive homage from KHUDAYAR KHAN, governor of PEKIER <sup>t</sup>. This KHAN had refused to pay homage to NADIR, now sovereign of that country; and collected a considerable body of forces to oppose the PERSIAN army. Finding that his late master the GREAT MOGHOL had not been able to support him, he resolved to try if he could obtain an independent sovereignty.

ABDUL

<sup>r</sup> See Vol. I. page 255. for the quantity of large stones on horse furniture. <sup>s</sup> I was told in PERSIA, that he took from the soldiers all their money also, except one hundred crowns; some accounts mention two hundred and fifty crowns; but I have some difficulty in believing either. As to jewels, they would be subject to discovery in the sale of them, which would not have been the case with money.

<sup>t</sup> This country is to the south of CABUL on the INDUS, bordering upon MULTAN: I do not find it laid down by DE LISLE. There are several forts and strong places in it, such as LOUHERI, SEKIER, and TEKIER. The people of this country are partly MAHOMMEDANS, and partly PAGANS.



ABDUL BAKI KHAN soon arrived on the frontiers of this country; but was in no situation to reduce KHUDAYAR KHAN by force. He therefore sent to acquaint this INDIAN lord of his arrival, and at the same time to advise him to make a ready submission. This offer being rejected with contempt, ABDUL BAKI informed the SHAH of the circumstances which he was in. NADIR being now near KANDAHAR, sent his treasures and heavy baggage under a numerous convoy into that strong fortress, and then directed his course south east through the country of HAZARIJAT. KHUDAYAR KHAN was no sooner informed of the march of the PERSIAN army, than he burnt a forest, laid waste the open country, and used his endeavours to poison the water. 1739.

This proceeding caused a new alarm in the MOGHOL's territories: NADIR was no sooner informed of the desperate measures which this INDIAN lord had taken to support himself, than he sent his commands to ZEKARIAH KHAN, the governor of LAHOR, and also to his son HAIAT ULLA KHAN, governor of MULTAN, to repair to his camp immediately, and to furnish his army with provisions. How great soever their reluctance, necessity obliged them to pay a ready obedience to the summons. ZEKARIAH KHAN was reputed an able politician: and this task now required the exercise of his abilities; since he had not only to provide the PERSIAN army with provisions, but also to obtain the submission of KHUDAYAR KHAN. The latter offered to make such presents as his circumstances permitted, with condition that the PERSIAN army would pursue their rout to KANDAHAR, without making any irruption into his territories; otherwise he persisted in his defiance.

This was a language to which the victorious king of PERSIA was not accustomed; he therefore ordered ZEKARIAH KHAN to bring to him those chiefs of the country who had submitted, as hostages for the good behaviour of their people; and at the same time to conduct his army by a rout, where they might be properly supported, in order to compel KHUDAYAR KHAN to surrender.



1739. As soon as NADIR arrived in the neighbourhood of KHUDAABAD<sup>u</sup>, the INDIAN chief retired with his riches to EMIR-KIOUT, a strong fort on the opposite side of the river HEST-NUD. ZEKARIAH KHAN renewed his entreaties in terms so persuasive, that at length assurance being sent that NADIR would pardon what was past, and accept a moderate present, KHUDAYAR KHAN consented to send his son, and to make his submission. This young lord was very kindly received, and entertained in a sumptuous manner, together with all his numerous attendance. In the mean while, NADIR ordered some parties of his troops to take possession of the boats in which the INDIANS came, and by favour of the night to repass the river. This was performed so well, that the INDIANS who guarded the fort of EMIR-KIOUT, taking them for the retinue of their KHAN's son, suffered the PERSIANS to enter, and take possession of it. The KHAN had time to make his escape, but at length thought proper to capitulate, and give up all his riches.

The news of this affair having reached the MOGHOL's court, a report prevailed, as if the insatiable avarice of NADIR was bringing him a second time into the INDIAN territories; these apprehensions alarmed the whole country, and occasioned a great consternation. Several of the princes<sup>w</sup> who commanded in the mountains, formed a confederacy to oppose his passage; and his not invading their dominions, was imputed to the great preparations made to oppose him.

It is very hard to believe, that a canine appetite for gold should so far efface all sentiments of honour and clemency in the mind of NADIR, as to induce him to commit so flagrant a violation of the treaty lately concluded with the MOGHOL, and to obliterate the remembrance of his being a king, by an act so unworthy. The power derived from force only, can be no security, when princes throw off even the mask of justice, and as it were declare war against the rational species. Whatever suspicion he might lie under on this occasion, he gave great proofs of esteem  
for

<sup>u</sup> We are left entirely to seek for this city; the country to the west of the INDIAN sea, seems to be very little known to the map-makers.

<sup>w</sup> RAJAS.



for ZEKARIAH KHAN, by making him several presents, and sending him to DEHLIE with a number of fine horses for MAHOMMED SHAH. The INDIANS were soon after delivered from their fears, by the joyful news that the PERSIAN army was past KANDAHAR. 1739.

We have already observed, that whilst NADIR was in KANDAHAR, his son, RIZA KOULI MYRZA, had made an incursion as far as BALKH, which submitted to him; but he was not able to subdue the OUSBEG TARTARS of KHIEVA and BOKHARA<sup>x</sup>, who, during the troubles in the PERSIAN empire, had made frequent inroads into KHORASAN, and carried many thousands of the inhabitants into slavery. These people are remarkable for their vivacity and love of liberty. As they are for the most part of the sect of the SUNNIS, they hate the PERSIANS; but the difference in religion has not occasioned such frequent contests, as their neighbourhood and strong propensity to rapine. KHORASAN had often suffered by their depredations, nor had they been intirely quiet during the absence of the PERSIAN army in INDIA. NADIR had some time before sent embassadors to the KHAN of KHIEVA, demanding the PERISANS, numbers of whom were detained in slavery in that country. But these TARTARS were intoxicated with their former success, and having enjoyed an uninterrupted security for many years, seemed to have lost all sense of danger. Contrary to the laws of nations, which even in this country are deemed sacred, with respect to the representatives of kings, they put the PERSIAN embassadors to death; only one, the least considerable in rank, was sent back to his master without his nose and ears. Such a proceeding could not but incense the impetuous NADIR, and draw on the fire of his resentment.

The occasion was now favourable for the reduction of these people. NADIR, having detached a large body of his troops from KANDAHAR to KALAT with his treasures, took the rout through the kingdom of BALKH. He passed the river AMO, and arrived in the neighbourhood of BOKHARA about the beginning of OCTOBER, with an army of near fifty thousand

<sup>x</sup> Some antiquaries are of opinion, that these people are the descendants of the tribe of ISRAEL, whom SALAMAZAR, king of ASSYRIA, sent into MEDIA.



1739. thousand men. The OUSBEG TARTARS who inhabit this city and its district, submitted to him immediately. He set at liberty the PERSIANS who had been detained in captivity, and enlisted about twelve thousand of the inhabitants who were fit to bear arms; these OUSBEGS being esteemed the best soldiers in TARTARY. In consequence of the ready submission of the KHAN of this country, NADIR invested him with the government of all the territories of BOKHARA to the north of the AMO, and also made very valuable presents to him and his dependents.

The KHAN of KHIEVA had taken the field with about twenty thousand men. He had hardly ever seen a more formidable army, and flattered himself with success: but as soon as he heard of the superior numbers of the PERSIANS, and that NADIR himself was at their head, he retired with precipitation towards his capital. The PERSIAN king being informed of the situation of the enemy, made such forced marches, that the OUSBEGS were obliged to stop at SHANKA<sup>y</sup>. Here the KHAN made a brave resistance, but was at length obliged to surrender. NADIR challenged him with the murder of his embassadors: he excused himself, alleging that it was done by the OUSBEGS without his knowledge. To this the PERSIAN king replied; “ If you have not abilities to govern the  
 “ few subjects who inhabit your territories, you do not deserve to live;  
 “ and for the affront shewn me in the murder of my embassadors, you  
 “ have no title to die like men; you shall die like dogs.” He then ordered the executioners to cut the throat of the KHAN and about thirty of his chief attendants; a punishment esteemed the most ignominious among the PERSIANS. Upon the news of the fate of this KHAN, all the towns and villages surrendered except the capital.

The inhabitants of KHIEVA shut their gates against the conqueror, resolving to oppose him to the last extremity. Several of them, who were apprehensive of the consequences of so rash an enterprize, attempted to leave the town, and were put to death as deserters. The number of their PERSIAN slaves was so great, that some were cruelly put to death in cold blood, merely out of fear of their rising, and the rest were imprisoned.

<sup>y</sup> A city about half a day's journey to the eastward of KHIEVA.



prisoned. The 8th of NOVEMBER NADIR SHAH incamped on the east side of KHIEVA: he sent several messages and demanded a parley, but the OUSBEGS absolutely refused to grant it. The PERSIAN army therefore invested the city, and planted eighteen cannon, and sixteen mortars<sup>z</sup>, at different places. They also raised machines of wood, from whence they could see over the walls: and after throwing up a breast-work, to guard themselves from the enemy's small shot, they attacked the town. These TARTARS were yet possessed of a few field-pieces, which they had taken from the unfortunate prince BECKAWITZ<sup>a</sup>. On the 14th the SHAH ordered the town to be battered in breach<sup>b</sup>. The engineers did their part so well, that the inhabitants soon became sensible of their rashness. Several breaches being now made, and the ditch almost filled, NADIR gave orders for storming: upon this the OUSBEGS surrendered at discretion. An inventory was taken of every thing in the city; and all the foreigners<sup>c</sup> were ordered to appear before the SHAH.

The 28th of NOVEMBER NADIR marched from KHIEVA, taking with him near twenty thousand PERSIANS who had been in captivity, with eight thousand OUSBEGS as recruits. He left a governor of his own appointing, attended

<sup>z</sup> Whether these had been carried into INDIA is not said; it may be rather presumed they were brought from thence, as they had the conveniency of elephants, which bear very great burthens. It has been often said that NADIR carried heavy cannon with him into INDIA, by breaking them into pieces, and casting them a-fresh when he had occasion for them; but this account favours too much of the marvellous. Besides these, the PERSIANS had many field-pieces, and very long swivel guns. The last were fixed on pack-saddles, and carried by camels: these carried cartridge-shot to a great distance, and made great havock; I have already mentioned them under the name of harquebuffes. See Vol. III. page 107.

<sup>a</sup> See account of this expedition, Vol. I. page 189.

<sup>b</sup> Mr. THOMSON and Mr. HOGG, mentioned in Vol. I. page 345, 346. were in the town during this siege, and weighed one of these balls; but I am inclined to think they were fired from mortars.

<sup>c</sup> Among these were the two ENGLISH travellers above-mentioned. NADIR SHAH enquired of them what their business was. Being informed they were merchants, he told them they were at liberty to trade through all his dominions; and if any wrong was done them, and they were not redressed by his officers, they should apply to him; they were then dismissed, and a passport was given them. These persons reported, that many, even of the meaner soldiers in the PERSIAN army, had cloaths of rich silk, and plenty of INDIAN money. The reader will observe that the journal of these travellers, as mentioned in Vol. I. page 345. is said to have been in 1740, but it ought to be 1739.



1739. attended only by a few PERSIANS, as if he was sure of the obedience of these TARTARS, or thought them not worth an army to keep them in awe.

---

C H A P. XXVII.

NADIR returns to PERSIA. RIZA KOULI MYRZA murders SHAH TÆHMAS, and makes an attempt against his father's life. Conduct of NADIR towards his son. He arrives in the neighbourhood of ISFAHAN.

NADIR having now conquered all his enemies on the eastern frontiers of his dominions, prepared to return into PERSIA. His chief concern was the security of his vast treasure; he therefore marched to KÆLAT, which is a few days journey to the southward of MESCHED. Here he established a sufficient guard of his best troops, and conferred the command on a brother of LUTF ALI KHAN.

It has been already remarked, that the first year of NADIR's absence had given his son RIZA KOULI MYRZA such a taste of power, that he exerted it in the most wanton manner on several occasions, to oppress the people, and to indulge his avarice<sup>d</sup>. We have also taken notice that his father, upon being informed of these arbitrary proceedings, thought proper to restrain his authority. The beginning of this year a report prevailed at ISFAHAN, that the PERSIAN army had been defeated in INDIA, and that NADIR SHAH was slain. His son RIZA KOULI MYRZA received this account with a seeming satisfaction. In a real or affected persuasion that it was true, he in some measure assumed the regal authority. He began, by causing the unfortunate SHAH TÆHMAS to be put to death, together with all his family, who were prisoners at SEBSAWAR. The circumstances of the tragical end of this prince, seem to prove that NADIR was not dissatisfied with this action, and would hardly have called

<sup>d</sup> Among other particulars it is related of him, that in a visit he received from the ARMENIAN patriarch, he demanded of this priest his cap and crozier, which were set with precious stones, alleging that he had occasion for them, for his father's government, and the use of his army.



called his son to any severe account for it, had not the motive been an impatient desire of wearing the diadem himself. 1739.

The person, employed in this regicide, was MAHOMMED HUSSEIN KHAN<sup>e</sup>. He had been remarkably active in seizing this unfortunate prince; and it is probable he was now fearful, that if NADIR had met with any misfortune, TÆHMAS would be restored again to the throne of his ancestors. The murder was said to have been committed after this manner: MAHOMMED HUSSEIN KHAN, under the pretence of friendship, represented to TÆHMAS that his life was threatened, and therefore advised him to retire either into TURKEY or RUSSIA, and that himself would facilitate his escape. As soon as this prince was in his possession, he reproached him with cowardice, told him he was unworthy to wear a crown, and at the same time gave a signal to his groom<sup>f</sup> to kill him.

Thus fell the last of the descendants of the famous ISMAEL SEFFIE, whose race had filled the throne of PERSIA for near two hundred and fifty years. It has been seen how remarkable this prince was for a series of misfortunes, during the last seventeen years. Providence seemed to have often interposed for his deliverance; and tho' neither his resolution nor abilities were extraordinary, yet in a less corrupt state he might have rendered his subjects happy, and by supporting his family, prevented that effusion of blood which has exhausted PERSIA of its inhabitants, if not totally subverted that antient monarchy.

NADIR, though returning in triumph, loaded with spoil, was now to suffer one of the bitterest calamities. As if Providence had ordained it as a punishment for his enormous offences, his eldest son RIZA KOULI MYRZA, for whom he had a paternal tenderness, formed a confederacy with a few other persons, to deprive his father of his life. For this purpose he employed a certain AFGHAN soldier to shoot the king, as he was returning from KÆLAT.

It

<sup>e</sup> This is the same person with whom I had such particular connections at ASTRABAD.

<sup>f</sup> The person who was put to death in the rebellion of ASTRABAD. See Vol. I. page 200.



1739.

It has been already explained; in what manner the PERSIAN kings travel upon common occasions, detached from their army. The SHAH was arrived in a narrow pass covered with wood, in the mountains which separate the provinces of KHORASAN and ASTRABAD<sup>s</sup>, having with him only his women and eunuchs: here it was the intrepid AFGHAN dug a pit to conceal himself, from whence he might take his aim with the greater exactness. He fired his piece, and the bullet passed under NADIR's right arm, and shot him in the left hand: the horse also being wounded in the neck, through pain or surprize fell. The AFGHAN was preparing to issue from the wood, and finish his business with his sabre; but the eunuchs, drawing their sabres to protect their master, rendered the accomplishment of his purpose impracticable. A considerable reward was immediately offered for apprehending the assassin, and a promise of pardon if he would discover himself. Many of the inhabitants of the mountains were brought before the SHAH: some of them had offered sums of money to the soldiers to excuse their appearance. This was urged as a proof of their guilt, but NADIR commanded that they should be released, with this reflection: "These people are innocent. The man  
 " who has made so daring an attempt on my life, must be a person<sup>h</sup> of  
 " distinguished bravery, whose courage is not inferior to my own."

It was not long a secret, that the contriver of this assassination was no less than his son RIZA KOULI MYRZA, whose manners we have already observed had so great a resemblance with those of his father. RIZA KOULI being brought before NADIR, he intreated him to think of his crime, to ask pardon, and promise obedience. "Consider," says he, "I am your  
 " general, your sovereign, your friend, your father. Consider the duty  
 " you

<sup>s</sup> This pass is supposed to be the same through which ALEXANDER pursued BESSUS the BACTRIAN traitor. <sup>h</sup> The discovery of this assassin was not made till above a year afterwards, when NADIR recollecting a certain man who had often distinguished himself in the field of battle, enquired after him; and being informed that this man had absented himself at such a time, it immediately occurred to him that he must certainly be the person who had shot at him. The SHAH therefore ordered that the man should be sought for, and brought before him. He was accordingly found in KANDAHAR, and conducted to the camp, where he confessed the fact. NADIR said to him, "You are a very brave fellow; but to prevent your taking such good aim, you must lose your eyes."



“ you owe me in these several relations. Reflect on the small acknow-  
 “ ledgments which I require of you. You are in my power, but I  
 “ would not have you perish. Live, be happy, and a king, whenever  
 “ providence shall take me from the earth.” He employed several of  
 his principal officers to persuade his son to repentance, but RIZA KOULI  
 was inflexible, and obstinately persisted that he had done no wrong in  
 attempting his father’s life. He told him to his face, “ You are a tyrant,  
 “ and ought to die. I know the most you can do is to kill me.” The  
 afflicted NADIR between rage and tenderness said, “ No : I will not take  
 “ your life, but I will make you an example to all the princes of the  
 “ earth ; I will cut out your eyes.” RIZA KOULI, with a fierceness pec-  
 culiar to himself, replied, “ Cut them out, and put them into . . . .”

Necessity thus obliged NADIR to deprive his darling son of his sight,  
 and himself of all hopes of making him his heir. The genius and in-  
 trepidity of this young man had filled NADIR with sanguine expecta-  
 tions of continuing the diadem in his family, which indeed could hard-  
 ly be expected by a successor of less resolution than himself. Some days  
 after this event, NADIR commanded that his son should be brought be-  
 fore him, and he enquired of him, yet with a mixture of paternal tender-  
 ness, concerning his health. The son, still repugnant to every sentiment  
 of filial affection, and not rendered less daring by his distress, replied,  
 “ You have not blinded me so much as you have blinded all PERSIA :  
 “ what the consequence must be, time will discover.” It is remarka-  
 ble, that NADIR never after permitted his son to have any women, nor  
 would he trust him in any place but under his own eye.

In FEBRUARY this year, the SHAH arrived with his army in the neigh-  
 bourhood of ISFAHAN. The satisfaction which the PERSIANS felt upon  
 his return, arose chiefly from the hopes that his immense riches, the  
 fruits of a three years campaign, would free them from the heavy bur-  
 then of supporting a numerous army : how ill grounded their expecta-  
 tions were, we shall soon have occasion to relate.

D d 2

P A R T

<sup>d</sup> It must be observed, that the indecent mention of a woman of honour and distinction, is no less disrespectful in PERSIA, than in the polite parts of EUROPE ; consequently, it is the highest indignity to mention in gross terms the favourite wife of a king.

## P A R T V.

FROM THE  
 RETURN OF NADIR SHAH TO  
 ISFAHAN FROM HIS INDIAN  
 EXPEDITION IN 1740,

TILL

HE WAS ASSASSINATED IN 1747.

## C H A P. XXVIII.

*Reflections on the vanity of military exploits. NADIR sends a pompous embassy to RUSSIA, and another to TURKEY. Circumstances of the TURKS. NADIR's demands on them. His war with the ARABIANS. His conduct towards the ARMENIAN patriarch. His project of introducing a new religion into PERSIA. He orders a translation of the evangelists. Comparison of his character, and that of AKBAR, formerly emperor of INDIA.*

1740. **T**HE affliction which NADIR must naturally have felt from the misfortune which happened to his darling son, gave place in some measure to the gratification of his vanity. It is reasonable to presume from the genius of this man, that more than half the joy of his triumphs would have been lost, but for the reflection of the figure he should make in the esteem of other princes.

Actions, truly heroic, like those of the deity, whose beneficence we should strive to imitate, derive no real excellence from applause, being



in themselves invariably good. The natural greatness and rectitude of the soul can never be expressed in actions destructive to mankind: and what for the most part are pompous triumphs, or the spoils of plundered provinces, but so many monuments of cruelty, ambition, or avarice? yet when our conduct will not bear the test of reason, our passions prompt us to seek a vain applause, and still we glory. 1740.

What reflections NADIR might now make upon himself, are not objects of our instruction so much, as those which we ought to make on him. As to his immense treasures, they served for little more than to enlarge his desire to support his tyrannical power, by the mere notion of his wealth; and to render PERSIA more emphatically miserable. But notwithstanding his extreme avarice, he sent a magnificent embassy with presents of great value to the RUSSIAN court, and another to the grand signior.

The ambassadors to the RUSSIAN empress were SAIDAR KHAN<sup>k</sup>, and HUSSEIN KHAN, with a retinue of two thousand persons, who convoyed ten elephants with several jewels and other rich presents. SAIDAR KHAN died at KISLAR, but HUSSEIN proceeded to ASTRACHAN, where he was required to stop, till proper orders were sent from court for his entertainment. Such embassies gratify the pride of those princes by whom they are sent, but create a vast expence<sup>l</sup> to those who are to receive them. It was not till the end of OCTOBER<sup>m</sup> the next year, that the ambassador made his public entry into ST. PETERSBURG, which was in several respects magnificent, tho' part of the PERSIAN retinue made but a mean appearance. The court was not wanting in shewing this PERSIAN minister

<sup>k</sup> This is the person mentioned in the Note, page 4, who died at KISLAR. He was an old man, and reputed very brave, and a lover of justice, but otherwise not tender of spilling blood. I was told the following circumstance concerning him; he was once observing that he wanted something to try his sabre; upon which a very old man in the company, acknowledging that he had lived long enough, offered his neck: SAIDAR took him at his word, and struck off his head. <sup>l</sup> It was said, that this ambassador made a demand of no less than 200 sheep, 2000 pounds of rice, and other provisions in proportion for his daily support.

<sup>m</sup> The policy of princes in that part of the world, especially when things are in a precarious state, is often the cause of these delays: some time had been spent in the adjustment of the ceremonials, and in making provision for so numerous a retinue; for not less than twelve or fifteen hundred persons attended this ambassador to ST. PETERSBURG.



1740. After all the honour due to his rank. His business was to acquaint the sovereign of RUSSIA, of the great feats of his master in the conquest of INDIA, and of the immense spoil which he had brought from thence; a specimen of which he presented to the RUSSIAN empress, in the elephants<sup>n</sup>, jewels, and other valuables with which he was charged; that his master had also restored the INDIAN monarch to his dominions, and now offered his friendship to the sovereign of RUSSIA, with whom he was willing to enter into a defensive and offensive alliance<sup>o</sup>.

We have already mentioned, that during his absence in the late expedition, he sent ambassadors to the grand signior, demanding a passport to travel through the OTTOMAN empire to MECCA. The TURKISH ministry considered this request as capricious, since it could never be presumed that such consent would be granted; and if he meant to take the liberty of making that pilgrimage with an army; it would rather be with a view to plunder the place of its immense riches, than to offer up his prayers of thanksgiving for his successes in INDIA. The TURKS were indeed afraid that he meant to feed his insatiable avarice with this precious morsel. What added to their terror, was the consideration of the extraordinary interposition of providence in the peace which he had made with them, in consequence whereof he had employed his forces in so distant a country, and was coming home loaded with the spoils of INDIA. It could hardly be expected that his military genius would suffer him to be long idle: and looking on themselves almost as the only power against whom he could turn his arms, they concluded a peace with the RUSSIANS and IMPERIALISTS, and made great preparations for marching an army into ASIA.

Some time after NADIR sent an envoy to acquaint the PORT, that notwithstanding they refused him a passage to MECCA, it was his intention to

<sup>n</sup> There are several of these yet remaining in ST. PETERSBURG, which, tho' entirely useless, are supported for curiosity, and the honour of the sovereign. The ordinary food of these animals was rice, meal, and such like; but the RUSSIANS have very judiciously taught them to eat hay.

<sup>o</sup> It was said this ambassador demanded ship-carpenters, which the RUSSIANS refused, objecting that they had none except foreigners, who were engaged to serve them for a certain time, but that they had no power to send them out of their country. The prosecution of the design which NADIR had formed of building ships on the CASPIAN sea, was the cause of the early ruin of our CASPIAN trade.



to live in friendship with the grand signior. The new embassador, whom he charged with his compliments to the OTTOMAN emperor, carried several rich jewels, nine elephants, and a great number of camels, as a present: and according to the dignity he assumed, and the splendor of eastern monarchs, his retinue was composed of near two thousand persons. As their motions were slow, they did not arrive till the beginning of the next year. The grand vizir received this embassador with the utmost demonstration of esteem; however, when the purport of his commission was demanded, he seemed to be offended, declaring that he would communicate it only to the grand signior in person. The TURKS soon found that NADIR was no less arrogant in his proposals of the terms of friendship, than ostentatious of his riches, as appeared by the prodigality of his presents; under these circumstances they were induced to watch the embassador as a secret enemy.

NADIR again renewed his claim to all the provinces and cities which in antient times belonged to the crown of PERSIA; and insisted that the TURKS ought to pay the expence of the late war, or yield some provinces as an equivalent. These demands appeared to the TURKS imperious and exorbitant, and they concluded that the SHAH of PERSIA meant only to find a pretext to break with them. As the late wars had exhausted their treasuries, and the army was in arrears, orders were sent to the BASHAS in all their respective governments, to collect the taxes, and remit them immediately to court.

In the mean while NADIR employed himself in reducing the ARABIAN rebels<sup>p</sup>, who had revolted during his absence: the OUSBEGS of KHIEVA had also taken up arms, and destroyed the PERSIAN KHAN who had been appointed their governor, together with all the native subjects of PERSIA, whom NADIR had left in that city. The ARAL TARTARS made inroads, and involved that country in great distraction, so that all communication was cut off, and preparations were made to attack them afresh. For this purpose NADIR marched with a numerous body of forces to TÆHIRAN, in order to defend the province of KHO-

RASAN,

1740. RASAN, in case it should be invaded, or to send detachments against the OUSBEGS<sup>q</sup>.

We have already seen in what manner he acted as to the affair of religion. The beginning of this year, a dispute happened between the ARMENIAN patriarch, and some ROMISH missionaries. The matter being necessarily referred to NADIR, he fined the patriarch twenty-four thousand crowns, alledging that priests had no occasion for riches; that they only served to perplex the mind, and take it off from pursuits of a religious nature; but as to himself, the support of his army rendered money very necessary.

It will not appear a subject of surprize, that a prince who had the courage to appropriate to himself by an arbitrary act all the revenues of the clergy of the national religion, should tax the chief of his subjects of a different persuasion. We find him indeed often aiming to confound the distinctions of the religions already professed by his people, as if he meant to introduce one of his own contriving. About this time he ordered a sumptuous mausoleum to be built at MESCHED, in which he proposed to have his body laid: towards this no cost was spared; the jasper tomb in which TAMERLANE was laid at BALKH<sup>r</sup> was brought from thence at a great charge; however, as it did not suit the place, he returned it to its antient mansion. It is remarkable that this mausoleum was erected intirely by christians; at the same time as he caused an ARMENIAN church to be built by his MAHOMMEDAN subjects.

To attempt any desperate invasion of the liberties of mankind, no method seems to be more effectual than that of depreciating or subverting the established religion of a country<sup>s</sup>. The subject of religion will ever be of the highest moment to mankind; since it is only another word to express the belief of the being of a GOD, and the immortality of the soul; but at the same time that it has taken root in the hearts,  
and

<sup>q</sup> It may be presumed that he sent fresh forces against these TARTARS, for he had a free communication with them in 1744, and was supplied with recruits from KHIEVA and BOKHARA.

<sup>r</sup> It is thought by some that the remains of this TARTAR hero were deposited at SAMARCAND, which might be the case originally, and upon the decay of that place the tomb be brought to BALKH.

<sup>s</sup> With some exceptions however. The people of GREAT BRITAIN owe their liberty, in a great measure, to the reformation.



and influences the conduct of one part of mankind, it has served as a political engine, or the instrument of temporal advantages to those who are vulgarly said to have no religion. PERSIA was once chosen as a more peculiar scene, where the Almighty manifested his power in a very singular manner; but many ages have past since the substance of religion seems to have been changed for the shadow. We find, however, a remarkable aptitude in the PERSIANS to the belief of things relating to a future state. 1740.

NADIR took frequent occasion to mention the feats of ALI in terms of contempt; arraigning his conduct, as a soldier, for leading his army into the deserts of ARABIA, where numbers perished for want of water. "And why," says he, addressing himself to the people, "instead of praying to ALI do you not call on GOD." In his religious schemes he appeared to have a complicated motive: he sought to amuse his people, and at the same time to increase his fame, by establishing a new faith, after the manner of his predecessors. As he had destroyed the SEFFIE family, which had been established on the throne of PERSIA on a principle of piety and faith; so he seemed desirous to be the original of a new race of kings, on the basis of new tenets in religion. This motive was so peculiarly adapted to the genius of the PERSIANS, that we may naturally conclude he expected to derive from hence a security to himself and his family.

Towards the close of this year, he caused a translation of the four evangelists to be made into PERSIC. It seemed, however, from the manner in which he conducted this business, to be more the effect of caprice, than of any steady and consistent plan. The affair was put under the direction of MYRZA MEHTIE, a man of some learning, who being vested with a proper authority for the purpose, summoned several ARMENIAN bishops and priests, together with divers missionaries of the ROMISH church, and PERSIAN MULLAHS, to meet him at ISFAHAN. As to the latter,

\* ALLAH is the name they give the deity. It is remarkable, that the TARTARS when they believe themselves to be dying, repeat this word, "ALLAH, ALLAH," continually, as their only invocation, till they waste their spirits, and expire.



1740. latter, they could not be gainers; since the change, if any took place, was to be in prejudice of MAHOMMEDANISM. Besides, NADIR's conduct towards them had been severe to an extreme, and unprecedented; many of them therefore gave MYRZA MEHTIE large bribes to excuse their appearance.

Among the christians summoned on this occasion, only one ROMISH priest, born in PERSIA, was a sufficient master of the language, to enter upon a work of so critical a nature. As to the ARMENIANS, tho' they are born subjects to PERSIA, and intermixed with the inhabitants, yet there are very few of them who understand the language fundamentally. It was natural to expect, that MYRZA MEHTIE and the PERSIAN MULLAHS, would be more solicitous how to please NADIR, and support the credit of MAHOMMEDANISM, than to divest themselves of prejudices, and become masters of so important a subject. This translation was dressed up with all the glosses which the fables and perplexities of the khoran could warrant; their chief guide was an antient ARABIC and PERSIAN translation. Father DES VIGNES, a FRENCH missionary, was also employed in this work, in which he made use of the vulgate edition. They were but six months in compleating this translation, and transcribing several fair copies of it.

1741. In MAY following, MYRZA MEHTIE, with the PERSIAN MULLAHS, and some of the christian priests, set out from ISFAHAN for the PERSIAN COURT, which was then held in the incampment near TÆHIRAN. NADIR received them with some marks of civility, and had a cursory view of the performance. Some part of it was read to him; on which occasion he made several ludicrous remarks on the mysterious part of the christian religion; at the same time he laughed at the JEWS, and turned MAHOMMED and ALI equally into ridicule. Under such circumstances, it was impossible this performance should produce any good effect. He observed that the evangelists did not agree in their accounts, more than the MAHOMMEDAN and christian priests; therefore he must remain under the same difficulty that he was in before: that out of both, if it pleased GOD to give him health, he would engage to make a religion much better than any which

had



had been yet practised by mankind ; with several other vague reflexions of the like nature. He then dismissed these church-men and translators with some small presents, not equal in value to the expence of their journey.

It seems as if NADIR had his religion to seek ; but this project, under the present state of affairs, and considering the passion he had for military achievements, was very ridiculous, and by no means agreeable to that seriousness with which ORIENTAL princes are generally inclined to treat this important subject. What exalted notions ought not the contemplation of the christian religion to inspire in us, when we observe the cruelty and extravagant principles of government, which generally prevail at the courts of MAHOMMEDAN princes ! In how shining a light do those appear, whose hearts are warmed with a generous desire of acting up to the dignity peculiar to the christian religion ! Nor ought it to be objected, that avarice and ambition have often involved the christian world in distress ; when we have such irresistible proof of those proceedings being diametrically opposite to the principles of christianity.

To set the different characters of two eastern princes in contrast with each other, we shall in the note here subjoined give a letter, wrote by JILAL O'DIN<sup>t</sup> MAHOMMED AKBAR, emperor of HINDOSTAN, to the king of PORTUGAL in 1582. This letter<sup>u</sup> seems to exhibit a remarkable proof, how the same freedom

<sup>t</sup> The aggrandizer of religion ; a title which he prefixed to his name when he mounted the throne.  
<sup>u</sup> " GLORY eternal to the true king, whose dominions are safe from decay, and whose kingdom is everlasting. The extent of the heavens, and the boundaries of the earth, are but minute parts of his creation ; and infinite space but a small point of his productions \*. He has regulated the order of the universe, and the government of the sons of ADAM, by the understanding of kings, who exercise justice. By his decrees, the ties of love, and bonds of affection, are fastened ; and he has implanted in the various beings and creatures of his workmanship, the passion of inclination and union, with a mutual tendency to society : and praises without end are due to the souls of prophets and apostles, who walked in the paths of righteousness, and directed the way to obtain everlasting felicity.

" Those who have improved their understandings, and studied the laws of nature, know, that this terrestrial world, is but a mirror of the spiritual one ; and that nothing is more desirable than love, or more sacred than friendship, inasmuch as the œconomy and good order of the world is owing to affection, and the harmony of minds. For wherever the sun of love shineth on the heart,

E. c. 2

\* The MAHOMMEDANS, according to the stile of the eastern languages, of which our scriptures are in most parts a remarkable specimen, begin their letters, and most of their other writings, with the praises of God.



1741. freedom of sentiment may operate either on the virtuous or on the vicious side. The emperor AKBAR, tho' not so great a warrior, had as liberal a mind,

“ heart, it clears the soul from the darkness of mortality. How ought these qualities to be diligently  
 “ fought by princes, whose friendly correspondence is the cause of happiness to the world, and to  
 “ the inhabitants thereof! For this reason it has been my constant and earnest endeavour, to strengthen  
 “ the ties of friendship, and the bonds of union, among the creatures of the Almighty; especially  
 “ among kings, whom GOD by his favour has so highly exalted, and so peculiarly distinguished from  
 “ the rest of mankind.

“ Your royal majesty, who is endowed with intellectual knowledge, and supports the ordinances  
 “ of JESUS, stands in no need of praise or description. Our neighbourhood \* with your renowned  
 “ majesty, renders our friendship and alliance indispensably necessary; but as a personal conference is  
 “ not practicable, the want thereof must be supplied by embassies, and mutual correspondencies, that  
 “ our affairs, and the desires of our hearts, may be manifested to each other.

“ Your majesty knows, that philosophers and divines, in all nations, and in all ages, concerning  
 “ the visible and intellectual world, agree, that the former ought not to be of any consideration,  
 “ compared with the latter: yet even the wise men of these times, and the great ones of all nations,  
 “ labour and toil to acquire the perishing things of this visionary state; and consume the greatest  
 “ part of their lives, and their choicest hours, in procuring material delights, being swallowed up,  
 “ and dissolved in fleeting pleasures, and transitory joys. Notwithstanding these obstructions, and  
 “ the extensive business of my government, the most high GOD, through his eternal favour and per-  
 “ petual grace, has inclined my heart always to seek him. And as he has subjected the dominions  
 “ of many powerful princes to me, I endeavour to govern them with understanding. All my sub-  
 “ jects are happy; for his will, and my duty to him, is the end of all my desires and actions.

“ Mankind are for the most part chained with the bonds of fashion and constraint, regarding the  
 “ customs of their forefathers, or their contemporaries and relations; and without examining the ar-  
 “ guments or reasons for it, give an implicit assent to that religion in which they have been brought  
 “ up: thus depriving themselves of the means of discovering the truth, which is the business and  
 “ end of reason. For my own part, I sometimes converse with the learned of all religions †, and  
 “ profit by their respective discourses. But as the veil of language interposes, it is expedient that  
 “ you send unto me such a person as can distinctly relate and explain his faith. It has already reached  
 “ my fortunate ears, that the heavenly books ‡, the Pentateuch, the Psalms, and Gospels, are tran-  
 “ slated into ARABIC and PERSIC. Should a translation of these, or any other books of general  
 “ use and advantage, be procurable in your country, let them be sent to me.

“ For a further confirmation of our friendship, and to secure the foundation of affection and unity,  
 “ I have sent my trusty friend, the learned and honourable SEYD MAZUFFER, whom I have parti-  
 “ cularly favoured and distinguished: he will personally communicate to you several matters, in which  
 “ you may confide. Always keep open the doors of embassy and correspondence; and peace be to  
 “ him who follows the guide. Written in the month RIBBI AVAL 990 ||.”

\* Alludes to the possessions which the PORTUGUESE had at that time in INDIA. † He was fond of the  
 BRACHMINS or INDIAN priests, for which AEDALLAH KHAN, chief of the TARTARS at that time, complained  
 much in his letters to him.

‡ Among these are reckoned the scriptures of the christians by some MAHOM-  
 MEDANS, who object only that we have corrupted the gospel; whilst others pretend, that when the khoran was  
 brought on the earth, the gospel was taken into heaven. || APRIL 1582.



mind, as NADIR SHAH. If we may believe this letter was dictated by the heart, how different were the objects that engaged their attention! The one consulted the arts of peace to render his subjects happy; the other delighted only in war; and we see what calamities attended it. 1741.

## C H A P. XXIX.

*Revolt of the MUNTISIKS from the TURKISH government. Short description of them and their country. The city of BASSORA under alarm from the ARABS. Conduct of ACHMED BASHA. BASSORA threatened with a siege by the PERSIANS. NADIR marches against the LESGEES; and meets with several repulses in DAGISTAN. The RUSSIANS alarmed at his approach. The LESGEES desire the protection of RUSSIA. The PERSIANS make war with the ARABIANS, and are repulsed. Distress of PERSIA. Dangerous situation of the TURKS. They reduce the ARABIAN rebels. Great preparations in PERSIA for a war.*

**I**N the beginning of this year, the MUNTISIKS, with some other tribes of ARABIANS, who had lately been under ACHMED BASHA, threw off the TURKISH yoke. These people generally encamp during the summer season in the district of BASSORA. The EUPHRATES, which waters this country, renders it very agreeable, at the same time that grain, vegetables, and pasturage, are in great abundance. It is remarkable that this, as well as the other tribes of the ARABIANS, appear to be a very different people in the field, from what they are in great cities. When they are associated with the neighbouring nations, they are gentle and polite; but when they take the field, the fresh air inspires them with different sentiments, and their expertness in the use of the lance and sabre, renders them fierce and intrepid. Their skill in horsemanship, and their capacity of bearing the heat of their burning plains, gives them also a superiority over their enemies; hence every petty chief in his own district considers himself as a sovereign prince, and as such exacts customs from all passengers.

Their

1741. Their conduct in this respect has often occasioned their being considered in no better light than robbers, though many of them are hospitable and generous, as well as brave and sober. Towards those who ask their protection they are remarkably disinterested: numbers of them are distinguished for their vivacity and penetration; they have also a reputation for poetry and astrology. They generally marry within their own tribe: their women are very chaste; indeed they make it death to be otherwise; and there are several instances of fathers killing their own daughters for incontinence; yet for robbery or murder in the field they seldom punish. The different tribes are often at war with each other, and the pillage acquired by this means is looked upon as an honourable possession. When they plunder caravans travelling through their territories, they consider it as reprisals on the TURKS and PERSIANS, who often make inroads into their country, and carry away their corn and their flocks. In this part of ARABIA, anciently called CALDÆA<sup>v</sup>, is seldom seen either cloud or mist.

The jurisdiction of ACHMED BASHA had extended as far as the PERSIAN gulph, and included BASSORA. The OTTOMAN court being now jealous of ACHMED, this government was abridged, and confined to that of BAGDAT; the revenues of the BASHA were consequently decreased one thousand purses<sup>x</sup>, which rendered him indifferent in regard to the preservation of BASSORA. This city had been for some time under alarms, the MUNTISIKS threatening to pillage it; which indeed was practicable, had they made the attempt, the inhabitants being unprovided for a siege. The commander exerted himself to put the place in a posture of defence, and at the same time wrote to ACHMED BASHA to come or send troops to his assistance. The BASHA was then upon an expedition against the KOURDS BILBAZ. As soon as he heard of the revolt of these ARABIANS, he returned to BAGDAT, and after collecting a body of forty thousand men, he marched to the relief of BASSORA.

To all human appearance ACHMED might have destroyed these ARABIANS; but after some light skirmishes he returned to BAGDAT. He had artfully

<sup>v</sup> This is the country bordering on the government of BAGDAD northward from BASSORA,

<sup>x</sup> Garrouches or purses, each of 500 dollars, at 4s. are equal to 10,000 l.



artfully sown divisions among the chiefs <sup>y</sup> of the ARABS, particularly the MUNTISIKS and BENILAMES; by this means he became their arbitrator, and turned the scale, insomuch that he appointed and deposed their chiefs, as he found it most for his interest: this was the reason for his declining to fight them. Besides, he thought it necessary to return immediately to his government; for he foresaw, that NADIR SHAN would attack the TURKS; and if he engaged himself at the head of an army out of his jurisdiction, the port might probably insist on his taking the command against the PERSIANS, to which he was not the least inclined. He knew that by such means he should put himself in the power of the grand signior, whose good-will he had some reason to suspect; or at least that he should engage with an enemy, against whom he apprehended he should make the best defence within his walls.

In the mean while the ARABAIN HOULES continued to act vigorously against the PERSIANS, who could not support the war against them for want of ships. These people made several descents on the PERSIAN coast, and carried off great numbers into slavery. The end of this year, NADIR sent an officer to require the delivery of his subjects in BAS-SORA, which was threatened with a siege by the PERSIANS; whilst the coldness of ACHMED BASHA towards the TURKISH interest, rendered him suspected of holding a correspondence with the PERSIAN king, and gave great occasion of alarm at CONSTANTINOPLE.

There is a proverbial saying among the PERSIANS, "If any PERSIAN king is a fool, let him march against the LESGEES;" by which is plainly understood, that however potent an army may be, the situation of the mountains of DAGISTAN is such, and the people are so brave, that the success of an expedition against them must be very precarious. NADIR, whom no PERSIAN king exceeded in vanity or ambition, determined to try his fortune against them. They had given him great offence upon several occasions, particularly by that incursion during his absence in INDIA, in which his brother IBRAAIM KHAN was slain; nor was SHIRVAN ever free from their inroads; so that great part of that province

<sup>y</sup> These they call CHEIXE.



1741. province was rendered desolate. The end of this year NADIR marched at the head of thirty five thousand men into SHIRVAN, and from thence directed his course into the mountains of the LESGEES. In order to facilitate his progress, he caused vast quantities of wood to be hewn down on both sides the road, designing to frustrate any attempt which these TARTARS might make to lie in ambush. In this he seemed also to have a further view. The attack which his son had lately made on his life in the streights of ASTRABAD, rendered him the more circumspect; nor was he ignorant that the LESGEES are as crafty as they are brave<sup>z</sup>.

1742. About the beginning of this year he entered DAGISTAN. Here he found a very different people from the INDIANS, whom he had so lately conquered. Instead of marching through open and fertile plains, inhabited by a rich and effeminate people, he was to climb up mountains, in many places inaccessible, and which in general served as a natural bulwark to those vallies, where only he could expect to find provisions. These were defended by a stout hardy people, whose love of liberty had through ages rendered them invincible: and if he could penetrate through the defiles into these vallies, his enemies might still take shelter in their mountains, and render all his attempts abortive.

The terror of his arms had however induced some of them in the southern parts to send hostages, and make their submission. Of these he removed a considerable number into KHORASAN, as well to people that province, as to prevent their future irruptions into the PERSIAN dominions. This step served only to irritate the other LESGEES. NADIR having left one of his generals with a body of eight thousand men at a pass, which commands an entrance into the mountains, he marched forward in pursuit of the CARACAITA<sup>a</sup> LESGEES: these having retired, and drawn him deep into their country, alarmed the inhabitants of the hills. After uniting some considerable bodies of their forces, they came down during the night, and put his whole army into the utmost confusion. They even attacked the royal tent, took away some of NADIR's treasure, and several of his women.

In

<sup>z</sup> See Vol. I. page 372 to 375.

<sup>a</sup> This word signifies black villagers. These are esteemed some of the bravest people among the LESGEES.



In the mean while, the PERSIAN general, who was left with eight thousand men to secure the communication with SHIRVAN, was also attacked with great fury. The LESGEES surprized this body of troops<sup>b</sup>, and having the advantage of a wood and rising ground, they made great havock among the PERSIANS, before the latter were able to repulse them. 1742.

After many fruitless attempts, NADIR found his army in great distress for provisions. SHIRVAN had been impoverished to an extreme degree, so as not to be able to supply him, nor was the communication open for caravans; he therefore directed his course to DERBEND, the inhabitants of which soon felt the fatal effects of his neighbourhood. Here he began to be extremely sensible of the great use of ships, by means of which he might receive a supply of provisions from the southern coast of the CASPIAN SEA. This circumstance calls to mind a memorable transaction of this year<sup>c</sup>, with relation to the conduct of JOHN ELTON, the ENGLISH factor, whose injudicious engagement gave so great offence to the RUSSIAN court, and so fatal a wound to our CASPIAN commerce: but there has been already too much said on this subject, to need any further observation.

This mighty conqueror was now brought so low, that the remains of his shattered forces, reduced to twenty thousand men, must have deserted or totally perished, had they not been supplied by the RUSSIANS. Every part of the world furnishes us with instances, of the love of gain carrying private men beyond the bounds prescribed by laws. I never could conceive, that NADIR entertained the least thought of invading the RUSSIAN dominions, but it was sufficient matter of alarm that he attempted to subdue the LESGEES; therefore orders were sent from court, that no provisions should be conveyed as merchandize to the PERSIAN army. However, the traders of ASTRACHAN had assurance of so vast a profit, that they could not resist the temptation, as I have already explained<sup>d</sup>: but DERBEND notwithstanding

<sup>b</sup> A FRENCH missionary who was present in the PERSIAN camp upon this occasion, informed me of several particulars of the great bravery of the PERSIANS.

at NADIR's camp. See Vol I. page 153.

<sup>c</sup> We find ELTON was

<sup>d</sup> Vol. I. page 127.

1742. withstanding suffered such distress, that a great part of the inhabitants perished by famine.

The long continuance of the PERSIAN army on the RUSSIAN frontiers, created a suspicion at the court of ST. PETERSBURG, that NADIR would make pretensions to KISLAR, as being built on the PERSIAN territories. This is certain, that he took great offence at the conduct of a RUSSIAN officer towards some of his troops, who approached too near to that fort; but for this, satisfaction was made him by the court. Though the temptation of gain had thus engaged the RUSSIAN merchants to supply the PERSIANS, yet the court of ST. PETERSBURG was so far alarmed at their approach, that great magazines were ordered to be formed in AS-TRACHAN. This city was also put in a state of defence, and a body of troops, to the number of twenty thousand, under the command of general TARAKANOFF, were ordered to file off towards KISLAR.

The LESGEES had intimated their desire of putting themselves under the protection of RUSSIA, from the time of NADIR's first invading their country; and it certainly was the interest of that empire to support the independency of those brave mountaineers, who form so safe a barrier against the PERSIANS. The arrival of the RUSSIAN troops contributed to defeat NADIR's designs, so that he found himself obliged to abandon an enterprize to which his skill and fortune were not equal.

As soon as the RUSSIAN general arrived in the neighbourhood of DAGISTAN, the LESGEES made application to him; and from an apprehension of the danger they might be exposed to, in case NADIR was determined to prosecute his design of reducing them, they wrote to this commander as follows:

*“ Most honoured and most accomplished general and commander in chief,*

*“ Our most humble petition consists in this: all the inhabitants of  
“ DAGISTAN having been informed that you are arrived near the fron-  
“ tiers of KISLAR with an imperial army, and that your intention is to  
“ defend and protect the subjects of her imperial majesty in ANDREWSKA,  
“ KOSLKOFF, and BAXAN, as also all the chiefs and rulers of the states  
“ bordering*



“ bordering on the dominions of her imperial majesty : after longing  
 “ expectations of your arrival, we have sent our deputies in the name  
 “ of the whole nation to desire your intercession, that her imperial ma-  
 “ jesty may receive us under her puissant protection, and permit us to  
 “ be her slaves. We are determined to hold the golden border of her  
 “ imperial robes, and in spite of all the evils that may threaten us, we  
 “ will not be dragged from them, nor seek any other protection, nor  
 “ acknowledge any other sovereign than God and her imperial majesty.

“ We hereby make a solemn oath of allegiance to her imperial ma-  
 “ jesty, whom we most humbly implore to protect us against our ene-  
 “ mies, and in her exalted clemency to give a favourable answer to our  
 “ petition. And that her puissant majesty may know in what num-  
 “ bers our troops consist, we send you a list as follows :

“ ACHMED KHAN the OUSMAI has	-	-	12,000 men
“ The tribe <sup>e</sup> of APARZ	-	-	13,000
“ ACHMED KHAN lord <sup>f</sup> of SCHUNKETIN	-	-	2,700
“ In the districts of KANSCHUKUL	-	-	8,000
“ In ABY	-	-	5,000
“ In ABUGAL and KALACKSKY	-	-	7,000
“ In CARACK <sup>g</sup>	-	-	7,500
“ In the districts of KUSTI 500. In KLY 2,500	-	-	3,000
“ In GEDAT 4000. In KINJODE 1000; and in KU-			} 6,000
“ RADA 1000	-	-	
			“ 66,200 <sup>h</sup> ”

These people, known to the world, but particularly to the PERSIANS, for their bravery and steady love of liberty, now defended themselves against the conqueror of INDIA, the most powerful of all the monarchs of the east. NADIR saw, though too late, that he had committed a very false  
 F f 2 step;

• HORDA.                    <sup>f</sup> BEG.                    <sup>g</sup> These I presume are the CARACAITA, who distressed NADIR's army so much.                    <sup>h</sup> This number seems greatly to exceed what these people have been generally thought able to bring into the field, tho' the several divisions of them may have easily created mistakes as to their strength.



1742. step; nor could he retire, without weakening his interest in PERSIA, and his reputation in general. He was sensible moreover that these very LESGEEES would be encouraged by his retreat, to insult all the frontier country, and treat the PERSIANS in those parts as a conquered people; unless he employed a more numerous body of forces to guard SHIRVAN, than consisted with his other designs. However, of the two evils, it seemed the greatest to waste his time and destroy his troops, when he might employ them usefully in other important projects.

From this time we find NADIR secretly disgusted with the RUSSIAN court; however, after his return into PERSIA he sent for the minister of her imperial majesty who attended the army, and told him, “ that he was surprised it ever should be imagined he intended to invade the RUSSIAN dominions: that it was true he had not been treated with respect, RUSSIA having failed to send a solemn embassy to congratulate him on his exaltation to the throne of PERSIA; but as he understood there had been great changes at ST. PETERSBURG, he excused that formality:” at the same time he desired the minister to dispatch a courier to his court to inform the empress, “ that he was intirely disposed to support the peace and good understanding which subsisted between the two empires.”

During the course of this unfortunate expedition in the north, affairs in the south seemed to preface as little felicity to PERSIA. TAGHI KHAN who commanded in SHIRASS, was sent by the king into the country of NIMROUZ<sup>i</sup>, in quality of general and admiral, with orders to build ships at BENDER EBOU CHEHRE. This KHAN was no sooner arrived upon the coast; than he demanded of the FRENCH, the DUTCH, and other EUROPEAN nations, ships and ship-builders: and at length, either by money or forcible measures, he obtained a fleet of ships. One great instance of NADIR's cruelty exercised towards the people at this time, was that of obliging them to cut timber in MAZANDERAN<sup>k</sup>, and transport it to BENDER ABASSI. In a strait line, this is six hundred and sixty miles, and if

<sup>i</sup> I find most of the maps which have fallen under my inspection, are very deficient with regard to these places. The ARABS inhabit the north coast of the PERSIAN gulf, and part of the banks of the TIGRIS and EUPHRATES, besides their proper country of ARABIA. \* See Vol. I. page 222.



we consider the circuit they must take to render the road practicable, we must calculate at least one third more : so that it was very plain from this proceeding, that he did not so much consider how things were to be done, as that his commands should be executed at all events. Great quantity of timber was cut on this occasion ; but it was transported no farther than the district of VERAMEH, where it probably remains to this day. 1742.

The ARABIAN IMAM or chief of MESCAT being deposed, fled with his family and treasures on board his ships then in the port, and sailed to KHURFEKIAN<sup>1</sup>, where he landed. From thence he proceeded to JULFAR, where was TAGHI KHAN with the PERSIAN forces. His intention was to put himself under the protection of the PERSIANS, on condition they would assist him to recover his dominions from his rebellious subjects. This design being discovered, several of his followers abandoned him, and carried the vessels again to MESCAT. This incident was attended with the junction of the HOULES and MESCATS. The new chief of the latter being informed that TAGHI KHAN, at the instigation of the deposed IMAM, intended to direct all his force against that city, retired with his troops to MATRA, a place a league distant. MESCAT being thus abandoned, the PERSIANS entered it without any precaution : and the ARABIANS taking advantage of the false security of their enemies, surprized and put them to the sword. The MESCATS were also victorious at sea.

While NADIR was thus engaged in war by land and sea, and at the same time forming a great army with design to act against the TURKS, PERSIA groaned under the burthen of insupportable taxes. The treasures of INDIA served only to increase the misery of the people, by affording them a frequent and melancholy subject of reflection on the avarice of their king. Notwithstanding the vast projects which NADIR had formed, and the numerous forces he was preparing, in order to carry his designs into execution, he had not yet touched his INDIAN treasures, since they were deposited at KÆLAT. What could be the effect of such a conduct? Exorbitant taxes, exacted with all the aggravating circumstances which inhumanity can suggest, drove thousands to despair. Whole villages and towns retired into the mountains,

2

<sup>1</sup>This place is on the southern coast of the PERSIAN gulf.



1742. mountains, to avoid the barbarous treatment shewn them by the SHAH's collectors. Crowds of the people fled into the northern parts of INDIA, where their king had so lately triumphed; and great numbers put themselves under the protection of the TURKS. On the southern coast some fled into ARABIA; and not a few took every opportunity of transporting themselves by sea into the MOGHOL's empire. In the heart of PERSIA things took the same course. The ARMENIANS and others, who were equally distressed by exactions, left their habitations under the pretence of commerce or religious pilgrimages; insomuch that the RAHDARS<sup>1</sup> were ordered to examine passports. The freedom of egress, which used to prevail, was much interrupted, on this occasion, orders being given to the DAROUGAS<sup>m</sup>, and also to the RAHDARS of great cities, not to let any one pass near the frontiers without passports. As these were responsible if any person missed them, they were very vigilant in their duty. The PERSIANS usually travel with their women, and all the furniture necessary to life; under these circumstances it was very difficult for them to escape, had they been sure of bread in foreign climates.

This was one great reason why JULFA<sup>n</sup> was not totally abandoned by the ARMENIANS. The government of ISFAHAN, which is reckoned twenty-four leagues long, and as many broad, comprehends the districts of TCHI, MARBIN, KIERARIDGE, KAHAB, BARAAN, PERHAVAR, ELKHAN, and ROUNDESTER. Some of these were formerly well peopled; but now they exhibited only a dreary waste, most of the inhabitants being fled or dispersed: numbers had taken a precarious refuge in the mountains of LORISTAN; their lands were left untilled, and their houses mouldered into ruins. In short, all the distresses of an unsuccessful war, or the invasion of a barbarous enemy, could not plunge the people into greater misery than the victories of their tyrannical king, who seemed more solicitous to humble his own subjects, than his enemies.

This

<sup>1</sup> RAHDAR is the term given to those who are fixed at certain posts in the highways, either to examine passengers, or receive toll. According to an antient establishment, they are obliged to support a certain number of men, to patrol and keep the road clear; and upon this account are entitled to a tax upon all caravans of merchandize, as well as passengers.

<sup>m</sup> Lieutenant of the police.

<sup>n</sup> The suburb of ISFAHAN.



This conduct was not less owing to the little love he bore to the PERSIANS, than to his apprehensions of their seditious spirit, which he dreaded more than the armies of the INDIANS, TURKS, or TARTARS. If he could have cut the PERSIANS off at one stroke, as CALIGULA wished in regard to the ROMANS, it is not unreasonable to believe that NADIR would have rejoiced to have done it; had it been possible to re-people the country from any other quarter. Every circumstance of his conduct seemed to prove this; since without altering his measures, which gave such high provocation to rebellion, his chastisements were so extreme, that he was not satisfied without killing or putting out the eyes of all ° the people, who appeared in arms against him.

During the course of this year, the PORT was agitated with variety of fears, in regard to the armies of PERSIA. The name of NADIR had spread such a terror on the minds of the TURKS six years before, as this period of time had not subdued. The revolt of the ARABIANS, who often blockaded BASSORA, was a further circumstance of alarm, lest these people should join their enemy, for as such they considered NADIR SHAH, though he had not yet declared himself.

The conferences held at ERZEROUM in JANUARY produced no effect. NADIR had ordered his son with a body of fifty thousand men to remain in and about HAMADAN, where he caused a great quantity of artillery to be cast. The TURKS therefore thought it necessary to keep a numerous body of troops in the confines of BAGDAT: but the hopes of accommodation still continuing, the grand signior sent MURIFF EFFENDI into DAGISTAN, where he desired an audience. NADIR declined entering into this business, but promised the TURKISH minister to give him an answer on the plains of MOGAN. After his expedition against the LESGEES, he explained himself in some measure, by requiring the restitution of all the provinces in ARMENIA, ASIA MINOR, and GEORGIA; which were formerly conquered by TAMERLANE. The TURKS were so alarmed at this declaration, that besides the great army which was assembled near BAGDAT, another was ordered to meet on the banks of the EUPHRATES near ERZEROUM.

Towards

1742. Towards the close of the year, NADIR wrote a letter to the grand signior, couched in general terms, in which he expressed an inclination to cultivate a good understanding with the port. He also wrote to the BASHA of BAGDAT, making proposals of accommodation in terms, as if the two powers had already been engaged in a war. These steps were considered in no other light, than as a design to lull the court into an easy security; and by no means relieved the inquietude of the sultan and his ministers.

The SWEDES having declared war the middle of this year against the RUSSIANS, they made great solicitations at the OTTOMAN court, to engage the TURKS to break with their enemies, in order to create a powerful diversion in favour of SWEDEN. The TURKS, however, saw the danger on the side of PERSIA too well, to be drawn into any such snare; especially as they had so lately accommodated their differences; nor did that most remarkable revolution which happened in RUSSIA at the close of the last year, occasion any change in the measures of the PORT.

What served to support the spirits of the grand signior, was the reduction of the ZU-BEIT and MUDANS, two tribes of ARABIANS, who had revolted. ACHMED BASHA finding that these people had offered to put themselves under the protection of NADIR SHAH, sent SULIMAN, his lieutenant <sup>P</sup>, with a considerable body of forces, who defeated those ARABIANS, and returned home with a rich booty. The TURKS have often occasion to use severity on these people, who are naturally turbulent and inconstant. To keep them poor therefore has generally been the best expedient to keep them humble. The successes which SULIMAN had obtained, were likely to answer a double purpose, by awing these tribes, and by intimidating others.

The TURKS were also relieved from their anxiety, with regard to the designs which the PERSIANS might have formed against BASSORA. NADIR had caused several magazines of provisions to be collected on the frontiers of that district; but in SEPTEMBER he ordered them to be sold.

This



This was a circumstance happy to this city and its neighbourhood in two respects. The war with the ARABIANS had occasioned a scarcity, while ACHMED BASHA not chusing to trust to the professions of his friend NADIR, had amassed great quantities of provisions in those parts, and sent them to BAGDAT. This supply was therefore the more welcome to BASSORA, where the swelling of the EUPHRATES had occasioned an inundation, which produced an epidemical disorder. 1742.

We have lately seen an instance of the force of gain, with regard to the RUSSIANS: the love of it often triumphs over every other consideration. The TURKS reaped some benefit from buying of these provisions; but at the same time they sold great numbers of horses in KOURDISTAN, and other places in the OTTOMAN dominions, to the PERSIANS. A course of uninterrupted campaigns had so far ruined the PERSIAN cavalry, that they could not have continued the war against the TURKS, without these succours: notwithstanding which the avarice of the BASHAS and governors induced them to connive at the practice, insomuch that this year above sixty thousand horses, besides a great number of camels and mules, were sold by the TURKS and ARABIANS for the use of NADIR's army.

---

### C H A P. XXX.

*NADIR's projects to distress the TURKS. Critical circumstance of ACHMED, BASHA of BAGDAT. NADIR leaves DAGISTAN. Intrigues of the OTTOMAN court. NADIR sends embassadors to BAGDAT. The grand signior declares war against the PERSIANS. NADIR's plan of operations for the campaign.*

THE dread of war still perplexed the affairs of the OTTOMAN court. That very conformity of religion, which they had so earnestly solicited, in order to prevent the effusion of blood, now became an object of their terror. The decree which NADIR had published upon his accession to the throne, not seeming to operate effectually on the

1742. minds of the PERSIANS, towards the close of his year he caused it to be proclaimed, that as he had acknowledged the belief of the SUNNIS for the orthodox faith, he required all his subjects to follow his example.

Under the circumstances of fear, this declaration created a suspicion in the TURKISH ministry, that it was an artifice of NADIR SHAH, by imitating the conduct of ASHREFF<sup>9</sup>, to taint the minds of the TURKS with religious prejudices; and the same success which that prince had met, with regard to his security against the TURKS, NADIR might possibly find in his conquest of TURKEY.

ACHMED, BASHA of BAGDAT, was critically situated between the powerful and ambitious NADIR, and the jealousy of the TURKISH court: the former, tho' he professed himself a friend to the BASHA, aspired at the conquest of BAGDAT; whilst the latter was concerned to see this government in some degree dismembered from the OTTOMAN empire. Had BAGDAT been in less skilful hands, it might very probably have fallen a sacrifice to the PERSIANS; and yet many of the TURKS gave this general the odious appellation of NIZAM AL MULUCK, in allusion to the treachery which was imputed to that INDIAN lord, as already related.

In whatever light the conduct of the BASHA might appear to the PORT, it was his parts and generosity which supported him, and not his treason. By these he engaged the friendship of almost every one who had any connexion with him: his officers served him with the utmost fidelity, and considered their own fortune as inseparable from his. But this generosity had likewise its mixture of evil, as by this means his coffers were generally empty; insomuch, that he was often obliged to demand money from the court. He had now exacted six hundred purses<sup>r</sup> from the ARABIANS, whom his lieutenant, SULIMAN BASHA, had lately defeated. The JEWS of BAGDAT were also obliged to supply him with two hundred purses. Their chief banker was accused of an illegal commerce with the daughter of a TURKISH EMIR<sup>s</sup>, and would have suffered death,

<sup>9</sup> See Vol. III. Chap. XXXVII.

<sup>r</sup> 6,000*l.*

<sup>s</sup> We may observe in how different a light the conduct of the TURKS and PERSIANS appears. Formerly, the latter were



death, if they had not paid this pecuniary mulct, together with seven hundred purses which was due to the banker from the BASHA; but this event, whether the JEW was really guilty or not, ballanced the account. 1742.

The good understanding which was supposed to subsist between NADIR SHAH and the governor of BAGDAT, gave the TURKS no small inquietude. They were in no condition to compel him to give up his government; and out of fear of driving him to any desperate expedient, they dissembled their apprehensions, and worked secretly to accomplish their purpose. Among other steps, the court sent several BASHAS to BAGDAT with troops, under pretence of putting the city in a state of defence against the armies of PERSIA; but this expedient did not take effect. The BASHA saw through the disguise which the court put on, and refused to give any admittance to those troops, representing to the grand signior, that his own forces were sufficient to defend the city and its district.

If ACHMED could have been supposed capable of joining his forces to NADIR SHAH, with a view to conquer TURKEY, such a junction was practicable; but if he had no such design, (as indeed how could a man of his parts commit so gross an absurdity?) the conduct of the OTTOMAN court was very imprudent with regard to her own safety. The circumstances of the BASHA rendered it necessary, that the grand signior should be kept in fear of the PERSIANS, as a decisive blow on either side might oblige him to yield up his government; and it was plain enough that NADIR was preparing for some important enterprize.

Had the TURKS been in circumstances of supporting a war against PERSIA, the perplexed condition in which NADIR found himself in DAGISTAN, rendered the occasion favourable; however, it was some consolation to them, that the rapid course of his arms had met such a check, as might afford them time to collect troops, and also treasure to support them.

G g 2

In

were equally strict with regard to their women, but we find under NADIR'S reign, all distinctions of MAHOMMEDAN and christian were levelled. See Vol. I. page 308. It is true the JEWS are held in much greater abomination than the christians.

1743. In FEBRUARY this year, NADIR abandoned his enterprize on DAGISTAN; and leaving DERBEND, he marched to the plains of MOGAN, not without apprehensions that the TURKS would make some irruption into his dominions, before he could put himself at the head of his forces.

The grand signior had reason to be persuaded that he never should have a solid peace with NADIR, till he had an opportunity to humble him. The PORT was willing to think, that his successes arose from his intrigues, and the force of his bribes, as well as his valour and military knowledge. Upon this principle, they began to consider him as less dangerous, in a presumption that he would have no advantage over them by treasonable practises. Their eyes being also more open to their interest, they saw the fault which they had committed, in losing many favourable opportunities; and prepared in the most effectual manner to take measures to free themselves from any future alarms.

The vizir ALI BASHA employed all his skill and interest to displace ACHMED, BASHA of BAGDAT: he even carried his resentment so far, as to tamper with OSMAN BASHA, governor of the citadel<sup>t</sup> of BAGDAT; and to promise him the government of the city and province, if he could by any means remove ACHMED. This proposal not being accepted, the vizir, according to the ordinary course of eastern intrigues, tried ACHMED; and orders were dispatched to him to send the head of OSMAN. Being surprized at so extraordinary a commission, in prejudice to a man against whom he had no cause of complaint, he acquainted OSMAN with the affair. This produced an explanation on both sides: the mutual confidence which from thence arose, established their friendship; and they had soon after the pleasure of seeing their enemy dispossessed of his office. ACHMED was at length confirmed in his governments, both of BAGDAT and BASSORA; the grand signior's decree for this purpose arriving in APRIL. The court had wisely judged this to be the best expedient, to remove the offence given the BASHA, together with their own jealousy.

It

<sup>t</sup> This officer they call MUHOFIG. They have generally governors of citadels distinct from the city and province.



It is probable that NADIR made some attempt to corrupt ACHMED. 1743. The vile principles of other men, which he had so often found subservient to his ends, might have induced him to play off his diabolical engines, and try the efficacy of gold. MYRZA ZEKI, a person much in the confidence of NADIR, was sent by him to BAGDAT, in the character of ambassador to the BASHA, who received him with great demonstrations of kindness, and a profusion of magnificence. The ambassador acquainted the BASHA, that his master intended to make the pilgrimage of IMAM ALI, and other places in the neighbourhood of BAGDAT, where the PERSIANS were wont to pay their devotions; and that he would send four KHANS with troops to escort him. The BASHA could by no means relish this information, as it seemed to conceal some secret design foreign to the pretence of religion; however, in return for the honour which had been done him in this embassy, he sent his kinsman MAHOMMED, KIAYA, to attend the ambassador, also with letters and magnificent presents for NADIR: among the latter were ten beautiful horses richly caparisoned. This embassy produced no other effect, than to confirm that esteem which the PERSIAN king had always expressed for the BASHA.

Whilst these negotiations were carried on, the PORT saw the storm ready to burst forth. The eleventh of JUNE the horses tails were hung out of the seraglio at CONSTANTINOPLE as a signal of war: At the same time orders were given to strengthen the OTTOMAN army on the banks of the EUPHRATES near ERZEROUM. The PERSIANS had already commenced hostilities; and BASSORA and BAGDAT were invested almost at the same time, the former by a body of thirty thousand PERSIANS, who were joined to some tribes of ARABIANS. They took immediately the fort of GURDILAN on the side of the river opposite to that city: they also ravaged several small towns and villages, and put many of the inhabitants to the sword, taking their women into slavery. The territories of BAGDAT, which were hardly recovered from the calamities they had suffered ten years before, were also pillaged and laid waste.

The

1743. The TURKS however collected a great army on the side of ERZEZOOM, and another at DIARBEKIR, and determined to make head against the enemy. The PERSIAN troops which were before BASSORA and BAGDAT, were therefore ordered to leave those places and join at MOSUL, and from thence to advance to DIARBEKIR. The plan for the operations of the campaign being formed, NADIR himself at the head of a great body of forces marched to VAN, with a design to hem in the TURKS at ERZEROU, and force them to a battle, and then to attack the OTTOMAN dominions in two different parts at the same time, and push his conquest as far as the capital. He had been some time making preparations to take the field; but he did not begin the campaign with so much ardour as in his former war against the TURKS. The repulse he had met in DAGISTAN, had in some degree diminished his reputation; whilst the acquisitions which his troops had made in INDIA, rendered them to all appearance less desirous of war.

The love of ease, and the cultivation of the arts of peace, will ever be grateful to mankind; but even success in war must tire and distress. The most fortunate campaigns have generally been attended with great labour, and seldom without the loss of many lives to the victors; yet according to the common notions of mankind, to wade through rivers of blood is the glory of military achievements: so much does a vicious self-love counteract the great designs of providence.

C H A P.



## C H A P. XXXI.

*The TURKS put themselves in a state of defence. The BACTIARIS and BALOUCHES revolt. The TURKS send a pretender into PERSIA, who is joined by a great body of LESGEES and PERSIANS in SHIRVAN. They are defeated by the PERSIAN forces under the command of NESR ALI MYRZA. Rebellion of TAGHI KHAN in SHIRASS suppressed.*

AFTER a campaign of near fourteen years, the ardour of the PERSIAN foldiers began to abate, whilst the TURKS recovered from their apprehensions. MOSUL was put in a condition of defence, and the PERSIANS endeavoured in vain to make themselves masters of it: they lost a great number of men before the town, and were obliged to raise the siege. ALI BASHA, governor of DIARBEEKIR, commanded a numerous army, and had taken all the precautions of an experienced general to stop their progress, had they even succeeded at MOSUL; but that blow failing, prudence forbid their advancing any further, whilst an unconquered country remained behind them. 1743.

NADIR found the TURKS every where prepared for his reception: a number of fortified towns, defended by an enemy become brave by their experience, seemed resolved neither to be won by his intrigues, nor to be subdued by the terror of his name. Superiority of numbers, and the mere dint of valour were therefore his only resources; and as he was sensible that his conduct had rendered the PERSIANS every where ripe for a revolt, the loss of a battle would probably have been his ruin. As the TURKS kept only on the defensive; the issue of the war could not easily be determined by any decisive blow. Under these circumstances NADIR retired to the neighbourhood of KERKOD; where the TURKS suffered him to remain unmolested.

In the mean while near two thousand families of the BACTIARIS, whom the PERSIAN king had transported to the province of KHORASAN, returned

1743. returned to their own country; where they retired into the mountains, resolving to shake off the PERSIAN yoke. NADIR being apprehensive that others would follow their example, sent a great body of OUSBEGS to keep them in awe. The BALOUCHES also refused to send any further supplies of men or money; and a body of PERSIAN troops, which had marched against them, was defeated.

A great part of the frontier country to the south, and also the inhabitants of the sea coast, finding NADIR's government insupportable, took up arms at the same time: TAGHI KHAN, the governor of FARSISTAN, followed their example. This KHAN was also a BEGLERBEG, and had been much esteemed by NADIR: he was permitted to wear the heron's feather on the left side, and to ride upon an elephant; which was not granted but to two or three persons in the whole empire. The several expeditions which this KHAN had made against the MASCATS, having been attended with very ill fortune, his reputation with the king was much declined. KHALBELLI KHAN, a relation of the SHAH, and an officer under TAGHI KHAN, was become so great an object of jealousy to NADIR, that he gave orders to TAGHI KHAN to send him his head; but the BEGLERBEG made use of his interest with his master, and saved KHALBELLI. Soon after TAGHI KHAN himself was suspected of treason; and under pretence of esteem and great confidence, NADIR charged his relation to send the KHAN prisoner to the camp. The mutual regard which subsisted between these two lords, naturally produced an explanation; and they both saw that their security depended only on their abilities to oppose the tyrant, whom late disappointments had rendered extremely cruel.

Under these circumstances, they previously concerted their measures, and resolved to rebel. To facilitate this design, it was agreed that TAGHI KHAN should set out for the camp, as if he meant to give an account of himself to the SHAH; and that KHALBELLI should in a day or two send after him, upon the pretext that a rebellion was breaking out, and therefore his presence became absolutely necessary at SHIRASS. Accordingly the BEGLERBEG returned, and under pretence that the neighbouring people had taken up arms against the king, he collected a



body of troops to the number of seven thousand, and seized all the naval force on the PERSIAN gulf. 1743.

Whilst these storms were gathering in the south, the TURKS thought the opportunity very favourable to foment a rebellion in the north. The most proper instruments for their purpose were the LESGEES. The resentment of these people for the attempts against them the preceding year, made them wish for some favourable opportunity of distressing the PERSIANS. The TURKISH ministry were sensible that NADIR's government was already become odious; and that possibly any pretender they might set up under the notion of being of the royal blood of the SEFFIE family, might make a diversion in their favour. For this purpose therefore they engaged a certain PERSIAN named SAUN<sup>w</sup>, who pretended to be the younger son of SHAH HUSSEIN. The TURKS also insinuated that SEFFIE MYRZA, the elder son, was yet alive under their protection. SAUN had made his appearance in PERSIA some years before, in the habit of a DERVISH, privately insinuating that he affected that garb to conceal his birth: he was then taken by IBRAHIM KHAN, NADIR's brother, who in contempt cut off the tip of his nose, and set him at liberty. This man was from that time called BINNIE BURIDE', or snip-nose. The inhabitants of SHAMAKIE now received him with great demonstrations of respect, and he soon collected an army to the number of sixteen thousand men, of which the greatest part were LESGEES. These brave mountaineers had made incursions in the neighbourhood of DERBEND from the time of NADIR's leaving that city; and kept the garrison in perpetual alarms. Taking the advantage of the night, they laid a quantity of gunpowder in the broken parts of the walls, and setting fire to it, did great mischief, tho' they could not accomplish the taking of the place: this artifice was repeated several times. They often came in large bodies, in the night, and letting fly clouds of arrows at the troops who guarded the walls, immediately changed their situation; so that the PERSIANS were at a loss how to aim their artillery. All the arts of persuasion, as well as violence had been used to bring these TARTARS to a submission. The garrison made re-  
peated

<sup>w</sup> This word is also pronounced SAAM.

1743. peated sallies, and had frequent skirmishes with them; both sides exercising cruelties unwarrantable by the law of arms<sup>x</sup>. Those who surrendered themselves without fighting, and promised under an oath not to bear arms against the SHAH, were dismissed by the PERSIANS. A decree was also sent amongst the LESGEEES, that whoever would trade with PERSIA, should be free of all duties, and that passports should be granted for the safety of their persons; but this had little or no effect.

The continuation of these hostilities kept DEERBEND almost in as great distress as when NADIR left it. All the males who were above sixteen, were obliged to bear arms, and the young women above fourteen, were given as wives to the new recruits, by an arbitrary act of the governor; whilst the scarcity was so great, that numbers died for want.

1744. The beginning of this year the pretender SAUN marched into SHIRVAN, at the head of an army mostly composed of LESGEEES. They were pillaging at large, when a body of two thousand PERSIANS in NADIR'S interest, endeavoured to stop their progress, but were intirely routed. The whole province being thus threatened with desolation, NADIR sent his son NESR ALI MYRZA at the head of twenty five thousand men. The LESGEEES, in conjunction with great numbers of people of the province, made an obstinate resistance; but after much bloodshed they were defeated near the conflux of the KURA and ARAS. It was here NADIR was chosen king; and on the same spot, where the people had given such proof of their weakness and corruption, was now erected a monument of their misery and distress. NADIR caused a pyramid of human heads<sup>y</sup> to be built in token of his victory, and to deter the few remaining inhabitants from any future rebellion.

SAUN fled with seventy men only, but was soon taken. The SHAH ordered his son to cut out one of the eyes of this rebel, and that he should be then sent to the OTTOMAN court, with this message; "That  
" NADIR disdained to take the life of so despicable a wretch, though  
" the

<sup>x</sup> It was not uncommon for the PERSIANS to cut off the legs of the LESGEEES, or to cut out their eyes, with this cruel taunt, that they might then make the best of their way home.

<sup>y</sup> See Vol. I. page 388.



“ the grand signior had espoused his cause, as a descendant of the family  
 “ of the SEFFIES<sup>2</sup>.” 1744.

The consequence of this rebellion was the ruin of almost the whole province of SHIRVAN. In the mean while, the revolt of TAGHI KHAN became a very serious affair; he was one of the last of the antient PERSIAN nobility, and tho' he had been unfortunate in his naval war against the ARABS, he had the reputation of an able statesman and a gallant officer; qualities which rendered him so much the greater object of jealousy. NADIR detached a body of eighteen thousand<sup>a</sup> men to SHIRASS, under some of his most experienced generals. This was a force so much superior to that of TAGHI KHAN, that being in no capacity to meet them in the field, he shut himself up in the city.

We have already seen, to what deplorable circumstances the city of SHIRASS, the capital of FARSISTAN, was reduced in 1724, and again in 1729: it was now once more doomed to be a scene of distress and slaughter. TAGHI KHAN defended the city for some weeks, but at length it was taken by storm: the inhabitants were punished with the utmost severity; and a great part of their effects were pillaged, under the pretence of sequestration, for the use of the king. Most of those who had been in arms were put to the sword, or deprived of sight. TAGHI KHAN, attended by a party of his friends, fled in the disguise of shepherds, but were soon discovered by the treachery of their own servants. He was brought to ISFAHAN with his favourite wife, and about forty of his nearest relations and dependents.

This lady was violated before her husband's face by a common soldier; which was the highest indignity that could be offered to this nobleman, and contrary to NADIR's usual regard to women. His relations and friends were put to death; and himself, after being deprived of one of his eyes, was castrated. Strict orders were given, that all possible care should be taken, that the operation should not affect his life. It was said, that

H h 2

NADIR

<sup>a</sup> It was remarkable, that SAUN was thus suffered to escape for the second time. He was a rank predestinarian, and concluded that he was yet reserved for some extraordinary event. <sup>a</sup> The twenty-five thousand men, mentioned in Vol. I. page 24. part of them I imagine were sent against the other rebels in that neighbourhood.

1744. NADIR had made an oath<sup>b</sup> never to put TAGHI KHAN to death; and was therefore wanton in his cruelty, without touching the life of this lord. It is probable, that the SHAH thought him an honest man, and a more able general, than many belonging to his army; and as he had given him his life, expected from him the greater marks of fidelity. Upon what other principle can we reconcile NADIR's conduct; who, after thus gratifying his resentment, gave this KHAN the government of CABUL? What particular circumstances might induce him to take so extraordinary a resolution, my authorities do not mention: it seems to be an effect of that caprice and whim, which we find upon many occasions, as if he affected to establish a rule of conduct, contrary to the fundamental principles which common experience has taught mankind<sup>c</sup>.

### C H A P. XXXII.

*Rebellion of ASTRABAD. ENGLISH merchants plundered. NADIR returns from TURKEY into PERSIA. Report concerning his abdication. Distress of PERSIA. The TURKS make great preparations for war. NADIR marches into the TURKISH dominions. Battle fought near ERIVAN. The TURKS defeated.*

**T**HE flames of civil war now spread themselves like a torrent. In JANUARY this year, the KHAJARS of ASTRABAD also threw off the yoke, and chose MAHOMMED HASSAN<sup>d</sup> as their leader. After joining a body of TURKUMAN TARTARS their neighbours, they took the capital of

<sup>b</sup> It seems as if oaths were deemed very sacred things among the MAHOMMEDANS, and that the vilest of men were not vile enough to disregard their engagements, to which they call the Almighty to witness.

<sup>c</sup> Mr. OTTER mentions, that TAGHI KHAN no sooner arrived at CABUL, than he rebelled; but I never heard that CABUL did rebel till after the death of NADIR SHAH, or just before, when THAMARAS KHAN commanded the PERSIAN forces on the INDIAN side. It is true, that many events have happened, which for want of correspondence, and from the wild disorders of a country rent with civil wars, have never reached EUROPE. I have already observed, that for my own part I adopt only what I have particular reason to believe is true, and those events which appear but imperfectly related, with regard to circumstances, the reader will ascribe to the manner in which they have been handed to us.

<sup>d</sup> The son of FATEY ALI KHAN, mentioned in page 18.



of the province, seized the SHAH's treasure, and plundered a valuable caravan belonging to the BRITISH RUSSIA company, who were at this time attempting to open a new trade over the CASPIAN sea to MESCHED, now considered as the capital of the empire. 1744.

There cannot be a greater demonstration of the fatal effects of a tyrannical government, than the extreme rashness of the inhabitants of this province. MAHOMMED HASSAN had held a correspondence with SAUN, and acknowledged him as sovereign. He proposed, that whilst SAUN was conquering on the western coast, he would reduce the southern parts bordering on the CASPIAN sea. It was with difficulty he raised a little army of three thousand men; and SAUN, tho' he headed sixteen thousand, was not able to support himself against the numerous forces of NADIR; yet the temptation of plundering the treasure and caravan, drew the infatuated followers of HASSAN into destruction. The minute circumstances of this rebellion are related in my first volume<sup>e</sup>. I have therefore only to add, that this army of KHAJARS and TURKUMANS were in the following month defeated by fifteen hundred of the SHAH's troops from KHORASAN; and by their loss in battle, executions, and sequestrations, the whole province was ruined. From this time NADIR took the resolution of sending a body of forces, and to build a fort on the eastern coast of the CASPIAN, with a view to awe the TURKUMANS; but the want of water in their desert prevented the execution<sup>f</sup>.

Whether reasons of policy, or any other motive prevailed, NADIR certainly gave frequent proof of his regard to equity; and there is a justice due to the worst of men. That which was shewn on this occasion to the BRITISH merchants, ought to be remembered; for he caused the whole amount of their loss to be paid to their factors.

The fortune of this eastern spoiler seemed now to decline very fast: and the general defection of the PERSIANS rendered the prospect of his future reign very gloomy. The flames of rebellion, which thus broke out in so many different quarters, reduced him for the present to the necessity of abandoning his designs against the TURKS; and in the month of MARCH this year<sup>g</sup>, he returned into the plains of HAMADAN.

It

<sup>e</sup> Chapters XXX. XLII. XLVI.<sup>f</sup> See Vol. I. page 321.<sup>g</sup> See Vol. I. page 243, 244.

1744. It is not said whether NADIR had any children by the aunt of SHAH TÆHMAS; but his unfortunate son RIZA KOULI MYRZA, to whom a sister of that prince had been given in marriage, had a son by her, whose name was SHAHROKH, now about ten years of age. It was suggested that NADIR designed to abdicate the regal power in favour of SHAHROKH, as being lineally descended on the mother's side from the SEFFIE family, and that himself would retire to KÆLAT to end his days in repose. This opinion seemed to arise rather from the confused state of affairs, than from the probability that NADIR really meant to abdicate the crown, or that he could consistently with his own safety give up the command of his army. Nor was it probable that SHAHROKH, who was born in such distracted times, whose father had been deprived of sight for rebellion against his own parent, and whose mother had poisoned herself, to avoid the cruel death of several of her relations, who were ripped up; it is not, I say, probable, that such a person, however entitled by birth, should ever arrive at a quiet possession of the regal dignity.

Under such distraction of the state, and the jealousy of the usurper, to name a successor would have been to dethrone himself in his own apprehension. Every thoughtful man foresaw <sup>§</sup> what confusion must necessarily follow the death of NADIR, although this event was so much desired by the people. It was most natural to imagine, that as NADIR had put out the eyes of his eldest son RIZA KOULI MYRZA, the second son NEZR ALI MYRZA, should be consider'd as the presumptive heir of the PERSIAN diadem. This prince however gave no marks of a spirit equal to so dangerous a charge. ALI KOULI KHAN, the son of IBRAHIM KHAN<sup>h</sup>, was therefore considered as the person most probable to succeed. This opinion was favoured by his being made governor of KHO-RASAN, and by a certain popularity of conduct, not such as gave umbrage at this time, but tending to make impressions of his generosity.

I

<sup>§</sup> I have often discoursed on the subject with the FRENCH jesuits in CHILAN, who foretold a great part of the calamities, which have since happened, as a natural consequence of that desperate state to which PERSIA was reduced.

<sup>h</sup> IBRAHIM KHAN, NADIR's eldest brother, the same person who was killed by the LESGEES. It was said that NADIR did declare ALI KOULI KHAN his successor; but the authority is the more to be doubted, as the thing appears inconsistent, whilst NEZR ALI MYRZA had so great a share in the command of the army.



I have related in what misery <sup>i</sup> PERSIA was involved by NADIR's avarice, joined to a restless spirit of conquest, and a fear of disbanding his army. In the most civilized countries we often find, that after a long series of war peace is attended with many evil effects, especially from the lawless conduct of those who want skill, industry, or honesty to get their bread. But in a country so lost to a sense of moral duties, and so impatient under the yoke of an usurper, NADIR's soldiers would have been the first to rebel, as soon as they should be discharged. They already cursed him, not in their hearts only, but with their tongues; declaring, that he had no sense of humanity, and therefore his talents as a soldier could never render him worthy to reign over them: besides, the native PERSIANS in his army were much inferior to the number of the TARTARS, and consequently the former consider'd themselves as acting under the influence of men whom they despised. The people in general, grown desperate by seeing their substance torn from them, were kept from rebellion no longer than they were awed by a military force. Yet they were reduced to so hard a dilemma, as to tremble at the prospect of a change.

Such was the situation of PERSIA in the middle of this year, when nothing could give a stronger proof how much mankind are scourges to themselves in consequence of their own villainy, than that a people who had been regardless of their lawful king, now groaned under the tyranny of an usurper who trod on their necks with such boundless cruelty. Nor was it less amazing how a country almost deserted, could find provisions to supply an army.

It is easy to imagine the satisfaction which the PORT received at the rebellions in PERSIA: this made a discovery of the real weakness of their enemy. They were still alarmed on account of ACHMED BASHA: the reluctance he had shewn to act against the PERSIANS, by which he designed to maintain himself the better in his government, was construed by his enemies at court as a desertion of his master's cause; and consequently that he meant at least to erect an independent sovereignty.

The

1744: The TURKS, harrassed with war for so many years, grew clamorous, and a change in the ministry was threatened. Their fears perpetually represented NADIR SHAH as destroying their armies, and laying waste their country, without a prospect of peace. The court endeavoured by all possible means to soothe the people: it was even declared that a peace was concluded with PERSIA, by the interposition of ACHMED BASHA. The design of this was to remove the suspicions which were entertained of this BASHA, and at the same time to give the people hopes of repose. The court however had experienced such caprice, inconstancy, and want of faith in NADIR, that they could make no dependance on any treaty with him, but such as was made sword in hand. Many projects were formed to bring vast armies into the field: it was even proposed to embark some bodies of the CRIM TARTARS on the BLACK SEA, and land them at TREBISONDE; and to bring troops from EGYPT, and land them at ALEXANDRETTA, to endeavour by this means to cover their dominions in the antient MESOPOTAMIA. In short, all possible expedients were tried to set bounds to so dangerous a neighbour, whose fortune had prevailed over the numerous rebellions raised against him.

In JULY NADIR marched back again into the TURKISH dominions, seemingly with a view to support his troops in the enemy's country, which he could no longer do in his own. All the frontier of the TURKISH dominions had been so long a prey to great armies, that they were become waste. In the mean while, the taxes drawn from his people being insufficient for the current service, he was obliged to have recourse to his INDIAN treasure, but in such small proportions, as afforded very little relief to the people.

NADIR remained some time between CASBIN and HAMADAN, with an army of thirty thousand men; with these he awed his subjects, particularly the inhabitants of the coast of the CASPIAN, who were in general ripe for a revolt. In this situation he could also support a correspondence with his armies on the side of INDIA, and with that body of forces which he had left near KERKOUND. In the mean time he



expected to be joined by his forces which had been sent to the south against SHIRASS, and the neighbouring country. 1744.

Towards the close of this year, an action happened between the PERSIANS and TURKS near CARS; but as it was by no means decisive, it served for little more than to support the spirit of animosity, and prevent that peace which the TURKISH ministry so anxiously sought: at least we do not find that the PERSIANS were driven out of the TURKISH dominions, nor that CARS was taken, agreeable to the common reports of that time. The TURKS however maintained their ground with such resolution, as rendered all the attempts of the enemy abortive.

The PERSIAN army passed the winter near their own frontiers. NADIR seemed to think it necessary to keep himself in readiness against the intestine commotions of his own country, and at the same time to watch the motions of the TURKS, who were resolved to make their greatest efforts the next campaign.

Near the end of this year, ACHMED KHAN, a PERSIAN general, fled to CONSTANTINOPLE from the tyranny of his master. The TURKS received him with diffidence, lest his pretended flight should be one of those stratagems which their artful enemy NADIR had so often played against them. The KHAN however gave them such convincing proofs of the real cause of his abandoning his late master, that he was received into the confidence of the TURKISH ministers. He flattered them into a belief, that if they would exert themselves, and send a large army into the field, the PERSIANS, being once intimidated, would desert in whole squadrons. This opinion was founded on his knowledge of the great disaffection of many of the officers and soldiers in the PERSIAN army.

The LESGEEs, remembering their defeat in SHIRVAN the beginning of last year, were anxious to see their haughty enemy humbled to the dust. For this purpose they sent two ambassadors to CONSTANTINOPLE, offering to assist the TURKS with a body of men, in consideration of a certain sum of money. They represented at the same time, how bravely they had defended their liberty against the usurper NADIR, and that they still per-

1744. fisted in their resolution of defending themselves. It had not been the custom of the LESGEEES for some ages to leave their mountains to engage in the service of any foreign prince, nor have they often marched farther than SHIRVAN and GEORGIA to fight their own battles; but their present circumstances induced them to make this offer, to engage in the TURKISH service, as the SWISS do in that of FRANCE. The PORT received these embassadors with great marks of distinction, and gave them very fair promises; but we do not find that they were so satisfactory to the crafty LESGEEES, as to engage them to send any succours to join the OTTOMAN army: indeed it was not without the utmost difficulty the grand signior could raise money to pay his national troops.

1745. This year began with preparations for the most powerful army which had yet appeared in the field against the PERSIANS, towards which SERBIA, BOSNIA, and ROMANIA, all contributed their quotas. This numerous army was to be assembled at CARS, in order to open the campaign by the first of APRIL. The TURKS seemed thus determined to make the most vigorous efforts, and free themselves from the dread of their enemy; which could not be done by keeping within their walls. This task was the more difficult, as a continued series of ill fortune had intimidated the OTTOMAN forces; neither were the EUROPEAN troops in the least disposed to pass over into ASIA, as it had generally proved their grave.

In the mean while, the suppression of the rebellions of SHIRVAN, SHIRASS, and ASTRABAD, had humbled the PERSIANS: though, groaning under a tyrannical government, they were in no condition to withhold their obedience. NADIR being satisfied that he had nothing to fear from his own people for the present, left his son NESR ALI MYRZA with a body of thirty thousand men on the frontiers of PERSIA, and marched his army the beginning of this year into GEORGIA, where he found it most easy to support them, without any danger of molestation. This step gave the TURKS some satisfaction, as it enabled them to form their army; and



and afforded a temporary relief to those towns, against which they apprehended the PERSIAN king would turn his arms. 1745.

If the TURKS were ambitious of striking a decisive blow, NADIR also behaved as if he meant to bring the war to an issue at one battle; for he took no measures to obstruct the junction of the OTTOMAN forces. About the middle of MAY he sent orders to his son to advance towards ERIVAN, and near the end of JULY both the PERSIAN armies arrived in the neighbourhood of that city.

Two years thus passed in rumours of war, and perpetual apprehensions of battles, without any blow being struck worthy of historical record: at length the fatal day arrived. The TURKS, having had so long a time to compleat their army, their forces were more numerous than in any of the former campaigns against the PERSIANS: the SERASKIER, MAHOMMED BASHA, was at the head of a hundred thousand men. As soon as he heard of the motions of the PERSIANS, he left ERZEROUM, and advanced to CARS, where he joined ABDALLAH KOUPROLI: the army under this BASHA consisted of thirty thousand men. The junction of these forces, supported by a numerous train of artillery, flattered the TURKS into a belief, that it was now their turn to triumph over an enemy who had been so long an object of their terror. MAHOMMED BASHA directed his course towards ERIVAN, and during his march, he drove several parties, consisting of four or five thousand PERSIANS, from their entrenchments and advanced posts.

NADIR SHAH was encamped with fifty thousand men about ten leagues from ERIVAN, and his son, NEZR ALI MYRZA, with thirty thousand, was advanced near the same distance. The van guard of the latter being met by the TURKS, a skirmish ensued, and the PERSIANS immediately retreated to join the main army commanded by the SHAH himself. Upon this, NADIR began to move, and sent a body of his forces to attack the TURKS in the rear, which was executed according to his intention. Being arrived within two leagues of the enemy's camp, he pitched his tents on a rising ground, nearest that body of the TURKS commanded by ABDALLAH BASHA. The main body of the OTTOMAN army was encamped

1745. advantageously, and defended by entrenchments, and a numerous artillery.

MAHOMMED BASHA had made some marches to meet the king of PERSIA, with design to give him battle. The third of AUGUST he detached a large body of cavalry, supported by a train of artillery; these troops being formed into order of battle, advanced upon the PERSIANS, whilst the BASHA kept his whole army in readiness to succour them. NADIR gave orders for a detachment of his troops, inferior in number to that of the TURKS, to meet them; and after the first discharge of their musquetry, to attack them with their sabres. The battle lasted from morning till noon with equal fortune, when the SHAH advanced in person at the head of a strong reinforcement, and brought on a general engagement. The TURKS disputed the victory with great obstinacy, but in the evening they retired to their camp in confusion. They lost above twenty thousand men, great part of them infantry, who were killed in the field of battle, besides a considerable number of prisoners. The PERSIANS pursued them as far as their trenches, and then returned to their own camp a little after sun-set.

A loss of such importance could not but dishearten the TURKS, who now seemed inclined to remain within their lines. The SHAH, taking advantage of the terror into which he had thrown the enemy, cut off their communication with CARS; by which means they were deprived of a support. Necessity therefore compelled them to leave their trenches a second time, not so much with design to give battle, as to make a desperate retreat. The eighth of AUGUST they advanced with a large train of artillery, and cannonaded the enemy with great fury. The PERSIANS supported the shock, and by the help of their own cannon drove them back into their trenches. The TURKS being now more closely blockaded in their camp; the ninth of AUGUST, as soon as night came on, they abandoned their entrenchments, and leaving their artillery and baggage, retreated towards CARS.

NADIR no sooner perceived their motions than he ordered a body of his men to follow them. The PERSIANS flung them into disorder, and made



made great havock : the next day as they followed the TURKS, five leagues on the other side the river ARPATSCHAI, a forced engagement ensued, in which the SERASKIER, MAHOMMED BASHA, was slain. The PERSIANS then returned in triumph to their camp with five thousand prisoners, and the head of the SERASKIER. The TURKS acknowledged their loss upon the whole to be twenty-eight thousand men, and three BASHAS, besides the commander in chief; among these was ABDALLAH KOUPROLI, the son of the SERASKIER KOUPROLI, who was killed in an engagement with the victorious NADIR nine years before. 1745.

It is remarkable, that NADIR proceeded in this action with the utmost caution, not suffering any of his troops to enter the TURKISH camp after the enemy had deserted it, till he was certain that this was no stratagem to engage his men to plunder, and expose them to be attacked at a disadvantage. The loss of the PERSIANS on the occasion of this victory was about eight thousand men, and some of their generals: NADIR himself had two horses killed under him in the first battle.

The remains of the TURKISH army arrived at CARS without baggage, artillery or ammunition, and without any order, discipline, or commanders of any note, so that the hopes of the whole campaign were frustrated; and their enemies remained masters of the field. However, they had less to fear from this event than from their former misfortunes in the PERSIAN war, since they had the utmost reason to hope that the farther NADIR marched into their country, the more he would be distressed by the rebellions which were ready to burst forth on every side of his PERSIAN dominions. The TURKISH ministry therefore still persisted in supporting the war; and in DECEMBER following the PORT published a manifesto setting forth the reasons of this resolution, in order to convince the people of the necessity of this measure, till NADIR SHAH should accept proposals of peace less dangerous and dishonourable to the OTTOMAN empire than any he had offered. To confirm their resolution, the grand vizir sent orders that all the troops in NATOLIA should hold themselves in readiness to march, in order to join the army at CARS.

## C H A P. XXXIII.

NADIR *makes a peace with the TURKS.* The RUSSIANS *send an ambassador to NADIR.* *Revolt of the GEORGIANS.* NADIR'S *barbarities at ISFAHAN and KHERMAN.* *Revolt of THAMARAS KHAN, and ALI KOULI KHAN.*

1745. NADIR saw too well the danger impending from intestine commotions in PERSIA, to entertain any thoughts of pursuing his victories against the TURKS: he rather chose to enter into as speedy an accommodation with them as possible. For this purpose he sent ALI BEG, with a retinue of sixty persons, as ambassador to the grand signior. The 17th of JANUARY this minister was conducted with the ordinary ceremonies to an audience of the OTTOMAN emperor, who received him with great marks of respect. The vizir at the same time informed him, that he might be assured, notwithstanding the misfortunes they had met with in the war with PERSIA, unless the SHAH would make propositions more consistent with the honour of the grand signior, it would be impossible to agree to a peace. As this ambassador had no full powers to negotiate, but was chiefly charged with a letter expressing the good intentions of his master: the grand signior replied, that he was sincerely disposed to conclude a peace, as soon as the SHAH would agree to such terms as might render it solid and lasting; and that in conformity to the SHAH'S proposals of friendship, he would immediately order plenipotentiaries to the frontiers of PERSIA: that these, together with ALI BASHA the SERASKIER who commanded at CARS, might agree with the SHAH on a place most convenient to open the conferences. Accordingly, towards the close of

1746. FEBRUARY, three ministers were dispatched a few days before the departure of the PERSIAN ambassador from CONSTANTINOPLE. In order that these conferences should produce their effect, directions were given to hasten the preparations for the next campaign, in case NADIR should, according to his ordinary practice, amuse the TURKS with the notions of



an accommodation, whilst he meant only to gain time for pursuing the war with the more vigour when it better suited his convenience. 1746.

It is very evident that he had no desire of peace with the TURKS, any otherwise than as his own preservation rendered it necessary. In the beginning of the last campaign he had declared in very familiar terms, what mighty presents he would make his soldiers, after he had set up his standard on the ramparts of CONSTANTINOPLE; a project not altogether improbable, could he have found the art of sacrificing his avarice to his ambition, and by that means deliver his people from the miseries under which they groaned.

It was remarkable in all the wars which NADIR waged against the OTTOMAN empire, that the EUROPEAN TURKS no sooner entered ASIA, than they became enervated. Besides, the cloathing of the TURKS being so much longer than that of the PERSIANS, the former were under a very great disadvantage in battle<sup>k</sup>; and yet, such is the reverence of mankind for the practice of their forefathers, or their jealous fears of changing for the worst, that we find the TURKS still adhere to the same military dress. In EUROPE, where superstition does not so much abound, or at least is differently modified, the custom of loading soldiers with unnecessary cloathing is changed<sup>l</sup>, in almost every country distinguished for the knowledge of military affairs. To all appearance NADIR would have continued superior to the TURKS, unless he had pushed his fortune too far, as generally is the case with princes of his genius; but Providence sets the bounds, which they have not the prudence to fix.

After the battle of ERIVAN, NADIR marched to HAMADAN, to wait the arrival of the TURKISH ministers, who were sent to prepare the way for MUSTAPHA EFFENDI, the grand signior's embassador. In order to prevent the evasive conduct which NADIR had ordinarily practised towards the TURKS, this embassador was ordered to return to CONSTANTINOPLE before the year expired. The PORT, sensible in what circumstances the SHAH was, had just grounds to believe that the happy period was at length

<sup>k</sup> The TURKS I am told have a method of tucking up their garments, but still they are not so much disengaged as the PERSIANS.

<sup>l</sup> See Vol. II. page 209.

1746. length arrived, in which they might agree to fix the boundaries of their respective dominions; and prevent that distress and effusion of blood, in which the ambition of the PERSIAN king had involved the OTTOMAN empire.

ALI BEG, the ambassador of NADIR SHAH, set out towards the end of MARCH, a few days after MUSTAPHA EFFENDI. He left the TURKISH court, with a view to make report to his master of the favourable sentiments of the grand signior, with regard to their mutual tranquillity. In the mean while, fresh reinforcements were sent to CARS and ERZEROUM, in order to give the greater weight to their negotiations. The TURKS seemed resolved to suffer the inconvenience of supporting a very numerous army, rather than afford occasion to NADIR for making any exorbitant demands on them. The expence of maintaining these forces on the frontiers of their ASIATIC dominions was very great, the country being every where laid waste; yet this step seemed to be absolutely necessary, whilst NADIR was at the head of so formidable an army.

The greatest part of this year passed in negotiations, till at length MUSTAPHA EFFENDI brought this important affair to a happy issue; and a peace was concluded, upon the foundation of that of AMURATH IV. except that the PERSIANS were to enjoy the liberty of making the pilgrimage of MECCA, without acknowledging the TURKISH jurisdiction; and to have also a liberty to establish a PERSIAN priest at the town of MESCHED ALI, near BAGDAT. The titles which NADIR assumed upon this occasion were, “The most exalted and most generous prince; brilliant as the moon, and resplendent as the sun. The jewel of the world; the center of the beauty of mussulmen, and of the true faith of MAHOMMED. The sovereign, whose troops are equal in number to the stars, and who sits on the throne of XERXES.”

The grand signior, not to be out-done in pomp of words, arrogated the titles of “The sovereign who is the shadow of GOD; the mirror of justice; the asylum of the true believers; the king of kings, whose troops are equal in number to the stars; the true successor of the Caliphs;



“ liph; the fervant of the two facred and noble cities<sup>m</sup>; the lord of 1746.  
 “ the two countries, and of the two feas<sup>n</sup>; fultan, fon of a fultan; the  
 “ most powerful, the most formidable, most magnificent, most generous  
 “ emperor SULTAN MAHOMMED the conqueror, fon of MUSTAPHA the  
 “ conqueror<sup>o</sup>.”

The SERASKIER, ALI BASHA, who commanded on the frontier of PERSIA, was ordered to return into EUROPE, to take poffession of his government of BOSNIA. The grand fignior's court was in great joy on account of this peace; especially as NADIR declared himself an adherent to the doctrine of HANNIFA, in opposition to thofe expounders of the MAHOMMEDAN law, whose opinion the PERSIANS had generally adopted. The renovation of their treaty with the courts of ST. PETERSBURG and VIENNA, added alfo to the fatisfaction, and induced them to believe it would be permanent. The next great object of their attention, was the preparation of a fplendid embaffy to ISFAHAN, near which city NADIR was encamped with his forces. In the mean while, the PERSIAN monarch appointed MUSTAPHA KHAN his embaffador to the grand fignior.

We have already obferved that the RUSSIAN court had not yet fent any formal embaffy to NADIR, fince his acceffion to the throne of PERSIA: it was therefore thought high time to perform this ceremonial, and obviate the ill effects which a feeming difregard might produce, now that NADIR had no foreign enemy againft whom to employ his forces. The impreffions which the RUSSIANS as well as the TURKS had conceived, prevented in a great meafure the belief that the fate of this mighty conqueror was fo near at hand. KNEZ GALITZEN was accordingly appointed embaffador on the part of her prefent imperial majefty of RUSSIA<sup>p</sup>.

NADIR having left his northern dominions, fent into GEORGIA to demand all the fons of their nobility to attend his camp. A ftep of this nature

<sup>m</sup> MECCA and MEDINA.

<sup>n</sup> Generally underftood the CASPIAN and BLACK SEAS.

<sup>o</sup> This treaty was not figned till the 11th of JANUARY 1747.

<sup>p</sup> See account of this embaffy, Vol. I. Chapters LIV. LV. LVI. and LVIII.

1746. nature could not but give these brave people great offence, especially as it seemed to indicate his jealousy of them, and that he meant to hold their sons as hostages, with a view to retain the people in their obedience. The GEORGIANS resolved to take up arms rather than submit; and to this they were the more induced, by the reports that the flames of rebellion had reached the eastern parts of PERSIA. Thus encouraged, they repulsed a body of PERSIAN troops, which were sent into their country to levy taxes, and keep them in awe.

Whilst NADIR was in the neighbourhood of ISFAHAN, he received intelligence that a rebellion was breaking out in the borders of KHORASAN. This province, which had received such distinguished marks of his favour, was reduced to the same degree of misery as the other parts of the empire<sup>1</sup>: but the ABDOLLEES of HERAT were the most impatient of the yoke. Under these circumstances, what could be expected from the cruel avaricious NADIR? From an incessant fatigue and labour of mind, attended with some infirmities of body, he had contracted a disposition, which in the generality of mankind is called by the name of peevishness, but in him was a diabolical fierceness, with a total insensibility of human sufferings. His avidity, as common to sickly minds, increased with his years; and in order to indulge it, he seemed resolved to perform some master-stroke of cruelty. During his stay at ISFAHAN, he committed barbarities beyond any of the former years of his reign. This antient city, long esteemed the paradise of the PERSIAN monarchy, had in common with all PERSIA felt the fatal consequences of invasions and civil wars. The tyranny of NADIR had made a great progress in that ruin, which he now seemed determined to compleat. He made the heaviest exactions on the city and the adjacent country, and put to death numbers of the inhabitants: among these were several INDIAN and ARMENIAN merchants, whom he caused to be burnt alive. It was pretended that they had bought some horse caparisons belonging to SHAH HUSSEIN, from which they had cut off the pearls, without accounting with him for their full value. However true this might be, it could not be deemed a sufficient reason for such barbarities. It is probable, that he suspected  
the

<sup>1</sup> See Vol. II. page 25.



the ARMENIANS held a correspondence with the rebel GEORGIANS; and that the INDIANS in their commerce with KANDAHAR, might take occasion to mention the state of affairs in the northern and western parts of the empire. 1746.

In JANUARY 1747 he left ISFAHAN, and marched with his forces to KHERMAN. Here his cruelties were not inferior to those he had exercised at ISFAHAN; being restrained by no ties of justice, nor the tears of the miserable; by no regards of hospitality, nor even the protection due to strangers: among other outrages, he caused the interpreter of the DUTCH factors to be beaten with sticks, after the PERSIAN manner, till he expired; pretending, that a PERSIAN of distinction had deposited in his hands a large sum of money. 1747.

From KHERMAN he proceeded to MESCHED, where he continued to practise the greatest barbarities; few persons of any note, whether military men or merchants, PERSIANS or ARMENIANS, escaped without the loss of one or both their eyes. He then directed his course to KÆLAT, the grand repository of his treasure. It was imagined, that he intended to put things in readiness for his reception in that strong place, after the execution of his projects.

Upon the breaking out of the rebellion in the province of HERAT, he had given orders to his nephew ALI KOULI KHAN, then at MESCHED, to march against the ABDOLLEES with a large body of forces; strictly enjoining him, that whatever the exigencies of affairs might be, not to unite his troops with those of TAMARAS KHAN. The latter commanded in the eastern frontiers, and was reputed a man of great experience and knowledge of war<sup>r</sup>: he also had the same injunction with regard to ALI KOULI KHAN; however, they entered into a correspondence, which produced a mutual regard, and terminated in the junction of their forces.

NADIR was thus extremely alarmed; it seemed as if he was betrayed on every side, and most of all by his own nephew. Things being thus circumstanced, he wrote to ALI KOULI KHAN, to send TAMARAS KHAN

K k 2

to

<sup>r</sup> It is said that this KHAN had formed a regiment of infantry after the EUROPEAN manner.

1747. to him as a prisoner; and apprehensive that his nephew might not obey those commands, soon after he sent orders to TAMARAS KHAN, to arrest his nephew, and send him to his camp. Neither of these orders were obeyed; on the contrary, a mutual communication of them produced a firmer union, and more vigorous measures for their security.

When NADIR found that neither of these generals were obedient, and that the junction of their forces rendered them at least as formidable as the royal army, he tried a further expedient to separate them, which was to send a message to his nephew, conceived in very gentle terms, desiring him to come to his camp. ALI KOULI KHAN excused himself, alledging that the rebellion was not suppressed, and consequently his absence would be attended with dangerous consequences. In the mean while TAMARAS KHAN had the same invitation, and pleaded want of health.

#### C H A P. XXXIV.

*NADIR marches to MESCHED; and from thence to the plains of SULTAN MEYDAN. He intends to massacre part of his own army, but is himself assassinated. Dispersion of the PERSIAN army. Motives of NADIR's supposed intention of a massacre. Reflection on his death.*

**I**N this critical situation of affairs, NADIR took the resolution of marching to MESCHED, where he arrived towards the end of MAY. Those who had escaped the barbarity of his officers, became the objects of his avarice, which was aggravated to a wanton fierceness in every species of cruelty. He then marched into the plains of SULTAN MEYDAN, a day's journey to the north-west of MESCHED. Here it is said he called before him some of the chiefs of the OUSBEGS, TURKUMANS, and other TARTARS, who composed a great part of his army, and having sworn them to secrecy and obedience, he disclosed his design of putting to the sword all the PERSIANS in his camp; and that he would play off a skyrocket at twelve in the night, as a signal to begin the massacre: that

when



when this work was done, he would load them with money and great honours; proposing, after he had erected a huge pyramid of PERSIAN heads, to retire and end his days at KÆLAT. 1747.

A GEORGIAN slave in NADIR'S tent accidentally over-heard some part of the conference, in which this bloody plot was resolved on. He immediately found means to discover the secret to the KURTCHI BASHI, who when night approached sent for several of the principal PERSIAN officers of the army, and communicated this extraordinary piece of intelligence. They immediately dispatched scouts to observe the motions of the TARTARS, many of whom were reported to be whetting their sabres, as if some expedition was intended. Minds deeply tinctured with jealousy soon take alarm; the least intimation of a design so horrid as this, might confirm their belief of it. Under this fatal extremity, what resolution could be taken but that NADIR himself should die?

SALEH BEG, an officer of great intrepidity, and colonel of the body-guard of AFSHARS, offered his service for this purpose, and demanded only four chosen men as followers. The usual time of NADIR'S going to rest being past, and a few hours before the signal for the intended massacre, SALEH BEG and his followers, under a pretence of urgent business, with some kind of violence passed the guard; and rushing into the outward partition of the harram met an eunuch, whom they dispatched. From thence they proceeded into the harram, where they met an old woman, whom they also killed. They were yet at a loss in which of the tents<sup>s</sup> NADIR slept, till by the light of a lamp they discovered some jewels: here they rushed in and found him. Either he had not yet slept, or was awakened by the cries of the woman, and rose from his bed. When the assassins approached him, NADIR drew his sabre, and demanded what business they had: SALEH BEG made no answer, but immediately cut him with his sabre on the left side of his collar-bone. This did not prevent the SHAH'S collecting force sufficient to kill two of the soldiers who came up to him to finish their leader's business. He was then retiring out of his tent, when the cords of it tripped him,

<sup>s</sup> There are many tents within one common inclosure.

1747. him, and SALEH BEG gave him a mortal wound. NADIR cry'd, "Mercy, and I will forgive you all;" to which this officer reply'd, "You have not shewn any mercy, and therefore merit none."

SALEH BEG having performed this important business, cut off NADIR's head. The TARTARS, to whom the tyrant had always shewn a distinguished preference, no sooner heard that he was killed, than they expressed the highest resentment, and took to their arms; upon which a general pillage and confusion ensued: in several quarters of the army they attacked the PERSIANS, at once to revenge the death of their general, and afford the better opportunity of plunder<sup>t</sup>; so that before daylight above five thousand men on both sides were slain. The body of the slaughter'd NADIR was then produced; the TARTARS insisted on seeing his head also, and being satisfied that he was really dead, the whole army dispersed. Some of them joined the forces of ALI KOULI KHAN, who at that time was at no great distance. Others sought their respective homes, if such homes could then be found after so great a change of affairs, and after a continued campaign for eighteen years.

It is more than possible that a massacre of the PERSIANS in NADIR's army was really intended, however incredible the thing may appear. Massacres have been known even in the christian world, for the purposes of zeal, ambition, or false glory. The affair of DEHLIE is a proof that such a thought was not strange to the mind of NADIR. It is natural for mankind to propose some end to themselves, as the reward of their labours; which can be no other than the enjoyment of rest. This happens even to men who are formed only for action, and upon the trial enjoy no satisfaction in rest; so much does the mind long for some change in which life may become more grateful. NADIR's avarice was no longer supportable; he had filled up the measure of his iniquities; he had ruined PERSIA; he had lost the affections of his subjects, to a degree that converted all their sentiments of obedience into a thirst of revenge, which they only wanted an opportunity to gratify; he knew  
this,

<sup>t</sup> I have never been able to get any information concerning those large jewels which ornamented the five sets of horse-furniture belonging to NADIR. It is probable they were pillaged, or buried and lost on this occasion.



this, and had no sensibility of their sufferings. By the strength of his own understanding, he might easily foresee his fate approaching, if he did not take some desperate means to prevent it. His nephew and TAMARAS KHAN, or himself, must fall; unless he could secure a safe retreat in KÆLAT. This was hardly possible, whilst he was surrounded by numbers who sought his destruction, and would carry their wishes into execution, upon the least diminution of his authority. 1747.

Many reasons may be assigned, why such a man under such circumstances, should have recourse to this expedient; since the complicated motives of revenge and cruelty, with despair of his own preservation on other terms, might suggest it to him. On the other hand there are many circumstances which do not favour the opinion; but it was generally reported and believed by the PERSIANS. The manifesto's published after NADIR's death, only mention his cruelty and avarice in general. ALI KOULI KHAN does acknowledge that he was in a conspiracy against his uncle, and that he had sent a person on purpose to perpetrate the fact; consequently it might have been effected, without any such motive as the apprehension of an intended massacre. It is however probable, that NADIR was not without suspicion of the design of his nephew; and, if he intended the massacre, we may suppose it was in consequence of that suspicion.

Common sense and experience might teach us, that NADIR's conduct would produce a violent death at one time or other: no occasion could be more inviting than this: for besides all the terrors of his past cruelty, his army had nothing before their eyes, but the dreadful scene of civil wars, which had already laid waste so great a part of their country. The joint forces of ALI KOULI KHAN and TAMARAS KHAN had not yet committed any hostilities; yet were these leaders in a state of rebellion; and it was obvious, that they would never submit to NADIR, but by compulsive means. And for whom was NADIR's army to fight? For a man whom they detested as a monster of cruelty and oppression.

Thus fell this scourge of the eastern world, at the age of sixty-one, after a reign of eleven years and three months, leaving a fatal proof how

1747. much it is in one man's power, in an age of great corruption, to plunge a whole nation into an abyſs of miſery ; teaching alſo a leſſon, that the ſovereign who converts the mercy and juſtice which ought to grace a throne into oppreſſion and cruelty, muſt expect that Providence will ſet bounds to his iniquity. By his example we likewiſe learn, that the moſt ambitious prince can never arrive at the power of doing much miſchief, till a people are devoted to a vain and luxurious life, eager only in the purſuit of trivial and unworthy gratifications, corrupt to an extreme, and loſt to all ſenſe of virtue. Could PERSIA have thus groaned under a world of miſeries, but by the iniquity of PERSIANS? That iniquity became the inſtrument of their tyrant's power ; and never will there want a tyrant in any country, when the people are arrived to ſuch an extreme of venality and corruption.

---



## P A R T VI.

## T H E

## C H A R A C T E R O F N A D I R S H A H.

## C H A P. XXXV.

*Reflections on the death and general character of NADIR SHAH. An account of his person, voice, strength, arms, valour, memory, diet, dress, love of women, cruelty, avarice, distrust, artfulness, clemency, liberality, generalship, politics, &c.*

**A**S the soul has certainly a consciousness after death, we must now leave poor NADIR to revise his own actions, and to consider if an obscure and early death had not been preferable to all the pleasures and triumphs of his life; but he is in the hands of that Judge, whose laws it is our honour and happiness to obey, and whose councils it is impiety to scrutinize.

The actions of this usurper made such a splendid figure even in the eyes of the EUROPEAN world, that for many years it was doubtful on what principles he acted; and consequently what praises were his due. Time has now taught us to strip them of all disguise; and as he who yesterday was lord of the lives of millions, is now levelled with the meanest, and it may be feared the vilest of men, we may speak of him without reserve. We may expatiate freely on the wonderful abilities by which he captivated those who were the instruments of his impiety.

Fortune and success are apt to dazzle the tender sight of mortal man; and to represent things as glorious, which in their nature are detestable.

What millions has the phantom FALSE GLORY sacrificed at her altars! The actions of great conquerors, how unworthy forever, are often viewed in distant ages and remote regions, not with wonder and amazement only, but even with envy. But the prospect of eternity must convince us, that to die for the service of our fellow-creatures is really glorious; whilst those who trample upon a prostrate world, and violate the laws of humanity, are but as dreadful storms, or pestilential blasts, to execute the wrath of an offended God. Men who trace the paths of glory by the light of fire and sword, can have no right to be remembered, except it be with horror or indignation.

To enter deep into the characters of men, even of our own country and religion, is no vulgar task; but if we travel into remoter regions, where the manners and genius of a nation differ very much, to unravel all the foldings of a heart, distinguished from among a whole people, by a mixture of qualities unintelligible upon common principles, the understanding is puzzled. In characters like that of NADIR KOULI, we may trace out the cruelty of a NERO; the subtlety of a HANNIBAL; the valour of a SCIPIO; the artfulness of a CROMWELL; with the fortune, as well as the catastrophe, of a CÆSAR: nor will these make up the composition, till we add the avarice of a VESPASIAN; and blend them all with an unpolished brutal temper, such as mean educations are apt to exhibit, when possessed of great power.

The minutest circumstances relating to those, who have been the objects of our astonishment, afford satisfaction to the mind. I will therefore mention such particulars, relating to NADIR KOULI, as have reached my knowledge, and which did not occur, or could not be so properly inserted, in the body of this historical account. Those, to whom his person was familiarly known, agree that his countenance was expressive rather of an ingenuous mind, than a cruel disposition. He was an AF-SHAR, as already mentioned; and his face was rounder, and his nose less inclined to the ROMAN, than the PERSIANS generally are. His hair was black; his eyes large and expressive; his forehead high; and his complexion



complexion swarthy. His body was robust; and his stature about six feet: his shoulders were round<sup>u</sup>. His whole countenance and person were awful, particularly when he spoke.

His voice was so strong and sonorous, as to be audible to an incredible distance; and the effect it had upon his own soldiers, as well as an enemy, when he gave his commands in the field of battle, proved one great step to his advancement to the regal power.

His corporal strength was not less instrumental to his fortune. The extreme indulgence which had been shewn him by nature in the vigour of his constitution, received an accumulated force by the habit of his life. The battle-ax is one of the most antient weapons among the ORIENTALS, but it had been for some years much neglected in PERSIA; NADIR restored the use of it in a more particular manner: it was his favourite weapon, insomuch that before he assumed the diadem, he was generally stiled the AX-KHAN. Afterwards he was often seen with a battle-ax in his hand, playing with it in his tent of audience. His blows with this weapon carried with them inevitable death, of which he gave many proofs.

His memory was as remarkable, as his perfect knowledge of the genius and temper of the PERSIANS. He could at all times easily recollect the names, persons, and characters, of all those with whom he had any connection<sup>w</sup>. He had studied the state of the finances, and knew the particular revenues of every province: but he was so great a master of the art of ways and means, that he over-shot his mark, and by his oppressions quite destroyed his own end. As he had no turn to contemplation, his spirits were free and untired by any reflections but what immediately arose from

L 1 2

his

<sup>u</sup> The ORIENTAL people generally are round-shouldered, arising from their manner of sitting, and this occasions there being very little of majesty in their gait. <sup>w</sup> What is related of him concerning his dictating to several secretaries at the same time, I apprehend arose from the notion that JULIUS CÆSAR did this. I will not dispute the abilities of either the ROMAN or the PERSIAN hero; but as the letters of the latter are contained in few words, the matter being given in general terms, the secretary performs the office, and then reads the letter. And here it may be observed, that there have been some instances of their reading differently from what they wrote, which has been the occasion of great villanies and perplexities.



his employments in the field. He was far advanced in life before he had learnt to read; nor did any part of his knowledge depend the least on books. His presence of mind was very remarkable<sup>x</sup>; and his resolutions were almost as quick as his thoughts: hence he did many things extravagant and absurd.

At one part of his life he drank freely of wine and brandy, but afterwards abstained from the latter entirely, and used the former in such a proportion only, as gave the greater energy to his thoughts, and supported the activity and strength of his body. The use of wine is contrary to the MAHOMMEDAN law, but his example recommended it to his soldiers. He used to feed liberally upon a simple diet; yet he would march a whole day upon the strength of a few parched pease, which it is common for the PERSIANS to carry in their pockets.

His dress was not remarkable; his mind seemed to be superior to external pomp or luxurious softness. His pride was in precious stones<sup>y</sup>, with which his diadem was adorned, and he wore several in his turban also. He was often seen with a large saphire in his hand, with which he used to amuse himself in his tent. It was said, that he always wore a coat of mail of chain-work under his cloaths: this is not improbable, considering the knowledge he had of the resentment of the people towards him. He affected to go thinly clad, and recommended this example to his soldiers.

It is reasonable to believe, that mens passions are strong in proportion to what is generally understood by strength of mind, and in some measure connected with the appetite. Where religion and the custom of a country subscribe to any favourite inclination, it would be surprizing, if a man possessed of a boundless power, did not give as boundless a scope to such inclination. NADIR was remarkable for his love of women. It was said, that some years before his death, a virgin was brought to his bed every night: these are stories however which are ridiculous. He contented himself latterly with thirty-three women<sup>z</sup>;

some

<sup>x</sup> See page 71.  
Vol. I. page 255.

<sup>y</sup> I have already had occasion to mention the horse-furnitures,

<sup>z</sup> These had about the same number of female servants and attendants, which constituted the number mentioned in Vol. I. page 249.



some of whom long retained a place in his favour. In his wars in TURKEY, he often carried his feraglio with him.

His detestation of sodomy was extreme: but though he had frequent occasions of making examples of the practisers of that sin, yet I never heard that he interfered but once; and then he caused the malefactor's eyes to be put out, his ears, his nose, and his lips to be cut off: under these miserable circumstances, this man put himself to death. In what manner the PERSIANS formerly regarded this sin, appears from the conduct of SHAH SEFFIE towards a youth, who, in resisting this atrocious crime, stabbed his own master, a KHAN of great distinction, for which the SHAH condemned him to be torn to pieces by dogs. The same fortitude which induced this youth to deliver himself by such desperate means, supported him to the last; and he died with the utmost bravery.

As to cruelty, it at length became a kind of diversion to NADIR; this was chiefly excited by avarice, and jealousy of his own security, as well as a habit of insensibility. I never indeed heard that he put any man to death, in cold blood, with his own hands, after his advancement to the diadem: this is more than can be said of some of their former princes, who lawfully possessed the regal dignity; for the PERSIAN kings through many ages have been remarkable for great inhumanity. How very different are the christian and MAHOMMEDAN princes? The former, who understand their dignity, never appear in cases of executions<sup>a</sup>; the latter delight to be present, being otherwise diffident that their orders will not be performed. NADIR saw the executions of all those who were put to death in his camp<sup>b</sup>, nor ever appeared in the least disturbed.

When mens crimes become various and complicated, and the judge blends his private passions or resentments with the exercise of his office, in what an extremity of misery must a nation be involved, where justice is thus administered?

3

<sup>a</sup> The late king of PORTUGAL was indeed carried away with false notions of religion, so as to be present, incog. at the burning of the JEWS.

<sup>b</sup> The PERSIAN judges, either civil or military, who sit on causes, are obliged to be present at the execution of their own sentences; when it does not extend to death, they mitigate or increase as they think proper.



ministered? Some instances of NADIR's cruelty were the effects of policy. Upon occasion of his memorable exploit of driving the AFGHANS out of PERSIA<sup>c</sup>, when he entered ISFAHAN in triumph, one of his soldiers violated the wife of a PERSIAN of distinction. The man complained to NADIR, that he could not live after so great an indignity; "No," says NADIR, "I think you cannot," and immediately ordered him to be strangled. He then explained to his officers the reason of his conduct in these terms, "I make no doubt but you will consider me as very cruel, for taking this man at his word; but what can I do in such times as these?" "A victorious army cannot always be restrained. Had I redressed this man's wrongs, I should have a hundred such complaints made to me, and my time would be taken up in chastising my soldiers, instead of employing them to conquer the enemies of our country." However, he altered his rule of conduct in this particular, of which I have related some instances.

He often suffered several to pass with impunity, though he knew they gave him no less harsh an appellation than villain; but towards those who exercised their wit in keener satyr, he was inexorable. It is a compliment amongst the PERSIANS, to say upon the entrance of a guest, "Your place was very void<sup>d</sup>." In the mausoleum which NADIR caused to be built at MESCHED, for his reception after death, somebody wrote on the walls in very pathetic terms; "Oh! NADIR, how full of thy renown is every corner of the earth! Thy name indeed is very great; but thy place here is very void." Severe inquisition was made for the author of this writing; it was concluded to be done by some man of letters; and many MULLAHS were brought to a trial: to compel them to a discovery, some were whipt to such an extremity, that they expired under the lash.

In allusion to NADIR's exaltation, a certain person observed of a fountain in ISFAHAN, that the higher the water was thrown up, the greater was the velocity of its fall. NADIR never wanted the base instruments of tyranny to acquaint him of the minutest actions; and this man gratified his wit at no less an expence than his life.

None

<sup>c</sup> In 1729.<sup>d</sup> This answers to, Your company was much wanted.



None of their former kings ever inflicted punishments in a greater variety, or with circumstances more whimsical and extravagant, than NADIR. Two persons of distinction wrote to him several times, complaining of each other: at length they were both sent for to the camp. It is probable he knew the characters of these men; but without entering into the merits of either of their complaints, he pronounced them both rascals; "And since," says he, "you are so fond of troubling me with your epistles, I will spoil your sport;" accordingly he ordered the eyes of both of them to be put out. His wantonness in cruelty was not less apparent, in the instance I have mentioned of the dancer <sup>e</sup>. Another time he ordered a man's teeth to be pulled out, for no other reason than their being buck-teeth. The story of his causing SHAVERDI BEG to be beaten, in order that he might remember the charge which was given him <sup>f</sup>, had humour and judgment mixed with barbarity.

He treated common men and delinquents of the highest rank without much distinction of persons. It was no unusual sight in the chancery, to see those who had been the day before bastinadoed almost to death, whose eyes had been put out, or their nose cut off, yet brought before him to be further questioned. Upon these occasions they have often sunk down thro' pain or want of rest: and these miserable objects have been also obliged to travel with the camp. When NADIR sent for any person, if he did not instantly come, the messengers drove him with blows; and those who have made any short delay, to finish their prayers <sup>g</sup>, or to perform any other weighty business, have been often bastinadoed.

The avarice of this tyrant was no less remarkable than his cruelty. It was his custom, according to the practice of former kings, to send for the governors of the provinces, however remote from his camp, to appear before him every new-year's-day. His intention in this very frequently was to mulct them, or put them to death. His ordinary method was to interrogate them concerning the state and condition of the province,

<sup>e</sup> Vol. I. page 256.  
much stricter in this respect than the christians.

<sup>f</sup> Vol. I. page 219.

<sup>g</sup> The MAHOMMEDANS are

province, and of their own behaviour in particular. From thence he proceeded to trifling and superfluous questions, concluding that he supposed they had defrauded him of large sums. "How much," says he, "of my money have you eaten<sup>b</sup>; and in whose hands is it lodged?" These questions were ordinarily followed by the bastinado, to induce them to condemn themselves, or to accuse other people of being depositaries of considerable sums. It frequently happened that these persons, either to avoid the pain of corporal punishments, or with the hopes of being restored to their governments, have given in a fictitious list of persons as their debtors, with the sums due from each, and also of effects deposited in their hands. They even took this occasion to gratify their private resentments, by mentioning those as their debtors, who had given them any offence. The consequence of these declarations was the issuing a decree, ordering the collection of such sums and effects by the severest executions of military law, without any liberty of appeal previous to the payment. If these pretended debtors, after a severe beating were found incapable of payment, orders were often given to collect such sums from the province. The governors were frequently guilty of enormous extortions and cruelties, without giving a true account of what they had thus unjustly collected; yet the complaints of the people seldom obtained them any relief; for the elders or principal persons of the provinces, who were generally called on to appear as witnesses against their governors, were often compelled to make good their allegations, by paying the deficiency of the SHAH's demands, after the sequestration of the governor's effects. He carried the matter so far that upon a certain occasion, when he found himself distressed how to answer one who had vindicated his conduct, he said to him, "You rascal, did not you drink cold water<sup>i</sup>?"

It does not appear, from any circumstance of the first stage of this man's life, that his temper was avaricious. It is natural to believe, that he thought nothing could secure his usurpation better than the poverty of the people, as the most effectual means of preventing their rebellions, or of rendering them abortive. This is the best argument that can be brought

<sup>b</sup> The ordinary term in PERSIA for embezzlement.

<sup>i</sup> This is an instance of such flagrant tyranny, as hardly comes within the limits of belief, yet I have been assured that it is really true.



brought in extenuation of that crime, which at length became the great moving principle to drown PERSIA in blood. Poverty without doubt was a great discouragement, and often proved a bar to the success of their attempts against him. But what can we say of his unjust and cruel treatment of private persons, merely for the sake of what they possessed; where there was not the least reason to suspect their loyalty?

In 1740, several districts in GHILAN were ordered to equip soldiers for the service of the crown, and to be answerable in the penalty of one thousand crowns <sup>k</sup> for each deserter. This proved a source of oppression; for these recruits were generally ill paid, and ill treated in the army, that they might be tempted to desert; and the payment of the penalty was always rigorously exacted of the securities.

When he found himself bound in honour to disapprove of the behaviour of his governors, of whose unjust conduct all possible evidence had been given, his decrees for restitution to the complainants were generally expressed in such ambiguous terms, as rendered the application for justice vexatious, and the issue of them oftentimes unsuccessful. Sensible of his predominant vice, his greatest officers greedily amassed riches, as the surest means of their preservation; though it frequently happened, those very riches were the cause of their destruction. Having been often challenged to answer for their corruption, several of the most considerable amongst them, at length resolved to keep a regular account of all presents they received, that in case of need they might produce it: but still it was a misfortune to possess any money; for NADIR seldom thought he had got their all. Shew and equipage is a favourite passion among the PERSIANS, yet I observed the governors who came to answer for their conduct, and other great officers, chose to walk on foot in the camp, rather than appear in any circumstances of affluence. As to the officers of inferior rank, they imagined their security consisted in refusing presents.

Avarice,

Avarice, the peculiar weakness of old age, increased on NADIR with his years: yet his rapaciousness might not be entirely an effect of this passion. If we consider the vast expence of his army; the impossibility of raising taxes upon his people, in the latter part of his reign; and that his safety depended on the military power with which he was surrounded; his INDIAN treasure, though reputed very large, was not sufficient to check his apprehensions of want. At length he gave a standing order to his ministers, not to present any petitions to him that were repugnant to the interest of the crown<sup>m</sup>; by which was plainly meant, that he would do no other act of justice in money affairs, than the bare payment of his army.

The seizure he made on his own soldiers, on the banks of the INDUS, is as distinguished a proof of his avarice, as of his resolution. From that time he laid claim to all diamonds and jewels of value, that were exposed to sale in his dominions; alledging, that he had been defrauded of them, on the occasion of his INDIAN conquest; or that they were stolen out of his jewel-house. He has more than once punished offenders of this sort with bastonading, and even with death; and, in these cases, beside the loss of the precious stones, he inflicted a mulct of equal value.

Jealousy and distrust, in all their horrid forms, will ever wait in the chambers of tyrants, and torment them "before their time." NADIR'S great officers were so sensible of this, that they were afraid to converse even with strangers, except when they were upon duty in their tribunals. Neither did they dare to visit each other in their tents, except in the day-time;

<sup>m</sup> This is a common notion in arbitrary countries, where the prince and his subjects are often considered in so different a light, that many acts of justice are omitted, out of a religious regard to the interest of the crown, as they are pleased to call it. Perhaps it is from the same notion, that even in so polite and free a country as GREAT BRITAIN, the debts of a deceased prince are paid very late, and sometimes not at all. This conduct seems to be void of œconomy, if not of justice. If it is understood as a condition, that when a prince dies, the tradesman must lose his money, there ought at least to be some method in payments whilst he lives; and, in the mean while, the prince must pay dear for all that he consumes that is bought on trust.



time; and that only in the presence of their servants, or other witnesses, lest a suspicion should be conceived of their caballing against him". He made no scruple of telling the people that he was apprized of their disaffection, but that he neither regarded it nor them. An arrow was shot once into his quarters with a libel, accusing him of tyranny and irreligion; demanding of him if he was a devil or god; a tyrant, a king, or a prophet? That if he was a god, they would supplicate his mercy to avert their punishment; if a king, they intreated him to shew clemency; if a prophet, to produce his mission? To this paper NADIR made a very dispassionate answer: "I am neither god nor devil, tyrant nor prophet; but I am one sent from God, to punish an iniquitous generation of men." This answer was written, and copies of it annexed to the libel, and placed in the most conspicuous part of the camp: a promise of pardon was also made to the author, if he would discover himself; and a considerable reward to any person who should discover him.

Much may be alledged for the suspicious turn which he took; for the PERSIANS are as gentle, soft, and persuasive in their manners, as they are full of cunning and deceit. They are polite, and affect condescension to strangers or guests; but where they have any power or authority, their deportment is selfish, haughty, and insolent: to this we may add a strong propensity<sup>o</sup> to rebellion. From his earliest life NADIR had an experimental knowledge of them, in all their several ranks and conditions; and seemed now to have adopted as an invariable maxim, that they could be ruled only with a rod of iron. Thus several causes concurred to cherish a cruel, jealous disposition. As he mounted the throne by means of the corruption and immorality of the people, policy still required him to sow the seeds of a jealous enmity among the principal persons under his command.

How dreadful the situation of a tyrannical king, when the very union of his subjects is the greatest object of his terror; and their mutual hatred and disgust essential to his support! Religion was still the

M m 2

cloak

<sup>a</sup> See Vol. I. page 189.

<sup>o</sup> Though this may not be the proper characteristic of the people, yet it seems to be an effect of their present immorality, as well as resentment of tyranny.

cloak to foment animosities. The PERSIANS professed a veneration for ALI, and their expounders of the khoran; whilst the TARTARS, and other nations, of which his army was chiefly composed, were of the sect of the SUNNIS. NADIR ranked himself strictly with neither<sup>p</sup>, but was equally attentive to gratify both, whenever the occasion required. His greatest support arose from the multitude of his spies and emissaries, detached into every part of the empire. His public officers and private agents, growing suspicious of each other, were equally impatient of giving the first information, of any secret design, or even disaffection, in prejudice to their master. Thus the nearest relations and most intimate friends, often entertained a jealousy of each other. Those who had any honesty in their nature, might be sometimes tempted for their oaths sake, and to prevent the effusion of blood, to give intelligence; the envious and revengeful to gratify their private passions; his mercenaries for their interest: and almost in general were they desirous of sharing the spoils of ruined provinces; thus tearing out the entrails of their common parent, and rendering themselves instrumental to their own destruction. Every social virtue was neglected; common faith and common honesty were little more among them, than bare names. Under these circumstances, how could they be delivered from the power of one tyrant, without falling into the hands of another?

Whilst NADIR's glory was ripening, it was his policy to make great professions of esteem to those whose services he stood in need of; but afterwards he acted on the wretched maxim, that a king has no friend or relation. Gratitude consequently could not appear as a princely virtue, nor have any seat in his breast; on the contrary, he seemed diffident, that those who were capable of a zealous concern for his interest from a principle of affection, might on the same principle be partial to others also, if his conduct should render him ungrateful to them. This seemed to be the general rule he observed, with some few exceptions; since we find that the vigilance and moderation of MUSTAPHA KHAN and COSSIM KHAN, the only two persons whose conduct I ever heard commended, supported them; and we must amidst all his crimes do NADIR  
the

<sup>p</sup> We have already explained his political inclination to the sect of the SUNNIS.



the justice to remember, that he cherished these men to the last. This seems to prove how irresistible the charms of virtue are; and that the subjects of PERSIA were in general almost as little deserving mercy, as their king was disposed to shew it. But the amiable qualities of the mind being so rare, they could be no great objects of his dread: the perfections most level to his observation, and which struck most forcibly on his mind, were corporal strength and valour. Though he often stood in need of these, the person who acquired any distinguished reputation for them, became the object of his envy, if not of his fear. Of this they told me a remarkable story:

A certain MIM BASHI<sup>9</sup> had often distinguished himself in the field of battle: his skill in the use of the sabre was not less extraordinary than his corporal strength, and he was at length made a KHAN. The PERSIANS, in their hyperbolic manner of speaking, say, that this man could cut a mule with a pack-saddle on her back through at one stroke. It is hardly credible how much the PERSIANS esteem bodily strength and military abilities: NADIR cast a jealous eye on this person; and as if he meant to try his virtue, he gave him the charge of a beautiful girl, to be carried to his brother IBRAHIM KHAN. On the way he debauched her; and IBRAHIM discovering the indignity, sent her back to the king his brother. It is easy to imagine, that NADIR would resent the affront also; in short, he vowed to shed the blood of the offender. RIZA KOULI MYRZA, then in high favour with his father, had a very particular regard for this officer; he attended the prisoner before the SHAH'S<sup>10</sup> pavilion, pleaded his cause, and obtained his pardon. NADIR, for the sake of his vow, ordered a bit of the offender's ear to be cut off. This however was but a temporary reprieve: soon after he was sent to burn a TURKISH village; but before it was possible for him to arrive there, he was recalled, and questioned why he had not performed his orders; and after several imperious insults, NADIR commanded that he should be strangled. Before the bow-string was thrown about his neck, he made a sign, as if he had something of importance to communicate; and, as is usual in such

<sup>9</sup> Commander of a thousand horse.

was a little before he was declared king.

<sup>10</sup> The circumstances seem to indicate, that this event

such cases, a suspension was permitted. The KHAN availed himself of this interval, to plunge out of the hands of the executioners; and seizing the sabre of one near him, rushed forward towards the SHAH, who rose from his seat, and retired before his enemy. The attendants near the royal pavilion interposed, and killed the delinquent, but not before he had slain three of them. This circumstance was one great cause, why the people in general, as well as the prisoners, who were brought before the SHAH, were kept at a greater distance than common.

The natural pride of the human heart is flattered, when our superiors bring themselves down to our level. The general, who is not over-tender of his person, becomes the minion of the common soldiers; but if to courage he adds liberality, he subdues their hearts. NADIR was a master of every art of this sort, and in his first appearances in life, gained the universal affection of the army. He was no sooner vested with a command, than he became assiduous to ingratiate himself with the soldiers, not only by procuring them their pay in due time, but also good cloathing at an easy price, with the addition of occasional gifts. He was not ignorant of the use of clemency, in circumstances of great importance. A party of OUSBEGS, who had done him signal service in battle, afterwards deserted from him: he sent a body of troops, and brought them to his camp as prisoners: they expected death; but he bid them continue to serve him faithfully, as they had already done, and made every private man the present of fifty crowns, and gave five hundred to each officer. The revolt of soldiers, on whom he most depended for the security of his person, as well as the advancement of his glory, might have been attended with very dangerous consequences. But he no sooner carried his point, than he adopted new principles. Common prudence indeed obliged him to be watchful of the œconomy of his army; yet the meanness of his education could not be corrected by his advancement to the diadem; and whilst jealousy and distrust became his constant companions, cruelty and avarice gained the ascendant over him, in every action of the latter part of his life; this appeared in many circumstances, not only towards his army, but to the people in general.



No part of NADIR's character was more distinguished, than that of a general; he lived in the field in the several characters of a peasant, a captive, a servant, a robber, a soldier, a general, and a king. Bred up in all the arts and subtleties of the TARTARS, he acquired a great proficiency in the practical knowledge of robbery. Hence it is easy to imagine, that a person of his extraordinary natural talents and personal strength, should become forward, bold, and enterprising. Enured to a military life, he acquired a strong inclination for that variety which a continued change of place is apt to create. The intrepidity which he possessed in so eminent a degree, is a dazzling quality among men professing arms; but success established his character, as an able and fortunate general. His person and voice were instrumental to his promotion, but his valour was not less so. They seem to have acted reciprocally on each other; and the consciousness of his superiority over most other men, rendered him dauntless to a degree of amazement; yet were his motions generally directed with great prudence: the same presence of mind which assisted him on all emergencies, taught him also how to consult his own safety; for it cannot be imputed entirely to fortune, that he was never wounded. In the height of his grandeur, he would upon any emergency, out-march his baggage, and suffer any hardship incident to a common soldier.

His quickness of observation where his forces were weakest, and his presence of mind in succouring them, ever gave him a wonderful superiority over his enemies. His resolution seemed to inspire his people with a determined purpose to conquer or die; nor did his officers ever behave ill with impunity. In action, he generally tired many horses, being never long missing where his presence was needful. Upon these occasions he was wont to address his men in such familiar terms, as seemed to demonstrate an opinion, that a soldier will not perform his duty well, when he has no regard for his general. He found it indispensably necessary to keep his army in motion, to prevent those conspiracies, for which a great part of his soldiers were always ripe; by this means also, the people in the remote parts of the empire were kept in awe, and

he was ready to oppose the invasion of his neighbours, or to make conquests.

As he enjoyed great health, and was enured to exercise, his activity was hardly to be exceeded. His mind was strongly tinctured with the notion of predestination, and he became so much the more dauntless by it; yet we do not find that he fell into the absurd practice of deviating from the dictates of common sense, with which this erroneous principle sometimes affects its votaries. He seldom placed a confidence that was unnecessary, or exposed himself to a danger that was avoidable. In the conduct of his wars, he ever preferred stratagems to force. His marches were always amazingly rapid, and his progress so irregular, and contrary to the ordinary rules of war, that he confounded his enemies. Thus he often defeated their best laid schemes, and attacked them where they were least able to defend themselves. Yet in matters of the greatest moment, his resolutions were generally so quick and surpassing ordinary apprehensions, that it seemed doubtful whether they were the effects of a solid judgment, or a blind temerity. Under the difficulties in which he was often involved, irresolution seemed to be what he dreaded most; nor did he dare to ask advice, lest he should weaken the superiority by which he governed. The neighbouring MAHOMMEDAN states, after some years knowledge of him, conceived such an opinion of his penetration, and such a dread from his fortune, as to ascribe to him a kind of preternatural power. The same notions, among his own people, often led them to betray themselves, and desert their own cause.

As to religion, it was uncertain what his notions were: before a battle, it was his constant custom to prostrate himself for the space of a minute, and make an ejaculatory prayer; this being the chief, if not the sole act of religion, of which he gave any demonstration, as the PERSIANS confidently relate of him.

Never was a man more indefatigable with regard to personal application and attendance to every duty of a commander: and it was his practice in the height of summer, and sometimes at other seasons, to come to his tent of audience early in the morning, often making it a second visit before noon,



and spending many hours of the evening in the same manner. He was punctual in the payment of his army, and took a surprizing care that his camp should be supplied with the necessaries of life ; but at the same time he received great advantages by being the sole vender of cloth, and some other commodities to his soldiers, constantly employing a person under the denomination of the SHAH's merchant.

Whether it arose from the superiority of his genius that he neglected forms, or from the narrowness of his education that he could not fill up the character, he often forgot the dignity of a king. Upon the occasion of his giving a government to a certain person, he spoke to this effect :  
 “ Remember that you are not to have any communication with the  
 “ MULLAH<sup>s</sup> ; but I know that you will go to him by night<sup>t</sup>, and you  
 “ will talk of me ; he will confess there is not such a king in the world  
 “ as I am, but at the same time he will tell you I am a rascal<sup>u</sup>, and  
 “ have no mercy : take heed how you listen to his suggestions.” Nor was he less ingenuous upon many occasions. Having asked if there were any prince on the earth greater than himself and the grand signior ; and being answered, that there were not any, he replied, “ You are mistaken ; the BASHA of BAGDAT is greater than either of us ; for both  
 “ of us have been endeavouring to reduce him to our subjection, but his  
 “ fortune and conduct have been superior to our attempts<sup>w</sup>.”

Many circumstances of the politics of this extraordinary man were unfathomable, particularly in his punishing offenders ; petty crimes he often chastised with heavy punishments, whilst offences of the blackest dye sometimes passed with impunity, or a slight resentment. Even those who had been in open rebellion against him, he has more than once reinstated in their office, or preferred them to greater dignities, of which TAGHI KHAN is a remarkable instance. Thus he seemed inclined to trust those who had been his avowed enemies, rather than such as he had not yet proved.

In

<sup>s</sup> A certain priest whom NADIR suspected of disaffection.  
 where they would sit, with other circumstances.  
 page 110.

<sup>t</sup> He also mentioned the room

<sup>u</sup> KURUMSACK.

<sup>w</sup> As mentioned

In the latter part of his reign he had no counsellor ; and his ministers in most repute were so far from being admitted to any kind of familiarity, that they dared not enter his tent. When they had business with him, they stood in the open air within the semicircle of his attendants, being rarely allowed to sit down. It must be observed, that the rank to which he promoted them was a reward for their valour, and their knowledge of the arts of extortion, not for their wisdom or probity ; from whence it naturally followed, that men of the meanest extraction often possessed the highest offices.

The state of mankind is so corrupt, that actions even of the brightest hue frequently endanger the security of the actor, by the malice, envy, avarice, or ambition of other men. This has been in no country more verified in these latter ages, than in PERSIA. To those uncommon talents which NADIR possessed, had he joined humanity and probity of mind, it would be reasonable to think he might have been the instrument to prevent the ruin of that unhappy country. But could a man of probity rule over a people, whose corruption rendered them mature for destruction ? Had the people been less vicious, the vices of the usurper could not have been so destructive.

In extenuation of NADIR's crimes, great as they will ever be acknowledged, there was a moral certainty of his becoming a sacrifice much sooner, had he been possessed of less power. It was with him, as with many great wicked men before him ; being advanced in the perilous paths of ambition, he found it dangerous to stop, and impossible to retreat with safety. Self-preservation then called on him to march on, and explore the giddy heights from whence he fell, and involved his country in such prodigious ruin. We are apt to ascribe even the good actions of wicked men to sinister purposes. There is no character without some shades and mixtures of virtue. In the beginning of his reign, NADIR dispensed justice with an equal hand, and affected the name of a just king. Great encouragement was given to appeal to him upon every occasion of the extortion or illegal proceedings of his governors ; nor was redress to be obtained but from his decrees : such was the abominable corruption  
of



of the people. Thus at a time when men of sentiments might have some flattering expectations of happy consequences from the victories of their sovereign, the arts of venality prevailed so much, that even the royal decrees could not be carried into execution, without bribes and presents.

It is an incontestable fact, that PERSIA was indebted to NADIR KOULI for her deliverance from the yoke of the AFGHANS: to him she owed the restoration of her legal sovereign; and by his valour and conduct the PERSIAN monarchy recovered, in a little more than eight years, the several dominions which had been torn from her during the weak and effeminate reign of SHAH HUSSEIN, and the invasion of the AFGHANS; but that he acted on just principles, or possessed such abilities as were necessary to secure all these advantages, the fondest panegyrist never will pretend. On the contrary, it seems plain from the issue, that he was influenced by motives which eclipse his best actions, and that he aspired at the sovereignty from his first defeat of the AFGHANS. Many causes co-incided to flatter the highest expectation that could be formed in his breast; of these the great corruption of the people must have been the chief; whilst the weakness of SHAH TÆHMAS opened such a prospect to him of mounting to the supreme power, as could not be resisted by a man, in whose mind all moral considerations gave way to his ambition.

## P A R T VII.

## T H E

SHORT AND UNFORTUNATE REIGN OF  
ADIL SHAH.

## C H A P. XXXVI.

ALI KOULI KHAN *eleèted king of PERSIA at MESCHED. He sends his brother IBRAHIM MYRZA to ISFAHAN ; and commits several cruelties. He solicits the friendship of RUSSIA. The revolt of AMUR ASLAN KHAN ; also of IBRAHIM MYRZA. The death of ZORAB KHAN. The defeat of ADIL SHAH, and his brother IBRAHIM MYRZA, &c.*

1747. **E**UROPE seems to be very imperfectly acquainted with the consequences of the death of the usurper NADIR ; even the RUSSIANS and the TURKS, who are best situated to receive information, have not, I believe, the most perfect accounts ; and are moreover interested, either to conceal or misrepresent those which reach them. The spilling of NADIR'S blood has been a fresh source of calamities to the PERSIANS. I have mentioned some few particulars, so far as they relate to our unfortunate trade over the CASPIAN SEA <sup>b</sup>. All that I have to add, is a short account of some events which followed the catastrophe of the usurper.

It has been already observed, that MUSTAPHA KHAN was on an embassy to TURKEY, when NADIR'S death happened. Providence seemed to interpose for his security, who was one of the very few honest men  
in

<sup>b</sup> See Vol. II. pages 87, &c.



in PERSIA. As he was prevented from being a spectator, it is probable he escaped being a sharer also, in the unhappy fate of his master. He was arrived in the TURKISH dominions when the news reached him; and he thought it necessary for his security to proceed with all his retinue to CONSTANTINOPLE. In the mean while, the TURKISH ambassador, who was coming to confirm the peace lately concluded, had the good fortune to reach BAGDAT with all the valuable presents which he was carrying to the PERSIAN court. As to KNEZ GALITZEN, the news of NADIR's violent death no sooner arrived at RESHD, than he retired to ASTRACHAN by sea, as well to inform his court of this extraordinary event, and provide for the safety of his own person, as to receive fresh instructions:

ALI KOULI KHAN now made no secret, that he had been the chief instigator of the conspiracy against his uncle, and as such was considered as best entitled to the diadem. As he had been governor of MESCHED, no officer could boast of superior honours; and as the nephew of the late tyrant, he had been respected: but though he was so nearly related to NADIR, he had very little resemblance in his disposition; his temper was free, open and generous, nor was he without the reputation of being a good soldier.

The news of his uncle's death was no sooner brought to him<sup>x</sup>, than he came to MESCHED, where he put on the royal diadem, and took the name of ADIL SHAH<sup>y</sup>, with the seeming applause of the inhabitants, and began his reign in a very popular manner. In consideration of the great poverty of the people; he remitted the taxes over the whole empire, and performed other acts of clemency. But at the same time, according to the execrable policy of MAHOMMEDAN princes, he imbrued his hands in the blood of his nearest relations. NESR ALI MYRZA first fell a sacrifice to his jealousy, nor did he spare the blind RIZA KOULI. Different accounts were given of his conduct towards SHAHROKH, the son of this blind prince,

<sup>x</sup> It is a circumstance not unworthy of remark, that the messenger who was sent with NADIR's head to ALI KOULI KHAN, lost it by the way; and to save his credit, produced that of another man.

<sup>y</sup> The just king.

1747. prince, and grand-son<sup>2</sup> of NADIR. Whether the real SHAHROKH survived this event, or not; one under this name, who pretended to be the identical person, soon after assumed the diadem, as we shall relate. Tho' ALI had the reputation of being humane; yet his cruelty did not stop at the destruction of the sons of NADIR, for he also caused several of his uncle's women, who were with child, to be ripped up.

KÆLAT, with all the treasure in it being surrendered up to him, to all appearance the most prudent step which this new king could take, was to march immediately to ISFAHAN, and carry with him a great part of his riches. NADIR's army being for the most part dispersed, he could have left a sufficient number of troops on the eastern frontiers, and then raising a new army, establish himself on the basis of a military government, so essential to the support of his sovereignty. But he was blind to the danger to which he was exposed, and triumphing in a fond security from his immense riches, abandoned himself to his favourite gratifications of women and wine, and sent his brother IBRAHIM KHAN, whom we shall now call IBRAHIM MYRZA<sup>2</sup>, to ISFAHAN, in order to raise recruits.

His next business was to excuse himself for the share he had in the murder of his uncle; and, at the same time, to make his intentions known to the people, with regard to their future relief from that insupportable tyranny, which had been exercised over them; so that this event might afford them all the joy and consolation which was natural to expect from such a deliverance.

The following decree, which he sent to RESHD in the province of GHILAN, gives us an idea of the state of affairs a few weeks after NADIR's death.

“ WHEREIN

<sup>2</sup> According to the accounts we had at that time from PERSIA, it was doubtful whether the real SHAHROKH was put to death, or not; some report that he was previously sent away into safe custody; others, that he was present, but spared at the instigation of the priest, as the only remaining blood, on the mother's side, of the SEFFIE family.

<sup>2</sup> As the brother of a king, we

now call him MYRZA, or prince.



“ WHEREIN STANDS  
 “ THE KINGDOM OF GOD,  
 “ SHAH AND SOVEREIGN OF THE EMPIRE,  
 “ A SERVANT OF ALI,  
 “ A MANDATE WHICH THE WHOLE WORLD OBEYS <sup>b</sup>.

“ The noble and honourable CHEICH EL ISLAM <sup>c</sup>; the KAZZI <sup>d</sup>; the  
 “ elders and all subjects; the poor and oppressed inhabitants of RESHD,  
 “ LAHIJAN, RANCOUTE, KESKAR, FUMIN, SHEFTA, KUGDUM <sup>e</sup>, and  
 “ the places thereunto belonging; to whom the Almighty has granted  
 “ his unutterable mercies; who are assured of, and exalted by our in-  
 “ comparable sovereign favour; shall know, in what manner the wick-  
 “ edness of the barbarous monarch <sup>f</sup> hath prevailed. All nations and  
 “ languages, the exalted and the humble, the good and the bad subjects  
 “ of the empire of IRAN <sup>g</sup>, are too well acquainted with his proceedings.  
 “ Their incessant cries and lamentations have reached even unto the  
 “ heavens. By putting out the eyes of the inhabitants, depriving them  
 “ of their lives; and selling the sons and daughters of musfulmen; even  
 “ the seven celestial circles <sup>h</sup> were moved to compassion. In a word, the  
 “ extortion of elphs <sup>i</sup> and crores <sup>k</sup> has been the cause of multitudes of  
 “ people losing their sight <sup>l</sup>; whilst the tyrannical monarch barbarously  
 “ erected lofty towers of human heads through the provinces, exceeding  
 “ all the cruelties of past ages. At length, our sovereign majesty com-  
 “ manded the most eminent and high instructed, MAHOMMED KOULI  
 “ KHAN, our KURCHI BASHI <sup>m</sup>, that he should prevail on the AFSHAR  
 “ guards, to seize and remove the tyrant; thus performing a service  
 “ highly beneficial to the public welfare, restoring rest and tranquillity  
 “ to the nation. MAHOMMED KOULI KHAN did not refuse to obey.  
 “ All

<sup>b</sup> This was the inscription on the royal signet, which they place at the head of the decree.

<sup>c</sup> Chief of religion. ISLAM we have observed signifies safety; by which is meant the MAHOMME-  
 DAN religion.

<sup>d</sup> Judges.

<sup>e</sup> These are districts in and about GHILAN.

<sup>f</sup> NADIR.

<sup>g</sup> PERSIA.

<sup>h</sup> The planets.

<sup>i</sup> Five hundred thousand

hazardenaer, or 125,000 *l*.

<sup>k</sup> Ten elphs, or five millions of crowns, or 1,250,000 *l*.

are equal to a crore in INDIA.

<sup>l</sup> He here quotes a text out of the khoran, which is very obscure, and contradictory. I have heard that the number of persons blinded, was not less than thirty thousand; but this seems to be exaggerated.

<sup>m</sup> Vol. III. p. 73.

1747. “ All persons of distinction, and the whole army near our victorious and  
 “ splendid stirrup, were anxious to extirpate the deep-rooted violences  
 “ and oppressions of this tyrannical king. We therefore marched at the  
 “ head of our forces from FERAG and HERAT, and came with haste  
 “ for that purpose ; but on our arrival on the borders of TERBEDSHAN,  
 “ news came that the AFSHAR guards had already seized the tyrant. In  
 “ the mean while there happened a commotion among the TARTARS<sup>n</sup>,  
 “ for the suppression of which there was no other remedy than to give  
 “ the tyrant the reward of his actions.

“ The fort of KÆLAT, which the late king had spent many years  
 “ in rendering impregnable, thanks to the Most High, was in one day  
 “ brought under our subjection by SEGRAB BEG, whom we sent thither  
 “ for that purpose.

“ As soon as these happy tidings reached our ears, we marched to the  
 “ holy city of MESCHED, where all the ministers, commanding officers,  
 “ and persons of distinction present, did with one common voice intreat  
 “ our majesty to take upon us the government of the empire, to rebuild  
 “ the ruined houses, and repair the desolations of PERSIA. They pre-  
 “ sented as their intercessor the holy faint, who is buried in that city<sup>o</sup>,  
 “ and would not desist from their importunity.

“ When we considered the sad state of the PERSIANS for several years  
 “ past, who had been obliged not only to deliver up all their substance,  
 “ but themselves, and their families, to be slaughtered<sup>p</sup>, we thought it  
 “ necessary to shew our sovereign favour to the oppressed ; to appease  
 “ the wrath of heaven ; to satisfy the creatures of GOD, and to gain the  
 “ love of the people. We have therefore been graciously pleased to order,  
 “ and do hereby command, that the new contributions in money<sup>q</sup>, im-  
 “ posed

<sup>n</sup> ALI disguises the real fact, but gives some light in regard to the contest between the TARTARS and PERSIANS. He seems to assume the merit of removing his uncle, but yet to impute the execution to the AFSHARS, who were NADIR's body-guard.

<sup>o</sup> The sepulchre of IMAM KIZA often mentioned.

<sup>p</sup> Here he quotes another text out of the khoran. “ You are all shepherds, and every one craves from you ;” by which I suppose is meant, that in consequence of an abused authority, every subject was pillaged.

<sup>q</sup> Provisions, &c. were sometimes demanded.



“ posed on subjects and strangers, shall from henceforward cease and be  
 “ annulled. We likewise discharge the collectors <sup>r</sup>, who are in your  
 “ province, and you are to send them to our court. But the money and  
 “ effects belonging to the crown, which are already collected, shall be  
 “ accounted for <sup>s</sup>. All the other revenues for this year, as also all taxes  
 “ for the following two years, we do most graciously forgive, that the  
 “ subjects of ISLAM, and all other religions, as likewise the INDIANS  
 “ and others, who for some years have been subject to every kind of  
 “ torture and oppression, may enjoy an uninterrupted safety and tran-  
 “ quillity, and solicit the MOST HIGH for our welfare.

“ What concerns the support of post-horses <sup>t</sup>, those to whom this of-  
 “ fice belongs shall take proper care; and for the future double the num-  
 “ ber of horses shall be kept at each stage, as was lately ordered; and  
 “ the money for maintaining of them shall be taken out of the treasury  
 “ of the province. In case of any deficiency, a representation being  
 “ made to us, it shall be supplied from other treasuries.

“ For settling the accounts of this year, two or three writers and ca-  
 “ lentars shall be sent to our high court. And concerning the estates,  
 “ which in the late reign were taken from numbers of the people, we  
 “ shall order an inspection to be made, and a circumstantial account  
 “ thereof to be sent to us. And that every one may be satisfied in this  
 “ particular, we shall without delay appoint a proper person for that pur-  
 “ pose. Given in the month of DSCHEMADIELSAM, 1160 <sup>u</sup>.”

ALI having made some dispositions for settling his government, he came  
 with a body of forces to spend the remainder of the year at the palace of  
 ASHREFF <sup>w</sup>, near the midst of the south-coast of the CASPIAN SEA. In  
 that situation he hoped to suppress any insurrection that might arise in the  
 northern provinces, presuming that his brother IBRAHIM MYRZA would  
 protect the south, whilst in case of necessity he might again direct his  
 march

<sup>r</sup> MOHASILS.      <sup>s</sup> The term is, entered in the cash-book.      <sup>t</sup> The reader will ob-  
 serve in several passages of these volumes, that the bad conduct of couriers was one of the grievous  
 oppressions under which PERSIA groaned.      <sup>u</sup> About the beginning of JULY 1747.

<sup>w</sup> See Vol. I. page 293.

1747. march eastward. In the mean while AMUR ASLAN KHAN acknowledged the sovereignty of this new king, and commanded in the west. This person was an officer of great experience, and had been a favourite of NADIR; he was now in SHIRVAN at the head of thirty thousand men.

In order to confirm the peace which NADIR had made with the TURKS, ADIL SHAH sent an envoy-extraordinary to the PORT, to signify his exaltation to the throne of PERSIA, and his inclination to live in harmony with the grand signior: this minister accordingly arrived there in APRIL 1748. It is easy to conceive how ill the TURKS would relish the advancement of a nephew of NADIR. That Providence had thus removed him, who had been so great an object of their terror, afforded great satisfaction; but their ambition was to see that army crushed, which had been so often the instrument of shedding such streams of their blood, and making their sovereign tremble in his very capital. The result of this embassy was, that the two courts should mutually send embassadors with the usual pomp and formalities: in the mean while, we are left to imagine that the TURKISH partizans would not be idle in fomenting that civil discord in PERSIA, which they had found so advantageous; since without the expence of blood and treasure, without danger or inconvenience, they could thus look on and see their natural enemy tearing out her own bowels.

ADIL SHAH was not less assiduous to cultivate the most perfect amity with the RUSSIANS. The retreat of the embassador KNEZ GALLITZEN from GHILAN, had given the PERSIAN ministers some alarms. KOULIFA, who had been formerly embassador in RUSSIA, wrote to the RUSSIAN embassador in SEPTEMBER: the following extract contains the most material part of the letter:

“ May your eminence’s blessed health, by the grace of the Almighty,  
 “ endure to the end of the world. I have had the honour to write to  
 “ you several friendly letters, sent through the hands of the most noble  
 “ and most honourable of the religion of MESSIAH, the resident of the  
 “ high imperial court of RUSSIA; but I have not received any answer.

“ I



“ I long with impatience for your arrival ; GOD grant it may be soon, 1747.  
 “ that we may once more happily see each other.

“ I now acquaint you, as I have already done, that his majesty, equal  
 “ in dignity to ALEXANDER, and in servants to DARIUS, protector of the  
 “ whole world, ADIL SHAH, whose reign may the Most High preserve  
 “ for ever, and my soul serve him as a sacrifice, has been graciously  
 “ pleased to mount the throne of IRAN. Thus by the help of GOD, the  
 “ government of the whole empire is in the high power of his majesty,  
 “ the most gracious and just monarch. The fort KÆLAT, with all the  
 “ treasures and riches therein contained, is in his majesty’s possession ;  
 “ and the enemies of his everlasting court, thus established by the Al-  
 “ mighty, are utterly extirpated.

“ It will appear to you by the copy of the mandate inclosed, that the  
 “ most gracious monarch did imagine you yet resided at RESHD, there-  
 “ fore he commanded me to wait on your eminency ; and ordered the  
 “ most noble ACHMED KHAN to convoy you to MAZANDERAN, where  
 “ the most worthy MAHOMMED ALI BEG, KHAJAR, of noble descent,  
 “ will meet and conduct you with all due honour to the SHAH’S high  
 “ court. To conclude, I wish the days of blifs may last for ever.”

This letter was accompanied with long instructions from the SHAH to KOULIFA, to shew all possible honour to the embassador. ACHMED KHAN had also commands to the same purpose, all demonstrative of his desire of supporting the best correspondence with his neighbours the RUSSIANS. Within very few weeks after NADIR’S death, and before he came to the palace of ASHREFF, the SHAH himself sent a letter to the embassador GALITZEN. Like others, it was marked with his seal at the head, viz.

“ WHEREIN STANDS

“ THE KINGDOM OF GOD,

“ SOVEREIGN OF THE EMPIRE,

“ A SERVANT OF ALL.



1747. “ The most eminent, high appointed, noble and high intrusted em-  
 “ bassador, from the most exalted imperial court of RUSSIA, KNEZ GA-  
 “ LITZEN, shall be assured of our sovereign favour, and KNOW, that  
 “ the vile disposition and corrupted nature of the late monarch surpassed  
 “ all bounds. How cruel his proceedings have been, you will be cir-  
 “ cumstantially informed in due time.

“ At present you are acquainted that our sovereign majesty, by the  
 “ grace and assistance of God, has been highly pleased to take the throne  
 “ of the PERSIAN empire; at which time it has been represented to us,  
 “ that your eminence has been sent here as an ambassador, from the  
 “ most puissant and imperial court of RUSSIA; and that the most emi-  
 “ nent SERDAR <sup>x</sup>, AMUR ASLAN KHAN, NEDSCHEFF BEG, and other com-  
 “ manders did receive your eminence on the borders of PERSIA, but  
 “ made such bad preparations for your journey through SHIRVAN, as  
 “ created a disgust, for which they shall be accountable.

“ And whereas it has been represented to our majesty, that your emi-  
 “ nence is endowed with good understanding, a quick insight, and a  
 “ decent behaviour in all things<sup>y</sup>; and sent expressly with so great a  
 “ power to our high court, to establish amity; therefore we hope you will  
 “ not be offended on account of these accidents. And as we are inclined  
 “ to support the friendship and harmony between our sovereign majesty  
 “ and her imperial majesty of RUSSIA; and likewise to shew you all  
 “ honour, we desire you will proceed with the utmost confidence to our  
 “ high court. Given in the month of REDSHEBEL 1160<sup>z</sup>.”

This new king was too much inclined to peace, to neglect the cul-  
 tivation of a good understanding with his neighbours; and to be wanting  
 in nothing that could be agreeable to RUSSIA, he prepared an embassy  
 with a view to make a defensive and offensive alliance with that court,  
 and also a treaty of commerce, which might be beneficial to the sub-  
 jects of both empires. Emissaries from the PERSIAN court were actu-  
 ally

<sup>x</sup> General.

<sup>y</sup> This is the common flattering file of the PERSIANS.

<sup>z</sup> The beginning of JULY 1747, sent from MESCHED. The new SHAH was yet at MESCHED, and appointed convoys for the ambassador, to conduct him from ASTRABAD to DSHADSHIRIM and ESFERAIM.



ally sent to ASTRACHAN<sup>a</sup>. The RUSSIANS proceed with great caution in their oriental treaties, and generally divert the PERSIANS in the last mentioned city for several months, before they conduct them to court. Under the precarious circumstances of the PERSIAN king, doubtless many reasons occurred for acting with reserve. 1747.

The beginning of this year opened a new scene, not less fatal or bloody than any of the preceding. AMUR ASLAN KHAN, who commanded in the western provinces, and resided at TAVRIS, already gave indications of his design to revolt. The SHAH being arrived at ASHREFF, sent several messages to him, desiring him to come to court: he feigned various excuses, and at length threw off the mask by killing the couriers whom the king had appointed to conduct him. This event was soon followed by an act of hostility, not only in violation of his duty as a subject, but also of the laws of justice and hospitality. To what extremities will not a false ambition hurry its votaries! This KHAN, who was the exact copy of his tutor and late master NADIR SHAH, began to be sensible of the impossibility of supporting an army without money; nor could he procure any considerable supplies from ADERBEITZAN, SHIRVAN, or any of the neighbouring provinces where his jurisdiction reached: he therefore resolved to obtain by robbery, what he could not procure by any appearance of equity. He knew that the ENGLISH factors in RESHD were possessed of a sum of money, which no doubt was represented to him as much larger than it really was; he therefore sent RIZA KOULI KHAN with a body of seventeen hundred AFGHANS, to pillage these unfortunate strangers, who had given him no offence. These forces arrived in RESHD the twentieth of JANUARY. The governor, ACHMED KHAN, retired to LAHIJAN, not being in a capacity to protect the city: thus they were left to follow the dictates of their own wild suggestions; whilst the villainy of some of the inhabitants prompted them to share the plunder, by purchasing the stolen goods at a very inconsiderable price<sup>b</sup>. The ENGLISH factors took the precaution to retire with their money; but their effects became a prey, and were totally pillaged, with circumstances that proved the madness of the times, and the

<sup>a</sup> See Vol. II. page 93.

<sup>b</sup> See Vol. II. page 90.



1748. the destructive consequences<sup>c</sup> of civil war. The city of RESHD however escaped being plundered; for it seemed to be the intention of AMUR ASLAN KHAN, to support some reputation, in hopes of being acknowledged in a very short time as the sovereign of PERSIA.

The news of this incursion no sooner reached ASHREFF, than ADIL SHAH dispatched a body of his troops to RESHD. The AFGHANS, loaded with their plunder, were marching back, but were reached no further than KESKAR, when ACHMED KHAN, at the head of the SHAH's troops, came up with them, and totally defeated them<sup>d</sup>. Their spoil fell into the hands of the SHAH's forces, who it was but natural to expect, as they were sent for the support of government, and the succour of the injured, should have made it their chief business to obtain restitution; but this was a degree of virtue which they did not even attempt. AMUR ASLAN KHAN having met with this defeat, resolved to remain only on the defensive; he was already in correspondency with the king's brother, IBRAHIM MYRZA, and if we may judge from circumstances, was the chief promoter of the rebellion of this young prince against his brother; secretly intending to reap the fruits of that quarrel, in which he hoped to see them soon involved; since, by playing one against the other, his expectations were in the highest degree flattered, that he should obtain the diadem himself.

ADIL SHAH finding that he had a formidable enemy to contend with in the west, sent orders to his brother IBRAHIM in ISFAHAN, to come to his succour with a large body of forces, designing as soon as the spring was a little farther advanced, to march against AMUR ASLAN KHAN. IBRAHIM, who was now only twenty-two years of age, in the vanity of his heart, thought it absurd, at the head of a numerous body of forces, to be any thing less than a king: the revolt of AMUR ASLAN KHAN had, in his fond imagination, prepared so easy a means of obtaining the diadem, that he had little more to do than to receive it. But in order to bring about another revolution, it was necessary to render his brother's government odious to the people, at least to secure the inclination of the officers and

<sup>c</sup> See Vol. II. page 90, 91.

<sup>d</sup> See Vol. II. page 91.



and foldiers under his command. Here again religion was the plea, and the very motive which ought to have difpofed their minds to a grateful fubmiffion to the difpenfation of providence, was prostituted to the purpofes of wild ambition. 1748.

ALI KOULI KHAN, from a certain generofity of difpofition, had ever fince he was appointed governor of MESCHED, fhewn a particular regard to the chriftians: his favourite wife was a GEORGIAN lady of the religion of her country, and for whom he had an entire affection. Being now advanced to the regal dignity, he promoted her brother ZORAB KHAN to the office of his treafurer, and commander of his army. The SHAH feemed in this to err in judgment, as it had not been lately a practice to commit fo high a trust to one born a chriftian, and who, it might be prefumed, ftill inclined to that perfuafion. This was the pretended caufe of IBRAHIM'S difaffection to his brother.

The SHAH had foon reason to fear that the authority which he had given to IBRAHIM MYRZA to raife forces, was not employed agreeably to his intentions. Under this apprehenfion, he fent his brother-in-law ZORAB KHAN to ISFAHAN with the ftrongeft affurances of his affection, and with promifes to gratify him in any thing that was reasonable; and that he might fee by the dignity of the meffenger, in what high eftem he held him. It is reasonable to prefume that the SHAH was fincere, and from thence flattered himfelf into a belief that his brother IBRAHIM might be won over to a fense of duty. If thefe were not his fentiments, it was highly impolitic to trust his brother-in-law in the poffeffion of his enemy: the event proved that this young man was not to be brought over by intreaties, for ZORAB KHAN foon after his arrival was treacheroufly put to death as he was bathing.

IBRAHIM MYRZA having thus thrown off the mask, wrote to MEHTIE KHAN<sup>e</sup>, one of the SHAH'S generals, inviting him and the foldiers under his command to take part with him againft the king. He could not corrupt this general, but he brought over part of his forces. The

SHAH

<sup>e</sup> This is the man who wrote NADIR'S history, which has never yet appeared in the world, nor probably never will.



1748. SHAH finding his security thus endangered, wrote to his brother in very affectionate and pathetic terms, representing the dreadful calamities of civil war, and that his revolt must necessarily bring on the total ruin of their poor country, already in an expiring condition, with the wounds it had received by the cruelty and ambition of their uncle: at the same time he made proposals of a composition, which might gratify his brother's desire of a state in a great measure independent. Those who wished well to the tranquillity of PERSIA, flattered themselves with some hopes, that possibly the two brothers might, by sharing the sovereignty, unite in one common interest, and by quashing AMUR ASLAN KHAN, restore the kingdom to peace; but that was only a fond presumption: the same disposition which determined IBRAHIM to revolt, rendered a compromise of that kind impracticable, were such union consistent in the nature of things.

In the mean while, the minds of the people were distracted with anxiety, concerning the issue of a war, which would probably afford occasion for fresh competitions, and involve their unhappy country in inextricable miseries. No recourse now remained but that of arms. In the month of MAY, ADIL SHAH marched with a great body of forces from MAZANDERAN, through a narrow pass in mount TAURUS, towards the plains of CASBIN, where he had appointed his rendezvous. ACHMED KHAN, with a strong reinforcement from GHILAN, was ordered to march through the streights of that province to meet him. IBRAHIM MYRZA at the head of his army, had already left ISFAHAN, and having notice of the intended junction of his brother's armies, made forced marches in order to intercept ACHMED KHAN, which he accomplished without the loss of any blood. This unhappy general fell in with the enemy's camp early in the morning, mistaking it for a body of forces belonging to the SHAH his master, and was taken prisoner by IBRAHIM MYRZA. We have already mentioned, that ACHMED KHAN gave the first check to the arms of AMUR ASLAN KHAN. IBRAHIM therefore thought he could not make his court more agreeably to his confederate, than by sending this general to be sacrificed. AMUR ASLAN was too much a copy of NADIR, to have any mercy; and ordered ACHMED as soon



as he arrived, to be brought to the entrance of his tent, where he gratified his revenge, by seeing him cut to pieces. 1748.

ADIL SHAH advancing towards his rebellious brother, who feigned a retreat, was drawn into a snare. Being attacked in flank by a great body of AFGHANS, he was deserted by his army in so shameful a manner, that he lost the day without putting it to the issue of a battle. He behaved with great personal valour and intrepidity, killing several with his own hands; till at length seeing his forces scattered, he left the field, and retired to TÆHIRAN. There finding himself abandoned, and utterly incapable of collecting his army, after three days he went to IBRAHIM'S camp, and surrendered himself; the only proof of mercy he received from this unnatural brother, was in being suffered to live a short time; but in that interval it was not permitted him to see his brother, nor even to enjoy the light, for his eyes were cut out immediately.

Thus ended the short and unhappy reign of ADIL SHAH. He was a man of an easy placid temper, and might in times of less corruption have made a good king; but he does not appear to have had a genius equal to so weighty a task, as the government of so impious a people. All we can say of him is, that he has been the only prince since NADIR, who has been considered as a sovereign by any foreign state: that he meant to support his government upon principles the reverse of NADIR'S; and, had he lived, that he would, to all appearance, have done justice to those<sup>f</sup>, who suffered by the villainy of AMUR ASLAN KHAN.

Notwithstanding his success, IBRAHIM retained the name of MYRZA, declining that of SHAH. It is probable he was the more induced to this reserve, by the tokens which AMUR ASLAN KHAN immediately gave of a design of usurping the sovereignty. This KHAN was turned of sixty years of age, and could not but consider IBRAHIM as a boy by no means entitled to the diadem, compared with himself. He was at the head of thirty thousand men enured to war under the command of NADIR, and had

<sup>f</sup> The BRITISH merchants mentioned already.

1748. had acquired a great proficiency in the science of arms, as well as political intrigue. In the last he had already succeeded, by having been one great instrument in the defeat of ADIL SHAH. He was too much of the genius of his old master, to promise PERSIA that repose for which she languished, but which never could be found by means so apparently destructive of the end.

1749. After resting his troops, and dividing the spoil taken from his brother, IBRAHIM prepared for a visit to AMUR ASLAN KHAN, and for that purpose directed his march towards SHIRVAN. Youthful as he was, he acted the politician, preferring the removal of his competitor by assassination, rather than to put his fortune to the issue of a battle. Art and contrivance not founded in justice, often betray their own cause. The crafty AMUR ASLAN was thus taken in the snare he had laid for others, and fell a sacrifice to his ambition. What became of his army is not said, we may presume it was dispersed.

In the mean while the eastern parts of the empire being left unawed by the presence of an army, the inhabitants espoused the cause of the young SHAHROKH already mentioned; and he was declared king, at MESCHED. The officers and persons of distinction in that quarter were the more disposed to take this step, as it gave them an opportunity, under the name of a regal authority, to possess themselves of the great riches which yet remained at KÆLAT. In such a confusion of affairs, PERSIA might be easily imposed on with regard to the identity of this person: happy were it for that distracted country, if such imposition could have restored it to tranquillity.

IBRAHIM MYRZA was now informed concerning his new adversary. Flushed with conquest, he had extended his liberality beyond the prudence of a general, or the experience of more advanced years. At length he found himself grown poor and incapable of gratifying the demands of his army, which was chiefly composed of AFGHANS, not disposed to follow their leader, without either pay, or provision. There was no possibility of exacting contributions in a country already drained, not of money  
I only,



only, but of almost every thing necessary to the support of life. Many of his soldiers knowing where to find another master, who was reputed rich, deserted. What constancy could he expect from men who had just turned their arms against a prince whom they acknowledged a few months before as the deliverer of their country from the yoke of insupportable tyranny! Thus circumstanced, IBRAHIM was induced to hasten his march eastward, as well to obtain a fresh supply of money, as to quash his enemy. He had not advanced far, when he met with some partisans of SHAHROKH. His van-guard having reached TÆHIRAN, were refused a supply of provisions: IBRAHIM immediately sent EMIR KHAN, the general of his artillery, with his cannon and a strong detachment, to compel the inhabitants to a compliance. It appears that EMIR KHAN had no opinion of his master's cause, or was secretly dissatisfied; in short, he took the opportunity to abandon IBRAHIM, and join his opponents: for as soon as this prince came under the walls of the town, EMIR KHAN turned the cannon upon him, and falling out at the same time, by this unexpected attack dispersed his army. It is probable that IBRAHIM ended his life upon this occasion, as we hear nothing more of him from that time. Thus did Providence bring to confusion this rash youth, who with less vanity, and a little more understanding, might have operated with his brother, and instead of involving his country in misery, restored it to a prosperous condition.

SHAHROKH SHAH was now without a competitor. During these commotions, the AFGHANS of KANDAHAR, or some other subjects in the eastern frontier<sup>s</sup>, revolted: SHAHROKH having formed a considerable army, marched against them. What the success of this enterprize was, my authorities are silent: but in his absence from KHORASAN, appeared a fifth competitor. There was an uncle of SHAH TÆHMAS, named SULIMAN, who, during the reign of NADIR, having given no marks of ambition, and taken the habit of a MULLAH, lived quiet and unmolested. This man was now dragged to the throne as it were on purpose to be slaughtered: his adherents had prevailed on him to assume the diadem; but his reign was very short, for upon SHAHROKH's return he became

<sup>s</sup> This particular I never heard with any exactness.

1750. came a sacrifice. It is said that one ISMAEL then set up against SHAH-ROKH. We have great reason to believe, that the latter, for some time, promised fair to maintain himself in the throne, till at length he was obliged to yield to SHAH DOUB, of whose family I have no information.

HERACLIUS, a GEORGIAN prince, then appeared on the stage, whose fortune is yet said to prevail over all competition. This prince's being a christian, seems to render his establishment very difficult; nor is it easy to imagine that the TURKS will be idle spectators of a christian king of PERSIA. They have already had the satisfaction to see the deepest humiliation of their hereditary enemy. NADIR, who died their fields with blood, and whose very name so often made them tremble, has, by the consequences of his tyranny, reduced PERSIA more effectually, than could have been performed by any foreign enemy. Though the sword is not the just instrument of propagating the faith of the true MESSIAH, yet it is a circumstance worthy of attention, that the GEORGIANS are a very brave people, and may, by the countenance of the RUSSIANS, be capable of carrying greater designs into execution than the world is at present aware of.

When we consider the fate of kingdoms, we ought to observe, how men are led astray by their passions, against the light of their own minds. How infatuated were the PERSIANS, or how lost to all sense of virtue, after a series of bitter calamities, to depose their true king, when the experience of ages had taught them there could be no security under an usurper. But what were they to expect from such a king as NADIR KOULI, whose hands were so deeply imbrued in blood? What could be expected, but that a man of his genius and principles, bred up to murder and rapine from his earliest life, would bring all things into confusion? Yet even in the politer regions of the world, such are the impressions which mankind ordinarily receive from military achievements, that events which ought to draw tears for the distressed of human nature, are made the subject of joy and exultation, till a reverse of fortune gives a quick sense of the fatal effects of such false glory. How execrably pernicious are the fond notions of happiness, arising from the successful



ful invasion of another's right! Crimes, for which every law, divine and human, condemn a private man to death, become warrantable by the laws of arms. What wisdom and integrity ought to wield the sword, which at best is but the instrument of divine justice for the correction of national crimes and offences!

1750.

It cannot be from the original constitution of things, that the Almighty has ordained war as essential to the well-being of mankind. The state of nature is a state of peace; but the shedding of human blood becomes familiar by habit, and a continued course of foreign wars prepares the minds of a people for every desperate enterprize, of which the worst is intestine broils; and these have at length extinguished the glory of PERSIA. What the fate of that wretched country will be, heaven only knows: but this is evident, that the splendor of their monarchy, all their monuments of art and labour, with all the industry of past ages, are swallowed up by the ravages of war. What numbers of their towns, their cities, their fruitful plains and delicious mountains, are become a dreary waste, and the habitation of wolves!

The fate of empires is a subject the most interesting. Reason and religion teach us to implore the almighty disposer of events, to succour mankind in general; we ought then to send up our prayers, that his mercy may extend to the PERSIANS, and restore them to a just sense of virtue, that their nation may again become great and happy.

F I N I S.





---

# I N D E X,

## To VOL. III, and IV.

Note, *The numerals refer to the volumes, and the figures to the pages.*

### A.

**A**BAS the GREAT, a cruel prince, iii. 19. came into the world with his hands bloody, *ibid.* instances of his cruelty, *ibid.* had not a proper education, iii. 20. orders his son to be blinded, *ibid.* builds a mosque at Meshed to discourage the Persians pilgrimage to Mecca or Medina, iv. 21.

ABAS II. one of the best kings of the Sefies, iii. 20, 21. his reign and death, iii. 21.

ABAS III. an infant, preferred to his father, iv. 73. the sovereignty in the hands of Kouli Khan, *ibid.* the young Shah dies, iv. 123.

ABDALLAH BASHA, a Turkish general, Casbin surrendered to him, iii. 241. defeats Tæhmas's troops before Ardeville, iii. 242. retreats to Cars, iv. 120.

ABDALLAH KOUPROLI gives battle to Kouli Khan in the valley of Arpakavi, iv. 119. is slain with many thousand Turks, iv. 120.

ABDALLAH KOUPROLI, son of the Seraskier Kouproli, slain at the battle of Cars, iv. 253.

ABDOLLEES, apply to Abas king of Persia for relief against the Ousbeg Tartars, iii. 25. a nation divided into tribes, iii. 62. dissatisfied with their subjection to Persia, *ibid.*

ABDUL AZIZ KHAN, formerly a mule-driver, iii. 233. commandant of Julfa, *ibid.* is sent by Ashreff ambassador to the Ottoman court, *ibid.* admitted to an audience of the Grand Vizir, iii. 236. his conferences with the Turkish ministers, iii. 236, 237. takes his leave, iii. 240. is arrested on the road by order of the Grand Signior, *ibid.*

ABDUL BAKI KHAN, Nadir's ambassador to Turkey, iv. 133. concludes a peace, iv. 135.

ACHMED, Grand Signior, dethroned, and succeeded by his nephew Mahommed, iv. 51.

ACHMED AGA, governor of Isfahan, iii. 123. drives the Afghans from the bridge of Shirafs, iii. 123. makes a folly to open a passage for provisions, iii. 138. is defeated by the treachery of the Vali of Arabia, *ibid.* his conduct unjustly blamed by Shah Husein, *ibid.* his death, iii. 139.

ACHMED, basha of Bagdad, takes possession of Loristan, iii. 231. gives the Afghans battle, iii. 247. is defeated, iii. 248. negotiates a peace with the Persians, iv. 63, 64. his vigilance, iv. 81, 83. his letter to the Grand Signior upon the defeat of the Persians, iv. 78, &c. prepares to stand another siege, iv. 109, 110. his orders from the Ottoman court concerning a treaty with Nadir Shah, iv. 133. his conduct towards the Arabians, iv. 222, 223. suspected of a correspondence with the Persian king, iv. 223. his critical circumstances, iv. 234. his parts and generosity, *ibid.* the Turks disquieted at the friendship between him and Nadir, iv. 235. established by the Ottoman court in his government, iv. 236. an ambassador sent to him by Nadir, iv. 237.

ACHMED KHAN, a Persian general, flies from the tyranny of Nadir to Constantinople, iv. 249. distrusted, afterwards received into the confidence of the Turks, *ibid.* defeats a body of Afghans returning with the plunder of the British factors at Reshd, iv. 294. taken by Ibrahim Myrza, and sent to Amur Asian Khan, who destroys him, iv. 298, 299.



# I N D E X.

- AFGHANS**, the authors of the catastrophe in Persia, iii. 22. derive their genealogy, iii. 23. inhabit mountains near the Moghol's empire, *ibid.* a colony of this family embraces the Mahomedan religion, *ibid.* their various situation by contest between the king of Persia and the Moghol, iii. 25, 26. a long time faithful to the king of Persia, iii. 27. disposed to revolt, iii. 27. cruelly used by the Persian troops, iii. 28, 29. complain of Gurghin-Khan, iii. 29. the Afghans and Persians treat one another as heretics, iii. 35. they revolt, iii. 43, 44. nominate a successor to Mir-vais, iii. 59. their defeat at Khermān, iii. 71. their pacific disposition, iii. 88, 96. obtain a great victory at Gulnabad, iii. 108. take Farabad and Julfa, iii. 114, 118. their barbarities to the Armenians, *ibid.* put the district of Isfahan to the sword, iii. 126. defeat the troops going to relieve Isfahan, iii. 129. their barbarity to the Persians, iii. 143. ascend the throne of Persia, iii. 145. a new colony of Afghans arrive at Isfahan, iii. 167. oblige Maghmud to declare Ashreff his successor, iii. 205. their conspiracy in favour of Ashreff, iii. 211. totally routed by Tāhmas, iii. 223. defeated at Mourtchakhor, iv. 31. defeated at Shirāfs, iv. 38. eat horse-flesh, iv. 147. oppose Nadir's passage through the defiles, iv. 200. plunder the British factors, iv. 293. are defeated, iv. 294.
- AKBAR**, emperor of India, his character set in contrast with Nadir's, iv. 219, &c. this emperor's letter to the king of Portugal, *ibid.*
- ALEXANDER the GREAT**, marches into Asia, iii. 11. passes the Granicus, *ibid.* obtains a victory over the Persians, iii. 12. many princes submit to him, *ibid.* his army increases, *ibid.* died eight years after his conquest, *ibid.* his acquisitions divided among the partners of his victories, *ibid.* he and Nadir Shah, both made an expedition into India, iv. 143. a comparison of their characters, iv. 143, 144. their desire of fame and glory, iv. 143. few countries that have not had their Alexanders and Nadirs, iv. 144. confounded the rules of religion and morality, *ibid.* moral reflexions on false glory, iv. 144, 145. the motives of their invading India, iv. 145. how long since Alexander made his expedition, *ibid.* his coming into India, and subduing king Porus, iv. 162, 163. a comparison between Alexander's and Nadir's restoring the conquered kingdoms to the Indian kings, iv. 194.
- ALĪ KOULI KHĀN**, son of Ibrahim Khan, Nadir's brother, considered as successor to Nadir, iv. 246. his revolt from Nadir, iv. 259. comes to Mesched on his uncle's death, iv. 285. elected king of Persia, *ibid.* takes the name of Adil Shah, *ibid.* his clemency, *ibid.* kills his nearest relations, *ibid.* his cruelty to his uncle's women, iv. 206. abandons himself to women and wine, *ibid.* sends his brother Ibrahim Myrza for recruits at Isfahan, *ibid.* confesses having a share in the murder of his uncle, *ibid.* his decree sent to Reshd after his uncle's death, iv. 287. marches to Ashreff, iv. 289. cultivates an amity with the Turks and Russians, iv. 290. his letter with pacific instructions to the Russian ambassador, *ibid.* desirous of making an alliance with that court, iv. 292. his favourite wife of the christian religion, iv. 293. marches with his troops against his brother, iv. 298. defeated by his brother, iv. 207. surrenders himself, is put to death, *ibid.* his short and unhappy reign, *ibid.* his character, *ibid.*
- AMAN OLA** defeats the troops going to the relief of Isfahan, iii. 129. his great cruelty, iii. 153. enters Casbin, *ibid.* treats the inhabitants with great rigour, iii. 157. wounded in the insurrection at Casbin, and makes his escape, iii. 138. his pretensions to a share of the treasure and sovereignty, iii. 183. compromised, iii. 184. affronted by Maghmud, iii. 211. put to death by order of Ashreff, iii. 218.
- AMUR ASLAN KHAN** acquaints Shah Tāhmas of Ashreff's design to seize his person, iii. 224. saves himself by flight, iii. 225. acknowledges the sovereignty of Adil Shah, iv. 290. an officer of great experience, *ibid.* a favourite and copy of Nadir, iv. 290, 293. revolts from Adil Shah, iv. 293. sends a body of Afghans to pillage the English factors in Reshd, iv. 293. promotes the rebellion of Ibrahim Myrza, *ibid.* expects the diadem



# I N D E X.

- diadem himself, *ibid.* cut off by Ibrahim Myrza, iv. 298.
- ARABIA, Vali of, his conduct at the battle of Gulnabad, iii. 106, 107, 108. his speech at the Divan after that battle, iii. 111. made governor of Isfahan, iii. 112. his treachery, iii. 117, 123, 124, 125, 131. his artifices and evasions, iii. 137. condemned by Maghmud to perpetual imprisonment, iii. 151.
- ARABIANS, rebel against the Persian government, iv. 181. two tribes revolt from the Turks, iv. 232. are defeated by Suliman, *ibid.* turbulent and inconstant, *ibid.* poverty the best expedient to keep them humble, *ibid.*
- ARMENIA, the adventures of the pretended successor to that kingdom, iii. 40. great part of this country brought under the Turkish yoke, iii. 195.
- ARMENIAN patriarch, Nadir's extraordinary conduct towards him, iv. 216.
- ARMENIANS, a colony settled at Julfa, iii. 115. in a thriving condition, *ibid.* distrusted by the Persians, iii. 117. taxed by Maghmud, iii. 165. heads of three of them cut off, *ibid.* badly used by Tæhmas Shah, iii. 191. priests read the red gospel over Maghmud, iii. 209. gain victory over the Turks, iii. 252. distressed by Nadir's taxes, leave their habitations, iv. 230.
- ARNAUD, of Marseilles, ransoms Topal Osman from slavery, iv. 102. visits Osman, then the grand vizir, iv. 105.
- ARSACES succeeds his father Darius, iii. 10. takes the name of Artaxerxes II. *ibid.* from his great memory called Mnemon, *ibid.* in his reign the famous retreat of Xenophon, *ibid.* he dies, *ibid.*
- ARSES, advanced to the throne by Bagoas, iii. 11. assassinated, *ibid.*
- ARSITES disputes the crown with Darius, iii. 10. gains two victories, *ibid.* his soldiers corrupted, he is put to death, *ibid.*
- ARTAXERXES, the son of Xerxes, ascends the throne, iii. 8.
- ARTEMISIUM, the Grecians obtain a victory over the Persians at sea, iii. 7.
- ASHREFF, his father deprived of his life and throne by Maghmud, iii. 134. behaves with prudence and valour, *ibid.* is condemned by Maghmud, iii. 135. is acquitted, iii. 135, 136. quits the army, iii. 148. returns from Kandahar much beloved, iii. 205. chosen sultan of Persia, iii. 211. his character, iii. 215. causes the guards and confidents of Maghmud to be put to death, iii. 215. his artful behaviour to Shah Husscin, iii. 217. punishes the conspirators who placed him on the throne, iii. 218. his cruelty to his brother, iii. 221. endeavours to render himself popular by the mildness of his administration, *ibid.* and to have his sovereignty acknowledged in Kandahar, iii. 222. forms a design of seizing Shah Tæhmas, *ibid.* takes Koom, iii. 225. massacres the Persian lords who had disclosed his designs upon Tæhmas, iii. 226. terrified by the Ottoman arms, sends an ambassador to the Port, iii. 235. fortifies Isfahan, iii. 244. marches an army to meet Achmed Basha, iii. 245. his stratagem to avoid a battle with the Turks, iii. 246. gains a victory over the Turks, iii. 248. his artful behaviour to them, iii. 250. his prudent administration, iii. 253. concludes a treaty of peace with the port, iii. 254. sends an ambassador to Constantinople, iv. 25. marches to Damgoon, and is defeated, iv. 28, 29. retreats to Isfahan, and incamps at Mourtchakhor, iv. 29. defeated at that place, iv. 31. murders Shah Husscin, and flies from Isfahan, iv. 32. marches to Shirafs, iv. 37. is defeated there, iv. 38. his flight, distress, and death, iv. 39, 40. usurpation of the Afghans ended, iv. 40.
- ASSYRIAN empire, the first monarchy, iii. 1.
- ASTABAT, the Turks desert the Persians here, iv. 42.
- ASTRABAD, rebellion in this province, iv. 244. Mahommed Haslan chosen for their leader, *ibid.* takes the capital, seizes Nadir's treasure, and plunders the British caravan, iv. 245. defeated by the Shah's troops, *ibid.* the province ruined by this rebellion, *ibid.* the amount of the loss by the plunder of the British caravan paid by Nadir's order to the factors, *ibid.*
- ATHEMAT DOULET, prime minister, confined, and his eyes put out, iii. 73. articles of accusation against him, iii. 75. his answer and defence, iii. 76, &c. his death and character, iii. 82, &c.

AVARICE,



# I N D E X.

**AVARICE**, its effects, iv. 233. an instance of it in the Turkish Basnas, iv. 253.

## B.

**BABULU KHAN**, governor of Khorasan, receives Nadir in the station of a gentleman-usher, iv. 5. neglects Nadir, iv. 7. disgraces him, iv. 8.

**BABYLON** revolts from the king of Persia, iii. 5. is besieged, and taken by a stratagem of Zopyrus, *ibid.*

**BACTIARIANS**, their country invaded by the Turks, iii. 231. a division between the Bactiaris and Lorianis, iii. 231. spirit of dissension brings on the disgrace of both nations, *ibid.* the Bactiaris and Balouchees revolt from Nadir, iv. 239, 240.

**BAGDAT**, its situation on the Tigris, iv. 78. its antiquity, fortification, and inhabitants, iv. 79, 80. besieged by Kouli Khan, iv. 81. a great Turkish army assemble here in defiance against Nadir, iv. 131.

**BAGOAS** kills Ochus, king of Persia, iii. 11. places Arses on the throne, *ibid.* causes him and his family to be assassinated, *ibid.* is compelled to drink the poison he had prepared for the king Darius Codomanus, *ibid.*

**BASSORA**, under alarm from the Arabs, iv. 222. threatened with a siege from the Persians, iv. 223. the swelling of the Euphrates occasions an inundation and an epidemical disorder, iv. 253. besieged by the Persians, iv. 237. plunder, slaughter, and other consequences, *ibid.*

**BENDER ABASSI**, the Afghans repulsed, iii. 189.

**BENGAL**, the Vakeel, his sarcasm, iv. 186. kills himself and family with poison, *ibid.*

**BEN-ISFAHAN**, the gallant behaviour of its inhabitants, iii. 189. defeat the Afghans, iii. 167. surrenders by capitulation, iii. 166, 167.

## C.

**CABUL**, besieged by Nadir, iv. 151. taken by storm, *ibid.* puts Nadir in possession of great treasure, iv. 152. the key of the northern parts of India, iv. 155.

**CAMBYSES** sends Cyrus to assist Cyaxares, iii. 2.

**CAMBYSES**, son of Cyrus, ascends the throne of Persia, iii. 3. subdues the Egyptians, *ibid.* invades Ethiopia, iii. 4. his troops destroyed by famine, *ibid.* causes his brother Smerdis to be murdered, *ibid.* destroys Thebes, *ibid.* causes his sister Meroe to be murdered, iii. 4. his great cruelty, *ibid.* many of his great officers buried alive, *ibid.* shoots his cup-bearer through the heart, *ibid.* an impostor usurps his crown, *ibid.* dies of an accidental wound by his own sword, iii. 5. supposed to be Ahasuerus mentioned in scripture, *ibid.*

**CARA ACHMED**, made general of the Turkish army, iv. 120.

**CARS**, the Turks, defeated by the Persians, iv. 253.

**CASBIN**, ceded to Aman Ola, iii. 153. it surrenders to him, *ibid.* the inhabitants drive away the Afghans, iii. 157. surrenders to the Turkish general, iii. 241. declares for Ashreff, iii. 244.

**CASHAN**, surrendered to Zeberdest Khan, iii. 184.

**CHANTROU**, Nadir's passage obstructed for want of a bridge, iv. 200.

**CIMON**, his success against the Persians, iii. 8. carries the plunder to Athens, *ibid.* compels the Persians to accept of peace, iii. 9.

**CLIGI**, a tribe of the Afghans, almost destroyed by Mahommed. iii. 23.

**COHKILAN**, Khan of, in full march to relieve Isfahan, iii. 132. is attacked by the Afghans, *ibid.* returns to his province, *ibid.* Maghmud loses a great part of his army in attempting to reduce this province, iii. 190.

**CONSTANTINOPLE**, great rejoicings on the victory of the Turks over the Persians, iii. 197.

**CRÆSUS**, taken prisoner by Cyrus, iii. 2. restored to his throne, *ibid.*

**CYRUS** the GREAT, the Persian empire founded by him, iii. 1. his descent, iii. 2. gains a victory over the Babylonians, *ibid.* a second time victorious, *ibid.* takes Sardis, and makes Cræsus king of Lydia prisoner, *ibid.* subdues the Lesser Asia, and other countries, *ibid.* puts Balsazar and his courtiers to the sword, *ibid.* fulfils the prophesy of Daniel, *ibid.* is the sole monarch of the empire of Persia, iii. 3. publishes an edict for the building



# I N D E X.

building the temple of Jerusalem, *ibid.* his character and death, *ibid.*

CYRUS, Darius's son, his father leaves him the dominions of the Lesser Asia, iii. 10.

## D.

DAGISTAN, the Russian general arrives here, iv. 226. the Lesgees apply to him, *ibid.* Nadir meets with a repulse here, iv. 236, 238.

DAMGOON, the Afghans defeated here by the Persians, iv. 30.

DARIUS, son of Hyftaspes, elected king, iii. 5. marries two of the daughters of Cyrus, *ibid.* orders the temple of Jerusalem to be built, *ibid.* requires the Jewish priests to pray for him, *ibid.* takes Babylon, *ibid.* causes 3000 citizens to be impaled, and their walls to be demolished, iii. 6. invades Scythia, iii. 6. retreats, *ibid.* invades India, and subdues the Ionians, *ibid.* sends Mardonius against the Athenians, *ibid.* invades Greece, and becomes master of the islands in the Ægean sea, *ibid.* his death, iii. 7.

DARIUS surnamed Codomanus, king of Persia, iii. 11. compels Bagoas to drink the poison he had prepared for him, *ibid.* an accomplished prince, *ibid.* the Grecians unite against him, *ibid.* marches to meet Alexander, iii. 12. defeated, and his wife, mother and children made prisoners, *ibid.*

DEHLIE, the Indian army pitch their tents in this neighbourhood, iv. 158. the castle and city in Nadir's hands, iv. 172. a mob kills Persian horsemen, iv. 176. massacre in this city, iv. 176.

DERBEND, the inhabitants suffer by famine, iv. 226. Nadir marches from hence to Mogan, iv. 236. the Lesgees alarm the garrison, iv. 241. and distress the city, iv. 242.

DEVUAN KHAN, prime minister of India, enmity between him and Nizam Al Muluck, iv. 140. they command the Indian army, iv. 158. he is wounded and dies, iv. 166, 167.

## E.

ELEPHANTS, at the head of the Indian army, iv. 166. the stratagem used by Nadir to oppose these animals, *ibid.*

VOL. IV.

EMIR HEMSE, comes to the throne of Persia, iii. 17. murdered by the contrivance of his brother, *ibid.*

EMIR KHAN, general of Ibrahim's artillery, joins his opponents, iv. 299. turns the cannon upon him at Tæhram, and disperses his army, *ibid.*

ERETRIA, destroyed by Darius, iii. 6.

ERIVAN, the capital of Armenia, besieged by the Turks, iii. 192, 193. surrenders by capitulation, iii. 194. taken by Kouli Khan, iv. 121. a great battle fought near it between the Persians and Turks, iv. 252. the latter defeated, *ibid.*

ERZEROUM, the Turks alarmed at Nadir's demands, assemble an army near this place, iv. 230.

ETHIOPIANS, invaded by Cambyfes, iii. 4.

EVANGELISTS, Nadir orders a translation to be made into Persian, iv. 217.

EUROPEAN traders, at Isfahan, heavy contributions laid upon them by Maghmud, iii. 164.

EZADALLAH, kills his father, and is acknowledged chief of the tribe, iii. 62. defeats the Persian army, and takes Herat, *ibid.* obtains a great victory over the Persians, iii. 66.

## F.

FALSE GLORY, reflexions on its bad consequences, iv. 266.

FARABAD, a country palace near Isfahan, iii. 114. a description of it, *ibid.* the Afghans take possession of it, *ibid.*

FENDOUN, KHAN of the Kourds, commands Shah Tæhmas's troops, iii. 171. his cruelty, *ibid.* defeated by the Afghans, *ibid.*

## G.

GALITZEN KNEZ, Russian ambassador, a letter from Kouli Khan to him, on Adil Shah's accession to the throne, iv. 290.

GEORGIANS, their famous retreat from Kandahar, iii. 49, 50. no assistance given by them to Shah Hussein, iii. 133. the Turks have a view to Georgia, iii. 175. it is brought under their dominion, iii. 178. courage of a woman of this country, iii. 186. descendents of the ancient Iberians, iv. 113. a description of them, iv. 113,

R r

114.

## I N D E X.

114. refuse sending the sons of their nobility to Nadir's camp, iv. 158. a brave people, and capable of great designs, iv. 300.
- GHEZ**, its situation, iii. 165, 166. besieged and taken, iii. 166. of great service to the Afghans, *ibid.*
- GHILAN**, subdued by Peter the Great, iii. 178. this and other towns on the Caspian yielded to the Czar by treaty, 181. iii.
- GHULPAIGAN**, a town attached to Tæhmas, iii. 170. besieged by Maghmud, *ibid.* obliged to submit to him, iii. 172.
- GRECIANS** obtain a victory over the Persian fleet, iii. 7.
- GURGHIN-KHAN**, prince of Georgia, his character, iii. 27, 28. made governor of Kandahar, and oppresses that province, iii. 28. sends Mir-vais to Isfahan, iii. 30. his conduct on the return of Mir-vais, iii. 42. demands the daughter of Mir-vais, iii. 43. Mir-vais gains his confidence, iii. 45. massacred with all his retinue, iii. 47.
- GULNABAD**, an account of the battle betwixt the Persians and Afghans, iii. 106. the Vali of Arabia's conduct censured, iii. 107, 108. the cause of the success of the Afghans, iii. 108.
- ### H.
- HAMADAN**, besieged by the Turks, iii. 196. a treaty of peace concluded here between the Turks and Afghans, iii. 254. taken by Kouli Khan, iv. 41. a battle here, wherein the Turks are victorious over the Persians, iv. 43. this town again in the hands of the Turks, *ibid.*
- HERACLIUS**, a Georgian prince, prevails in Persia, iv. 300. improbability of establishing him as king, *ibid.*
- HERAT**, independent of Persia, iii. 63. governed by Ezadallah, *ibid.*
- HUSSEIN**, king of Persia, his character, iii. 30. willing to quit all pretensions to Kandahar, iii. 58. prepares to attack the Abdolles and Ousbegs, iii. 64. presides at the Divan, at the trial of the Athemat Doulet, iii. 75. convinced of the innocence of this minister, yet pardons his accusers, iii. 84. grants a peace to the Lesgees, iii. 87. arrival of the Turkish ambassador, iii. 89. sends an ambassador to Constantinople, iii. 92. frightened by various prefages, returns to Isfahan, iii. 92. calls a council after the battle of Gulnabad, iii. 110. rejects the proposals sent by Maghmud, iii. 124. behaviour during the siege of Isfahan, iii. 137. infatuated by the artifice of the Vali of Arabia, iii. 138. his designed negotiation refused by Maghmud, iii. 140. relings the empire to the conqueror, iii. 144. the ceremony of his abdication, iii. 145. reduced to the number of five women, iii. 152. ratifies his abdication, *ibid.* the bloody murder of his children by Maghmud, iii. 207. his numerous offspring and unbounded voluptuousness, iii. 208. gives an abdication to Ashreff, iii. 217. murdered by him, iv. 32.
- HUSSEIN KHAN**, brother of Maghmud, commands at Kandahar, iv. 147. the town is blockaded by Nadir, iv. 149. offers to acknowledge Nadir's sovereignty, *ibid.* is confirmed in his government, iv. 148.
- ### I.
- IBRAHIM BASHA**, grand vizir, put to death, iv. 48. leaves immense riches, iv. 48. his body dragged at a horse's tail, iv. 49.
- IBRAHIM KHAN**, Nadir's brother, engages the Lesgees and is killed, iv. 148.
- IBRAHIM MYRZA**, sent by his brother Adil Shah to Isfahan to raise recruits, iv. 287. revolts, iv. 294, 295, 296. defeats his brother, and puts him to death, iv. 297. in difficulties for want of money and provisions, iv. 298. sends Emir Khan to Tæhيران, who joins Ibrahim's opponents, iv. 199. his army dispersed and himself cut off, iv. 299.
- JEW**s return to their own country, iii. 3.
- IMAM**, or head of the Mahommedans, the Grand Signior the only one, iii. 238. queries to the Mufti concerning it, iii. 239. answers of the Mufti, iii. 239, 240.
- INDIAN** of Cabul, his prudence and great genius, iii. 219. used in a respectful manner by Maghmud, *ibid.* his estate confiscated by Ashreff, *ibid.*
- INDIA**, measures taken by that court to oppose the Persian army, iv. 153. discord among the Indian chiefs, iv. 154. the pomp and number of the Indian army, iv. 158. it incamps in the plains of Karnal, iv. 159. defeated by Nadir, iv. 167. the loss of the Indians,



# I N D E X.

- Indians, iv. 167. distress of their camp, iv. 167, 168. number slain by the Persians in marauding, iv. 172. the barbarous treatment of the Indians by the Persians in collecting the contributions, iv. 187. the treasure amassed on this occasion, iv. 188. value of the damage done by Nadir to the Indians, iv. 197, 198. Indian and Armenian merchants burnt alive by Nadir, iv. 258.
- INDUS**, the most considerable river in Asia, except the Ganges, iv. 161. its course of great extent, *ibid.*
- IONIANS**, subdued by Darius, iv. 6.
- ISFAHAN**, state of it after the battle of Gulnabad, iii. 111. the situation and extent of this city, iii. 121. its river and bridges, *ibid.* its magnificence, and great number of inhabitants, iii. 222. suffers by famine, iii. 137, 139. great desertion, iii. 139. its dreadful circumstances by famine, iii. 142. the people eat human flesh, iii. 143. surrender of the city, iii. 145. barbarities of the Afghans, iii. 159, 160, 161, 162. a new colony of Afghans arrive from Kandahar, iii. 167. retaken by the Persian army, iv. 33. cruelties committed here by Nadir, i. 258.
- ISMAEL** possesses the Persian throne, iii. 15. one of the greatest kings of the east, *ibid.*
- ISMAEL II.** comes to the crown of Persia, iii. 16. shut up in prison, *ibid.* puts his brother to death, *ibid.* dies by poison, iii. 17.
- ISMAEL III.** possesses the crown of Persia, iii. 18. his throat cut by a barber, *ibid.*
- ISMAEL BEG**, sent ambassador to Russia, iii. 180. concludes a treaty, iii. 181. the particulars of that treaty, *ibid.*
- ISPIRI ZADE**, the Grand Signior's chaplain, his character, iv. 50. assists the rebels in the conspiracy, *ibid.*
- JULFA**, taken by the Afghans, iii. 114. when built and inhabited, iii. 115.
- K.**
- KÆLAT**, the great repository of treasure surrendered to Adil Shah, iv. 286.
- KANDAHAR**, that province submits to Akbar, iii. 25. recovered by Shah Abas, *ibid.* falls again into the hands of the Indians, *ibid.* a strong barrier between Persia and India, iii. 26. taken by Shah Abas, *ibid.* besieged by the Moghol, *ibid.* restitution demanded, iii. 27. the rebellion here extinguished, iii. 28. a caravan arrives from hence to Magh-mud, iii. 203.
- KERKOU**D, the Turks defeat Kouli Khan here, iv. 86, 87.
- KHALBELLI KHAN**, a relation of Nadir Shah, the mutual confidence between him and the governor of Farsistan, iv. 240.
- KHERMAN**, Nadir's great barbarities here, iv. 259.
- KHIEVA** and Bokhara taken by Nadir, iv. 206. he takes from thence many thousand Persians and Ousbegs, iv. 207.
- KHORASAN**, once favoured by Nadir, iv. 258. in the same misery as other parts of Persia, iv. 258.
- KHOSROFF KHAN**, sent against the Afghans, iii. 53. obtains a victory over them, iii. 54. lays siege to Kandahar, iii. 55, 56. his defeat and death, iii. 56. his history and character, *ibid.*
- KHUDAYAR KHAN**, governor of Pekier, refuses to acknowledge Nadir's sovereignty, iv. 202. capitulates, and gives up his riches, iv. 204.
- KISLAR**, subject to the Russians, iv. 226. built on the Persian territories, *ibid.* the Russians order troops hither, *ibid.*
- KOOM**, Shah Hussein's children buried here, iii. 218. surrenders to Ashreff by capitulation, iii. 225.
- KOULAR AGASSI**, named Almas, endeavours to save himself by flight, iii. 216. is overtaken, and put to the rack, *ibid.* he slays his wife, and stabs himself, *ibid.* his character, *ibid.*
- KOULIFA**, ambassador in Russia, his letter to Knez Galitzen, the Russian ambassador, iv. 290.
- KOURDS**, a restless people, iii. 63. commit robberies under the walls of Isfahan, iii. 63.
- KUMMER O'DIN KHAN**, the Indian vizir, treated with severity, iv. 186. obliged to pay a great contribution, *ibid.* his secretary poisons himself, *ibid.* remarkable story of his son, iv. 190, 191.

LAHOR,

# I N D E X.

## L.

- LAHOR**, a fertile province in India, iv. 161. the town of Lahor taken by Nadir, iv. 162. he refreshes his army, iv. 163. its contribution to Nadir, iv. 199.
- LAR**, the capital of Laristan, taken and plundered, iii. 189.
- LEILAM**, the two battles here between the Persians and Turks, iv. 97, 98.
- LEONIDAS**, king of Sparta, defends the strait at Thermopylæ, *ibid.*
- LESGEES**, a stout, hardy people, iv. 224. put Nadir's army in confusion, *ibid.* attack his tent, and take away some of his treasure and women, *ibid.* make great havock among the Persians, afterwards repulsed, iv. 225. their letter to the Russian general, iv. 226. the number of their troops, iv. 227. oblige Nadir to return into Persia, iv. 227, 228. send two ambassadors to Constantinople, iv. 249. offer to serve as the Swiss serve the French, iv. 250. See **TARTARS**.
- LORISTAN**, Vali of, his conduct at the battle of Gulnabad, iii. 107. is declared generalissimo by Shah Hussein, iii. 113. his love to his country, iii. 128. makes an incursion into the territory of Bagdat, iii. 232. his two daughters attend him in this expedition, *ibid.*
- LUTF ALI KHAN**, the Persian general, beats the rebels, iii. 71. lays contributions on the inhabitants of Kherman, *ibid.* sent prisoner to court, and his army dispersed, iii. 72. his domestic enemies cabal against him, iii. 73. resolves to serve Tæhmas, iii. 170. barbarously murdered, iii. 173.

## M.

- MACON**, taken by surprise, iii. 172.
- MAHARRATTAS**, make incursions into the Moghol's dominions, iv. 139.
- MAHOMMED** Shah, the great Moghol at the head of his army, in person, iv. 158. defeated by the Persians, iv. 167. gives power to treat with the Persian monarch, iv. 168. his interview with Nadir, iv. 170, 171. his treasure and military chest brought to Nadir, iv. 171. delivers himself and his effects into Nadir's hands, iv. 172. he marches from Karnal, iv. 173. enters the city of Dehlie, iv. 174. receives presents from Nadir, iv. 191. his cession to Nadir of all the country on the west of the Indus, iv. 192, &c. advice given by Nadir to the Moghol, iv. 195.
- MAHOMMED**, founder of the dynasty of the Gaznavids, defeats the Cligi, iii. 23. defeated by them, iii. 24. are almost extirpated by him, iii. 24.
- MAHOMMED**, nephew of Achmed, declared sultan of Turkey, iv. 51. his behaviour to Patrona, who raised him to the throne, *ibid.*
- MAHOMMED BASHA**, general of the Turkish army, advances to Cars, iv. 251. joins Abdallah Kouproli, *ibid.* marches to Erivan, *ibid.* defeated by the Persians, iv. 252. slain in a second engagement, iv. 253.
- MAHOMMED FURRUKHSIR**, the great Moghol, his ministers acquire an unlimited authority, iii. 68. they seize his person, and deprive him of his sight, *ibid.*
- MAHOMMED HASSAN**, heads the rebellion at Astrabad, iv. 244.
- MAHOMMED KHAN BALOUCHE** declares for Tæhmas Shah at Shirafs, iv. 110. defeated by Kouli Khan, iv. 111. hangs himself, *ibid.*
- MAHOMMED KHODA-BENDE**, accepts of the crown of Persia, iii. 17. puts three of his brothers to death, *ibid.* his character and reign, *ibid.*
- MAHOMMED KOULI KHAN**, attacked by the Turks in passing a river, iii. 197.
- MAHOMMED ZAMON KHAN**, governor of the Abdollees, iii. 62. routed at Herat, *ibid.*
- MAHOMMEDANS**, two sects among them, iii. 35. their different tenets, *ibid.*
- MARATHON**, the Persians defeated in that battle, iii. 6.
- MARDONIUS**, sent by Darius against the Athenians, iii. 6. retreats over the Hellespont, *ibid.* is killed in the battle of Plateæ, iii. 8.
- MASCATS**, take possession of Baharain, iii. 68. attack the Portuguese fleet, *ibid.*
- MECCA** and **MEDINA**, in the former Mahomed was born, and in the latter buried, iii. 238.
- MEGABYSUS**, makes the Macedonians tributary to Persia, iii. 6.
- MELUCK-MAGHMUD**, governor of Segestan, marches to the relief of Isfahan, iii. 140. is corrupted by presents, iii. 141. concludes a treaty,



# I N D E X.

- treaty, and makes himself master of Khorasan, *ibid.*
- MEROE**, murdered by order of her brother Cambyfes, iii. 4.
- MESCAT**, the Imam deposed, flies with his family and treasure, iv. 229. the Persians enter this city, *ibid.* are surprized by the Arabs, and put to the sword, *ibid.* the Mescats victorious at sea, *ibid.*
- MESCHED**, Shah Tæhmas, enters in triumph, iv. 19. his devotion in this city, iv. 20. great barbarities committed here by Nadir, iv. 259, 260.
- MILITARY** exploits, reflexions on their vanity, iv. 212, &c. the consequences of such exploits, iv. 238.
- MILTIADES**, defeats the Persians in the battle of Marathon, iii. 6.
- MIM BASHI**, a certain person, his skill in the use of the sabre, extraordinary, iv. 277. made a Khan, *ibid.* Nadir's way of trying his virtue, *ibid.* his pretence for strangling the Khan, *ibid.* attacks the Shah with a sabre, iv. 278.
- MIR-AB DALLAH**, brother to Mir-vais, succeeds to the government of the Afghans, iii. 59. designs to subject Kandahar to Persia, iii. 60.
- MIR-MAGHMUD**, Mir-vais's son, murders his uncle, and is chosen king of Kandahar, iii. 61. enters Kherman with his army, iii. 71. is defeated by Lutf Ali Khan, *ibid.* raises an army, iii. 97. marches to Kherman, and takes that city, iii. 98. lays siege to Yezd, but is obliged to retire, iii. 100. arrives at Gulnabad, iii. 101, 102. defeats the Persians there, iii. 108. incamps at Cheereftan, iii. 114. attacks Isfahan, iii. 122, 123. repulsed at the bridge of Shirafs, iii. 123. sends proposals of peace, iii. 124, 125. pillages the district of Isfahan, iii. 125, 126. his answer to the proposal of a negotiation, iii. 140. the empire of Persia resigned to him, iii. 144. receives the diadem, and takes possession of Isfahan, iii. 145, 146. his ceremony of procession on ascending the throne, iii. 148, 149. receives homage from Shah Hussein, and the grandees of Persia, *ibid.* regulates the civil policy, iii. 150. confirms the Persians in their employments, *ibid.* punishes those who had been unfaithful to Shah Hussein, iii. 151. his behaviour
- after the inhabitants of Casbin revolt, iii. 158. murders the Persian lords and their children, iii. 159, 160, 161. more massacres and barbarities committed by him, iii. 161. takes Ghulpaigan, iii. 160, 172. loses a great part of his army in Cohkilan, iii. 190. raises new troops, and besieges Yezd, iii. 203. is obliged to raise the siege, iii. 204. jealous of Ashreff, iii. 205. undergoes a religious penance, iii. 206. murders Hussein's children, iii. 207. falls into a delirium, the Armenian priests read the gospel over him, iii. 208, 209. his frightful condition, iii. 209. his miserable death and character, iii. 212, &c.
- MIR-VAIS**, his power among the Afghans, iii. 129. his character, *ibid.* sent to Isfahan, iii. 30. the state of Persia when he came to court, iii. 33. his intrigues, iii. 33, 34. he goes to Mecca, iii. 35. proposes political doubts to the Mullahs, iii. 36. returns to Isfahan, *ibid.* his arts to alarm the court, iii. 37, 38. raises a suspicion against Gurghin Khan, is sent back to his own country, iii. 41, 42. engages the Afghans to revolt, iii. 44. massacres Gurghin Khan, takes possession of Kandahar, iii. 47. deputies sent to him from the Persian court, iii. 51, 52. defeats the Khans of Herat and Tavis, iii. 53. the province of Kandahar intirely reduced, iii. 57. his death and character, iii. 57.
- MOGHOL**, the state of his dominions before Nadir's expedition into India, iv. 138, &c. See MAHOMMED SHAH.
- MOSUL**, besieged by the Persians, iv. 139. they raise the siege, *ibid.*
- MOURTCHAKHOR**, the Afghans defeated by the Persians here, iv. 31.
- MULLAH BASHI**, high-priest in Persia, his speech at the election of Kouli Khan as king, iv. 126. is put to death, iv. 127.
- MUNTISIKS**, a tribe of Arabians, throw off the Turkish yoke, iv. 221. their character, iv. 221, 222.
- MUSTAPHA EFFENDI**, the Grand Signior's ambassador, concludes the peace with Nadir, iv. 256. the conditions of the peace, *ibid.* the pompous titles assumed by these two potentates, *ibid.*
- MUSTAPHA KHAN**, and Cossin Khan, of a virtuous character, favoured by Nadir, iv.



## I N D E X.

276, 277. Mustapha Khan distinguished for his honesty, iv. 284. at Nadir's death on an embassy to Constantinople, *ibid.*

MYRZA MEHTIE, the affair of translating the evangelists put under his direction, iv. 217. summons Armenian bishops, Romish missionaries, and Persian mullahs, to meet him at Isfahan, *ibid.* the manner this translation was made, iv. 218. finished in six months, *ibid.* presented to Nadir, his reflexions upon it, *ibid.*

### N.

NACHIVAN, the Armenians here invite the Turks into their country, iii. 194. brought under the Turkish yoke, iii. 198.

NADIR KOULI, the meaning of his name, iv. 2. where born, iv. 3. his father's situation, *ibid.* bred a shepherd, *ibid.* obliged to gather sticks for a support, *ibid.* is carried into captivity by the Ousbegs, iv. 4. returns to Khorasan, *ibid.* a companion of robbers, *ibid.* enters into the service of a Beg, *ibid.* murders his fellow-courier, *ibid.* also his master the Beg, and marries his daughter, iv. 5. retires with her into the mountains, *ibid.* enters into the service of Babulu Khan, *ibid.* noted for courage, address, and personal strength, *ibid.* commands an expedition against the Ousbegs, iv. 7. acquires honour, and is disgraced, iv. 7, 8. retires to Kælat, iv. 9. retreats to the mountains for the third time, *ibid.* robs for several years, *ibid.* joined by the troops of Sef O Din Beg, iv. 10. a pardon obtained for Nadir, iv. 11. goes to Kælat, murders his uncle, and takes the fortress of Kælat, *ibid.* wages war against the Afghans, iv. 12, 13. takes Nichabur, and reinforces his army, *ibid.* obtains the Shah's pardon at Farabad, iv. 14. joins his forces with those under Fatey Ali Khan Khajar, iv. 15, 16. Nadir kills this Khan, and acquires the sole command, iv. 17, 18. conducts Shah Tæhmas to Nichabur and Mesched, iv. 18, 19. increases his army, iv. 19. is named Tæhmas by the Shah, iv. 20. reduces Khorasan and Herat, iv. 22, 23. returns in triumph to Mesched, iv. 23. engages Shah Tæhmas to remain at Tæhيران, iv. 30. defeats the Afghans, and enters Isfahan, iv. 31, 36. obtains a victory over

them at Shirafs, iv. 38. takes Hamadan and Tavis, iv. 41. grants a truce to the Turks, *ibid.* augments his army in Khorasan, iv. 64. disapproves of the peace the Shah made with the Turks, iv. 65, 66. makes his son governor of Khorasan, iv. 67. arrives at Isfahan, iv. 67. endeavours to vindicate his conduct to the Shah, iv. 68. delivers letters accusing some of his courtiers, iv. 69. intrigues to depose the Shah, iv. 70, 71. takes an oath to the infant king Abas, iv. 73. advances his sons and brothers to the principal governments, iv. 74. his manifesto disclaiming the peace with the Turks, *ibid.* sends an ambassador to Russia, notifying the accession of Abas to the throne of Persia, iv. 76. marches with an army to Bagdat, iv. 77. besieges this city, iv. 80, &c. defeated by the Turks in the battle of Kerkoud, iv. 86, 87. retires to Hamadan, iv. 93. recruits his army, iv. 94. his stratagem, iv. 97. routs the Turkish army, iv. 98, 99. acquaints the Russian court of his success, iv. 109. defeats Mahommed Khan Balouche, iv. 111. marches into Georgia, and takes Tefis, iv. 112. takes Ganja and Shamakie, iv. 115, 116. the Russians make a treaty with him, iv. 207. his speech to an assembly of the chiefs of Persia, iv. 124. is declared king, iv. 125, 127. the conditions of his accepting the diadem, iv. 127. coins money, and seizes the lands of the church, iv. 128, 129. takes the usual oath at Casbin, iv. 132. sends an ambassador to Turkey, iv. 132. marches to Isfahan, iv. 135. makes preparations for an expedition against Kandahar, iv. 137. how his character differs from that of Alexander the Great, iv. 143, &c. leaves Isfahan, iv. 146. arrives at Kandahar, *ibid.* besieges the town, iv. 147. caused a number of houses to be built, *ibid.* corresponds with discontented lords in India, iv. 149. takes Cabul, iv. 151. his severe discipline by ripping open eighty soldiers, iv. 152. takes Cabul by storm, *ibid.* sends an embassy, and writes to the Indian emperor, iv. 154. corrupts the Indians with the plunder of Cabul, iv. 155. meets with difficulties in his way to the river Indus, *ibid.* enters into a treaty with the mountaineers, iv. 156. sends another embassy to the great Moghol, *ibid.* his pomp when he enters the Indian terri-



# I N D E X.

territories, iv. 160. passes the river Indus, iv. 161. takes Jeminabad and Lahor, iv. 162. arrives on the plains of Karnal, iv. 163. the number of his army in India, iv. 164. defeats the Indian army at Karnal, iv. 166. has an interview with the Indian ministers, iv. 168. his speech to the Indian emperor, iv. 170. gives a gratuity to every soldier, iv. 173. marches from Karnal to Delhie, iv. 173, &c. orders Delhie to be massacred, iv. 176. his conduct after the massacre, iv. 178. large sums brought into his treasury, iv. 179. is dissatisfied with his son's government in Persia, iv. 180. sends a decree, confirming all governors and magistrates in their posts till his return, iv. 181. sends an ambassador to Turkey, iv. 182. the conditions his ambassador requires, *ibid.* pays his soldiers their arrears, with a gratuity, in his own coin struck upon this occasion, *ibid.* makes presents to the great Moghol and Indian lords, iv. 190, 191. his advice to the great Moghol, iv. 193. marches from Dehlie, iv. 196. punishes deserters, *ibid.* an instance of his vanity and avarice, iv. 198, 199. seizes the plunder belonging to his own soldiers, iv. 201. marches to Peithor, iv. 202. sends his treasures to Kælat, iv. 205. reduces Khieva and Bokhara, iv. 206, 207. his conduct to his son, who makes an attempt on his life, iv. 210, 211. arrives in the neighbourhood of Isfahan, iv. 211. the affliction for his darling son, iv. 212. sends an ambassador to Russia, and another to Turkey, iv. 214, 215. renews his claim to the provinces and cities formerly belonging to Persia, iv. 215. reduces the Arabian rebels and Ousbegs, *ibid.* orders a mausoleum to be built at Mesched, iv. 216. aims at introducing a new religion into Persia, iv. 216, 217. causes a translation of the four evangelists to be made into Persic, iv. 217. marches against the Lesgees, and enters Dagistan, iv. 224. disgusted with the Russian court, iv. 228. his cruelty to the people, *ibid.* his avarice and cruelty to the Persians by his exorbitant taxes, iv. 229, 230. demands from the Ottoman court the restitution of the provinces in Armenia, Asia Minor, and Georgia, iv. 231. writes a letter to the Grand Signior, and another to the Basna at Bagdat, iv. 232. the Turks

dread his designs against them, iv. 234. declares himself a Sunni, *ibid.* his plan of a campaign against the Turks, iv. 238. punishes the rebels in Farsistan, iv. 243. orders the amount of the loss of the British caravan to be paid, *ibid.* returns from Turkey into Persia, iv. 245. marches his army into the Turkish dominions, iv. 248. defeats the Turks in two battles, iv. 252, 253. makes a peace with them, iv. 254, &c. an ambassador sent from the Russian court to Nadir, iv. 259. orders the sons of the nobles of Georgia to attend his camp, iv. 257. his peevishness and cruelty at Isfahan, iv. 258. several Indian and Armenian merchants burnt alive, iv. 258. intends to massacre part of his own army, but is himself assassinated, iv. 260, 261, 262. slaughter by the Tartars after his death, *ibid.* motives of Nadir's supposed intention of a massacre, *ibid.* reflexions upon his death and character, iv. 263, 266. age and reign, *ibid.* a great composition in his character, iv. 266. his person, *ibid.* his voice strong and sonorous, iv. 267. his corporal strength great, *ibid.* dexterity in the battle-ax, *ibid.* his memory and knowledge of the genius of the Persians, *ibid.* his skill in the finances, *ibid.* far advanced in life before he learned to read, iv. 268. his diet and dress, *ibid.* his love of women, *ibid.* his detestation of sodomy, iv. 269. punished those that were satirical upon him, iv. 270. instances of his avarice, iv. 271. it increased with his years, iv. 274. his jealousy and distrust, *ibid.* his artful way of gaining the affection of his army, iv. 278. his prudence, resolution, and presence in action, iv. 279. preferred stratagem to force, iv. 280. made an ejaculatory prayer before a battle, *ibid.* indefatigable in personal application, and the duty of a commander, *ibid.* punctual in paying his army, v. 281. the sole vender of cloth, and some other commodities, to them, *ibid.* capricious sometimes, pardoned great offenders, *ibid.* his behaviour to his ministers, iv. 282. his conduct in the beginning of his reign, iv. 283. delivered Persia from the yoke of the Afghans, *ibid.* the motives that influenced his actions, *ibid.* reflexions on his tyranny by his nephew Adil Shah, iv. 287, 288. tyrannical government has reduced Persia, iv. 300



# I N D E X.

- NAZR ULLAH**, defeats the Khan of Hamadan, iii. 162, 163. pillages several parts of Persia, *ibid.* sent to Faristan, iii. 170. makes himself master of the towns of that province, iii. 185. is killed at the siege of Shiras, *ibid.* his death and character, *ibid.* his monument erected by Maghmud, iii. 186.
- NESR ALI MYRZA**, Nadir's second son, marries the great Moghol's niece, iv. 188. defeats the pretender Saun, iv. 242. falls a sacrifice to Adil Shah, iv. 285.
- NISLI MAHOMMED AGA** envoy from the Grand Signior to Peter the Great, iii. 173. his public entry at Mosco, iii. 174.
- NIZAM AL MULUCK**, a chief in India, acquaints Nadir of the affairs at the Moghol's court, iv. 142. an interview between him and Nadir, iv. 168. obliged to raise a large contribution, iv. 185.
- O
- OCHUS**, called Darius Nothus, ascends the throne of Persia, iii. 10. puts Artites, and others, to death, *ibid.* reduces Egypt and Media, *ibid.* his death, *ibid.*
- OCHUS**, son of Artaxerxes II. conceals his father's death, iii. 10. governs ten months in his father's name, iii. 11. makes a decree for declaring himself king, *ibid.* governs in his own name, *ibid.* a cruel, but a valiant prince, *ibid.* recovers Egypt, *ibid.* subdues Syria and Cyprus, *ibid.* slain by Bagoas, *ibid.*
- OUSBEGS**. See TARTARS.
- P.
- PATRONA KALIL**, a janissary, brings about a revolution in Turkey, iv. 44. dethrones the Sultan, iv. 51. advances Mahommed, the Sultan's nephew, to the throne, *ibid.* his behaviour to the new Sultan, iv. 51, 52. his extraordinary adventures, iv. 55, &c. he and other rebels put to death in the Seraglio, iv. 59.
- PEISHOR**, a city in India, taken by Nadir, iv. 157. the governor won to his interest, *ibid.* Nadir advances thence to the Indus, iv. 160.
- PENANCE**, religious, Maghmud undertakes one, iii. 206. most surprising and superstitious, *ibid.*
- PERSIA**, its empire founded by Cyrus the Great, iii. 1. the second of the four monarchies, *ibid.* what occasioned their being an easy conquest to the Grecians, iii. 12. the monarchy becomes a part of the Grecian empire, *ibid.* this kingdom restored by Artaxerxes, iii. 13. when conquered by the Saracens, *ibid.* its tranquillity in the beginning of this eighteenth century, iii. 22. the Afghans the authors of its catastrophe; *ibid.* the corruptions of the court under Shah Hussein, iii. 30, 31. the divisions and parties in Persia, iii. 31, 32. the indiscreet talk of the Russian ambassador made way for the invasion of Persia, iii. 42. a rebellion raised by Mir Vais at Kandahar, *ibid.* a victory obtained by the Persians over the Afghans, iii. 54. the Afghans defeat the Persians, iii. 56. are defeated by Ezadallah, iii. 66. the Persian army marches to fight the Afghans, iii. 103. number of the Persian army, iii. 104. their conduct towards the Armenians of Julfa, iii. 116, 117. the empire resigned by Shah Hussein, iii. 144. the northern provinces in Persia invaded by the Russians, iii. 155. massacres by Maghmud, iii. 159, 160, 161. the advantages the Czar and the Grand Signior made by the troubles of Persia, iii. 176, 179, 227. a partition of the Persian dominions, iii. 199. Persian lords massacred by Ashreff, iii. 226. the deplorable state of the Persian monarchy, iii. 227. the Persians enter Isfahan, and take revenge of the Afghans, iv. 33. make peace with the Turks, iv. 64. the great change in the Persian affairs by Kouli Khan, iv. 121. the Persians defeat the Indians, iv. 166. the massacre at Delhie, iv. 176. groan under Nadir's tyranny, iv. 229. abandon their country, iv. 230. buy horses from the Turks for the use of their army, iv. 232. the distressed situation of Persia by Nadir's avarice, iv. 247. they defeat the Turks in two battles, iv. 252, 253. the Persian army dispersed, iv. 262. the Persians polite, cunning, and deceitful, iv. 275. their great confusion and calamities by Nadir's usurpation, iv. 300. dreadful desolation by the ravages of war, iv. 301.
- PETER the GREAT**, designs to open a communication between the Caspian and Euxine seas, iii. 154. sends an ambassador to Persia to complain of the Ousbegs, iii. 154, 155. invades



# I N D E X.

invades the northern parts of Persia, iii. 155. operations of his army, iii. 155, 156. assembles an army near Dagistan, iii. 176. his conduct in relation to Persia not agreeable to the Port, iii. 198. conferences renewed with him, iii. 199. a treaty concluded between the Czar and the Port, iii. 200. the articles of that treaty, iii. 200, 201. his death, iii. 226.

**PHEDYMA**, discovers the impostor Smerdis by the loss of his ears, iii. 5.

**PHILIP** of Macedon, chosen general against the Persians, iii. 11. murdered, and succeeded by his son Alexander, *ibid.*

**PLATEÆ**, the Persian army defeated here, iii. 8. Themistocles banished by the Athenians, *ibid.* chooses to poison himself rather than fight against his country, *ibid.*

**PORUS**, conquered by Alexander the Great, iv. 162, 163.

**POULAH BASHA** sent by the Seraskier to keep the post of Tahajak, iv. 95. abandons that post to the enemy, *ibid.*

**PRINCE**, reflexion on not paying the debts of one deceased, iv. 274.

## R.

**RELIGION**, Nadir's project of introducing a new religion into Persia, iv. 216.

**RESHD**, the English factors plundered here by order of Amur Aslan Khan, iv. 293.

**RIVERS**, Nadir's manner of throwing bridges over them, iv. 161.

**RIZA KOULI MYRZA**, Nadir's son, appointed by his father regent of Persia, iv. 142. his character, *ibid.* defeats the Ousbeg Tartars, iv. 147. returns victorious to Mesched, *ibid.* his oppressive government, iv. 149. his bad administration displeases his father, iv. 181. makes an attempt on his father's life, iv. 209. behaves very obstinately, iv. 211. his eyes put out, *ibid.* falls a sacrifice to the jealousy of Adil Shah, iv. 285.

**ROMAN** conquest, 270 years after the Græcian empire, iii. 13. its duration, *ibid.*

**RUSSIA**, an ambassador sent from that court to Isfahan, iii. 37. strange alarms raised in Persia at his coming, iii. 37, 38. his character, iii. 39. the Russians uneasy at the conquests made by the Turks in Persia, iii. 233.

VOL. IV.

the success of the Russian arms there, iii. 233, 234. misunderstanding between the Russians and Turks, iii. 241. an ambassador sent by Kouli Khan to this court, iv. 117. conquest on the Caspian coast delivered up to Persia, iv. 117. Kouli Khan's conduct towards Russia, iv. 122. the Russians restore the dominions that belonged to the Persian empire, iv. 124. an ambassador sent to Russia by Nadir, iv. 183. one sent with presents after his return from India, iv. 214. alarmed at Nadir's being on their frontiers, iv. 226. send an ambassador to Nadir, iv. 257. proceed with great caution in oriental treaties, iv. 293.

## S.

**SAADIT KHAN**, taken prisoner, iv. 166. has the charge of the city of Dehlie for Nadir, iv. 172. destroys himself, iv. 175.

**SAIID ACHMED KHAN**, governor of Kherman, treacherously destroyed by Ashreff, iii. 24.

**SALEH BEG**, assassinate Nadir Shah, iv. 261.

**SAUN**, a pretender sent into Persia, iv. 241. his history and appearance in Persia, iv. 241. joined by an army of Lesgees, *ibid.* marches into Shirvan, iv. 242. defeated by Nezir Ali Myrza, *ibid.* one of his eyes cut out, *ibid.* sent by Nadir with a message to the Ottoman court, *ibid.*

**SALAMIS**, the Persian fleet defeated here, iii. 8.

**SCHEICH EIDAR**, sets up a new religion, iii. 14. murdered by Rustan, *ibid.* leaves behind him Ismael and two other sons, *ibid.*

**SCHIAS** and **SUNNIS**, two sects among the Mahommedans, iv. 129. divide the Persians and Turks, the former being Schias and the latter Sunnis, *ibid.* a decree by Nadir to unite these two sects, *ibid.*

**SCYTHIANS**, invade Thrace and plunder the country, iii. 6.

**SEFFIE MYRZA**, Shah Hussein's son, a report that he escaped and retired to Turkey, iii. 206.

**SEFFIE KOULI KHAN**, made general by the court of Persia, iii. 65. defeated and cut off by the Abdolcees, iii. 66. another of that name taken prisoner by the Turks, and cruelly put to death, iv. 43.

T. t

SEFF-

# I N D E X.

- SEFFIES, the time this family possessed the throne, iii. 14. it ended in the person of Shah Husein, iii. 146.
- SHAHROKH, grandson to Nadir, uncertain whether he was a sacrifice to Adil Shah's jealousy, iv. 286. declared king of Persia, iv. 298. marches against the Afghans, iv. 299. obliged to yield to Shah Dour, iv. 300.
- SHALIMAR, Nadir musters his army here, iv. 196. marches thence to Karnal, iv. 198.
- SHIPS, Nadir attempts to get a fleet of ships, iv. 228.
- SHIRASS, besieged by the Afghans, iii. 185. a supply intercepted, iii. 188. distressed by famine, iii. 188. taken and sacked, *ibid.* again doomed to distress and slaughter, iv. 243.
- SIRBULLIND KHAN, an Indian lord of good reputation, iv. 177. obtains the cessation of the slaughter at Dehlie, *ibid.* appointed chief collector of the Indian contributions, iv. 184. his declaration to Nizam Al Muluck, iv. 185.
- SMERDIS, the Artaxerxes of the scripture, usurps the throne, i. 5. stiled the magian, *ibid.* endeavours to gain the affections of the people, *ibid.* discovered as an impostor, *ibid.* assassinated by the nobility, *ibid.*
- SONPUT, Paniput, and several Indian villages plundered by the Persians, iv. 174.
- SOGDIANUS usurps the throne of Persia, iii. 9. surrenders to Ochus, *ibid.*
- SULIMAN, king of Persia, iii. 21. his health impaired by drunkenness and women, *ibid.* under him Persia began to decline, *ibid.*
- SULIMAN, uncle to Shah Tæhmas, assumes the diadem, iv. 299. soon becomes a sacrifice, iv. 300.
- SULIMAN EFFENDI, sent by the Turks into Persia, iv. 23. acquaints his court of an approaching change in Persia, *ibid.*
- SULIMAN, the lieutenant of Achmed Basha, defeats the Arabians, iv. 232. returns home with a rich booty, *ibid.*
- SULTAN MEYDAN, plains where Nadir calls before him the chiefs of the Tartars, iv. 261. disclosed a design of massacring a great part of his army, *ibid.* the conference overheard by a Georgian slave, iv. 261.
- SUNNIS, the Grand Signior claims authority over this sect of Mahomedans, iv. 25.
- SWEDES, at war with the Russians, iv. 232. desire the Turks to break with their enemies, *ibid.*
- SYRIA, subject to Seleucus, iii. 13.

## T.

- TÆHMAS, ascends the Persian throne, iii. 15. his wars with Suliman the Grand Signior, *ibid.*
- TÆHMAS MYRSA, declared successor to his father Husein, iii. 133. escapes from Isfahan, iii. 136. takes the title of king, iii. 152. endeavours to recover his dominions, iii. 168. sends an ambassador to the Port, iii. 179. yields Ghilan and other towns to the Czar, iii. 181. his conduct towards the Armenians, iii. 191. routs a body of Afghans, iii. 223. escapes from Ashreff, iii. 225. endeavours to negotiate a treaty with the Russians and Turks, iii. 242, 243. lives obscurely at Farabad in Mazanderan, iv. 10. sends an ambassador to the Port, iv. 23. defeats Ashreff, iv. 29. enters Isfahan, iv. 34. gives his general, Kouli Khan, the power of raising money, iv. 36. marches to Erivan, and obtains some advantages over the Turks, iv. 42. afterwards defeated at Astabat, and again at Hamadan, iv. 42, 43. makes peace with the Turks, iv. 64. gives up Armenia, Erivan and Georgia, *ibid.* his pacific measures not agreeable to Kouli Khan, iv. 65. put to death by the contrivance of Riza Kouli Myrza, iv. 208, 209. the last of the Seffie family, iv. 209.
- TAGHI KHAN, governor of Farsistan, a Beglerbeg, iv. 240. the honours allowed him, *ibid.* his revolt and character, iv. 243. Shiras taken by storm, *ibid.* carried to Isfahan with his favourite wife and relations, *ibid.* their punishment, *ibid.*
- TAMARAS KHAN, a general of great experience, iv. 259. revolts from Nadir, *ibid.*
- TAMERLANE conquers Bajazet, iii. 13. subdues Persia, *ibid.* his death, *ibid.*
- TANISEER, an Indian town, plundered, and put to the sword by Nadir, iv. 199.
- TARTARS, Ousbeg, invade the province of Herat, iii. 24. are obliged by Abas, king of Persia, to retire, iii. 25. make incursions into Khorasan, iii. 63. Nadir's manner of treating them, iv. 278.



# I N D E X.

**TARTARS**, Lesgees, their natural disposition, iii. 63. their motives to invade Persia, iii. 64. obtain a victory over the Persians, iii. 85. sue for a reconciliation, *ibid.* invade Shirvan, and take Shamakie, iii. 93, 94. commit great cruelties here, iii. 94. occasion great consternation at the Persian court, iii. 95. take possession of the rest of Shirvan, iii. 95. beat the Khan of Erivan, *ibid.* and lay siege to Ganja, iii. 96. See **LESGEES**.

**TAVRIS**, one of the finest cities in the east, iii. 195. besieged by the Turks, *ibid.* the inhabitants defeat them, *ibid.* besieged by a great army of Turks, iii. 228. taken after a bloody contest, iv. 229, 230.

**THEBES**, plundered and demolished by Cambyses, iii. 4.

**THEMISTOCLES**, defeats the Persian fleet at Salamis, iii. 8.

**TIRINS**, Mir-vais concert a conspiracy with that tribe, iii. 46.

**TOPAL OSMAN BASHA**, appointed generalissimo of the Turkish army, iv. 75. his stratagem, iv. 84. defeats the Persians near Bagdat, iv. 86, 87. sends his army into quarters, iv. 93. killed, and the Turks routed, iv. 98. his body sent to Bagdat, iv. 99. his education in the Seraglio, iv. 100. sent by the Sultan to the basha of Cairo, iv. 101. taken by a Spanish privateer, *ibid.* ransomed from slavery by a native of Marseilles, iv. 101, 102. his gratitude to his benefactor, iv. 102, 103. made seraskier, iv. 103. made governor of Romania, *ibid.* his benefactor and his son kindly received there, iv. 104. made grand vizir, *ibid.* receives his deliverer at Constantinople, *ibid.* is displaced, and made basha of Trebisonde, iv. 107. ordered to command the Ottoman armies, *ibid.* his son promoted by the Grand Signior, iv. 108. his good character, *ibid.*

**TURKEY**, a surprising revolution here, iv. 44, &c. the grand vizir, and other officers, put to death, iv. 48. the Sultan dethroned, and his nephew Mahommed declared emperor of the Ottomans, iv. 51. a rebellion breaks out a second time, iv. 61. the rebels dispersed, iv. 62.

**TURKISH** ambassador, sent to the court of Persia, iii. 89. the ceremony of admision

to audience, iii. 90. a Turkish envoy arrives at Isfahan, iii. 161. watched by the Afghans, *ibid.* soon ordered to depart, iii. 162.

**TURKS**, extend their conquests in Persia, iii. 157. an envoy sent to the Czar from the emperor of the Turks, iii. 177. he requires the Czar to withdraw his troops from Derbend, iii. 175. their conduct during the troubles in Persia, iii. 177. the Port dissatisfied with the Czar's conduct, iii. 198. take Tavriss and Ganja, iii. 229, 230. their army advance within four and twenty leagues of Isfahan, iii. 232. evade settling the limits of their conquests in Persia with the Russian resident, iii. 234. dispute between two Turkish generals, iii. 241. are defeated by the Afghans, iii. 248. the situation of the Port in regard to other powers, iii. 250, 251. the Turks make great preparations against the Afghans, iii. 252. unsuccessful against the Armenians, *ibid.* send commissioners into Persia to treat with Ashreff, iii. 253. a treaty concluded between the Turks and Afghans, iii. 254. attack the Persian camp, iv. 42. cruelly use a Persian officer, iv. 43. make an advantageous peace with the Persians, iv. 64. declare war against the Persians, iv. 75. defeat the Persians at Kerkoud and Leilam, iv. 86, 87, 97. are routed by the Persians, iv. 98, 99. desirous of peace with Persia, iv. 116. prepare for war with Russia, iv. 122. an ambassador sent by Nadir with presents after his return from India, iv. 214, 215. conclude a peace with the Russians and Imperialists, iv. 214. their dangerous situation on account of Nadir's demands, iv. 230. the conduct of this court imprudent with regard to the governor of Bagdat, iv. 235. intrigues of the Ottoman court, iv. 236. they make great preparations for war, iv. 248. defeated by the Persians in two battles, iv. 252, 253. the European Turks enervated on entering Asia, iv. 255. a peace concluded with the Persians, iv. 256, 257.

## V.

**VACHTANGA**, declared Vali of Georgia, iii. 86. preparations made by him against the Lesgees,

I N D E X.

Lesgees, *ibid.* who are saved by a court-intrigue, iii. 87. takes an oath never to appear in arms in favour of Persia, *ibid.* his assistance is desired by Shah Hussein, but refused, iii. 132, 133. deposed, and takes refuge at the Russian court, iii. 169, 170.

W.

WAR, the instrument of divine justice, iv. 301. not from the original constitution of things, *ibid.* the dreadful desolations by war in Persia, *ibid.*

X.

XERXES, succeeds his father Darius, iii. 7. reduces Egypt, *ibid.* prepares to conquer Greece, *ibid.* loses twenty thousand men at Thermopylæ, *ibid.* plunders the temple at Delphos, iii. 7. plunders, and burns Athens, iii. 8. his vast army defeated at Plateæ, iii. 8. abandons himself to pleasures, *ibid.* murdered while sleeping, *ibid.*

XERXES II. murdered forty-five days after his accession, iii. 9.

Z.

ZEBERDEST KHAN, formerly taken prisoner by the Afghans, iii. 165. Ghiez taken by him, iii. 165, 166. Ben-Isfahan surrenders to him, iii. 166, 167. returns to Isfahan with booty and provisions, iii. 167. takes Shiras, iii. 187. his estate seized by Ashreff, iii. 219.

ZEKARIAH KHAN, governor of Lahor, meets Nadir with a large contribution, iv. 199. ordered by Nadir to furnish his army with provisions, iv. 203.

ZOPYRUS, his surprising stratagem in betraying Babylon to Darius, iii. 5.

ZORAB KHAN, a Georgian, promoted to the offices of treasurer and general by Adil Shah, iv. 295. sent by the Shah to Ibrahim Myrza his brother at Isfahan, *ibid.* treacherously killed there, *ibid.*

ZORUBABEL, the Jews return under his conduct, iii. 3.



A N  
E X P L A N A T I O N  
O F

Several FOREIGN WORDS in the FOUR VOLUMES.

Note, p. denotes Persia. T. Turkey. r. Russia. i. India. a. Afghans. t. Tartars.  
fig. signifies.

Note, *The numerals refer to the volumes, and the figures to the pages.*

A.

Abubeiker, Omar, Osman and Ali, iii. 240.  
iv. 130. *successors of Mahommed and Caliphs*, T.  
Adeliah, iii. 35. *sect of Ali*, fig. *sect of the just*, p.  
Aeysh Mahl, iv. 174. *fig. place of joy*, i.  
Afshars, i. 252. *tribe of Tartars*.  
Aivan, commonly called Divan, i. 189. *an apartment*, p.  
Ali, Gherbellai, Mahallade, Mouza, and Hussein, iv. 74. *prophets*, p.  
Ali, i. 338. *the immediate successor of Mahommed, according to the Persians*, p.  
Allah kerim, iv. 105. *the providence of God*, T.  
Allah akbah, iv. 131. *God is greatest*, p.  
Allah, iv. 217. *God*, T. p. t, &c.  
Arris begi, iv. 160. *presenter of petitions*, p.  
Ashreff, iii. 134. *fig. noble*, a.  
Azof jah, iv. 141. *fig. Solomon's vizir*, i.  
Assotra, i. 125. *a fish in the Volga*, r.  
Athemmat doulet, iii. 41. *prime minister*, p.

B.

Bactrians, i. 302. *See Khajars*.  
Bakthiar, iii. 127. *fig. happy*, p.  
Balks, i. 180. *fir trees*, r.  
Balouches, i. 253. *a tribe of Afghans*.  
Bannians, iv. 72. *trading people*, i.  
Barranni, iv. 164. *riding coats*, i.  
Bater, i. 348. *a hero*, t.

VOL. IV.

Bayots, iv. 10. *inhabitants of Bayad in Kouhestan*, p.  
Bayram, iv. 107. *a festival*, T.  
Bazar, i. 234. *market place*, p.  
Bazoubund, iv. 191. *repast*, i.  
Bevra, iv. 184. *forced contribution*, i.  
Bechik, iv. 82. *a litter or cradle*, T.  
Beg, ii. 195. *a rank answering to our knights*, p.  
Beglerbeg, iv. 5. *lord of lords*, p.  
Beluga, i. 25. *a fish in the Volga*, r.  
Bocalls, i. 127. *Certain cups*, r.  
Bostangis, iv. 46. *guards of the seraglio*. T.  
Bourlacks, i. 103. *watermen*.  
Bul, iii. 78. *a seal in Persia*, p.

C.

Caalleans, i. 171. *machines to smoke tobacco*, p.  
Castan, iv. 59. *a coat of honour*, T.  
Calentar, i. 197. iii. 29. *collector of taxes*, p.  
Caliphs, *See Abubeikar, &c.*  
Carack, iii. 84. *a poll tax*, p.  
Cas-Oda, iv. 51. *the part in the seraglio where princes are kept confined*, T.  
Caviar, *See Iera*.  
Chamatavoi yerlique, i. 87. *a clearance*, r.  
Charka, ii. 9. *a cup for brandy*, r.  
Cheik, iii. 95. *a name given to the kings of Persia*.  
Cheik Eidar, iv. 26. *father of Ismael, founder of the Seffie dynasty*, p.  
Cheriffs, iii. 29. *descendants of Mahommed*, a.

U u

Chiaux,

## EXPLANATION OF FOREIGN WORDS.

Chiaux, i. 251. *Criers, an order of soldiers in Persia, p.*  
 Chopars, i. 262. *couriers, p.*  
 Chot, iv. 139. *a tribute, i.*  
 Copeachnicks, i. 83. *post horses, r.*  
 Copeek, i. 96. *money =  $\frac{1}{2}$  penny, r.*  
 Coraich, iii. 238. *the tribe of Mahommed, t.*  
 Croop, ii. 136. *a ferenacious food, r.*  
 Crore, ii. 26. iv. 157. = 10 lacks, or 1250000 l. i.  
 Cattari, iv. 191. *dagger, i.*

### D.

Dagh, iii. 93. *a mountain.*  
 Damscoots, i. 111. *vessels, r.*  
 Dara, iii. 26. *Darius, or sovereign, p.*  
 Darougas, iv. 230. *lieutenant of the police, p.*  
 Desterchane, i. 336. *chancery, p.*  
 Deh-bashi, iv. 195. *corporal, p.*  
 Denshiks, ii. 150. *pages, r.*  
 Der Tokchi, iii. 108. *the east gate of Isfahan.*  
 Devlet kane, iii. 149. *habitation of greatness, viz. palace, p.*  
 Dika baba, i. 127. *wild woman, r.*  
 Divan beghi, iii. 56, 64. *lord chief justice, p.*  
 Dushab, i. 144. *juice of grapes, p.*

### E.

Effendi, iv. 55. *skilled in law, T.*  
 Eid'zoha, iv. 176. *a feast of sacrifice.*  
 Efik agassi, iv. 5. *gentleman usher, p.*  
 Efik agassi bashi, iii. 91. *grand master of the ceremony in p.*

### F.

Farfang, i. 227. iii. 77. *four miles English, p.*  
 Fattaha and tokbir, iv. 140. *a prayer for the king.*  
 Feleuk, iii. 32. *a certain party or sect, p.*  
 Fetfa, iii. 36. *decision of the Musti.*

### G.

Gaz, i. 186. *measure of 40 inches, p.*  
 Gazi, iii. 90. *conqueror, T.*  
 Geanghir, iii. 25. *son of Abkar, i.*  
 Gebers, iii. 36. *See Perfecs.*  
 Gemal beg, ii. 45. *fig. knight of the good countenance, p.*  
 Giamschid, iii. 91. *See Jumshid.*  
 Giga, iii. 145. *a plume of black heron's feathers, the ensign of sovereignty, p.*  
 Gostinadwore, i. 88. *public warehouses, r.*

Gouvernie, i. 120. *chancery, r.*  
 Ghosnavids, iii. 23. *a dynasty from the city Ghosnavi [not in Khorazan] in Kandabar.*  
 Graff, ii. 132. *count, r.*

### H.

Hahdgee, i. 166. *a title of distinction to the visitors of Mahommed's tomb, p.*  
 Hajan, iii. 108. *the western gate of Isfahan.*  
 Hakem bachi, iii. 72. *first physician, p.*  
 Hanifa, iv. 130. *a Turkish expounder of the Mahommedan law, T.*  
 Haram, i. 229. *fig. prohibited to men, the women's apartment in Asia.*  
 Harol, iv. 159. *van-guard, i.*  
 Hazarri, iv. 195. *commander of a thousand.*  
 Hindostand, iii. 25. *India hindos fig. swarthy, i.*  
 Horda, i. 347. iii. 29. *a tribe of Tartars, t.*  
 Houles, iv. 45. *a tribe of Arabians.*  
 Hussein and Hassan, ii. 32. *the sons of Ali.*

### I.

Jaffer, iv. 130. *one of the prophets of the Sunis.*  
 Jaguirs, iv. 195. *lands assigned to governors, i.*  
 Iecra, i. 140. *roe of sturgeon, r.*  
 Jeziah, iv. 170. *tax paid by the Pagans, i.*  
 Iman, iii. 67. 175, 238. *chief, also defender of the law, also priest.*  
 Imam, iv. 181. *name of the chiefs of the Arabians.*  
 Imam Hussein, iv. 190. *a son of Ali.*  
 Imam Riza or Kouli Riza, iv. 20. *the Persian prophet buried at Mesched.*  
 Islam, iv. 154. *fig. safety, and denotes the Mahommedan religion, p.*  
 Istamboul Effendi, iv. 53. *lieutenant of the police in Constantinople, T.*  
 Iswosheiks, i. 86. *carriers, r.*  
 Jumshid, iii. 91. *an antient king in Persia. See Giamschid.*  
 Jurghin, iv. 193. *alludes to the family of Tamerlane.*

### K.

Kabitkas, i. 345. ii. 7. *Tartar tents, t.*  
 Kadileskier, iv. 55. *chief justice, T.*  
 Kaimakan, iv. 45. *great usher of the household, T.*  
 Kapu orasi, iv. 48. *the apartment in the seraglio for execution, T.*  
 Karboy, i. 154. *a measure, p.*  
 Kazzi, i. 266. *judge, p.*

Keshi-



## EXPLANATION OF FOREIGN WORDS.

Keshikehi, i. 249. *watch guard*, p.  
 Khajars, i. 193. *antient Bactrians*, p.  
 Khalact, iii. 41. iv. 190. *a robe of honour*, p.  
 Khan, i. 193, 200. iii. 53. *lord or noble*.  
 Khotbah, iii. 57, 254. *a prayer for the health of the king*, p.  
 Kiaya, iv. 45, 332. *deputy or lieutenant*, T.  
 Kior sultan, iii. 185. *one-eye'd lord*, a.  
 Kirjims, i. 194. *small boats*, p.  
 Kislar aga, iii. 91. iv. 164. *chief of the eunuchs*, T.  
 Kisveran, iii. 208. *year of virgins*, p.  
 Kizil, i. 161. *red*, p.  
 Kouch kaleffi, iv. 80. *bird tower*. T.  
 Koul, iv. 2. *a slave*, T.  
 Koule, i. 120. *a measure*, r.  
 Kouller agassi, i. 251. iii. 84, 216. *chief of the slaves*, T.  
 Kouruck, iv. 173. *attendance who clear the way*, p.  
 Kourrol, iv. 164. *van guard*, p.  
 Kulains, iii. 103. *fig. slaves, an order of soldiers*, p.  
 Kumees, i. 347. *mares milk fermented*, t.  
 Kurchi bachi, iii. 73. *general of the household troops*, p.  
 Kurumsack, i. 234. *a rascal*, p.  
 Kuzzlebashi, iii. 90, 224. *an order of soldiery*, p.

### L.

Lack, iv. 155. *a hundred thousand rupees*, i.  
 Lats, iv. 62. *inhabitants of the coast of the black sea*.  
 Loobkas, i. 57. *boats*, r.  
 Lotkas, i. 18. *matts*, r.

### M.

Magi, iii. 23. *See Persees*.  
 Maimoundgi, iv. 141. *a quack doctor*, i.  
 Malek, Shafi, Hanbal, and Abul Hanifa, iv. 126. *Turkish doctors*.  
 Malika al Zumani, iv. 172. *fig. queen of the times*, i.  
 Mansubdars, iv. 184. *public officers*, i.  
 Manna, i. 129. *a seed*, r.  
 Matim, iv. 190. *death*, p.  
 Meidan, iii. 65. *a square*, p.  
 Mimbashis, iv. 7. *commander of a thousand*, p. *See Hazarri*.  
 Mir Bukhshi, iii. 68. *general paymaster*, p.  
 Mir-chekar bachi, iii. 33. *grand veneur, answers to our master of the buck bounds*, p.

Moezins, iii. 247. *callers to prayers*, T.  
 Moghol poura, iv. 179. *Tartar Moghols*, i.  
 Mortifa ali, iv. 130. *See Ali*.  
 Mourcha, iv. 159. *an entrenchment*, i.  
 Moum-seundurain, i. 384. *extinguishers of candles, a sect*, p.  
 Mufti, iii. 148. iv. 45. *the first ecclesiastic*, T.  
 Muhaffils, iv. 137. *collectors of taxes*, p.  
 Muhofiz, iv. 236. *governor of a citadel*, T.  
 Mullah, i. 266. iii. 35, 72. *fig. a guide or director; a priest*, p.  
 Mullah bashi, iv. 126. *high priest, or first ecclesiastic*, p.  
 Mustaphi, i. 23. *a writer*, p.  
 Mustafa Miemalek, i. 336. *general overseer of the empire*, p.  
 Myrza, iii. 31. *a writer, after a name, fig. also prince*, p.

### N.

Nachlathema, iii. 210. *a solemn deed on oath*, p.  
 Naptha, i. 133. *a bituminous matter*.  
 Næmets, i. 226. *felts of hair*, p.  
 Næssakhchi, iii. 104. *forlorn hope of the Afghans; also an order of soldiers in the Persian army*.  
 Næssakhchi bashi, iv. 172. *the officer who makes seizures*, p.  
 Nevrouz, i. 343. *new years day*, p.

### O.

Oufmai, iii. 227. *chief of the Lesgees*, t.  
 Ordou cadi, iv. 99. *intendant of the army*, T.  
 Omra, iv. 139. *a prince or lord*, i.

### P.

Padisha, iii. 243. iv. 120. *emperor*, T.  
 Pahr gunjh, iv. 176. *graneries*, i.  
 Peiscush, iv. 171, 184. *free gift*, i.  
 Pieshkhanna, iv. 153. *royal tents*, i.  
 Peleuk, iii. 32. *a sect*, p.  
 Persees, iii. 98. *worshippers of fire. See Magi and Gebres*.  
 Poderatchick, i. 87. *master carrier*, r.  
 Poderofnoi, i. 85. *order for horses*, r.  
 Pood, i. 57. *36 lbs. English*, r.

### Q.

Quash, ii. 9. *a liquor*, r.

### R.

Ragam, i. 215. *a royal decree*, p.  
 Rahdar, i. 226. iv. 230. *toll gatherers*, p

## EXPLANATION OF FOREIGN WORDS.

Reys effendi, iv. 45. *secretary of state*, T.  
 Riadhiat, iii. 206. *religious penance*, i.  
 Ruble, ii. 128. *coin*, r.  
 Rupee, *money of India*.

### S.

Saigon, i. 215. *a species of antelopes*, r.  
 Sandals, i. 130. *vessels*, p.  
 Sarafs, or ferafs, iii. 78. *money changers in p.*  
 Sardar, or ferdar, i. 197. *a general*, p.  
 Scheithan, iii. 90. *the devil*, T.  
 Schias, iii. 67. iv. 126. *sect of the Persians*.  
 Schipound, i. 77. *a weight*, r.  
 Sedr, iv. 129. *superintendent of the revenues of the church*, p.  
 Sedr ali scheriah, iii. 152. *chief justice*, a.  
 Selam aleiocom, iii. 145. *all hail, a compliment*, p.  
 Seraskier, iv. 81. *general in chief*, T.  
 Shah gemja, iii. 91. *See Jumshid*.  
 Shah seven, iii. 136. *antient militia*, p.  
 Shatirs, i. 249. *running footmen*, p.  
 Sheich, iii. 90. *See Cheik*.  
 Shemkall, i. 386. *a title of one of the chiefs of the Lesgees*.  
 Shoobe, ii. 140. *a great coat lined with fur*, r.  
 Sinofkas, i. 57. *a species of matts*, r.  
 Sirpeach, iv. 191. *a girdle or fillet*, i.  
 Sopha, i. 246. *a large cushion*, p.  
 Soubahs, iv. 157. *a province or government*, p.  
 Spahis, iii. 245. iv. 60. *Asiatic cavalry*.  
 Stakan, ii. 128. *a measure*, r.  
 Step, i. 14. *a desert*, r.  
 Struzes, i. 77. *barks*, r.  
 Sudival, iv. 195. *captain*.  
 Sunnet odaffi, iv. 58. *the apartment where the Ottoman princes are circumcised*.  
 Sunni, iii. 77. iv. 126. *sect of the Turks*.

### T.

Tabal, iv. 131. *a small drum*, p.

Takht revan, iv. 169. *moving throne*, i.  
 Tarranquins, iv. 181. *Vessels on the Persian gulf*.  
 Tazia, iv. 199. *fig. mourning*, p.  
 Teknes, iv. 80. *covered vessels on the Tigris*, T.  
 Temurbeg, iii. 24. *Tamerlane*.  
 Topal, iv. 82. *lame*, T.  
 Topchi bashi, iii. 103. *grand master of the artillery*, p.  
 Turcan, iv. 193. *See Temurbeg*.

### V.

Vali, iii. 28. *title of the feudatory princes of Georgia*.  
 Vekil, or Vakeel, iv. 146, 186. *a lieutenant*, p.  
 Visnofki, i. 128. *Cherry brandy*, r.  
 Vizir, i. 23. iii. 89. *a secretary also and officer under a governor*.  
 Vizir Azem, *grand vizir*, T.

### W.

Werft, i. 16.  $\frac{2}{3}$  *of a mile English*, r.  
 Wesbes, i. 96. *huts or common houses*, r.  
 Weywode, i. 18. *chief magistrate*, r.  
 Wilocks, i. 139. *a thick felt of hair*, r.  
 Wipie, i. 87. *a certain custom house permit*, r.

### Y.

Yabous, iv. 164. *a species of horses in the mountains of Kandabar*.  
 Yaktan, i. 278. *a leather pannier*, p.  
 Yamsheeks, i. 85. *a kind of post horses*, r.  
 Yetim, i. 253. *an orphan*, p.

### Z.

Zapis, i. 88. *a certain registered bond*, r.  
 Zemidar, iv. 198. *possessor of land*, i.  
 Zulkarnein, iii. 90. *two horns*, T.

























